OPPO Smartphone ColorOS 6.0 User Guide

Content

1. Welcome to ColorOS 6.0 6
2. Safety Information 6
3. Get started 9
    3.1. Quick Look 9
        3.1.1. ColorOS 6.0 Features 9
        3.1.2. Sleep/Wake Button 12
        3.1.3. Menu, Home, and Return Buttons 14
        3.1.4. Volume Buttons 17
        3.1.5. Micro-USB Port 19
        3.1.6. Headset Jack 20
        3.1.7. SIM and SD Cards 20
        3.1.8. Accessories that Came with OPPO Phone 21
        3.1.9. Charging the Battery 23
        3.1.10. Gesture & Motion 24
        3.1.11. Key Combinations 28
        3.1.12. Status Icons 30
    3.2. Configuration Settings 32
        3.2.1. Fingerprint, Face and Passcode 32
        3.2.2. Set Up Other Mail and Calendar Accounts 41
        3.2.3. Transfer Data from the Old Phone to OPPO Smartphone 41
        3.2.4. Date and Time 46
        3.2.5. Language and Region 49
        3.2.6. Connect to the Internet 50
        3.2.7. Dual SIM & Cellular Network 51
4. What's new in ColorOS 6.0 53
    4.1 Control Center 53
    4.2 Notification Center 53
    4.2 Volume Setting Look 54
    4.3 Riding Mode 56
    4.4 Game Space 2.0 57
    4.5 New Look on Apps 63
    4.6 Bigger Fonts, Enough Spacing 63
    4.7 Smart & Convenient has Been Divided Into Smart Service and Convenience Aid 64
    4.8 Added 2 Options on your Preferred Key Layout on the Navigation Keys 65
    4.9 A More Organized Photo Album 66
    4.10 Take Screenshot Without Disturbing your Game 67
    4.11 Added Home Screen Mode 67
    4.12 Static and Live Wallpaper 68
    4.13 VOOC 3.0 69

- 4.14 Smart Assistant Upgrade 70
- 4.15 Hyper Boost 71
- 4.16 Smart Sidebar 72

5. Basics 78
  - 5.1 Use Apps 78
  - 5.2 Share from Apps 80
  - 5.3 One-tap Cleanup 81
  - 5.4 Lock the Running Background Apps 82
  - 5.5 View, Zoom In and Out 83
  - 5.6 Convenience Aid 84
    - 5.6.1. Navigation Keys 84
    - 5.6.2. Assistive Ball 89
  - 5.7 Smart Service 92
  - 5.8 Change the Screen Orientation 93
  - 5.9 Split-screen 94
  - 5.10 Take and Edit a Screenshot 96
  - 5.11 Control Center, Notification, and Status Bar 99
  - 5.12 Search 103
  - 5.13 Text 104
    - 5.12.1. Add or Change Keyboard Languages 104
    - 5.13.1 Type, Edit, and Delete Text 105
    - 5.13.2 Prediction 108
    - 5.13.3 Voice Typing 110
    - 5.13.4 TouchPal for OPPO 112
  - 5.14 Sound, Vibration, and System Feedback 114
  - 5.15 Charge and Monitor the Battery 115
  - 5.16 Location Service 117
  - 5.17 Use the phone internationally 119
  - 5.18 Power Saver 120

6 Personalize your OPPO Phone 124
  - 6.1. ColorOS 6.0 Device Name 124
  - 6.2. Personalize the Home Screen 125
    - 6.2.1. Organize the Home Screen 125
    - 6.2.2. Home Screen Widgets & Transition Effects 128
  - 6.3. Change the Wallpaper 131
  - 6.4. Lock Screen Magazine 133
  - 6.5. Adjust the Screen Brightness and Color Temperature 135
  - 6.6. Change Auto-lock Time 137
  - 6.7. Change the Font Size 137
  - 6.8. Keyboard and Input Method 138
    - 6.8.1. Customize the Look of the Keyboard 138
    - 6.8.2. Keyboard Layout 139
    - 6.8.3. Trends 142
    - 6.8.4. Keyboard General Settings 142

6.9. Set up Startup Manager 144
6.10. Clone Apps 145
6.11. Manage Default App 146
6.12. Gesture & Motion 146
6.13. Preset Device On/Off Time or Automatic On/Off 150
6.14. App Display in Full-screen 151
7. Apps 152
7.1. Phone 152
7.1.1 Make and Answer Phone Calls 152
7.1.2. Conference Calls 158
7.1.3. Block Calls 159
7.1.4. Emergency Calls 162
7.1.5. Emergency SOS 162
7.1.6. Carrier’s Call Settings 167
7.5. Message 168
7.5.1. Send and Receive Messages 168
7.5.2. Customize Message Settings 171
7.6. Contacts 173
7.6.1. Add a Contact 173
7.6.2. Edit and Delete a Contact 175
7.6.3. Import and Export Contacts 177
7.6.4. SIM Contacts 179
7.6.5. Manage Contacts 181
7.6.6. Back Up your Contacts 183
7.6.7. VIP Contacts 184
7.7. Phone Manager 185
7.7.1. Scan and Optimize the Phone 185
7.7.2. Clean Up Storage 186
7.7.3. Privacy Permissions 188
7.7.4. Virus Scan 191
7.7.5. Payment Protection 191
7.7.6. Routine Test 192
7.7.7. Frequently Used Functions 194
7.8. Weather 197
7.9. Camera 201
7.9.1. Take Photos 201
7.9.2. Take a selfie 210
7.9.3. Shoot video 214
7.9.4. Camera Settings 217
7.10. Photos 219
7.10.1. Photos Overview 219
7.10.2. Albums 220
7.10.3. Stories / Memories 224
7.10.4. People 226

    - 7.10.5. View and use photos and videos 228
    - 7.10.6. Edit photos and videos 233
  - 7.11. Music 237
    - 7.11.1. Music 237
    - 7.11.2. Change sort mode 239
    - 7.11.3. Scan local songs 239
  - 7.12. Videos 240
  - 7.13. Theme Store 242
    - 7.13.1. Online phone theme 242
    - 7.13.2. Online wallpaper 244
    - 7.13.3. Manage your downloads 244
  - 7.14. Clock 246
    - 7.14.1. Set Alarm Clocks 246
    - 7.14.2. Add and view clocks for locations around the world 248
    - 7.14.3. Use the Stopwatch 251
    - 7.14.4. Set the timer 251
  - 7.15. Files 255
    - 7.15.1. File Manager 255
    - 7.15.2. Clean Up Storage 258
    - 7.15.3. Remotely Manage Phone Files 259
    - 7.15.4. Private Safe 260
  - 7.16. Calculator 262
  - 7.17. Sound Recording 265
    - 7.17.1. Recorder 265
    - 7.17.2. Manage recordings 267
  - 7.18. Compass 268
  - 7.19. Chrome 269
    - 7.19.1. Search the web 269
    - 7.19.2. Browse the web 272
  - 7.10 OPPO ID 273
- 8. Safety & Privacy 279
  - 8.1. Device security 279
    - 8.1.1. Lock Screen password 279
    - 8.1.2. Smart Lock 280
    - 8.1.3. Payment protection 281
    - 8.1.4. Set up a SIM card lock 283
    - 8.1.5. Virus Scan 283
    - 8.1.6. Pseudo Base Station Blocking 284
    - 8.1.7. Protect Personal Information 285
  - 8.2. Device administration 287
    - 8.2.1. Allow and install apps from unknown sources 287
    - 8.2.2. App permissions 287
    - 8.2.3. Hide Home Screen Icon 288
    - 8.2.4. Kids Space 290

8.2.5. Block unwanted calls and messages 291
8.2.6. Find my device....293
8.3. Privacy 296
8.3.1. Location Service 296
8.3.2. Join User Experience Project....298
8.3.3. Privacy Protecting and Security Warning 299
8.4. Advanced....300
8.4.1. Screen pinning....300
8.5. App Encryption....301
9. Share Internet connection and files 305
9.1.1. Tether your phone’s Internet connection....305
9.2. Share Files 308
9.2.1. Wireless file sharing 308
9.2.2. Wired file sharing 312
9.2.3. Share from apps 313
10. Restart, update, back up, and restore....314
10.1. Restart the phone....314
10.2. Update ColorOS software....315
10.3. Back up and restore the phone 317
10.3.1. Back up your phone 317
10.3.2. Restore data on your phone....319
10.3.3. Reset the phone 322
11. Barrier-free....323
11.1. TalkBack....323
11.2. Magnification Gestures 325
11.3. Press Power Button to End Call 326
12. Safety, handling, and support 327
12.1. Health & Safety 327
12.1.1. Using Environment....327
12.1.2. Battery Safety....328
12.1.3. Charger Usage Notes....329
12.1.4. Traffic Safety....330
12.2. Maintenance and Repair 330
12.2.1. Phone Cases 330
12.2.2. Screen Protector....331
12.2.3. Maximize battery life and lifespan 331
12.2.4. Keep Clean....332
12.2.5. Keep dry and solve water damage 332
12.2.6. Use connectors, ports, and buttons. 333
12.2.7. Other information 333
12.3. FCC Compliance Statement....334

1. Welcome to ColorOS 6.0

Welcome

2. Safety Information

Read through the following information carefully. Failure to follow these safety precautions could result in danger or illegal activities.

Safe Startup

Do not switch on the device when phone use is prohibited or when it may cause interference or danger.

Traffic Safety First

Traffic safety is always of first importance. Use of phones and headphones while driving a vehicle or riding a bicycle is not recommended and is illegal in some areas. Obey and follow all related local laws.

Switching off Device at Gas Stations

Turn off your phone when in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere, such as gas stations or any other fueling area. Sparks in such areas could cause an explosion or fire, resulting in serious injury or even death.

Switching off Device When On Board an Airplane

Wireless devices might be prohibited while in the air in some countries or regions. Obey all related local laws and turn off your phone or switch to airplane mode.

Switching off Device near Medical Equipment

Hospitals or healthcare facilities might use radio-frequency-sensitive equipment. Obey the relevant rules and regulations.

Switching off Device at Blasting Areas

To avoid interfering with blasting operations, turn off your phone when in a "blasting area" or in areas posted "Turn off two-way radio." Obey all signs and instructions.

Radiation

Nearly every electronic device gives off radiation. Mobile phone use does not increase the risk of getting brain cancer or other head tumors. Its effect in humans is negligible.

Interference

Nearly every electronic device is susceptible to interference for external sources if inadequately shielded or designed. As a result, your phone may cause interference with other devices.

Temperature

Operate your phone in a place where the temperature is always between 10℃ to 45℃. Using or storing your phone in a too hot or too cold environment might damage the battery, or even cause your phone to short-circuit or burn.

Proper Usage

Use your phone appropriately. Do not touch the antenna area unnecessarily when the phone is turned on. Do not drop, disassemble, crush, bend, deform, puncture, incinerate, or insert foreign objects into your phone.

Qualified Maintenance and Service

Never attempt to repair or modify the phone yourself. If your phone has any hardware or software failure, do not use it until you take it to an authorized service provider. Do not disassemble or root your phone yourself, otherwise the warranty service will be terminated immediately.

Batteries, Chargers and other Accessories

Do not dismantle the built-in lithium-ion battery of your device. Use only the batteries, chargers and other accessories authorized by OPPO, for third-party accessories might cause damage or danger.

Waterproofness

Your device is not waterproof. Do not use your device in rain, or other wet locations.

Avoiding Hearing Damage

Permanent hearing loss may occur if the receiver, speakerphone, headphones, or earpieces are used at high volume. You can adapt over time to a higher volume of sound that may sound normal but can be damaging to your hearing. Set the volume to a safe level to protect your hearing.

Avoiding Eyestrain

Your device's screen color and brightness might have a different degree of stimulation to your eyesight. Long-term viewing of your phone in normal or darker environments will damage your eyesight. When watching video or reading text on your phone, avoid prolonged use, take breaks and turn on eye protection mode to prevent eyestrain.

Glass Parts

The outside cover of your phone's screen, front/rear camera and flash is made of glass. This glass could break if your phone is dropped on a hard surface or receives a substantial impact. Do not attempt to touch or clean the broken glass. Stop using your phone until the glass is replaced by an authorized service provider.

Connecting to Other Devices

Before connecting to other devices, carefully read the user manual for more detailed, accurate and safety instructions. Do not connect to incompatible products.

Being Aware of Laser Safety

If your phone supports laser focusing, carefully read the user manual before using it. Failure to follow instructions might lead to harmful radiation exposure. To prevent direct exposure to laser beam, do not attempt to open your phone's outer shell, or avoid keeping close contact with laser light.

3. Get started

3.1. Quick Look

3.1.1. ColorOS 6.0 Features

New look, Best experience

Easy on the eyes. Smartest features as of yet. A new look. A more bold and intuitive icons to make browsing fun and exciting. Moving forward to greatness.

A more intuitive user interface

ColorOS 6.0 has been created with style in mind. Changing the entire look of the user interface has been one of the main upgrades so each feature, app, or function will have its own charm. You can have fun just by tinkering your OPPO phone. You will definitely notice a better looking Setting, Volume, Notification Bar, app icons, fonts for numbers on the dial pad and more!

New Fonts, Better spacing

We don't want you to miss or strain your eye when you are navigating or browsing the settings on the phone or when looking on your contacts. The fonts are bigger and there are enough space for each so your eyes won't miss

any detail.

Control Center

Easy to see its bigger icons. Added more colors to categorize each feature. It's a lot easier to look for the feature that you would want to enable and disable.

Notification Center

You may now hide those notifications just by choosing Unimportant Notifications so you will have a cleaner and spacious look on the screen.

Volume Setting Look

Changing volumes is now more intuitive with its bigger icon. Your finger easily fits to adjust volumes of ringtone, media, and alarm. It's also beside the volume buttons so it’s not that hard to miss.

Riding Mode

Safety is non-negotiable. We always make sure the wellbeing of our users either by driving motorcycle or when they do their favorite hobby like cycling. If this is enabled, incoming calls will be muted so you won’t be tempted to check your phone while on the road.

Home Screen Mode

You can now choose how you want your apps displayed on your Home Screen. You can choose between Standard mode and drawer mode.

Static and Live Wallpapers

Amazing Wallpapers to choose from. More than the Static Wallpaper which has variations of sophistication. You can also choose to have a Live Wallpaper running on the background.

VOOC 3.0

Charge in a flash. It's faster and dependable.

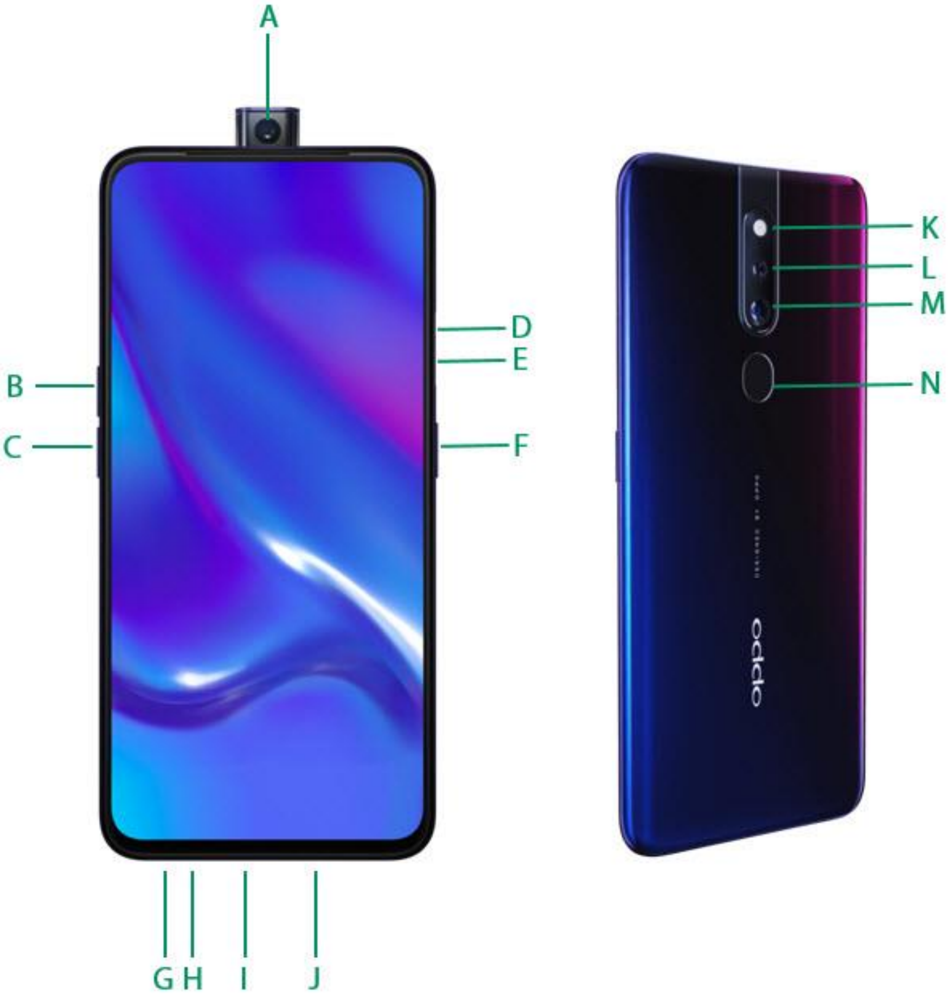
Hyper Boost

Best gaming experience. More stable but at the same time helps you save power as well.

ColorOS 6.0 is compatible with these devices

Model
Reno Series, F11 Pro, F11, A1k **Note:** Not all devices are released in all countries or regions.

Buttons and components



Features	
A.	Front rising camera
B.	Volume up button

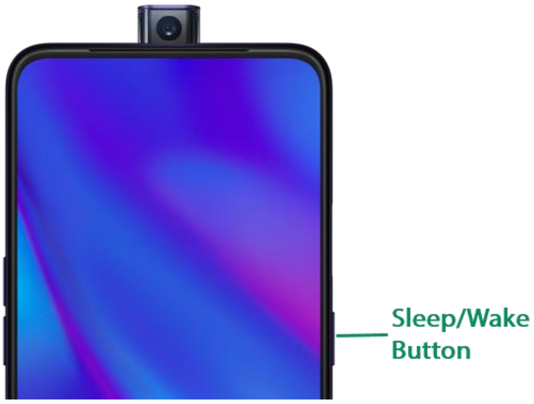
C.	Volume down button
D.	SIM tray hole
E.	SIM card tray
F.	Sleep/Wake button Rear camera
G.	Headset jack
H.	Microphone
I.	Micro-USB port
J.	Speaker
K.	Flashlight
L.	Rear sub camera
M.	Rear main camera
N.	Fingerprint

Functions for buttons and combination keys

To learn more features, see Quick Look at OPPO phone.

3.1.2. Sleep/Wake Button

The **Wake/Sleep** button on the right side of your phone has a number of different uses.



When the phone is on

Wake or lock the screen: With the phone is powered on, press the **Wake/Sleep** button once and it will wake the phone up to the point that you can see the Lock Screen, like the clock and any notifications that are setup to display there. When the phone screen is awakened, pressing this button will blacken the screen and lock the phone.

Take a screenshot: Press and hold the **Sleep/Wake** and **Volume Down** buttons at the same time and your phone will take a picture of whatever is displayed on the screen. Tap the screenshot, and then choose to a take a long screenshot, send, edit or delete the screenshot. If you save the screenshot, you can view it on Photos.

End a call: Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Accessibility]** and turn on **[Power Button Ends Call]**, then you can press the **Sleep/Wake** button to end phone calls.

Turn off the phone: Press and hold the **Sleep/Wake** button for a few seconds, whether the phone is on the Lock Screen or Home Screen, it will ask you to slide down to power off the device.

Force restart the phone: Press and hold the **Sleep/Wake** and **Volume Up** buttons for about 10 to 12 seconds until your device is turned on. View force restart your phone.

Wake up Google Assistant (Siri): Press and hold the **Sleep/Wake** and **Volume Up** buttons for about 0.5 seconds to wake up Google Assistance. View Waking Up Google Assistant.

When the phone is off

Turn on the phone: Press and hold the **Sleep/Wake** button for a few seconds until you see the OPPO logo.

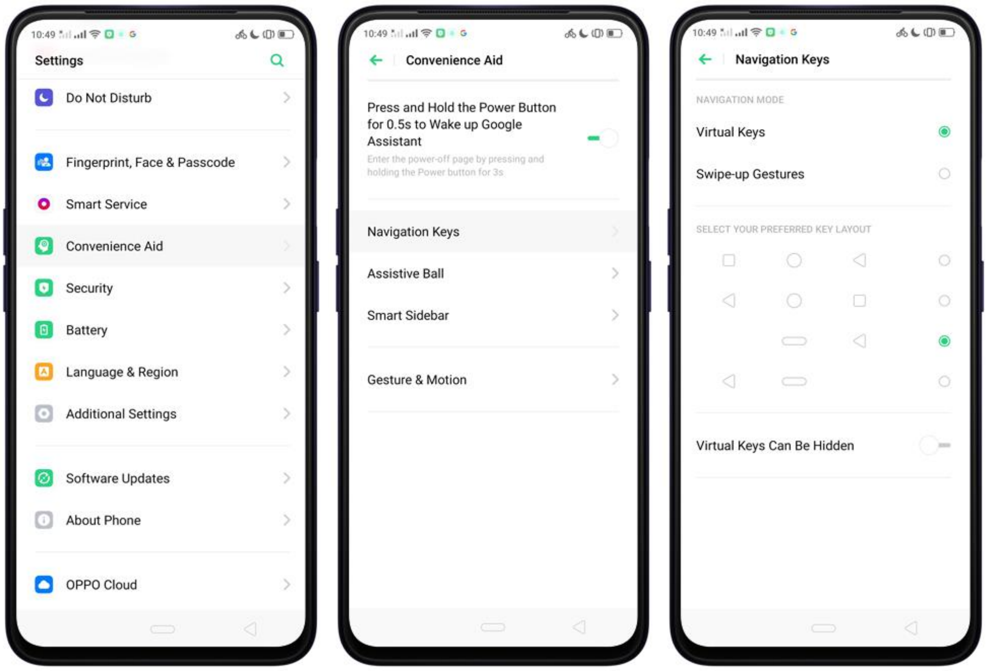
Force Restart the phone: Press and hold the **Sleep/Wake** and **Volume Up** buttons until your device is turned on. View force restart your phone.

Enter Recovery Mode: Press and hold the **Sleep/Wake** and **Volume Down** buttons at the same time to enter Recovery Mode.

3.1.3. Menu, Home, and Return Buttons

An upgrade with the on-screen virtual navigation keys which also offers fast and fluid gestures to operate your phone. You can change the order of the virtual keys, and set them to appear only when needed to free space on the screen.

Enable virtual navigation keys. Virtual navigation keys are default on. If you want to enable them manually, go to **[Settings]** > **[Convenience Aid]** > **[Navigation Keys]** and tap **Virtual Keys.**


10:49
Settings
Do Not Disturb
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart Service
Convenience Aid
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings
Software Updates
About Phone
OPPO Cloud
10:49
Convenience Aid
Navigation Keys
Assistive Ball
Smart Sidebar
Gesture & Motion
10:49
Navigation Keys
NAVIGATION MODE
SELECT YOUR PREFERRED KEY LAYOUT

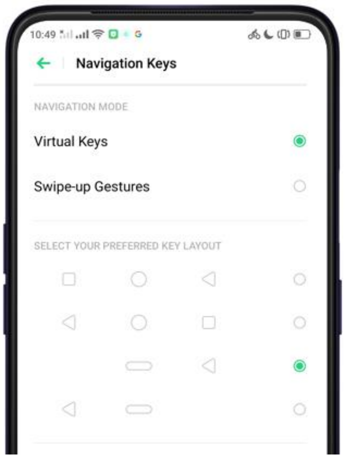
Press and Hold the Power Button for 0.5s to Wake up Google Assistant
Enter the power-off page by pressing and holding the Power button for 3s

Virtual Keys ●

Swipe-up Gestures ○

Virtual Keys Can Be Hidden

Change the order of virtual navigation keys. The keys follow the typical order for OPPO: Recent, Home, and Return from left to right. If you are left-handed, you can change them to the Return-Home-Recent order.


10:49

Navigation Keys

NAVIGATION MODE

Virtual Keys ●

Swipe-up Gestures ○

SELECT YOUR PREFERRED KEY LAYOUT

□ ○ ◁ ○

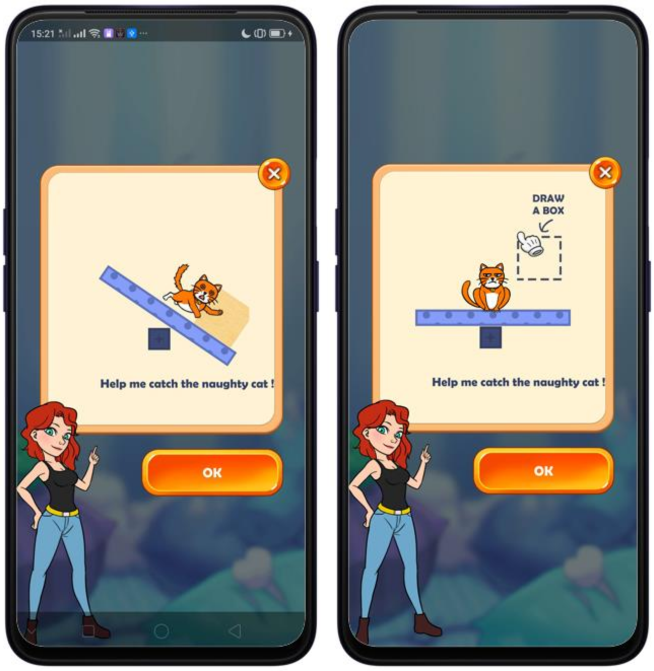
◁ ○ □ ○

▭ ◁ ●

◁ ▭ ○

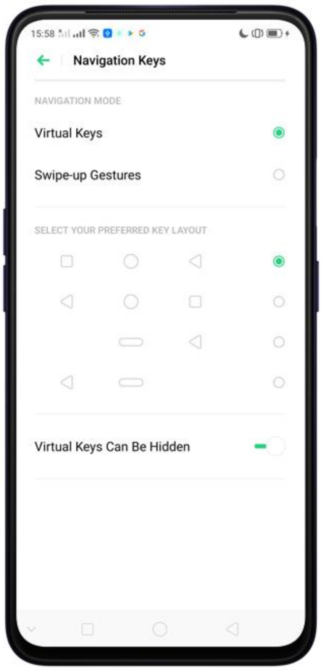
Hide the virtual navigation keys. When you launch a full-screen app, the keys will be hidden when you tap ⌄ , and can be brought back with a simple swipe:

- When in portrait mode, swipe up from the bottom.
- When in landscape mode, swipe from the bottom to the left.


15:21
Help me catch the naughty cat !
OK
DRAW A BOX
Help me catch the naughty cat !
OK

Downloading: 0M / 19M
677.18 KB/s
Estimate: 02
Please do not turn off your device during update
Downloading: 7M / 19M
280.76 KB/s
Estimate: 0:46
Please do not turn off your device during update

Manually hide the virtual navigation keys. To set the keys to appear only when needed, go to **[Settings]** > **[Convenience Aid]** > **[Navigation Keys]** and enable Virtual Navigation Keys Can Be Hidden. Then you can tap ∨ on the left-lower corner of the screen to hide the keys, and swipe from the bottom to reveal them.


Navigation Keys

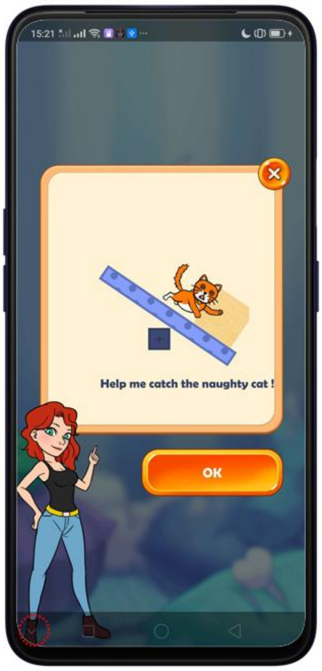
NAVIGATION MODE

Virtual Keys ●

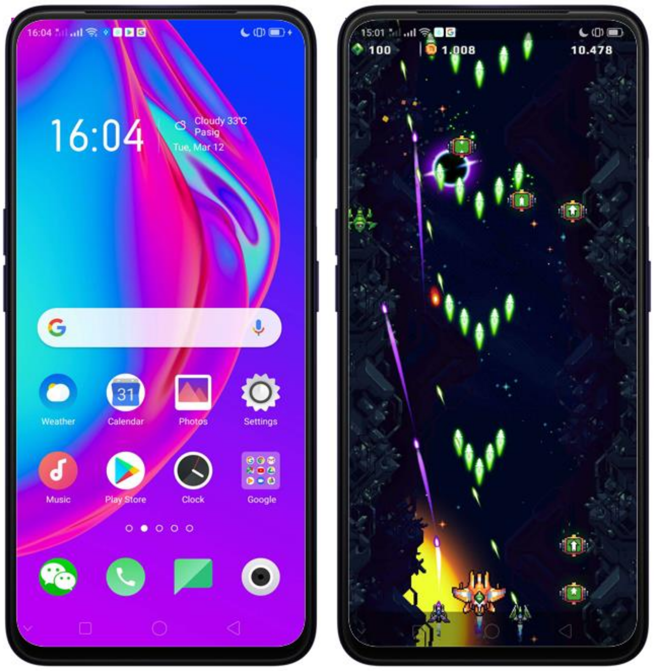
Swipe-up Gestures ○

SELECT YOUR PREFERRED KEY LAYOUT

Virtual Keys Can Be Hidden

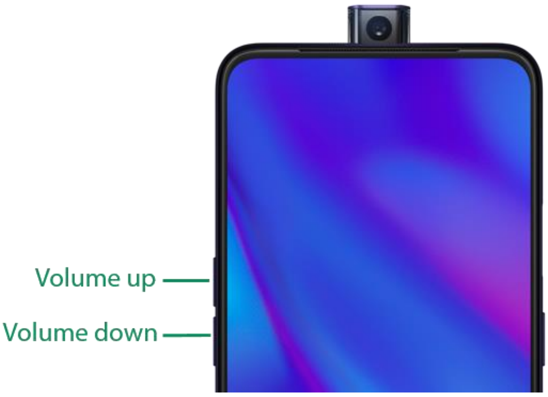

Help me catch the naughty cat !
OK

Immersive navigation background. The system set multiple colors for the navigation background to match the color scheme of the popular apps. The background color is default white, and it will become translucent or immersive when you open some of the third-party apps.


16:04
Cloudy 33°C
Pasig
Tue, Mar 12
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Music
Play Store
Clock
Google
100
1.008
10.478

3.1.4. Volume Buttons

Volume buttons give you easy access to adapt over time to a proper volume of sound. It refers not simply ringer or media, the phone also keeps track of the volume level separately in headphone, microphone, and speaker.


Volume up
Volume down

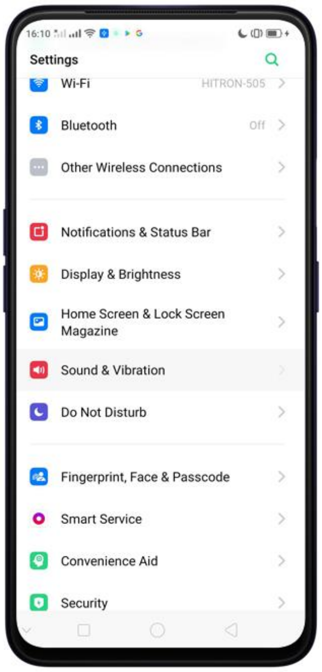
Media volume: When listening to music, videos and phone calls, use the buttons on the side of the phone to adjust the volume. For information about avoiding hearing loss, see Security Information.

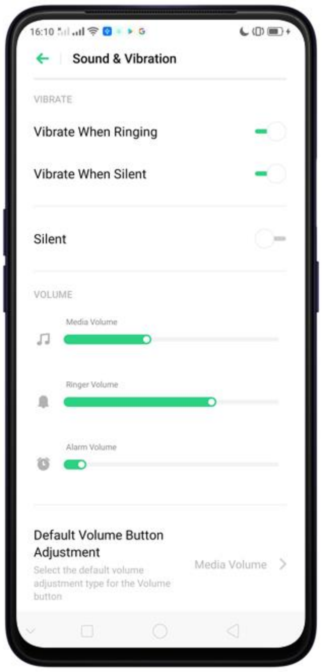
Ringer volume: Use the Volume buttons to control the volume for the ringer and alerts. When you press and hold the **Volume down** button, your phone will switch to silent mode.

Alarm volume: Use the Volume buttons to set the volume for alarm. The alarm still plays a sound when the phone is in silent mode.

Call volume: When making or receiving phone calls, use the volume buttons to adjust the volume of the call.

* You can also adjust the volume (except call volume) in **[Settings]** > **[Sound & Vibration]**.


16:10
Settings
Wi-Fi
HITRON-505
Bluetooth
Off
Other Wireless Connections
Notifications & Status Bar
Display & Brightness
Home Screen & Lock Screen Magazine
Sound & Vibration
Do Not Disturb
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart Service
Convenience Aid
Security


16:10
Sound & Vibration
VIBRATE
VOLUME
Media Volume
Ringer Volume
Alarm Volume

Vibrate When Ringing ●

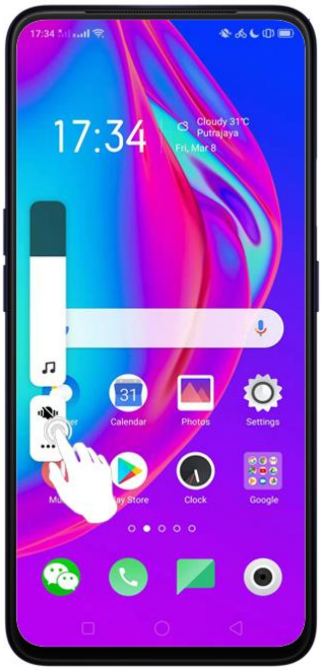
Vibrate When Silent ●

Silent ○

Default Volume Button Adjustment: Media Volume

Select the default volume adjustment type for the Volume button

* You can also adjust it on your phone screen. See New Volume Button Settings


17:34
Cloudy 31°C
Putrajaya
Fri, Mar 8
31
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Clock
Google

Controlling the camera: Volume buttons can also be used to control your camera. Go to **[Settings]** > [**System Apps**] > **[Camera]** > **[Volume Button]** and set up the volume buttons for Shutter or Zoom.

3.1.5. Micro-USB Port

Micro-USB port is the connector on the bottom of your device where your battery charger connects. It also doubles as the data port, which lets you transfer data to and from a personal computer or other USB devices. Plug the cable in the port to charge or transfer data.

Notice:

1. Repeated connecting and disconnecting of your cable can cause the port to wear out, resulting in a poor connection to your cable.

2. Never force a connector into the port, for that might cause damage.

3.1.6. Headset Jack

The headset jack is an audio socket that accepts a 3.5mm audio plug. Plug your headset in the jack to listen to music, videos and phone calls. Do not force a mismatched headset into the jack for that might cause damage.

3.1.7. SIM and SD Cards

SIM card

* Insert the SIM card before turning on your phone. If you hold a new SIM card, you might need to wait until it is activated by the carrier before you can use it.

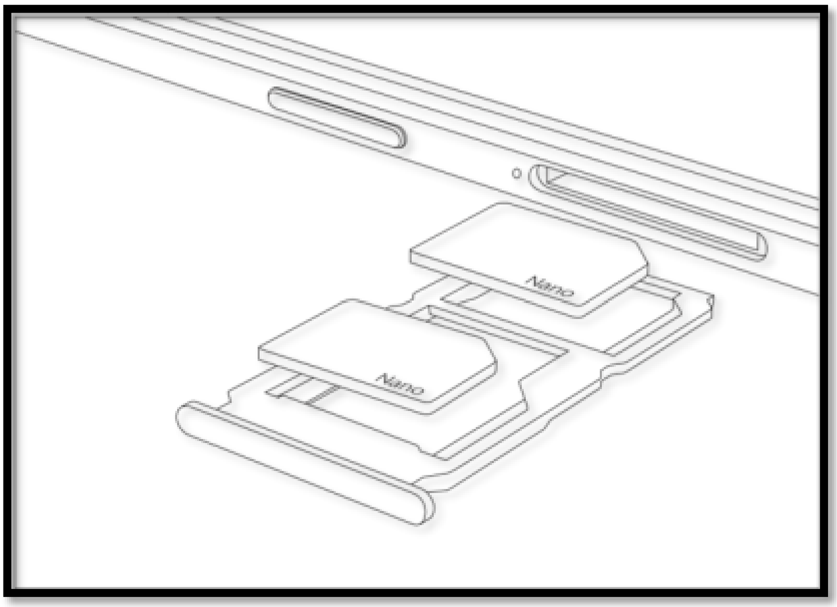
A SIM card is provided by your carrier and is used to activate your phone's mobile network. Because it has a small amount of memory, the SIM card not only enables communications between two persons but stores information such as phone numbers, security data and more. When using the mobile network, you need to pay charges. To avoid high charges, you can shop data plans with your carrier, or shop international data roaming plans when traveling abroad.

Insert the SIM card: Most OPPO Smartphones support Dual SIM. You can choose to insert one or two.

1. Insert the card needle into the hole outside the card tray to pop it open.

2. Pull out the card tray and place SIM card(s) on it.

3. Put the card tray back in as the same orientation that you removed it.



Remove the SIM card: Remove the card(s) in the same way that you insert it (them).

SD card

The SD card is a way to store and transfer images, music, video, and other data. You can insert a SD card in your phone to expand phone's memory.

SIM1, SIM2 and SD cards share the same card tray. Insert your SD card in the same way that you insert the SIM card(s).

3.1.8. Accessories that Came with OPPO Phone

Along with the handset, the accessories came with are headset, USB Connecting cable, Power adapter, SIM card tool, and Phone case.

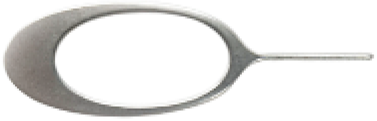
Notice： All photos shown are for illustration purpose ONLY. Actual products may vary due to product enhancement.

Headset: A standard headset with 3.5 mm headset plug. Use to listen to music, videos, and phone calls. Use the built-in microphone to talk. When playing the music or videos, tap the button once to pause or play a song or video.

USB Connecting cable: Use the cable to connect your phone to the computer to charge and transfer files, or use it with the power adapter to charge.

Power adapter: Connect the power adapter to your phone using the included cable, then plug it into a standard power outlet to charge the phone.

SIM card tool: Use to pop out the SIM card tray.

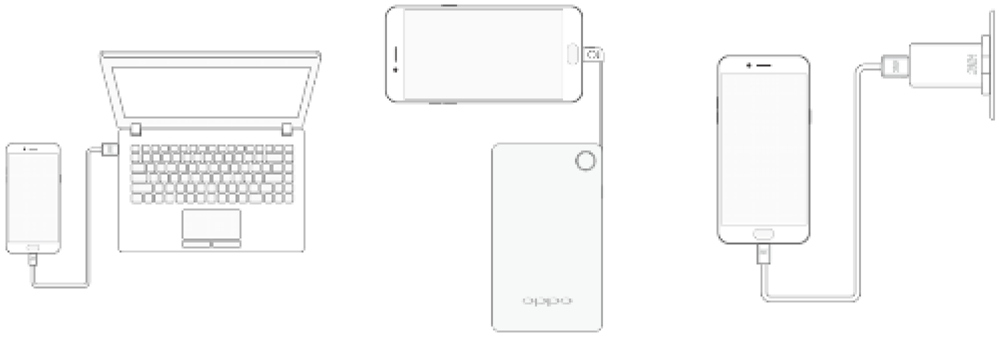


Phone Case: Use to protect against drops and shock damage on the corners and rear of your phone.

Note： All photos shown are for illustration purpose ONLY. Actual products may vary due to product enhancement.

3.1.9. Charging the Battery

How to charge the battery:



Note： All photos shown are for illustration purpose ONLY. Actual products may vary due to product enhancement.

Charge with the jack: Connect adapter to your phone using the USB cable, then plug it into a standard power outlet to charge the phone.

Connect to a computer to charge: Use the cable to connect your phone to the computer to charge. Your phone will charge slowly if you connect it to the computer.

Charge with Power Bank: Connect Power Bank to your phone, and your phone will be charged wherever you go. It is an absolute necessity if you are a frequent traveler.

Charging Notice:

1. Charge the phone with the original charging accessories (including adapter, cable and power bank).

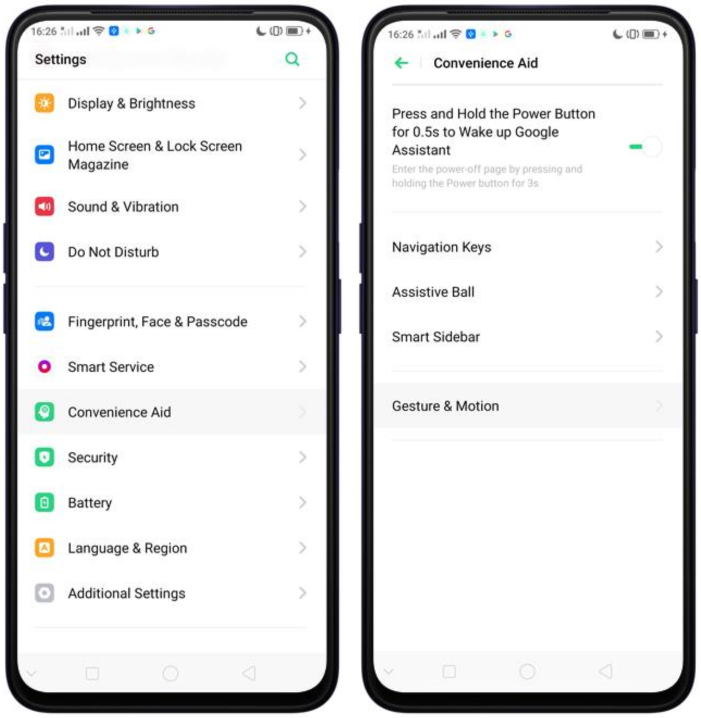
2. It is recommended to charge your phone in a place where the temperature is between 15° C to 40° C. Extreme ambient temperatures will affect flash charging system.

3.1.10.Gesture & Motion

Gestures

OPPO smartphone is designed to understand gestures. You can use gestures such as tap, draw, and slide to operate on your phone.

To set up complex gestures for specific functions, go to **[Settings]** > **[Convenience Aid]** > **[Gesture & Motion]**


16:26
Settings
Display & Brightness
Home Screen & Lock Screen Magazine
Sound & Vibration
Do Not Disturb
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart Service
Convenience Aid
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings
16:26
Convenience Aid
Press and Hold the Power Button for 0.5s to Wake up Google Assistant
Enter the power-off page by pressing and holding the Power button for 3s
Navigation Keys
Assistive Ball
Smart Sidebar
Gesture & Motion

Screen-off Gestures

To set up screen-off gestures, you need to turn it on first.

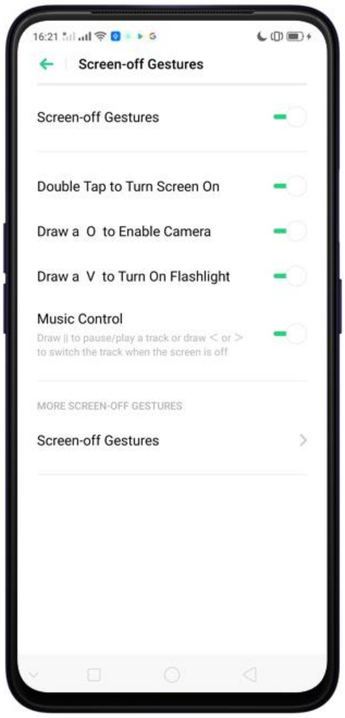
Double tap to turn screen on: Turn it on to wake up your locked screen by double-tapping the screen.

Draw O to start camera: When turn it on, you can draw O on the locked screen to open Camera app.

Draw V to open torchlight: When turn it on, you can draw V on the locked screen to open the torchlight.

Music control: When turn it on, you can draw || to pause/play a track, or draw < or > to switch the track when the screen is off.

Add more screen-off gestures: You can **Draw ^, Slide up, Slide down, Slide left, Slide right, Draw M and Draw W**. Choose one to unlock the phone, call someone or start an app.



16:21

Screen-off Gestures

Screen-off Gestures

Double Tap to Turn Screen On

Draw a O to Enable Camera

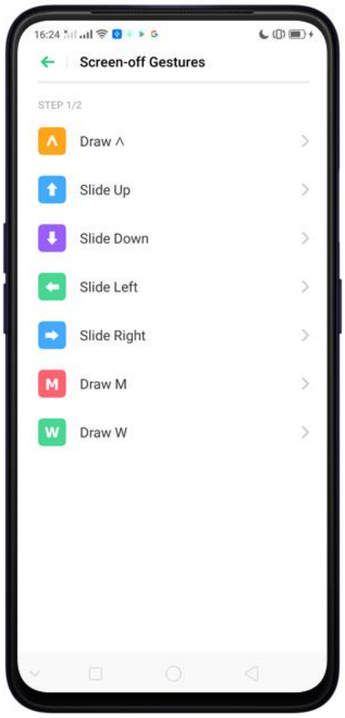
Draw a V to Turn On Flashlight

Music Control

Draw || to pause/play a track or draw < or > to switch the track when the screen is off

MORE SCREEN-OFF GESTURES

Screen-off Gestures



16:24

Screen-off Gestures

STEP 1/2

Draw ^

Slide Up

Slide Down

Slide Left

Slide Right

Draw M

Draw W

3-Finger Gesture

Take a screenshot. Swipe down the screen with three fingers.

Use Split-screen. Under the interface of an app, swipe up the screen with three fingers to enter split-screen mode.

18:03
Moderate rain 29°C Putra...
Thu, Mar 7
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Music
Play Store
Clock
Google

Motion

The motion-sensing technology makes your phone response to motion.

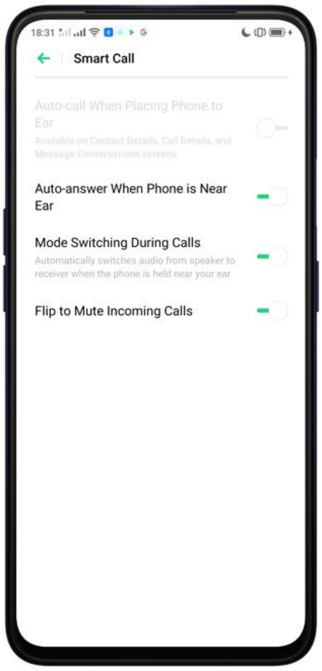
Smart call

Auto call when placing to the ear: Before you can use auto call, you need to set the default SIM card for calling. Go to a contact detail, call detail, message conversation or info interface, put the phone near your ear and your phone will automatically call that specific person.

Auto answer when phone near the ear: This function lets your phone to answer any incoming calls automatically when putting the phone near your ear.

Mode Switching during calls: Use it to automatically switch from speaker to receiver when you put the phone near your ear during phone calls.

Flip to mute incoming calls: Use it to silence the ringer by turning the phone over on a table or other flat surfaces.



Smart Call

Auto-call When Placing Phone to Ear
Available on Contact Details, Call Details, and Message Conversations screens.

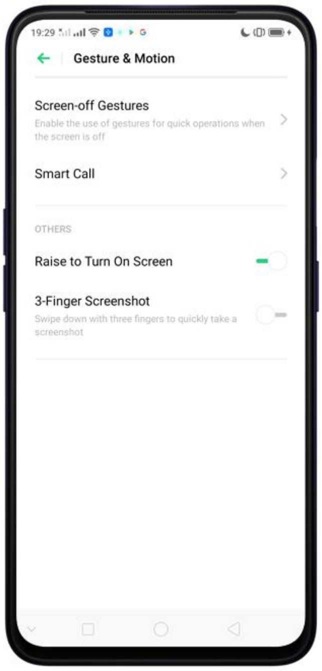
Auto-answer When Phone is Near Ear

Mode Switching During Calls
Automatically switches audio from speaker to receiver when the phone is held near your ear

Flip to Mute Incoming Calls

Raise to turn on Screen

Screen will automatically turn on without waking it up just by merely raising the phone.



Gesture & Motion

Screen-off Gestures
Enable the use of gestures for quick operations when the screen is off

Smart Call

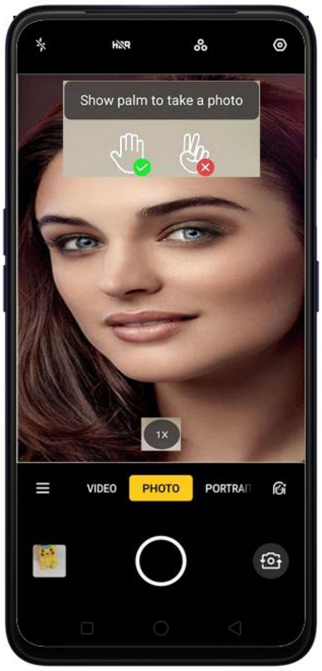
OTHERS

Raise to Turn On Screen

3-Finger Screenshot
Swipe down with three fingers to quickly take a screenshot

Take selfies

Open Camera app and switch to the front camera. Use hand gesture towards the camera, once the camera captures that, it will take a photo automatically after two seconds. You can change your pose and expression within this two seconds.

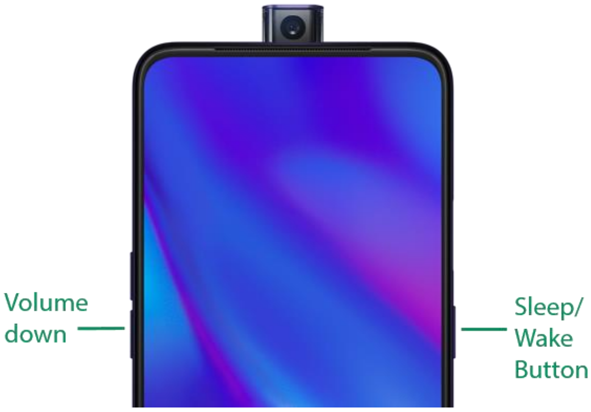


3.1.11.Key Combinations

Generally, you can use two buttons of your phone to generate a specific result. The common key combinations include:

When phone is on

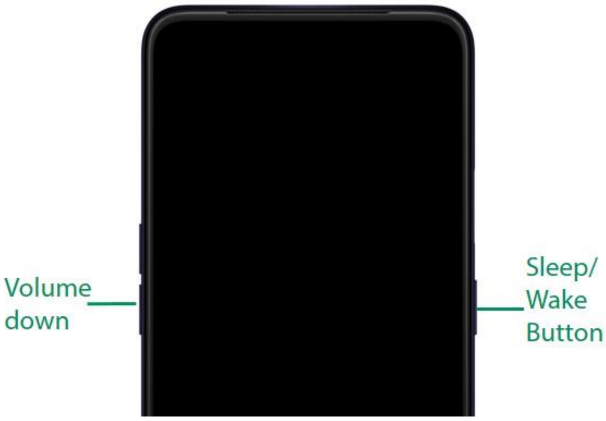
Press and hold the Power and Volume Down buttons: Your phone will take a screenshot for the current page. To take a long screenshot, tap the screenshot, then tap Longshot.


Volume
down
Sleep/
Wake
Button

Press and hold the Power and Volume Up buttons: If the phone isn't responding, press and hold the button combination for at least eight seconds to force restart your phone.

When phone is off

Press and hold the Power and Volume Down buttons: Phone will enter Recovery Mode, which helps to update the system, wipe data, and check disk and more.


Volume
down
Sleep/
Wake
Button

Press and hold the Power and Volume Up buttons: Phone will be force restarted. Press and hold the two buttons until your phone is turned on.

3.1.12.Status Icons

The icons in the status bar at the top of the screen give information about your OPPO smartphone:

Status icon		What it means
📶	**Mobile network signal**	Shows whether you're in range of operator's network and can make and receive calls. The more bars, the stronger the signal.
✈	**Airplane Mode**	Shows that airplane mode is on. Phone's wireless communication abilities are disabled.
4G / 4G^{+}	**LTE/ LTE – A**	4G network is available, including LTE and LTE-A. Your phone can connect to the Internet over that network.
3G/H^{+}	**UMTS/WCDMA**	3G UMTS network is available. Your phone can connect to the Internet over that network.
E	**EDGE /GSM**	EDGE (GSM) network is available. Your phone can connect to the Internet over that network.
🛜	**Wi-Fi**	Shows that your phone is connected to a Wi-Fi network. The more bars, the stronger the signal. See Connect to Wi-Fi.
📞	**Call Forwarding**	Call forwarding is turned on.
VPN	**VPN**	You're connected to a network using VPN.
☾	**Quiet Time**	Quiet Time is turned on.
🔒	**Portrait orientation lock**	Phone screen is locked in portrait orientation.
⏰	**Alarm**	An alarm is set up on your phone.
ᛒ	**Bluetooth**	Bluetooth is on, or your phone is connected to a Bluetooth device.

	Bluetooth	Bluetooth Tethering is on.
	Silent	Silent Mode is on.
	Vibrate when silent	Phone vibrates when Silent mode is on.
HD	**HD Voice**	Your phone is on a voice call over VoLTE.
	Wireless Display	Wireless projector is connected.
	Location Service	Location Service is on.
	No service	Your phone has no signal.
	Power Saving	Power Saving Mode is on.
LOGG -ING	**LOGG-ING**	Get a log for testing
	Message	**Message notification**
Vo LTE	**Voice over LTE**	Your operator's VoLTE service is available. HD Voice works to make your calls.
	Game acceleration	Optimize the game display configuration to fully utilize hardware resource
	International Roaming	Your phone is using International Data Roaming.
	Kids space	Addiction prevention
	Payment protection	Payment environment detection

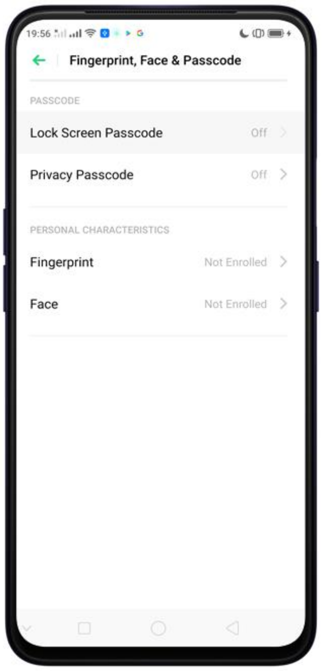
3.2. Configuration Settings

3.2.1. Fingerprint, Face and Passcode

Setting a lockscreen passcode, privacy passcode, and face ID on your device are security measures that all users should take. Follow these steps to set a passcode that will be needed to unlock your phone and access the information stored on it.

Use a Lock Screen passcode on your OPPO phone

Set the Lock Screen Passcode
1. Go to **[Settings]** > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**], enter [**Lock Screen Passcode**], tap [**Turn on Passcode**].
2. You'll be prompted to enter a 6-digit numeric code. If you want to use other passcode types, Tap **Other Encryption Methods.**



Fingerprint, Face & Passcode

PASSCODE

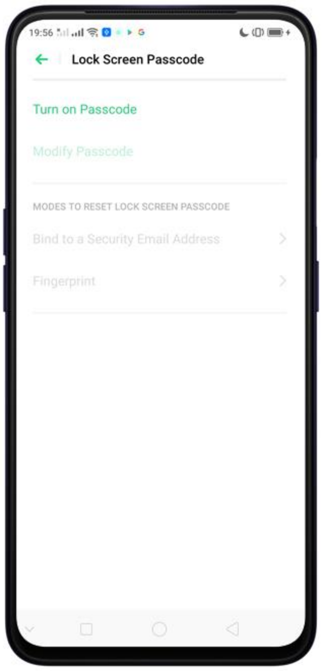
Lock Screen Passcode Off

Privacy Passcode Off

PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS

Fingerprint Not Enrolled

Face Not Enrolled



Lock Screen Passcode

Turn on Passcode

Modify Passcode

MODES TO RESET LOCK SCREEN PASSCODE

Bind to a Security Email Address

Fingerprint

3. Choose from four types of passcodes:

- **Pattern Code**: Allows you to draw a pattern with at least four dots connected.
- **4-Digit Numeric Passcode:** Allows you to set a numbers-only passcode that contains four characters.
- **4-16 Digit Numeric Passcode:** Allows you to set a numbers-only passcode that contains four to sixteen characters.
- **4-16 Digit Alphanumeric Passcode:** Allows you to set a passcode that contains four to sixteen numbers and/or letters as your preference.

4. Draw your pattern or enter your passcode.

5. Re-draw or re-enter your pattern or passcode to confirm it and activate it.

Change the passcode

1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Fingerprint, Face & Passcode]**, enter your passcode then tap [**Modify Passcode**].

2. Draw or enter your current pattern or passcode.
Draw or enter your new pattern or passcode. If you want to use other passcode types, tap **Other Encryption Methods** at the bottom of the screen.
Re-draw or re-enter your pattern or passcode to confirm it and activate it.

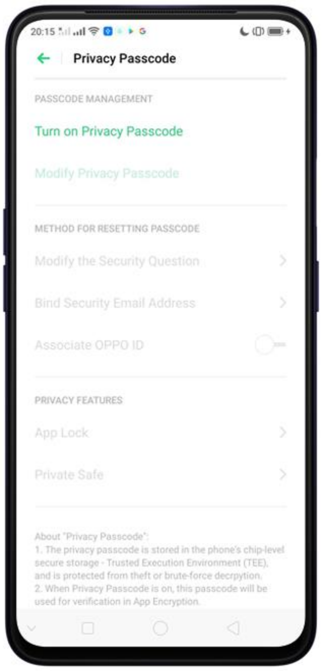
Turn off the passcode

1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**], enter your passcode then tap [**Disable Passcode**].
2. Draw or enter your current pattern or passcode to confirm.
View more details in Set and use a passcode with your OPPO smartphone.

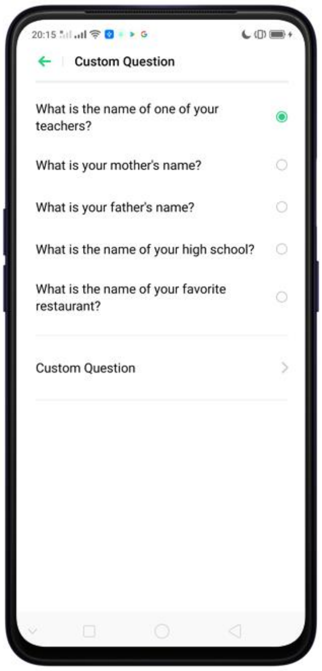
Privacy Passcode

When this is turned on, the validation will be used for all privacy features such as App Lock and Private Safe.

1. Manage Privacy Passcode: Go to [**Settings**] > **[Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**] > [**Privacy Passcode**] then tap **Turn on Privacy Passcode** create an encryption code, then set or customize a security question, then tap **Done**.
Note: The security question can be used to reset the passcode.


20:15
Privacy Passcode
PASSCODE MANAGEMENT
Turn on Privacy Passcode
Modify Privacy Passcode
METHOD FOR RESETTING PASSCODE
Modify the Security Question
Bind Security Email Address
Associate OPPO ID
PRIVACY FEATURES
App Lock
Private Safe

About "Privacy Passcode":
1. The privacy passcode is stored in the phone's chip-level secure storage - Trusted Execution Environment (TEE), and is protected from theft or brute-force decrpytion.
2. When Privacy Passcode is on, this passcode will be used for verification in App Encryption.

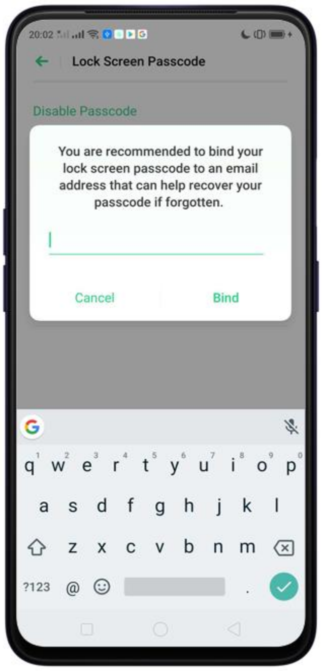

20:15
Custom Question
What is the name of one of your teachers? ●
What is your mother's name? ○
What is your father's name? ○
What is the name of your high school? ○
What is the name of your favorite restaurant? ○
Custom Question

2. Change or turn off privacy passcodes: Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**] > [**Privacy Passcode**] enter the encryption code then tap [**Turn off Privacy Passcode**] or [**Modify Privacy Passcode**].

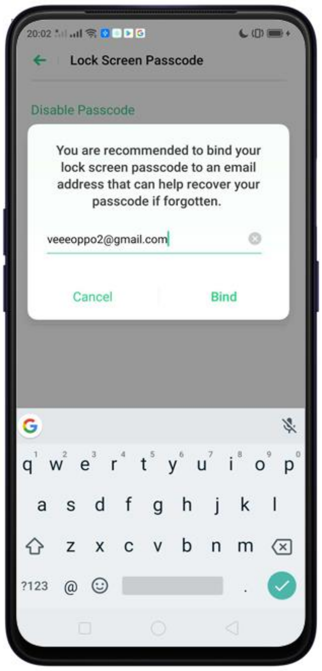
3. Modify the security questions: Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**] > [**Privacy Passcode**] enter the encryption code tap [**Modify the Security Questions**] enter the encryption code again then set or customize a new security question, tap **Done**.

4. Bind security email address: The email used will be able to retrieve the privacy passcode: Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**] > [**Privacy Passcode**] enter the encryption code tap [**Bind Security Email Address**] enter the encryption code again then enter email address, tap **Use**.

5. Update bind security email address: Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**] enter the encryption code tap [**Bind Security Email Address**] tap **Change Email Address** then enter the encryption code again, enter the new email address, tap **Use**.



You are recommended to bind your lock screen passcode to an email address that can help recover your passcode if forgotten.



You are recommended to bind your lock screen passcode to an email address that can help recover your passcode if forgotten.

veeeoppo2@gmail.com

Associate OPPO ID

1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**] > [**Privacy Passcode**] enter the encryption code toggle [**Associate OPPO ID**] Register or Sign in with your OPPO ID credentials. See OPPO ID

2. App Lock: Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode** > [**Privacy Passcode**] enter the encryption code tap [App Encryption] select the apps to be encrypted then press **Enable Encryption**. Once it is encrypted, you will see a padlock symbol on the app that has been encrypted. Also, see App Lock.

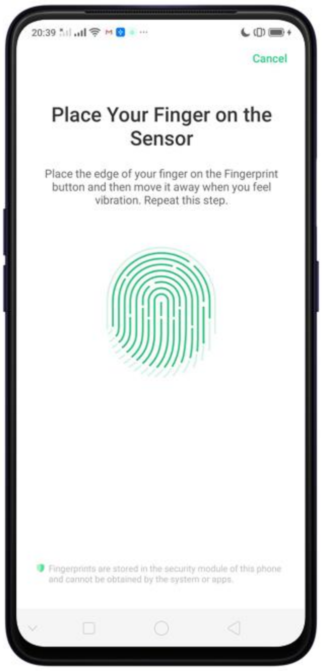
Note: You have to enter an encrypted passcode and a security question before you can use the other functions on Privacy Passcode.

Use a fingerprint on your OPPO phone

Before you can add a fingerprint, you need to create a passcode for your OPPO phone. You can use fingerprints for:

Unlocking the phone from the Lock Screen.

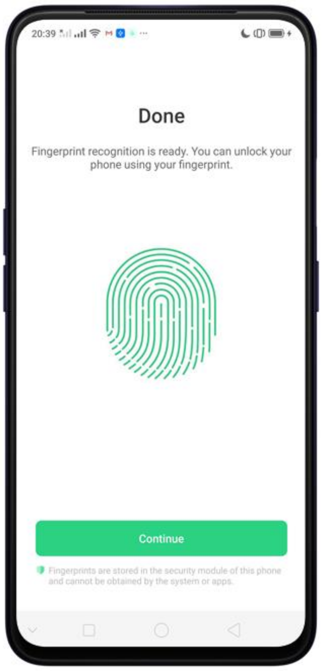
1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**], tap [**Add a Fingerprint**].
2. Follow the on-screen instructions, placing your finger gently on the Home button until your fingerprint is recorded.



Place Your Finger on the Sensor

Place the edge of your finger on the Fingerprint button and then move it away when you feel vibration. Repeat this step.

Fingerprints are stored in the security module of this phone and cannot be obtained by the system or apps.



Done

Fingerprint recognition is ready. You can unlock your phone using your fingerprint.

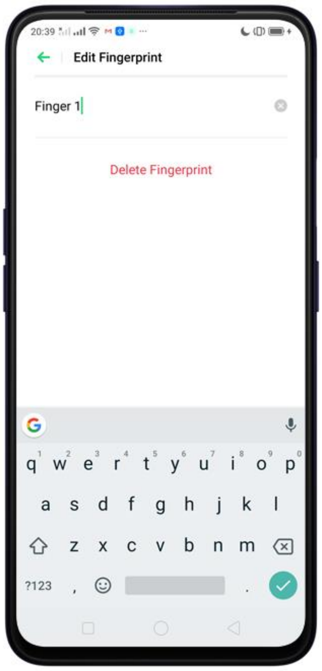
Fingerprints are stored in the security module of this phone and cannot be obtained by the system or apps.

Repeat steps 1 and 2 for as many fingers as you like.

Delete or Rename a fingerprint

1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**], tap the fingerprint you've added.

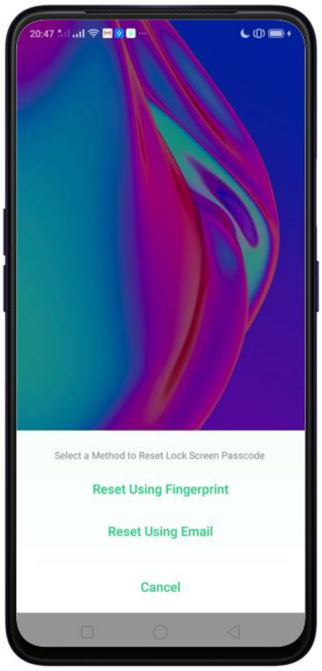
2. Enter a name for your fingerprint or tap [**Delete Fingerprint**].


20:39
Edit Fingerprint
Delete Fingerprint
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
?123

Finger 1

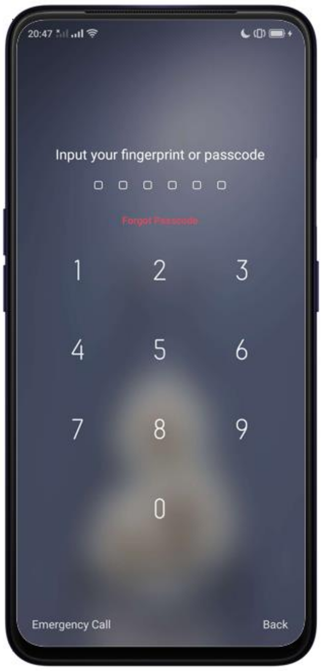
Reset Passcode methods

When you forgot your Lock Screen passcode, there are two ways you can recover it.

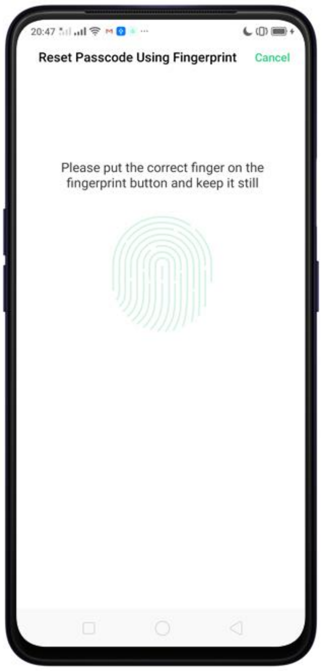

20:47
Reset Using Fingerprint
Reset Using Email
Cancel

Select a Method to Reset Lock Screen Passcode

1. **Reset Using Fingerprint.** Just tap on Forgot Passcode at anytime, and put the correct finger on the fingerprint button. Note: You must have enrolled a fingerprint to use this method.



Input your fingerprint or passcode



Reset Passcode Using Fingerprint

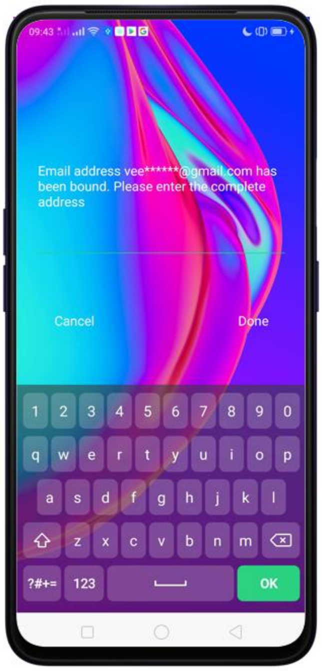
Please put the correct finger on the fingerprint button and keep it still

Place your finger on the fingerprint sensor, then enter your new passcode and confirm it.

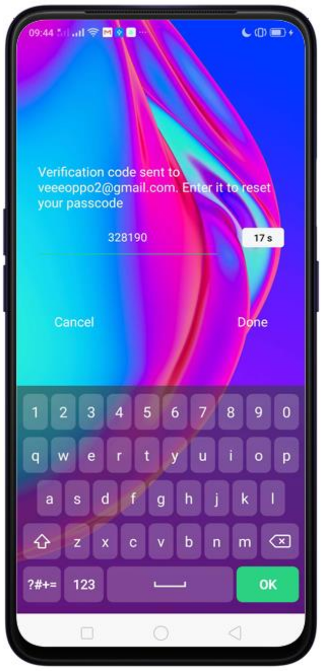
2. **Reset Using Email.** When you have forgotten your lockscreen passcode and you also haven't enrolled face recognition or for some reason, it did not work, you can still reset the password as long as you have bounded your security email address at the initial phase of password creation. See bind security email address.

How to reset password using bind email:

1.Enter the email address that you have bounded on the phone, then enter the verification code that was sent thru your email, tap **Done**. Now you can set a new lockscreen passcode for your phone.



Email address vee******@gmail.com has been bound. Please enter the complete address



Verification code sent to veeeoppo2@gmail.com. Enter it to reset your passcode

328190

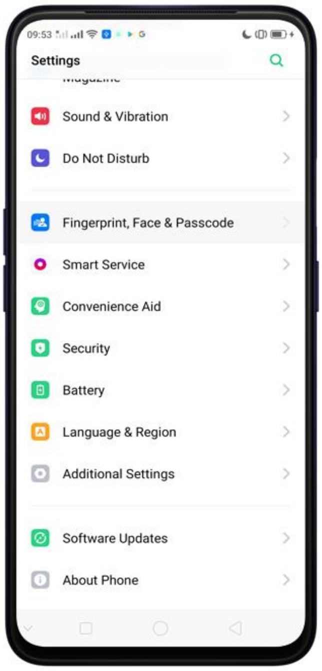
Enroll a Face on your OPPO phone

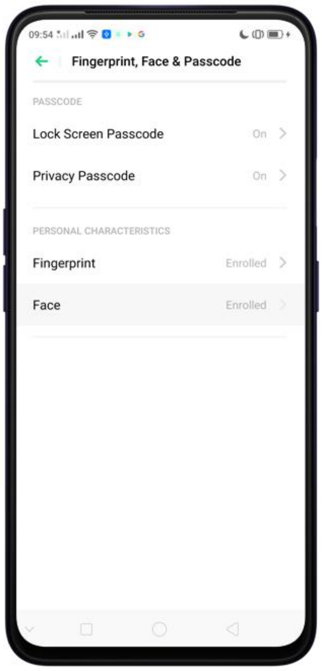
Before you can add a face you need to create a passcode for your OPPO phone. You can use face for:

- Unlocking the phone from the Lock Screen.
- Encrypting apps
- Protecting files

Enroll a face

1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**], tap [**Face**].


09:53
Settings
Magazine
Sound & Vibration
Do Not Disturb
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart Service
Convenience Aid
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings
Software Updates
About Phone

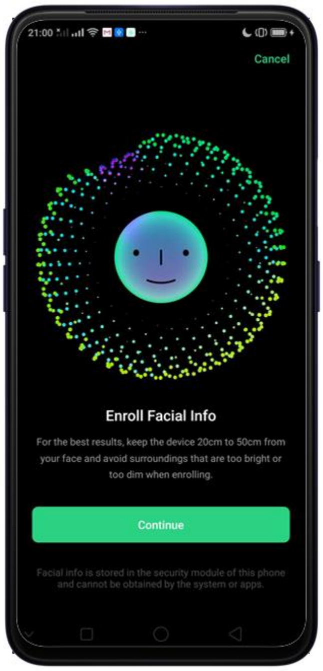

09:54
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
PASSCODE
PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS

Lock Screen Passcode On

Privacy Passcode On

Fingerprint Enrolled

Face Enrolled

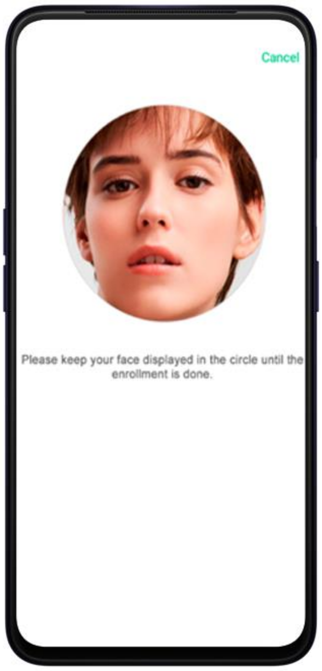

21:00
Cancel
Continue

Enroll Facial Info

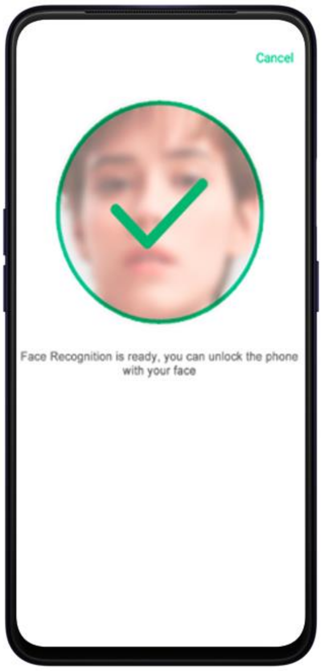
For the best results, keep the device 20cm to 50cm from your face and avoid surroundings that are too bright or too dim when enrolling.

Facial info is stored in the security module of this phone and cannot be obtained by the system or apps.

2. Follow the on-screen instructions. To get the ideal effect, keep the phone 20-50cm away from your face and position your whole face in the circle until the enrollment is done. Avoid very bright or dim environment when enrolling your face.



Please keep your face displayed in the circle until the enrollment is done.



Face Recognition is ready, you can unlock the phone with your face

Delete Enrolled Faces

Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**], tap [**Delete Enrolled Face**]. Use Face for screen unlocking, App Lock and File Safe. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**] > [**Use Face to**], then turn on the features you want to use.

View more details in Add and use a fingerprint on your OPPO Smartphone.

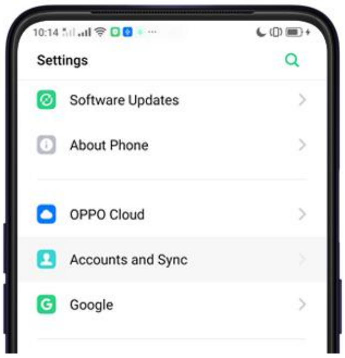
Note: Not all phone's running on ColorOS 6.0 supports fingerprint. It still depends on the design of the phone.

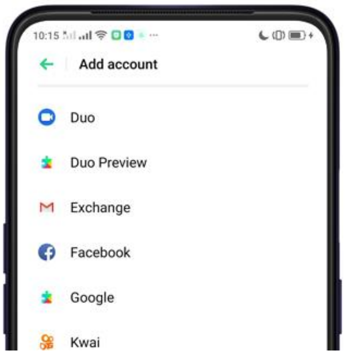
3.2.2. Set Up Other Mail and Calendar Accounts

If you want to use other mail and calendar apps, add the accounts to your phone to let the apps associated with those accounts sync with your phone.

Set up an account. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Accounts and Sync]**, then tap **[Add Account]**.

Repeat the steps for as many accounts as you like.


10:14
Settings
Software Updates
About Phone
OPPO Cloud
Accounts and Sync
Google

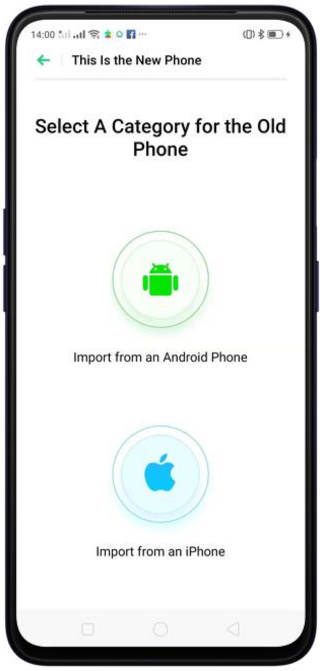

10:15
Add account
Duo
Duo Preview
Exchange
Facebook
Google
Kwai

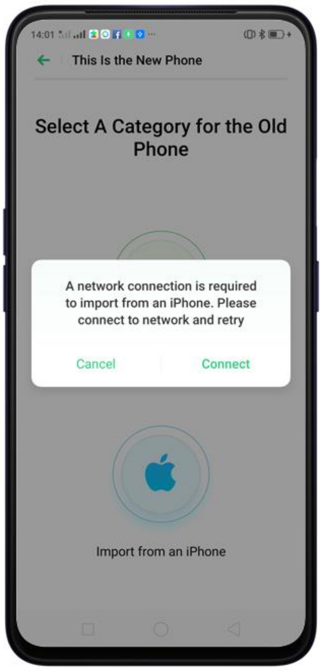
3.2.3. Transfer Data from the Old Phone to OPPO Smartphone

You can transfer over all of your data - with no risk or loss of quality, using **Clone Phone**. With **Clone Phone**, you don't need to leave any of your data behind with your previous device. Take it all with you in three easy steps:

From an iPhone to an OPPO Phone

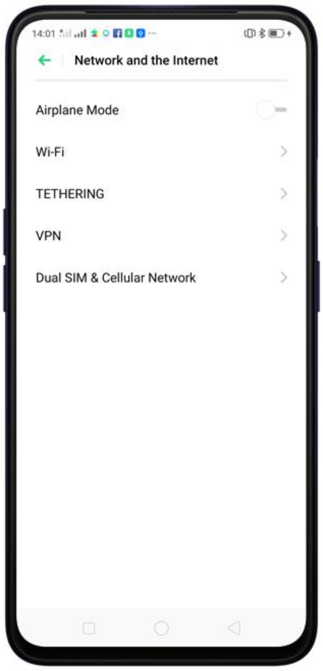
1. On your device, go to **[Tools]** > **[Clone Phone]**, then select "This is the new phone" and "Import From an iPhone". Connect your phone to the Internet when promoted.


14:00
This Is the New Phone
Select A Category for the Old Phone
Import from an Android Phone
Import from an iPhone

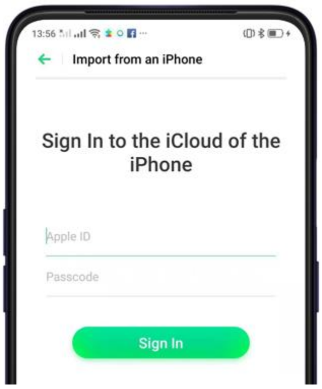

14:01
This Is the New Phone
Select A Category for the Old Phone

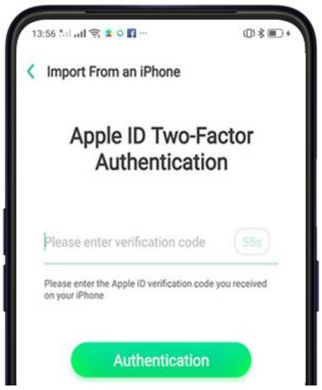
A network connection is required to import from an iPhone. Please connect to network and retry

Cancel
Connect
Import from an iPhone


14:01
Network and the Internet
Airplane Mode
Wi-Fi
TETHERING
VPN
Dual SIM & Cellular Network

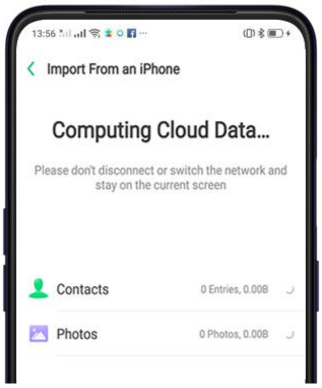
2. Sign in the iCloud account of your old iPhone. Enter the Apple ID verification code you received on your iPhone or in the SMS and start computing cloud data.


13:56
Import from an iPhone
Sign In to the iCloud of the iPhone
Apple ID
Passcode
Sign In


13:56
Import From an iPhone
Apple ID Two-Factor Authentication
Please enter verification code
55s

Please enter the Apple ID verification code you received on your iPhone

Authentication


13:56
Import From an iPhone
Computing Cloud Data...

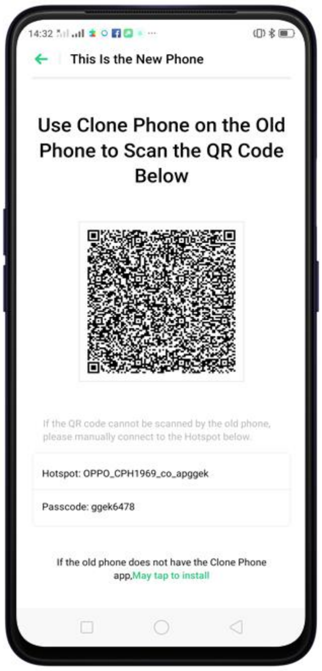
Please don't disconnect or switch the network and stay on the current screen

Contacts
0 Entries, 0.00B
Photos
0 Photos, 0.00B

From an Android Phone to an OPPO Phone

1. On your device, go to **[Tools]** > **[Clone Phone],** then select "This is the new phone" and "Import from an Android Phone".

2. On your old phone, tap **[Clone Phone] from the Home Screen,** select "This is the old phone" and scan the QR Code generated by the new phone to start cloning.



14:32

This Is the New Phone

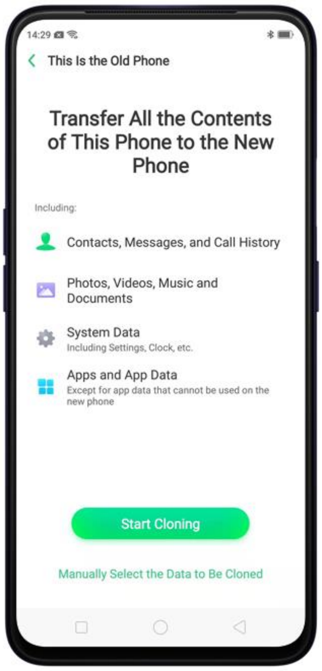
Use Clone Phone on the Old Phone to Scan the QR Code Below

If the QR code cannot be scanned by the old phone, please manually connect to the Hotspot below.

Hotspot: OPPO_CPH1969_co_apggek

Passcode: ggek6478

If the old phone does not have the Clone Phone app,May tap to install



14:29

This Is the Old Phone

Transfer All the Contents of This Phone to the New Phone

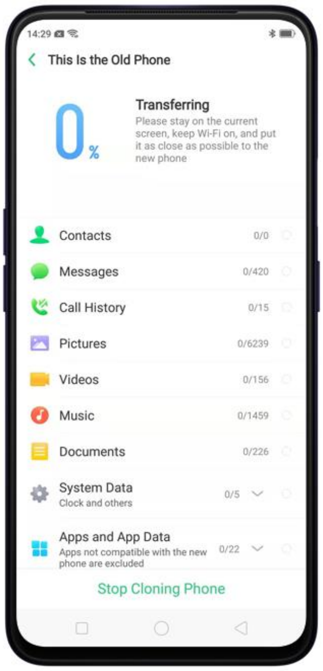
Including:

Contacts, Messages, and Call History

Photos, Videos, Music and Documents

System Data
Including Settings, Clock, etc.

Apps and App Data
Except for app data that cannot be used on the new phone



14:29

This Is the Old Phone

0%

Transferring
Please stay on the current screen, keep Wi-Fi on, and put it as close as possible to the new phone

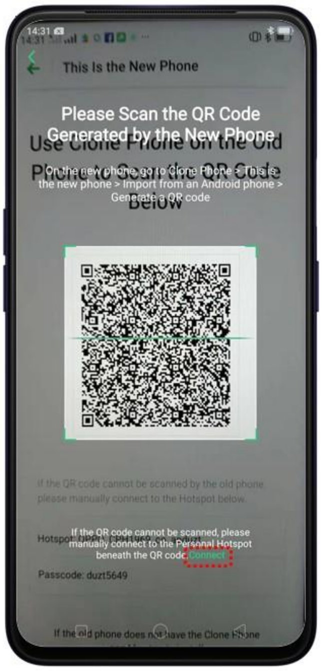
Contacts	0/0
Messages	0/420
Call History	0/15
Pictures	0/6239
Videos	0/156
Music	0/1459
Documents	0/226
System Data Clock and others	0/5
Apps and App Data Apps not compatible with the new phone are excluded	0/22

You can also select the data (Personal Data, System Data, Applications, Storage Data) to be cloned by tapping **"Manually Select the Data to be Cloned."**

3. Enter the Lock Screen password to continue.

If the QR code cannot be scanned

If scanning QR won’t work, you may manually connect to a hotspot and transfer data still. To do this, open Clone Phone app on both phones then tap “**Connect**”, you’ll notice that a pop-up will SAY “Personal Hotspot Activated”, tap on it and find the Hotspot name on the Wi-Fi setting and enter the password then you can start transferring files.



This Is the New Phone

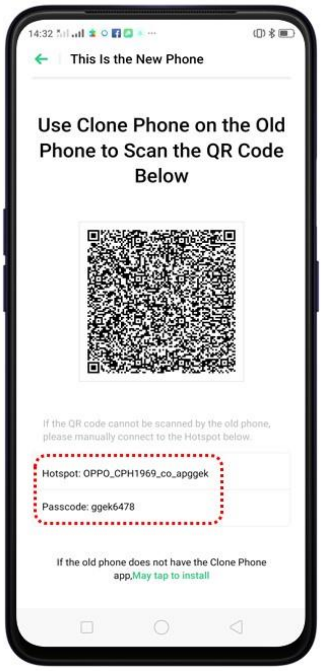
Please Scan the QR Code Generated by the New Phone

On the new phone, go to Clone Phone > This is the new phone > Import from an Android phone > Generate a QR code

If the QR code cannot be scanned by the old phone, please manually connect to the Hotspot below.

If the QR code cannot be scanned, please manually connect to the Personal Hotspot beneath the QR code.Connect

Passcode: duzt5649



This Is the New Phone

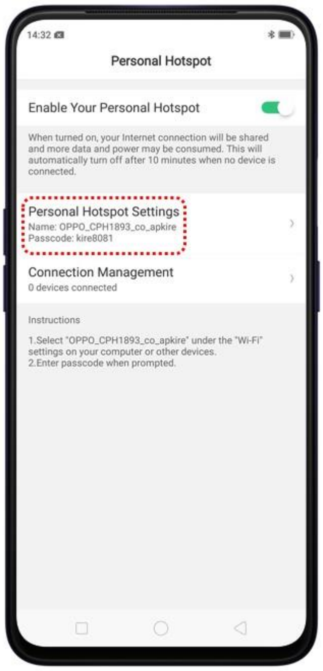
Use Clone Phone on the Old Phone to Scan the QR Code Below

If the QR code cannot be scanned by the old phone, please manually connect to the Hotspot below.

Hotspot: OPPO_CPH1969_co_apggek

Passcode: ggek6478

If the old phone does not have the Clone Phone app,May tap to install



Personal Hotspot

Enable Your Personal Hotspot

When turned on, your Internet connection will be shared and more data and power may be consumed. This will automatically turn off after 10 minutes when no device is connected.

Personal Hotspot Settings
Name: OPPO_CPH1893_co_apkire
Passcode: kire8081

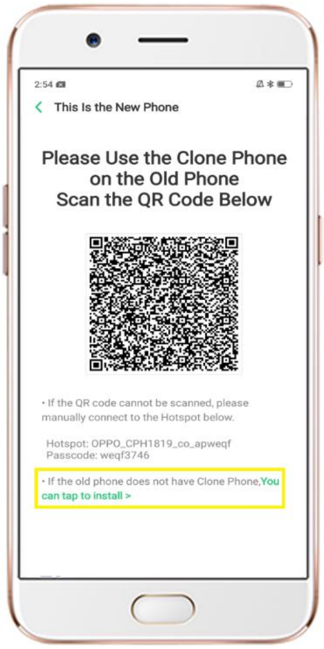
Connection Management
0 devices connected

Instructions

1.Select "OPPO_CPH1893_co_apkire" under the "Wi-Fi" settings on your computer or other devices.
2.Enter passcode when prompted.

If old phone doesn't have a Clone phone

1. Tap **You can tap to install>** and it will direct you to a web browser or open a browser from your phone and go to the website: **i.clonephone.coloros.com/download**. (**Note:** this only works when you open it using your mobile phone. This will not open on your computer).



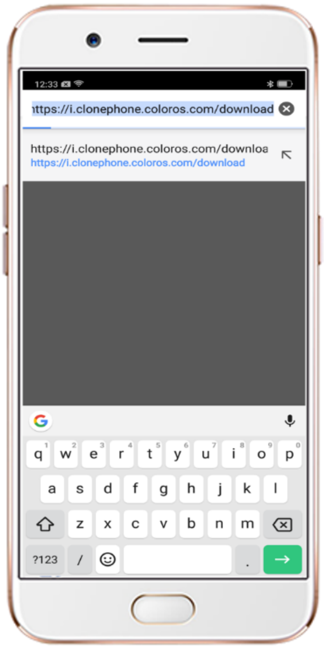
This Is the New Phone

Please Use the Clone Phone on the Old Phone Scan the QR Code Below

• If the QR code cannot be scanned, please manually connect to the Hotspot below.

Hotspot: OPPO_CPH1819_co_apweqf
Passcode: weqf3746

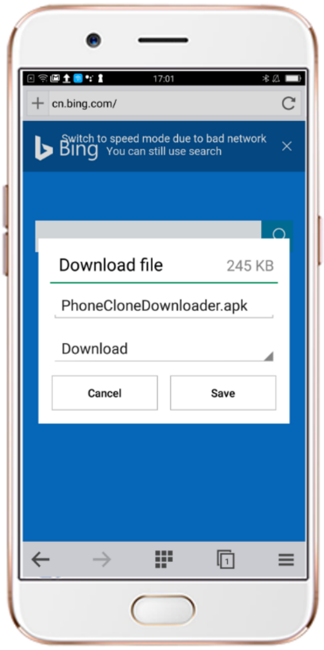
• If the old phone does not have Clone Phone,You can tap to install >



https://i.clonephone.coloros.com/download

https://i.clonephone.coloros.com/downloa
https://i.clonephone.coloros.com/download

2. Once you have entered the link above, it will prompt you to download the Clone Phone downloader APK file under the Download folder. You may change the folder path if you wish just tap "**Change the directory**" then Tap "Save".


17:01
cn.bing.com/
Bing
Switch to speed mode due to bad network
You can still use search

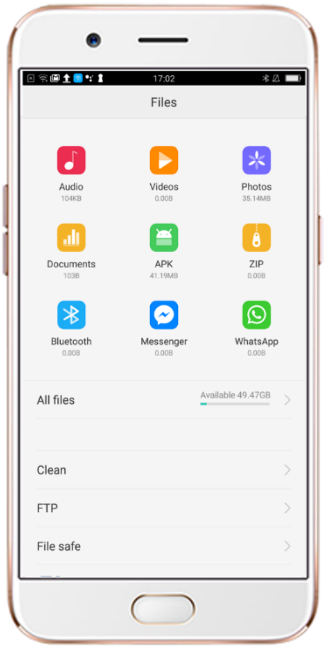
Download file 245 KB

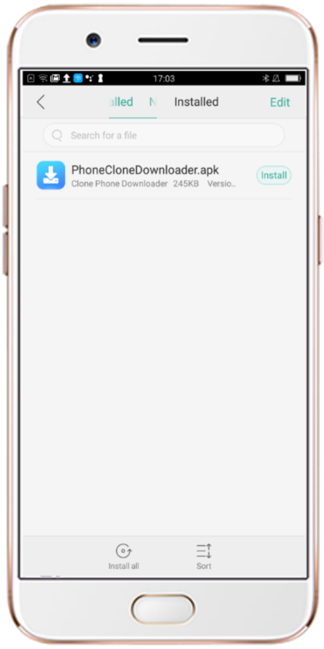
PhoneCloneDownloader.apk

Download

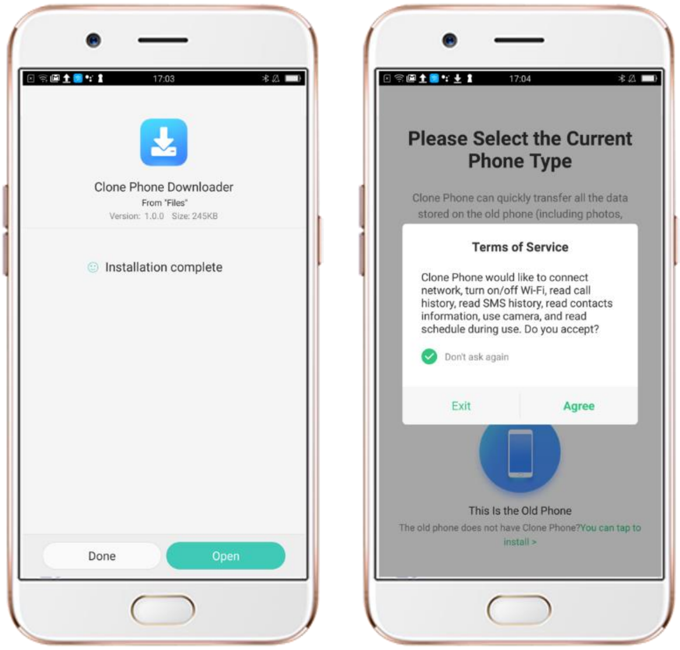
Cancel
Save

3. Once download is done. On your Home Screen, go to the notification panel for the downloaded file or go to Files/File Manager and tap "APK" folder or whichever folder you chose to save the file. Tap on "PhoneCloneDownloaded.apk" file then tap on "**Install**".


17:02
Files
Audio
104KB
Videos
0.00B
Photos
35.14MB
Documents
103B
APK
41.19MB
ZIP
0.00B
Bluetooth
0.00B
Messenger
0.00B
WhatsApp
0.00B
All files
Available 49.47GB
Clean
FTP
File safe


17:03
lled
Installed
Edit
Search for a file
PhoneCloneDownloader.apk
Clone Phone Downloader 245KB Versio..
Install
Install all
Sort

4. After installation has been completed, tap “**Done**” and you can now start to transfer files.


17:03
Clone Phone Downloader
From "Files"
Version: 1.0.0 Size: 245KB
Done
Open
17:04
Please Select the Current Phone Type
Terms of Service
Don't ask again
Exit
Agree
This Is the Old Phone

Installation complete

Clone Phone can quickly transfer all the data stored on the old phone (including photos,

Clone Phone would like to connect network, turn on/off Wi-Fi, read call history, read SMS history, read contacts information, use camera, and read schedule during use. Do you accept?

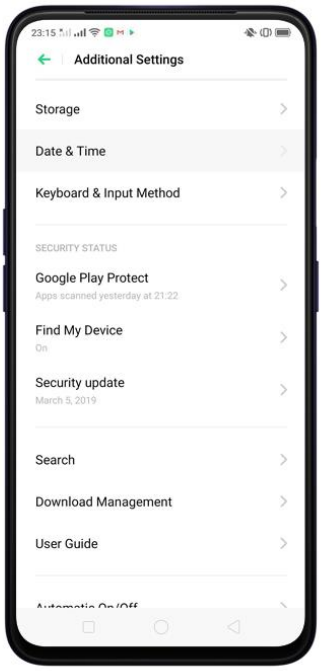
The old phone does not have Clone Phone?You can tap to install >

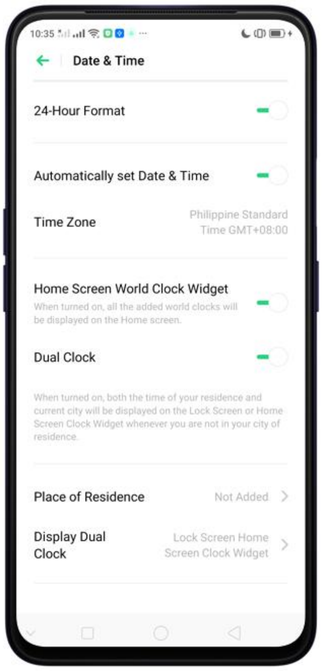
Note: The duration of the Clone Phone process depends on how big the data you are going to transfer. Please patiently wait before it is completely transferred.

3.2.4. Date and Time

Knowing the time and date is crucial to keeping on schedule. If you want to set the date and time display on your device, or if you're out of synch or need a time update, just start with step 1 as below.

1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Additional Settings**] > [**Date & Time**], tap it.


23:15
Additional Settings
Storage
Date & Time
Keyboard & Input Method
SECURITY STATUS
Google Play Protect
Apps scanned yesterday at 21:22
Find My Device
On
Security update
March 5, 2019
Search
Download Management
User Guide


10:35
Date & Time

24-Hour Format

Automatically set Date & Time

Time Zone: Philippine Standard Time GMT+08:00

Home Screen World Clock Widget

When turned on, all the added world clocks will be displayed on the Home screen.

Dual Clock

When turned on, both the time of your residence and current city will be displayed on the Lock Screen or Home Screen Clock Widget whenever you are not in your city of residence.

Place of Residence: Not Added

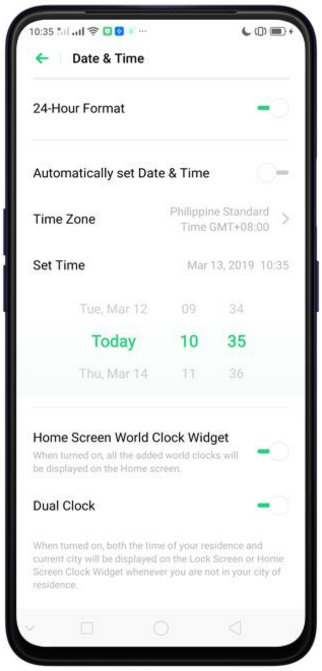
Display Dual Clock: Lock Screen Home Screen Clock Widget

2. **24- Hour Format.** Switch from 12-hour or a 24-hour format optionally.

3. **Automatically Set Date and Time.** Enable [**Automatically Set Date and Time**] if you want to use the data given by your network provider or your GPS, or you can set the time yourself if you prefer. See step 4.

4. **Set Manually.** You can manually set the time and date. To do so, disable [**Automatically Set Date and Time**], and then:

- Select your time zone. Tap [**Time Zone**] and select the location you would like to adjust your time to.
- Change the date and time. You will see the date and time appear under the current time zone. Drag your finger across each column to change the date and time. Scroll wheels will appear to allow you to change the date and time simultaneously.


10:35

Date & Time

24-Hour Format

Automatically set Date & Time

Time Zone — Philippine Standard Time GMT+08:00

Set Time — Mar 13, 2019 10:35

Tue, Mar 12 09 34
Today 10 35
Thu, Mar 14 11 36

Home Screen World Clock Widget
When turned on, all the added world clocks will be displayed on the Home screen.

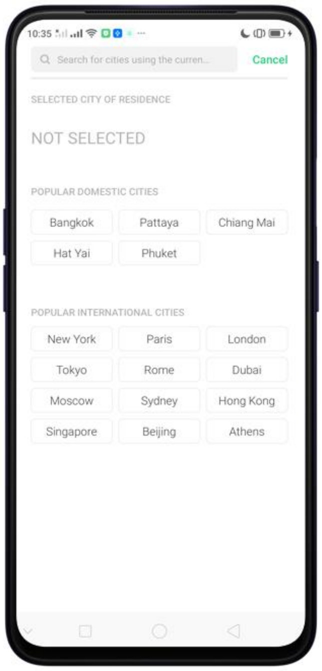
Dual Clock

When turned on, both the time of your residence and current city will be displayed on the Lock Screen or Home Screen Clock Widget whenever you are not in your city of residence.

5. Time Zone. Provides the time zone of your current location.

6. Home Screen World Clock Widget. When enabled, all the world clocks will be displayed on the Home Screen.

7. Place of Residence. This is where you add your city of residence.


10:35

Search for cities using the curren...

Cancel

SELECTED CITY OF RESIDENCE

NOT SELECTED

POPULAR DOMESTIC CITIES

Bangkok	Pattaya	Chiang Mai
Hat Yai	Phuket	

POPULAR INTERNATIONAL CITIES

New York	Paris	London
Tokyo	Rome	Dubai
Moscow	Sydney	Hong Kong
Singapore	Beijing	Athens

8. Dual Clock. When enabled, both your residence and current city time will be displayed on the Lock Screen or Home Screen clock widget if you are not in your city of residence.

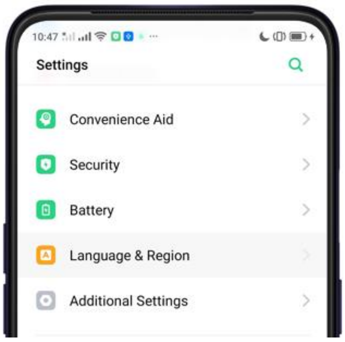
9. Display Dual Clock. This is where you choose if dual clock will be shown on the Lock Screen or Home Screen clock widget or both.

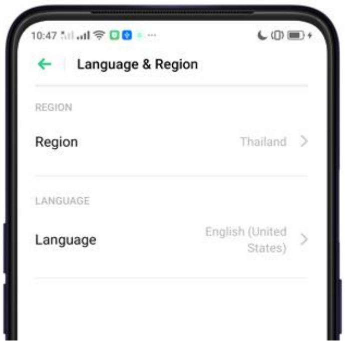
Rotterdam
10
48
Mon, Nov 12
ORoaming | T-Mobile NL
Taipei City
17
48
Mon, Nov 12

3.2.5. Language and Region

Your device offers you an easy access to configure it to display information in another language. If you want to change its language to yours, or if you've relocated to a new country, you can change language and region by following a few easy steps.

1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Language & Region**]


10:47
Settings
Convenience Aid
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings


10:47
Language & Region
REGION
LANGUAGE

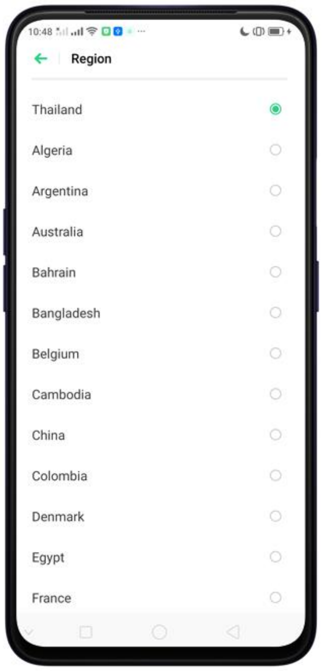
Region Thailand

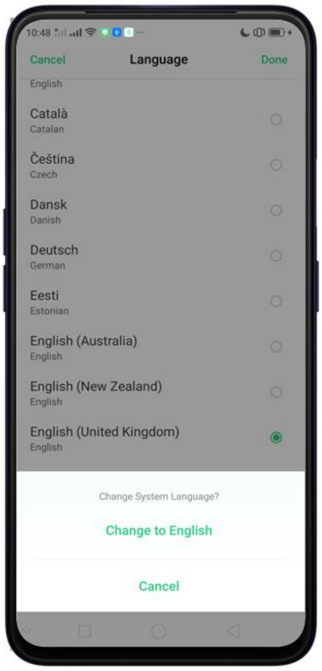
Language English (United States)

2. **Find your desired region.** Tap Region and change the region you want to use.

3. Find your desired language.

- Tap [**Language**], you will see a list of languages. Scroll down to find the language you wish to use.
- Select your desired language and tap "Done." A confirmation message will appear at the bottom of your screen. Confirm the change by tapping "Change to _____." Then your OPPO phone will be in the new desired language.


10:48
Region
Thailand
Algeria
Argentina
Australia
Bahrain
Bangladesh
Belgium
Cambodia
China
Colombia
Denmark
Egypt
France


10:48
Cancel
Language
Done
English
Català
Catalan
Čeština
Czech
Dansk
Danish
Deutsch
German
Eesti
Estonian
English (Australia)
English
English (New Zealand)
English
English (United Kingdom)
English
Change System Language?
Change to English
Cancel

3.2.6. Connect to the Internet

Your device connects to the Internet whenever necessary, using a Wi-Fi connection or mobile network.

Wi-Fi connection

1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Wi-Fi**], or swipe down from the top of your screen to open Control Center, then tap 📶 . The detected Wi-Fi networks will be displayed.

2. Tap the Wi-Fi network you want to connect to.

3. Fill in the password if required.

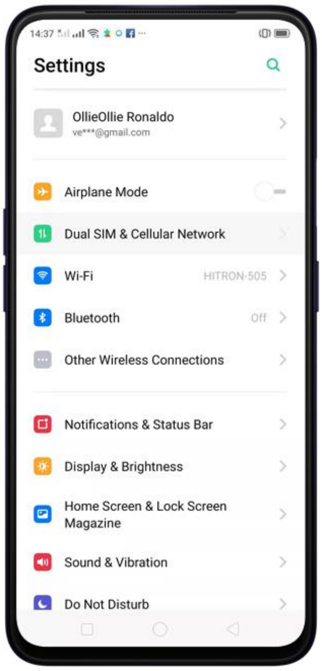
Mobile data connection

Go to [**Settings**] > [**Dual SIM & Cellular Network**] and enable [**Mobile Data**], or swipe down from the top of your screen to open Control Center, then tap ⇅ .

Note: Enabling the mobile networks connection may result in extra cost. Check with your mobile network service carrier.

3.2.7. Dual SIM & Cellular Network

To check SIM Info and Settings. Tap [**Settings**] > [**Dual SIM & Cellular Network**] then tap a SIM Slot where you want to Manage.



14:37

Settings

OllieOllie Ronaldo
ve***@gmail.com

Airplane Mode

Dual SIM & Cellular Network

Wi-Fi HITRON-505

Bluetooth Off

Other Wireless Connections

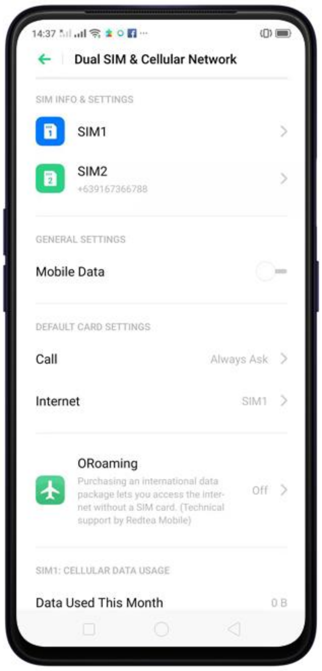
Notifications & Status Bar

Display & Brightness

Home Screen & Lock Screen Magazine

Sound & Vibration

Do Not Disturb



14:37

Dual SIM & Cellular Network

SIM INFO & SETTINGS

SIM1

SIM2
+639167366788

GENERAL SETTINGS

Mobile Data

DEFAULT CARD SETTINGS

Call Always Ask

Internet SIM1

ORoaming
Purchasing an international data package lets you access the internet without a SIM card. (Technical support by Redtea Mobile)
Off

SIM1: CELLULAR DATA USAGE

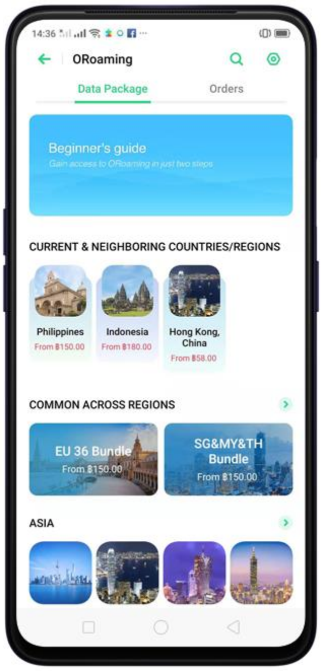
Data Used This Month 0 B

SIM Info and settings. Can change SIM Card name and set SIM Card number. You can enable Data Roaming. Choose your preferred network type as well as edit Access Point Name. Tap Carrier to automatically select your SIM's carrier.

General Settings: If you want to use Mobile data, toggle to green.

Default Card Settings. For Call. You can set if what SIM will make calls or choose Always ask so you will be given options as to which one you would like to use. Tap from Call Back History to use the numbers called by a SIM slot for call backs. **For Internet.** You can choose the default SIM for Data connection.

ORoaming. Purchase an international data package without any need of a SIM card. You will see data packages and can order in advance before you leave for your trip abroad. Note: International credit card and PayPal are accepted payment methods.



14:36

ORoaming

Data Package

Orders

Beginner's guide

Gain access to ORoaming in just two steps

CURRENT & NEIGHBORING COUNTRIES/REGIONS

Philippines
From ฿150.00

Indonesia
From ฿180.00

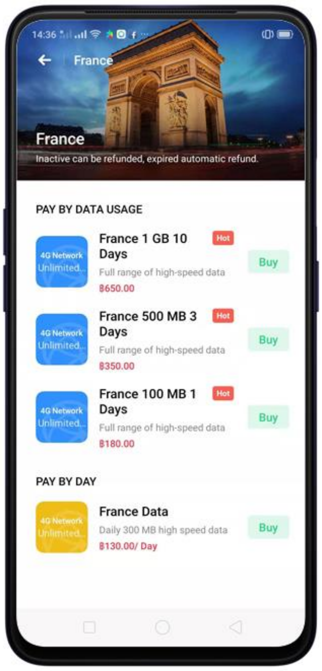
Hong Kong, China
From ฿58.00

COMMON ACROSS REGIONS

EU 36 Bundle
From ฿150.00

SG&MY&TH Bundle
From ฿150.00

ASIA



14:36

France

France

Inactive can be refunded, expired automatic refund.

PAY BY DATA USAGE

France 1 GB 10 Days
Hot
Full range of high-speed data
฿650.00
Buy

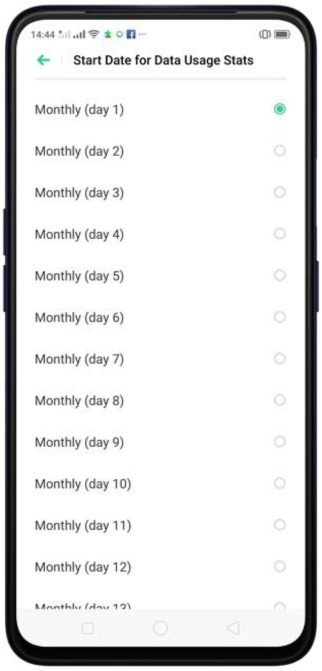
France 500 MB 3 Days
Hot
Full range of high-speed data
฿350.00
Buy

France 100 MB 1 Days
Hot
Full range of high-speed data
฿180.00
Buy

PAY BY DAY

France Data
Daily 300 MB high speed data
฿130.00/ Day
Buy

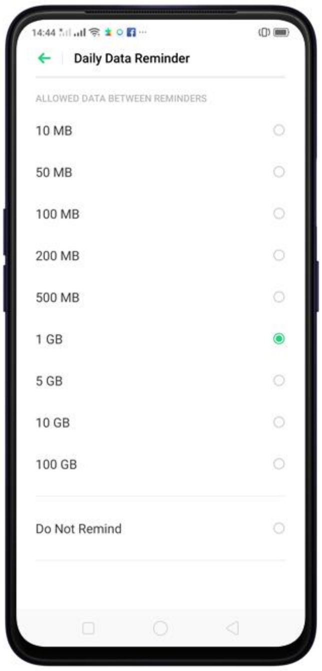
Cellular Data Usage. Check the data use for this month, manage the start date for data usage statistics, and manage the daily data reminder to control your data usage and not be overcharged.



14:44

Start Date for Data Usage Stats

Monthly (day 1) ●
Monthly (day 2) ○
Monthly (day 3) ○
Monthly (day 4) ○
Monthly (day 5) ○
Monthly (day 6) ○
Monthly (day 7) ○
Monthly (day 8) ○
Monthly (day 9) ○
Monthly (day 10) ○
Monthly (day 11) ○
Monthly (day 12) ○
Monthly (day 13) ○



14:44

Daily Data Reminder

ALLOWED DATA BETWEEN REMINDERS

10 MB ○
50 MB ○
100 MB ○
200 MB ○
500 MB ○
1 GB ●
5 GB ○
10 GB ○
100 GB ○

Do Not Remind ○

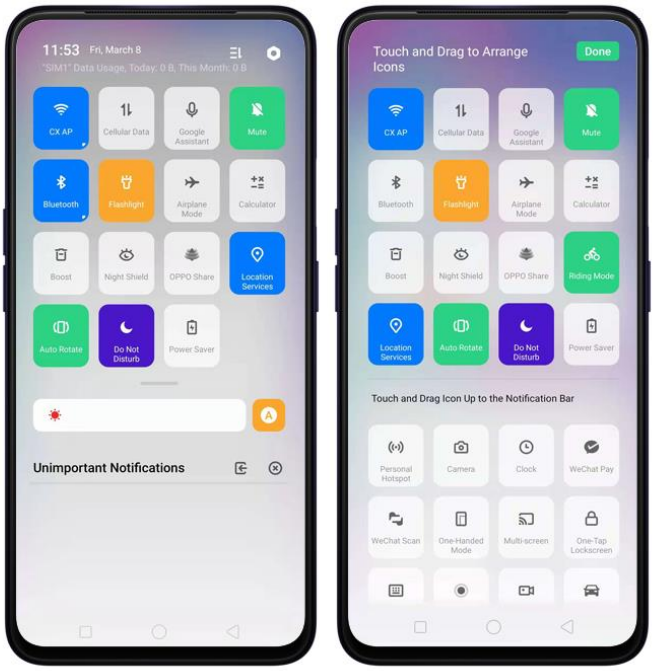
Network Connection Control & Data Saving. Check what apps and features are using Wi-Fi & Mobile Network. Enable Data so apps in the background will not be able to use mobile data.

4. What's new in ColorOS 6.0

4.1 Control Center

Easy to see its bigger icons. Added more colors to categorize each feature. It's easier to look for the feature that you would want to enable and disable.

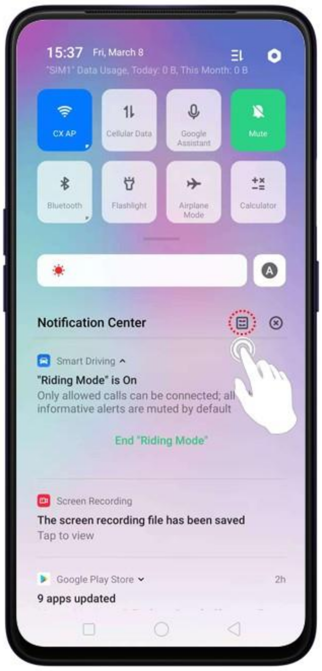
Open Control Center. Swipe down from the very top of any screen (except the notch at the top center of the display). You'll see the shortcuts listed on top, and notifications below. To know more about this feature, View Control Center.


11:53 Fri, March 8
"SIM1" Data Usage, Today: 0 B, This Month: 0 B
CX AP
Cellular Data
Google Assistant
Mute
Bluetooth
Flashlight
Airplane Mode
Calculator
Boost
Night Shield
OPPO Share
Location Services
Auto Rotate
Do Not Disturb
Power Saver
A
Unimportant Notifications
Touch and Drag to Arrange Icons
Done
CX AP
Cellular Data
Google Assistant
Mute
Bluetooth
Flashlight
Airplane Mode
Calculator
Boost
Night Shield
OPPO Share
Riding Mode
Location Services
Auto Rotate
Do Not Disturb
Power Saver
Touch and Drag Icon Up to the Notification Bar
Personal Hotspot
Camera
Clock
WeChat Pay
WeChat Scan
One-Handed Mode
Multi-screen
One-Tap Lockscreen

4.2 Notification Center

You may now hide those notifications just by choosing Unimportant Notifications so you will have a cleaner and spacious look on the screen.

Hide Notifications: Tap on ☰ to hide notifications. To unhide notifications tap ⇦ then tap ⊗ if you want to erase all notifications.


15:37 Fri, March 8
CX AP
Cellular Data
Google Assistant
Mute
Bluetooth
Flashlight
Airplane Mode
Calculator
Notification Center
Smart Driving
Screen Recording
Google Play Store
2h

"SIM1" Data Usage, Today: 0 B, This Month: 0 B

"Riding Mode" is On

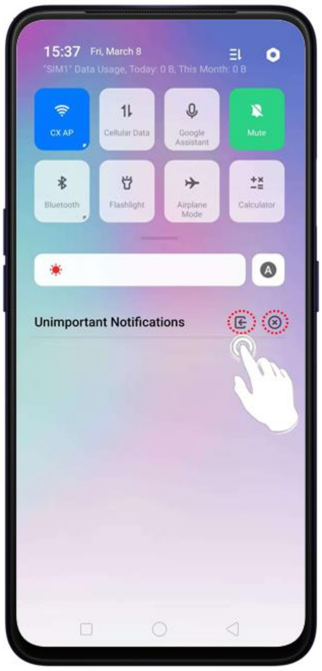
Only allowed calls can be connected; all informative alerts are muted by default

End "Riding Mode"

The screen recording file has been saved

Tap to view

9 apps updated

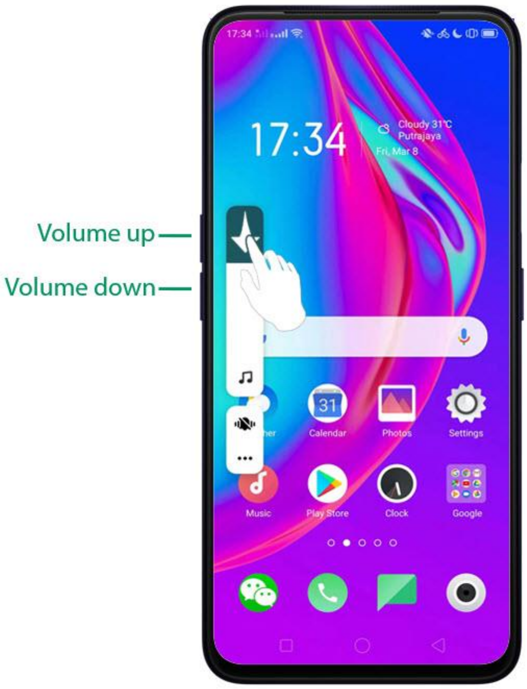

15:37 Fri, March 8
CX AP
Cellular Data
Google Assistant
Mute
Bluetooth
Flashlight
Airplane Mode
Calculator
Unimportant Notifications

"SIM1" Data Usage, Today: 0 B, This Month: 0 B

4.2 Volume Setting Look

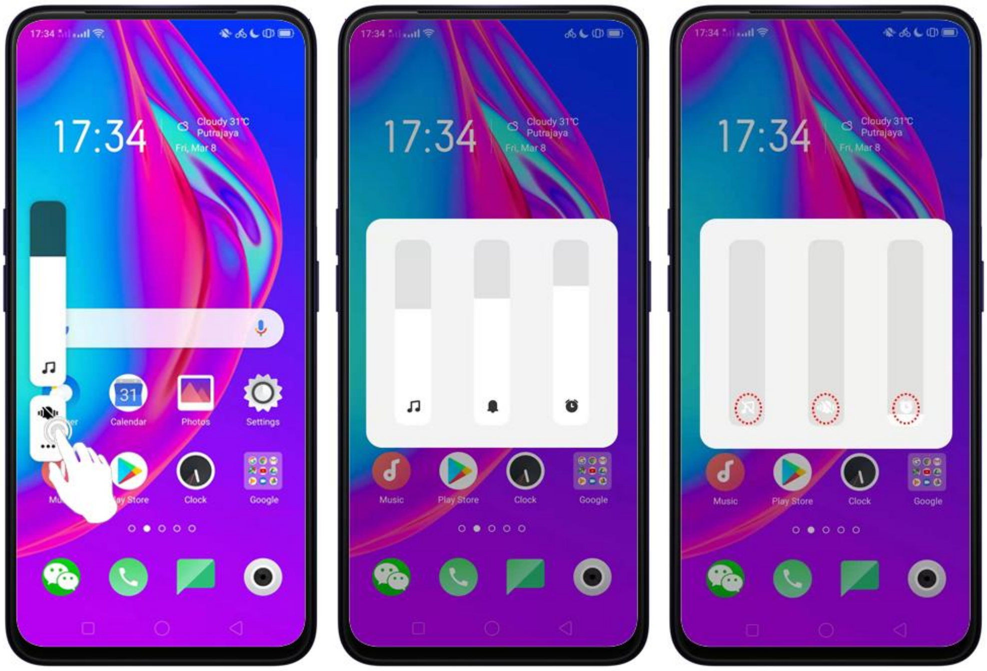
Changing volumes is now more intuitive with its bigger icon. Your finger easily fits to adjust volumes of ringtone, media, and alarm. It's also beside the hard volume buttons so it's not that hard to miss.

To change volumes for the ringtone, media, or alarm, press first either the Volume Up or Volume Down button so the volume setting will show. Then you may swipe up and down to manage the volume.


Volume up
Volume down
17:34
Cloudy 31°C
Putrajaya
Fri, Mar 8
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Music
Play Store
Clock
Google

Manage the Volume settings for Media, Ringtone, and Alarm.

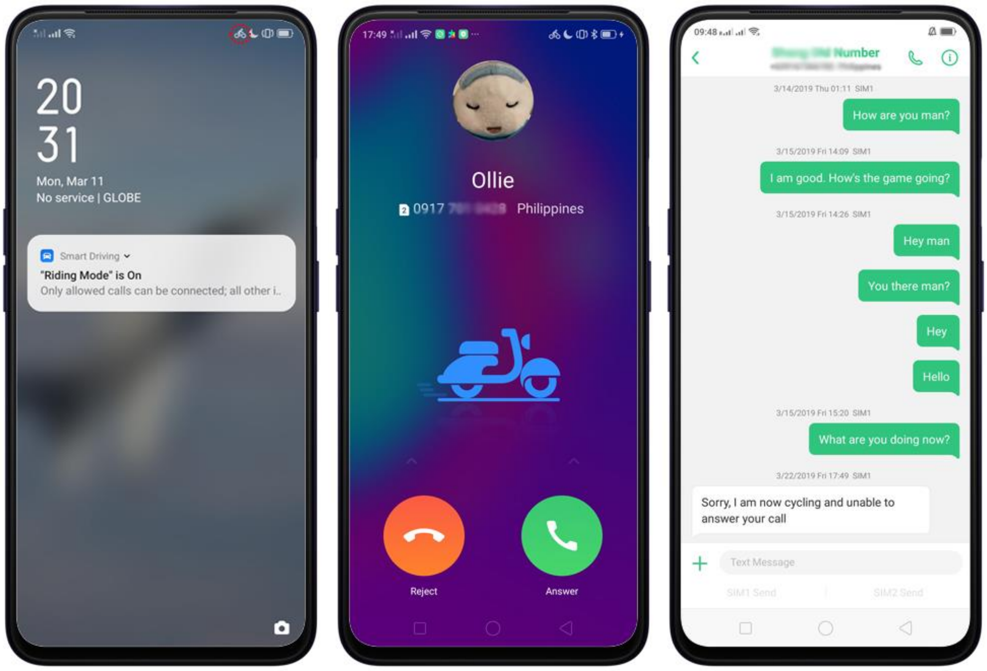
If you want to change the volumes for Media, Ringtone, or Alarm just tap on so you will see each setting.


17:34
Cloudy 31°C
Putrajaya
Fri, Mar 8
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Music
Play Store
Clock
Google

Note: Tapping the media icon will automatically put it on silent mode except for the Alarm.

4.3 Riding Mode

Safety is non-negotiable. We always make sure the wellbeing of our users either by driving motorcycle or when they do their favorite hobby like cycling. If this is enabled, incoming calls will be muted so you won't be tempted to check your phone while on the road. When "Riding Mode" is turn on, all notifications except for incoming calls will be muted by default. You can manage people who can call you as well.



20
31
Mon, Mar 11
No service | GLOBE

Smart Driving
"Riding Mode" is On
Only allowed calls can be connected; all other i..

17:49

Ollie
0917 [redacted] Philippines

09:48

[redacted] Number
[redacted]

3/14/2019 Thu 01:11 SIM1
How are you man?

3/15/2019 Fri 14:09 SIM1
I am good. How's the game going?

3/15/2019 Fri 14:26 SIM1
Hey man
You there man?
Hey
Hello

3/15/2019 Fri 15:20 SIM1
What are you doing now?

3/22/2019 Fri 17:49 SIM1
Sorry, I am now cycling and unable to answer your call

To enable Riding Mode, go to [Settings] > [Smart Service] > [Smart Driving] > [Riding Mode]

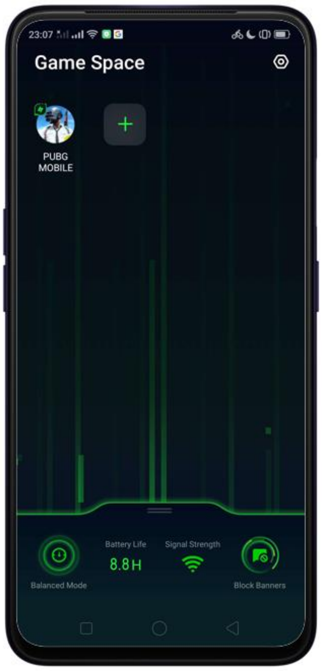
Once enabled, Do-Not-Disturb Driving will be enabled and once you chose this, you will be given the following options:

- Allow Incoming Calls from the Following Numbers - You can choose Decline All, From Anyone, From Contacts only or From Favorite Contacts Only.
- Ring for Repeated Calls – A second call from the same number within 3 minutes will not be silenced.
- Auto-send SMS After a Call is Rejected.
- Reply Content – you may customize the message of your content when unable to answer call.

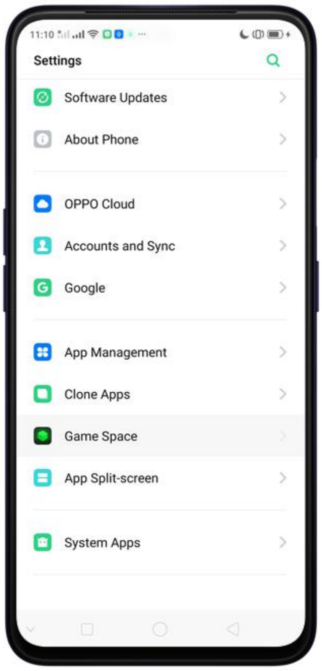
Supported areas: India, Pakistan, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh, Nepal, Myanmar, Indonesia, Thailand, Vietnam, Cambodia, Malay, Philippines, Taiwan

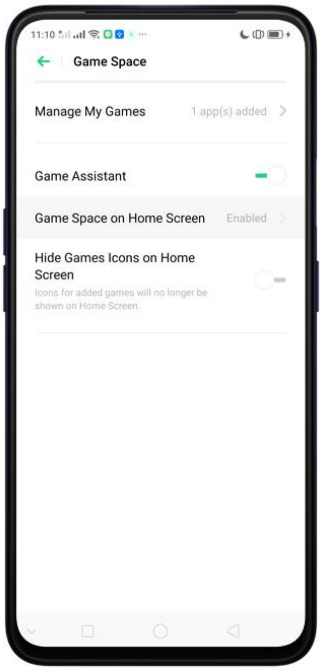
4.4 Game Space 2.0

Manage your games. Whenever you install a game, the game space will determine that it is a game application and is integrated into the game space, and the relevant game optimization function is enabled for the game.


23:07
Game Space
PUBG MOBILE
+
Battery Life
8.8H
Signal Strength
Balanced Mode
Block Banners

To show Game Screen on Home Screen. Go to [Settings] > [Game Space] > [Game Space on Home Screen]. (Note: Disabling Game space on the Home Screen means Game Space app will not show any more on the Home Screen).


11:10
Settings
Software Updates
About Phone
OPPO Cloud
Accounts and Sync
Google
App Management
Clone Apps
Game Space
App Split-screen
System Apps


11:10
Game Space

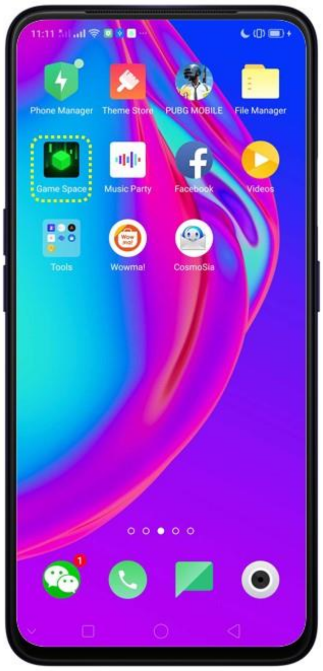
Manage My Games 1 app(s) added

Game Assistant

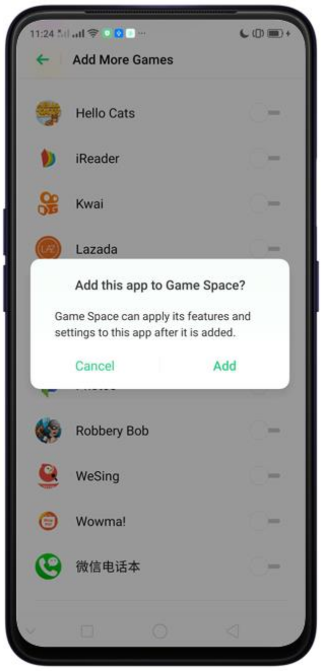
Game Space on Home Screen Enabled

Hide Games Icons on Home Screen

Icons for added games will no longer be shown on Home Screen.

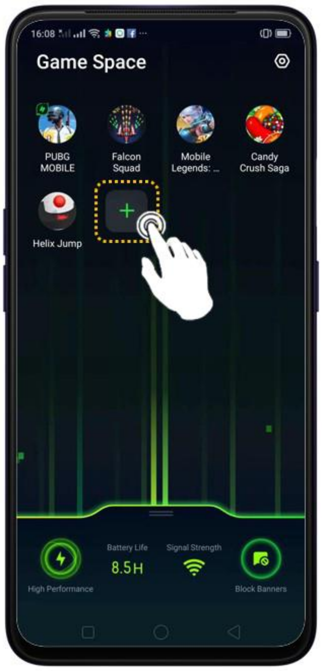

11:11
Phone Manager
Theme Store
PUBG MOBILE
File Manager
Game Space
Music Party
Facebook
Videos
Tools
Wowma!
CosmoSia

When you want to quickly add games that you have already downloaded but scattered around your Home Screen, go to the Game Space App on the Home Screen, tap + to add games that you've downloaded then toggle to green the game that you want to transfer to Game Space.

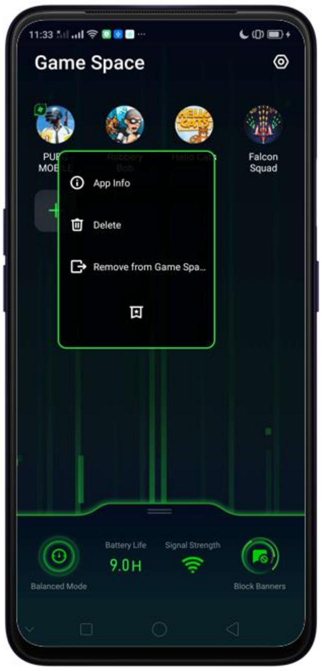

11:24
Add More Games
Hello Cats
iReader
Kwai
Lazada
Robbery Bob
WeSing
Wowma!
微信电话本
Cancel
Add

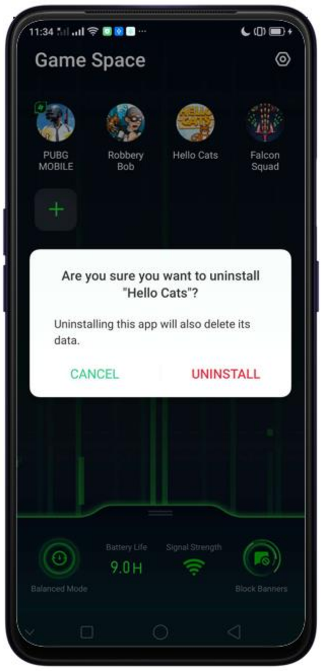
Add this app to Game Space?

Game Space can apply its features and settings to this app after it is added.


16:08
Game Space
PUBG MOBILE
Falcon Squad
Mobile Legends: ...
Candy Crush Saga
Helix Jump
+
Battery Life
8.5H
Signal Strength
High Performance
Block Banners

To remove games, press and hold the game that you want to be deleted and choose Remove From Games if you are sure to delete it, tap **UNINSTALL**. You can only remove games one at a time when doing it on the Game Space app.


11:33
Game Space
PUB
MOB
Robbery Bob
Hello Cats
Falcon Squad
App Info
Delete
Remove from Game Spa...
Battery Life
9.0H
Signal Strength
Balanced Mode
Block Banners

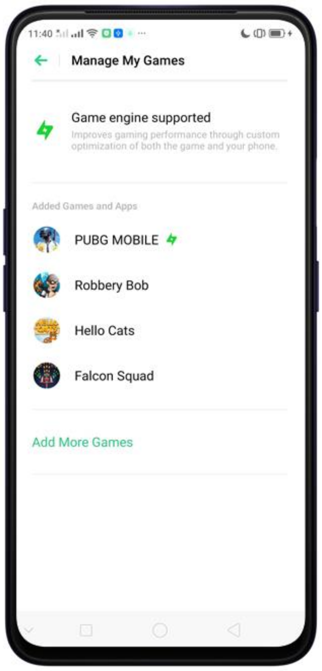

11:34
Game Space
PUBG MOBILE
Robbery Bob
Hello Cats
Falcon Squad
Battery Life
9.0H
Signal Strength
Balanced Mode
Block Banners

Are you sure you want to uninstall "Hello Cats"?

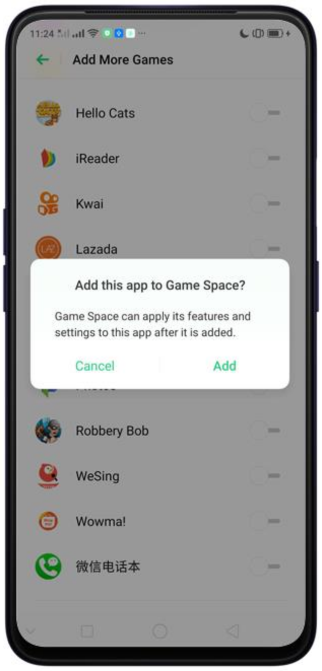
Uninstalling this app will also delete its data.

CANCEL
UNINSTALL

You can also go to [Settings] > [Game Space] > [Manage my games] > [**Add More Games**] if you want to add or remove games from Game Space.


11:40
Manage My Games
Game engine supported
Added Games and Apps
PUBG MOBILE
Robbery Bob
Hello Cats
Falcon Squad
Add More Games

Improves gaming performance through custom optimization of both the game and your phone.

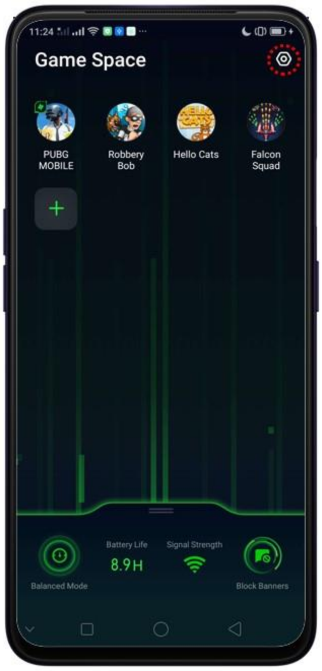

11:24
Add More Games
Hello Cats
iReader
Kwai
Lazada
Robbery Bob
WeSing
Wowma!
微信电话本

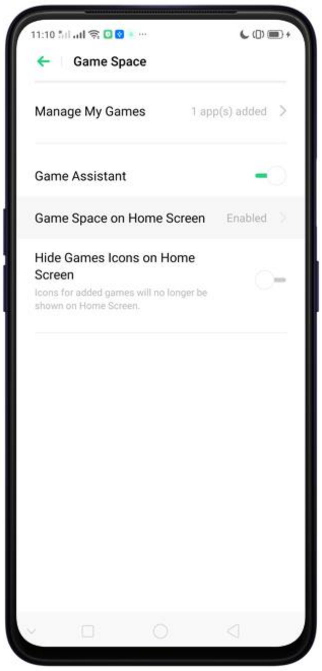
Add this app to Game Space?

Game Space can apply its features and settings to this app after it is added.

Cancel
Add

For quick shortcut to Game Space settings, tap ◎ on the top-right corner of the Game Space app.


11:24
Game Space
PUBG MOBILE
Robbery Bob
Hello Cats
Falcon Squad
+
Battery Life
8.9H
Signal Strength
Balanced Mode
Block Banners


11:10
Game Space

Manage My Games 1 app(s) added

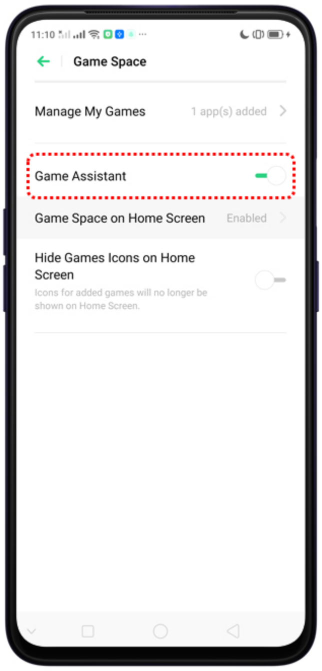
Game Assistant

Game Space on Home Screen Enabled

Hide Games Icons on Home Screen
Icons for added games will no longer be shown on Home Screen.

Game Space Settings

- **Manage My Games. When you want to add or remove games on Game Space.**
- **Game Assistant. This will enable Smart Sidebar to show on the side when you are playing games.**



Game Space

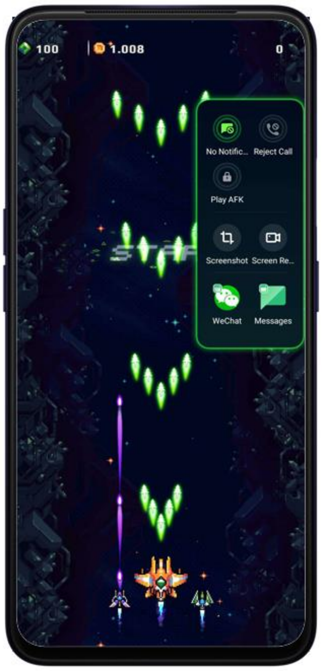
Manage My Games 1 app(s) added

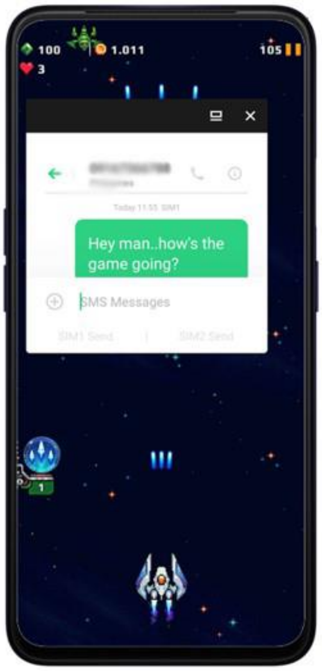
Game Assistant ●

Game Space on Home Screen Enabled

Hide Games Icons on Home Screen ○

Icons for added games will no longer be shown on Home Screen.

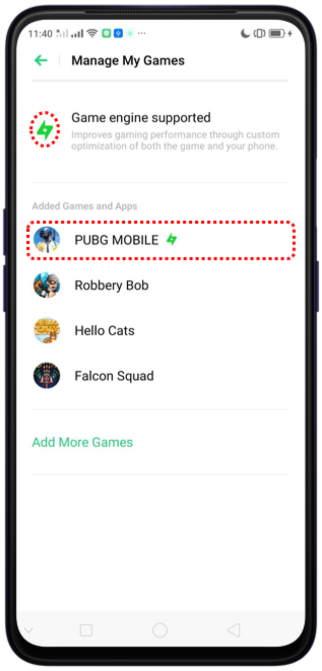

100
1.008
0
No Notific...
Reject Call
Play AFK
Screenshot
Screen Re...
WeChat
Messages


100
1.011
105
3

Hey man..how's the game going?

SMS Messages

- **Game Space on you Home Screen.**
- **Hide Games Icons on Home.** Icons for added games will not show any more on the Home Screen
- **Game Engine Supported.** Phone will smartly auto-detect if a game can be supported by Game Engine. This improves gaming performance through custom optimization of both the game and your phone. A game with ϟ icon means it is supported by Game Engine.



Manage My Games

Game engine supported

Improves gaming performance through custom optimization of both the game and your phone.

Added Games and Apps

PUBG MOBILE ϟ

Robbery Bob

Hello Cats

Falcon Squad

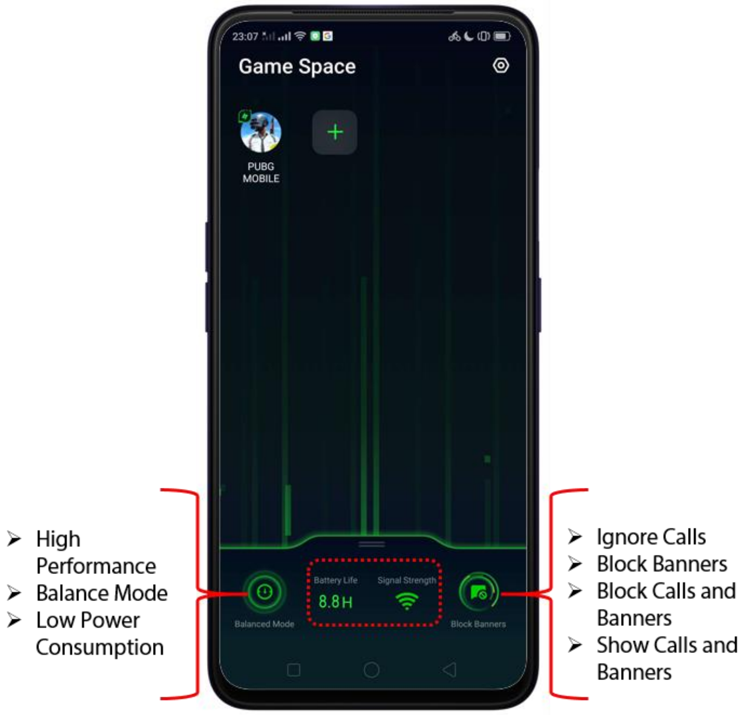
Add More Games

Other Features of Game Space 2.0

- **Shows Battery Life.**
- **Shows the Signal Strength of the network you are connected to.**

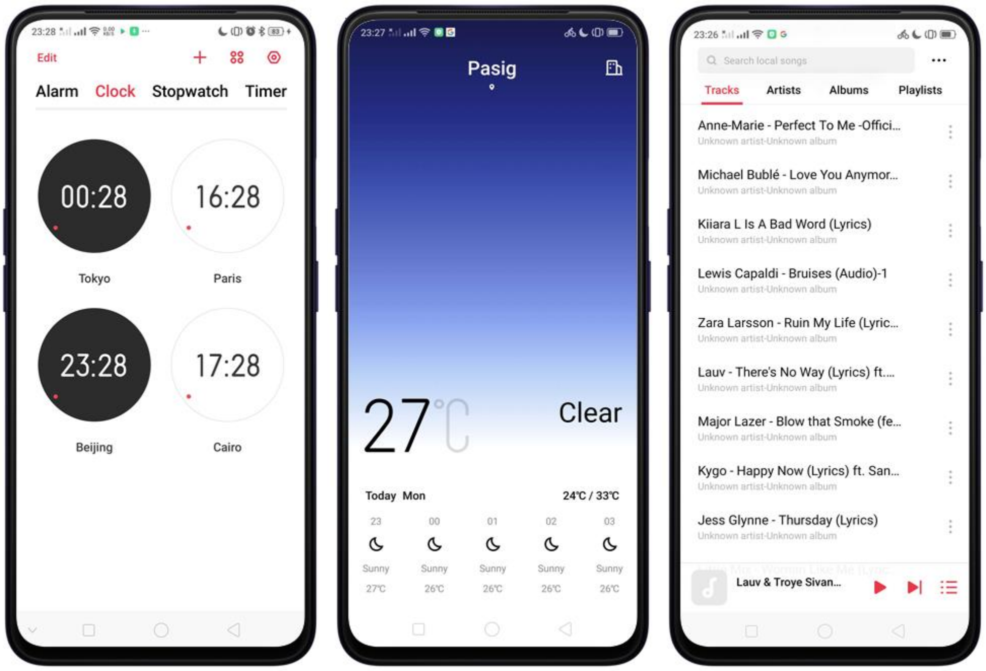
- **Performance Mode.** Just tap ◉ to show modes.
  - ✓ **High Performance –** Improves image quality of games, but power consumption may increase.
  - ✓ **Balanced Mode –** Balances performance and power consumption.
  - ✓ **Lower Power Consumption Mode –** Lower game image quality for longer gaming duration.

- **Manage Calls, Messages, & Notifications.** Tap ◉ to manage the calls, messages, and notifications while playing.
  - ✓ **Ignore Calls** – Block calls during gaming.
  - ✓ **Block Banners** – Block banners during gaming.
  - ✓ **Block Calls and Banners** – Ignore calls and banners during gaming.
  - ✓ **Show Calls and Banners** – Receive incoming calls and show banner notifications during gaming sessions.


23:07
Game Space
PUBG MOBILE
Battery Life
Signal Strength
8.8H
Balanced Mode
Block Banners
➢ High Performance
➢ Balance Mode
➢ Low Power Consumption
➢ Ignore Calls
➢ Block Banners
➢ Block Calls and Banners
➢ Show Calls and Banners

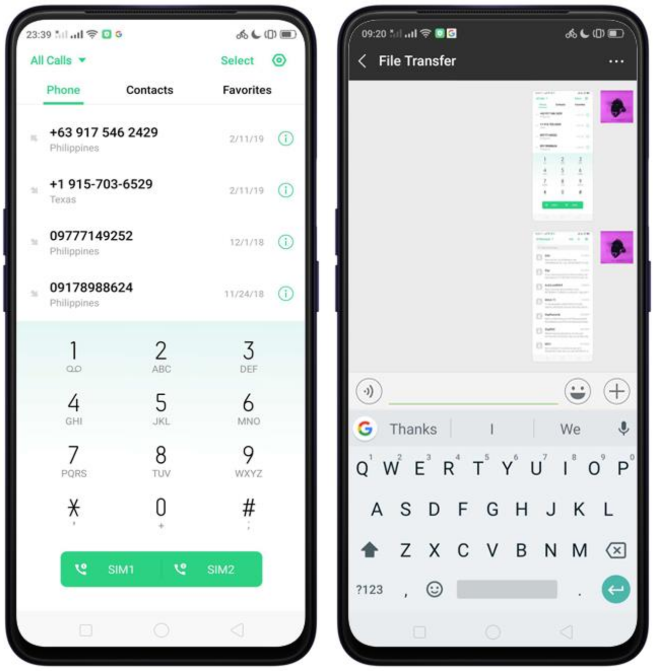
4.5 New Look on Apps

Clock, Calculator, Weather, Music and other apps have never looked this hip and cool. Same functions but just better looking.


23:28
Edit
Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
00:28
Tokyo
16:28
Paris
23:28
Beijing
17:28
Cairo
23:27
Pasig
27℃
Clear
Today Mon
24℃ / 33℃
23
00
01
02
03
Sunny
27℃
26℃
23:26
Search local songs
Tracks
Artists
Albums
Playlists
Anne-Marie - Perfect To Me -Offici...
Unknown artist-Unknown album
Michael Bublé - Love You Anymor...
Kiiara L Is A Bad Word (Lyrics)
Lewis Capaldi - Bruises (Audio)-1
Zara Larsson - Ruin My Life (Lyric...
Lauv - There's No Way (Lyrics) ft....
Major Lazer - Blow that Smoke (fe...
Kygo - Happy Now (Lyrics) ft. San...
Jess Glynne - Thursday (Lyrics)
Lauv & Troye Sivan...

4.6 Bigger Fonts, Enough Spacing

We don't want you to miss or strain your eye when you are navigating or browsing the settings on the phone or when looking on your contacts. The fonts are bigger and there are enough space for letters and numbers so it's a lot easier to type and your eyes won't miss any detail.


23:39
All Calls
Select
Phone
Contacts
Favorites
1
2 ABC
3 DEF
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
*
0 +
#
SIM1
SIM2
09:20
File Transfer
Thanks
I
We
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M
?123

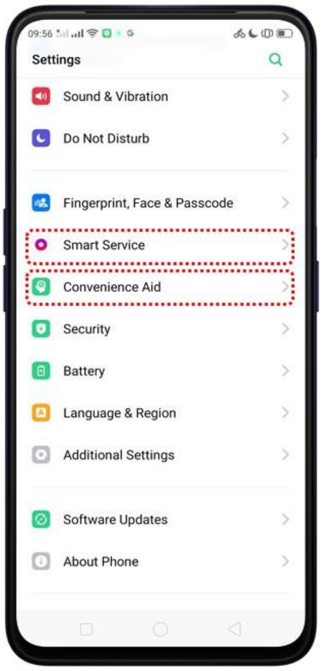
+63 917 546 2429 Philippines 2/11/19
+1 915-703-6529 Texas 2/11/19
09777149252 Philippines 12/1/18
09178988624 Philippines 11/24/18

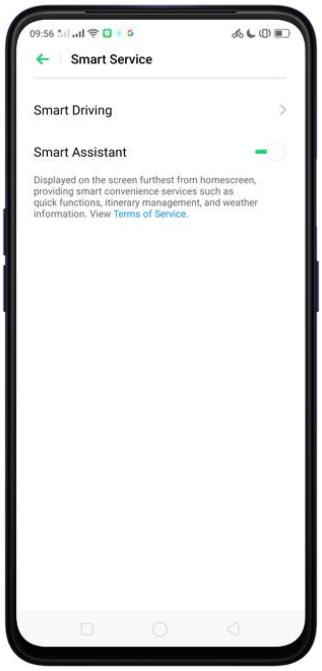
4.7 Smart & Convenient has Been Divided Into Smart Service and Convenience Aid

To easily categorize functions, Smart & Convenient has been separated for easy navigation and filtering of options.

To go to Smart Service, tap [Settings] > [Smart Service].

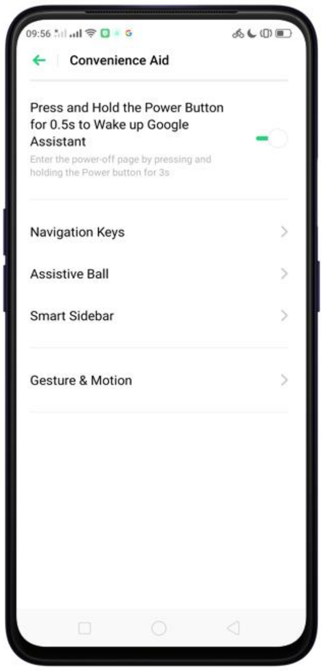
To go to Convenience Aid, tap [Settings] > [Convenience Aid].


09:56
Settings
Sound & Vibration
Do Not Disturb
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart Service
Convenience Aid
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings
Software Updates
About Phone


09:56
Smart Service
Smart Driving

Smart Assistant ●

Displayed on the screen furthest from homescreen, providing smart convenience services such as quick functions, itinerary management, and weather information. View Terms of Service.


09:56
Convenience Aid

Press and Hold the Power Button for 0.5s to Wake up Google Assistant ●

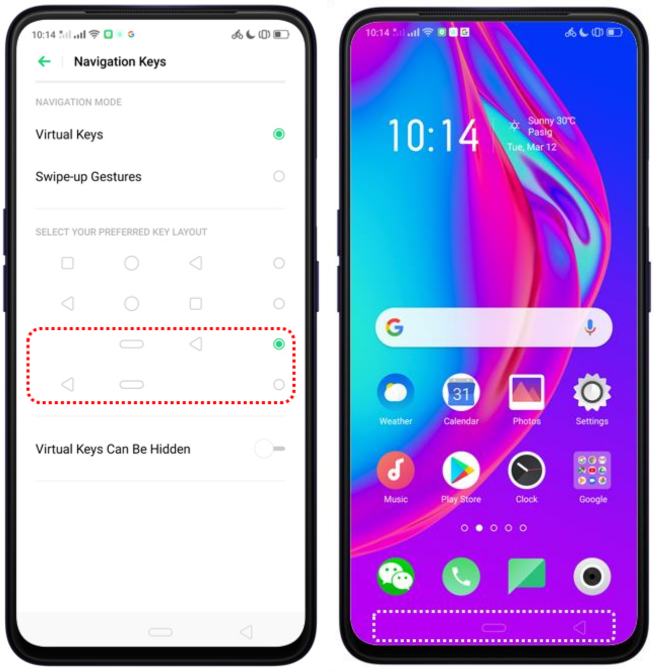
Enter the power-off page by pressing and holding the Power button for 3s

Navigation Keys
Assistive Ball
Smart Sidebar
Gesture & Motion

4.8 Added 2 Options on your Preferred Key Layout on the Navigation Keys

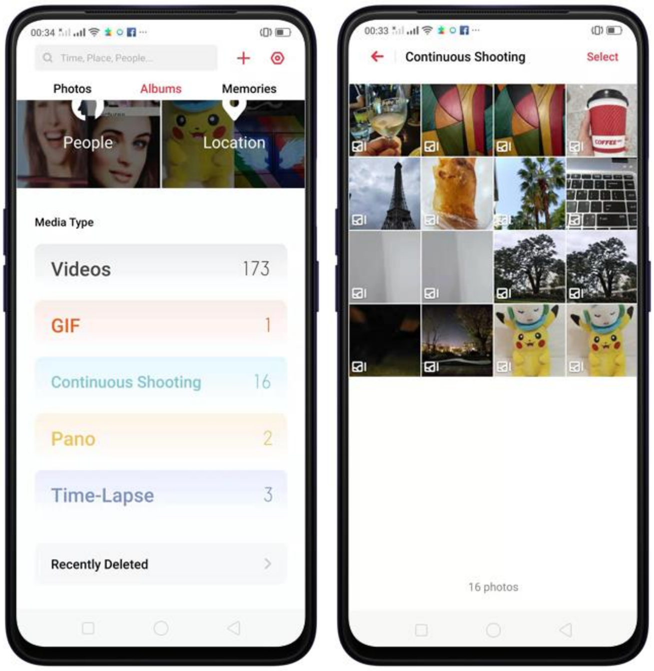
The added two options still give the same functions. The blank area once pressed or swiped up would still serves its function. See Convenience Aid

To change the Navigation Keys, tap [Settings] > [Convenience Aid] > [Navigation Keys] then choose your preferred key layout.


10:14
Navigation Keys
NAVIGATION MODE
Virtual Keys ●
Swipe-up Gestures ○
SELECT YOUR PREFERRED KEY LAYOUT
Virtual Keys Can Be Hidden
10:14
Sunny 30°C
Pasig
Tue, Mar 12
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Music
Play Store
Clock
Google

4.9 A More Organized Photo Album

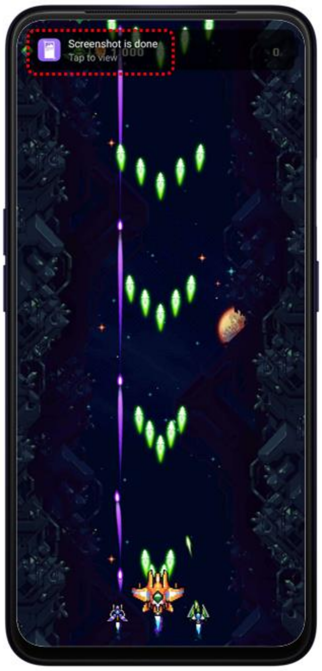
Smartly recognizes the type of media on your album and categorizes it. Categorizing it in a tab manner is easy on the eye and more convenient to search. It is a lot easier to filter and search pictures and videos. GIF has even been added. See Album


00:34
Time, Place, People...
Photos
Albums
Memories
People
Location
Media Type
Videos 173
GIF 1
Continuous Shooting 16
Pano 2
Time-Lapse 3
Recently Deleted
00:33
Continuous Shooting
Select
16 photos

4.10 Take Screenshot Without Disturbing your Game

You can now take a screenshot while gaming without a pause or the screenshot picture popping up since screenshot will show a notification that it was done. You can tap the notification to view it or do it later.

Note: Old way of taking screenshot is still available in some instances.

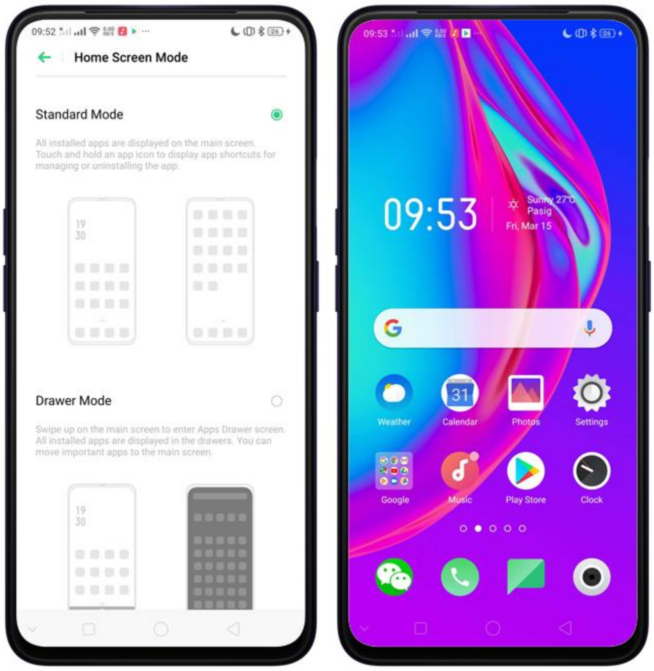


Screenshot is done
Tap to view

4.11 Added Home Screen Mode

You can now choose modes for your Home Screen. To go choose the Home Screen mode, go to [**Settings**] > [**Home Screen & Lock Screen Magazine**] > [**Home Screen Mode**] then choose which one you like best.

Standard mode. All installed apps are displayed on the main screen.



Home Screen Mode

Standard Mode ●

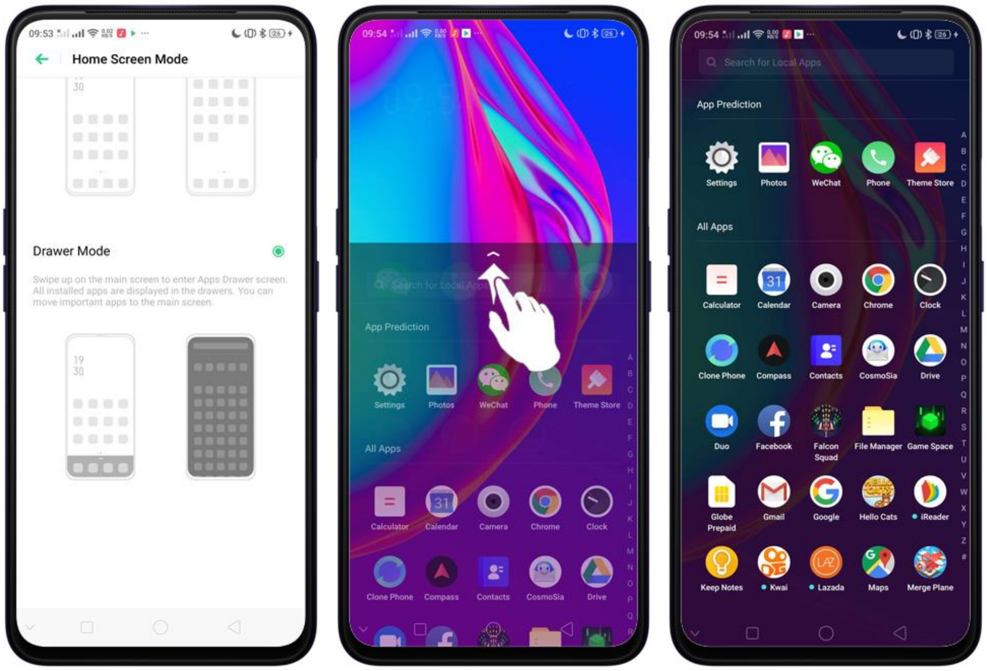
All installed apps are displayed on the main screen. Touch and hold an app icon to display app shortcuts for managing or uninstalling the app.

Drawer Mode ○

Swipe up on the main screen to enter Apps Drawer screen. All installed apps are displayed in the drawers. You can move important apps to the main screen.

09:52
09:53
Sunny 27°C
Pasig
Fri, Mar 15
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock

Drawer Mode. All installed apps are displayed in the Apps Drawer screen. You need to swipe up on the main screen to enter Apps Drawer screen. See Home Screen & Lock Screen Magazine



Home Screen Mode

Drawer Mode ●

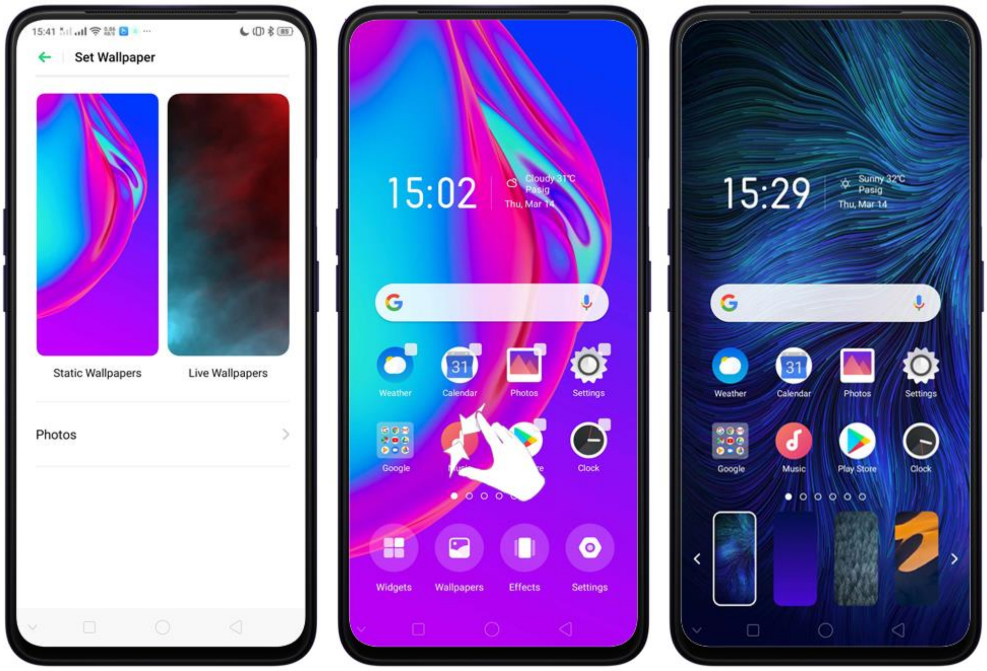
Swipe up on the main screen to enter Apps Drawer screen. All installed apps are displayed in the drawers. You can move important apps to the main screen.

Search for Local Apps
App Prediction
Settings
Photos
WeChat
Phone
Theme Store
All Apps
Calculator
Calendar
Camera
Chrome
Clock
Clone Phone
Compass
Contacts
CosmoSia
Drive
Duo
Facebook
Falcon Squad
File Manager
Game Space
Globe Prepaid
Gmail
Google
Hello Cats
iReader
Keep Notes
Kwai
Lazada
Maps
Merge Plane

4.12 Static and Live Wallpaper

Amazing Wallpapers to choose from. More that the Static Wallpaper which has variations of sophistication you also have the Live Wallpaper.

Change the wallpaper. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Home Screen & Lock Screen Magazine]**. Scroll to the end of the page, then tap **[Set wallpaper]**. You can also quickly change you wallpaper by pinching your fingers together on the Home Screen.


Set Wallpaper
Static Wallpapers
Live Wallpapers
Photos
15:02
Cloudy 31°C
Pasig
Thu, Mar 14
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Clock
Widgets
Wallpapers
Effects
Settings
15:29
Sunny 32°C
Pasig
Thu, Mar 14
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock

4.13 VOOC 3.0

Waiting for hours to charge your phone is a thing of the past. With VOOC 3.0, you can power up your phone in a flash.

Understanding VOOC 3.0

VOOC (Voltage Open Loop Multistep Constant-Current Charging) is a fast charging technology found by OPPO. The new VOOC 3.0 relies on higher current to maximize its charging efficiency, better than its previous version.

How does VOOC 3.0 works?

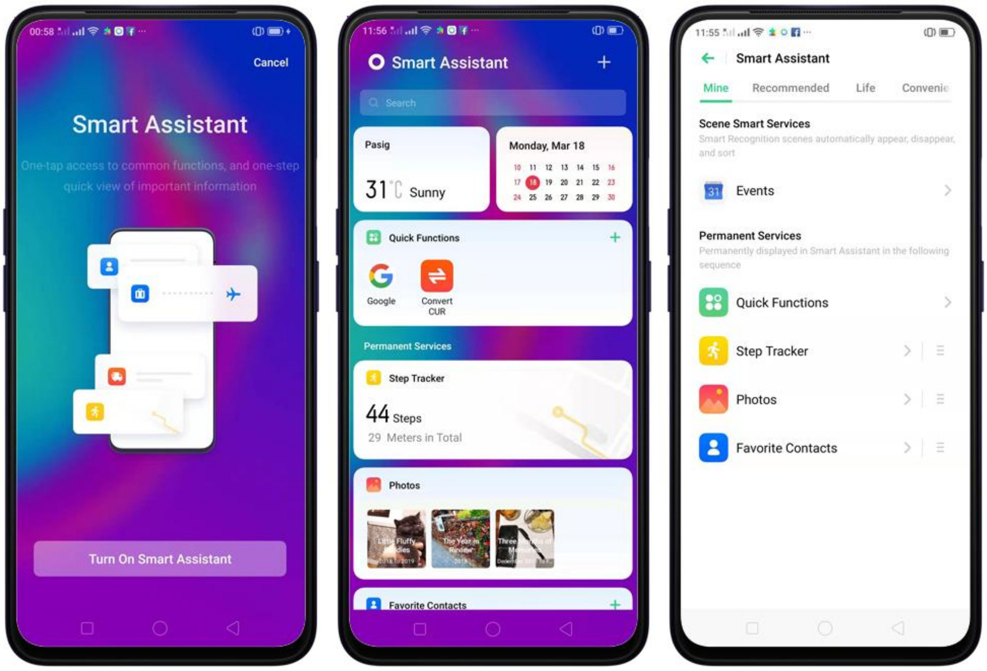
VOOC 3.0 can fully charge a battery 20 minutes faster than VOOC 2.0. It uses lower voltage, saving the phone from overheating, even when playing a video or game while charging. VOOC 3.0 reaches full charge 20 minutes faster than its previous version. Enjoy your fully charged OPPO phone.

VOOC 3.0
Flash Charge

4.14 Smart Assistant Upgrade

Smart Assistant has been given a new look and now has a category for some features. It categorizes into Mine, Recommended, Life, and Convenience.

To enable/disable Smart Assistant on the Home Screen. Go to [Settings] > [Smart Service] and turn on [Smart Assistant]. Or swipe right from the left edge of the Home Screen, then tap [Turn on Smart Assistant].


00:58
Cancel
Smart Assistant
Turn On Smart Assistant
11:56
Smart Assistant
Search
Pasig
31°C Sunny
Monday, Mar 18
Quick Functions
Google
Convert CUR
Permanent Services
Step Tracker
44 Steps
29 Meters in Total
Photos
Favorite Contacts
11:55
Smart Assistant
Mine
Recommended
Life
Convenie
Scene Smart Services
Events
Permanent Services
Quick Functions
Step Tracker
Photos
Favorite Contacts

One-tap access to common functions, and one-step quick view of important information

Smart Recognition scenes automatically appear, disappear, and sort

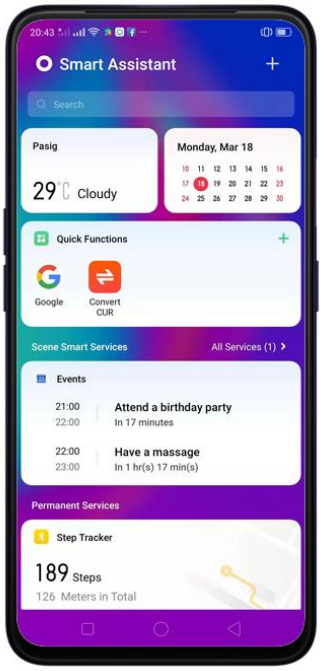
Permanently displayed in Smart Assistant in the following sequence

To manage the features on your Smart Assistant, tap + and check the features you can enjoy and manage them.

- Quick Functions. Provides you with quick access to apps. Tap Add More Apps, then choose an app. You can open the app directly by tapping its icon on Smart Assistant.
- Weather. Provides you with Weather conditions of your current location.

- **Steps Tracker.** Keeps track of your daily steps and distance covered. Tap Step Tracker to enable.
- **Events.** Keeps track of all your events in the Calendar app.
- **Favorite Contacts.** Let's you make call with one tap. Tap on Favorite Contacts, to enable then your favorite contacts will show.
- **Photos.** You can have a quick view of your latest photo album. Tap Photos to enable.

Scene Smart Services. Scene Smart Services recognizes the important events happening on your calendar on a daily basis. If there are events happening on your calendar, it will automatically sort, appear, and disappear events.


20:43
Smart Assistant
+
Search
Pasig
29°C Cloudy
Monday, Mar 18
10 11 12 13 14 15 16
17 18 19 20 21 22 23
24 25 26 27 28 29 30
Quick Functions
+
Google
Convert CUR
Scene Smart Services
All Services (1)
Events
Permanent Services
Step Tracker

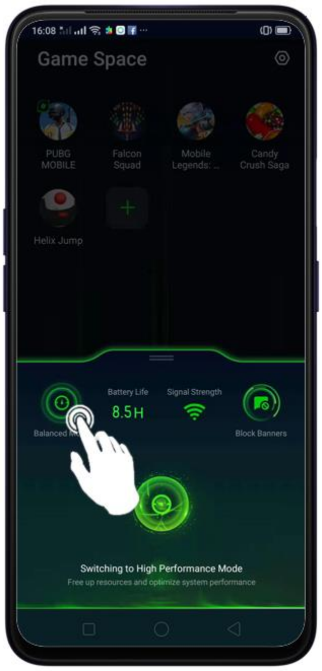
21:00 22:00 Attend a birthday party
In 17 minutes

22:00 23:00 Have a massage
In 1 hr(s) 17 min(s)

189 Steps
126 Meters in Total

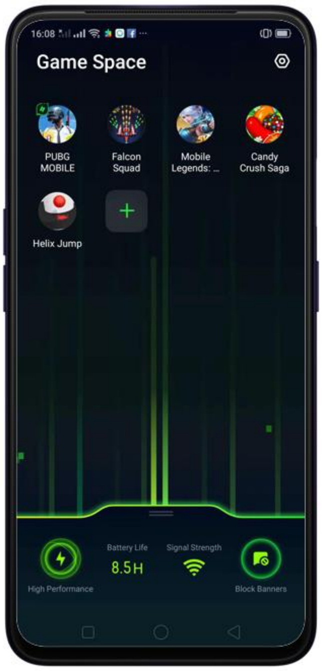
4.15 Hyper Boost

Hyper Boost is a new technology that aims in improving the system of your phone. If you are a gamer then you will enjoy a better gaming experience. This will also work with some of the apps on your phone. Hyper Boost makes your phone perform better but saves battery. How awesome is that? On your Game Space app, choose High Performance so you can use Hyper Boost technology.


16:08
Game Space
PUBG MOBILE
Falcon Squad
Mobile Legends: ...
Candy Crush Saga
Helix Jump
Battery Life
8.5H
Signal Strength
Balanced
Block Banners

Switching to High Performance Mode

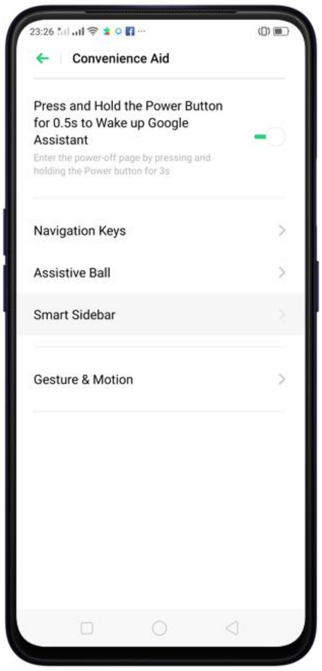
Free up resources and optimize system performance


16:08
Game Space
PUBG MOBILE
Falcon Squad
Mobile Legends: ...
Candy Crush Saga
Helix Jump
Battery Life
8.5H
Signal Strength
High Performance
Block Banners

4.16 Smart Sidebar

Have quick access with your favorite apps and tools. This enables you to switch between apps, transfer files, reply messages, or take screenshots when playing a game or watching a video.

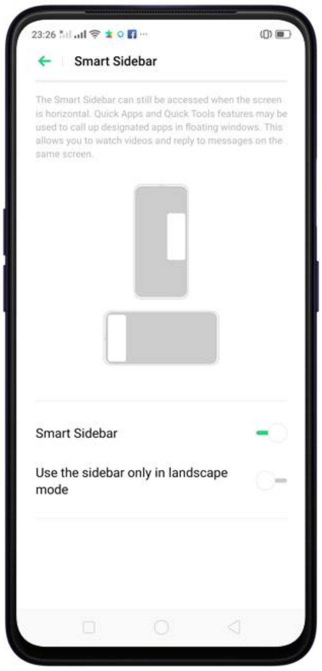
To enable Smart Sidebar, go to [Settings] > [Convenience Aid] > [Smart Sidebar] > toggle [Smart Sidebar] to green to enable.


23:26
Convenience Aid

Press and Hold the Power Button for 0.5s to Wake up Google Assistant

Enter the power-off page by pressing and holding the Power button for 3s

Navigation Keys
Assistive Ball
Smart Sidebar
Gesture & Motion

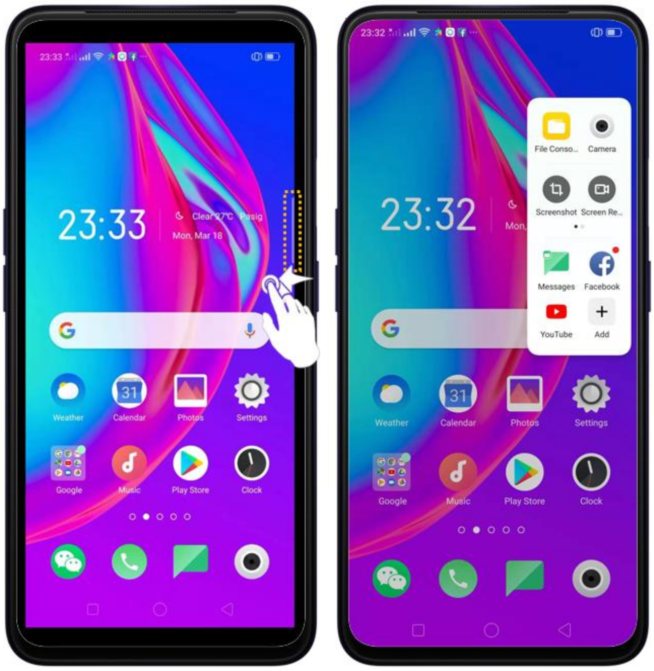

23:26
Smart Sidebar

The Smart Sidebar can still be accessed when the screen is horizontal. Quick Apps and Quick Tools features may be used to call up designated apps in floating windows. This allows you to watch videos and reply to messages on the same screen.

Smart Sidebar

Use the sidebar only in landscape mode

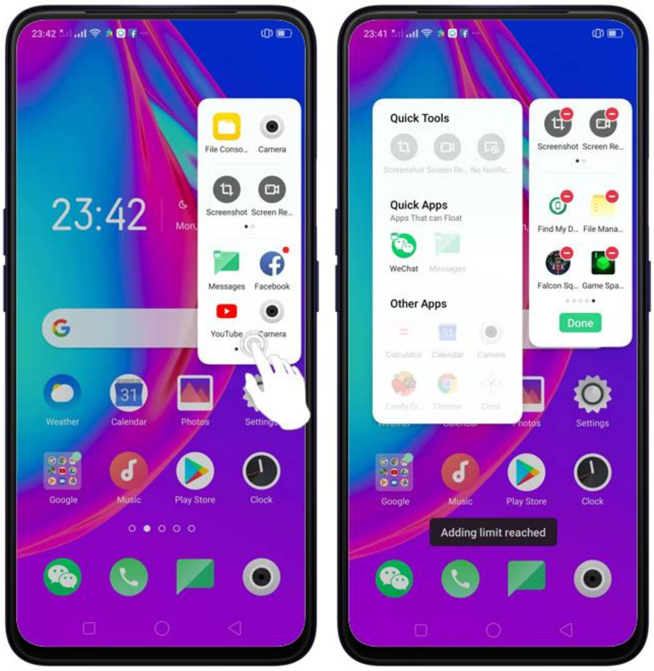
Once enabled, you'll be able to see a white vertical line on the side right side of your phone. Slightly swipe it to the left and the Smart Sidebar will show.


23:33
Clear 27°C Pasig
Mon, Mar 18
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock
23:32
File Conso...
Camera
Screenshot
Screen Re...
Messages
Facebook
YouTube
Add

Managing Smart Sidebar

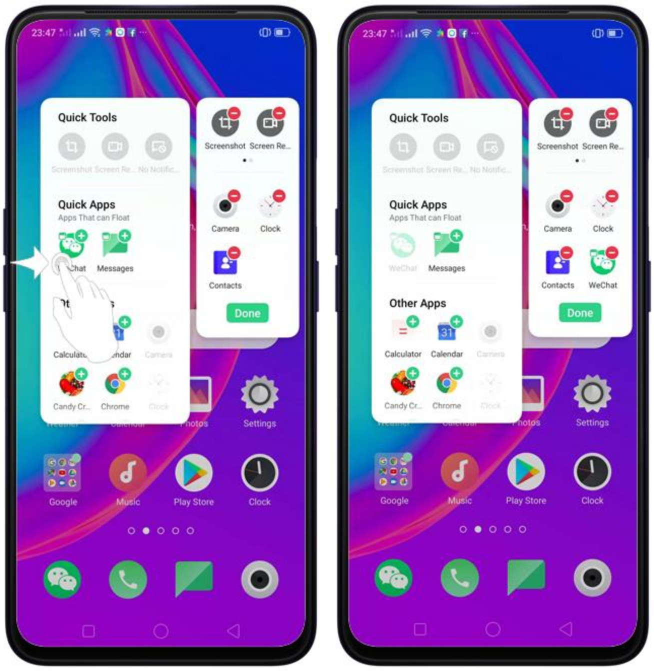
1. **If the Smart Sidebar is full, long press the Quick tools or the Quick Apps area for you to be able to manage or edit what will show on your Smart Sidebar.**

   Note: Long pressing the camera area will not work since you can't add anything here


23:42
File Conso...
Camera
Screenshot
Screen Re...
Messages
Facebook
YouTube
Camera
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock
23:41
Quick Tools
Screenshot
Screen Re...
No Notific...
Quick Apps
Apps That can Float
WeChat
Messages
Other Apps
Calculator
Calendar
Camera
Candy Cr...
Chrome
Clock
Find My D...
File Mana...
Falcon Sq...
Game Spa...
Done

Adding limit reached

2. If the Smart Sidebar is not full, tap on ⊕ to add tools or apps then tap each one of them. You can tap **Done** or just tap anywhere on the Home Screen for changes to be made. If you want to remove app/s just tap ⊖

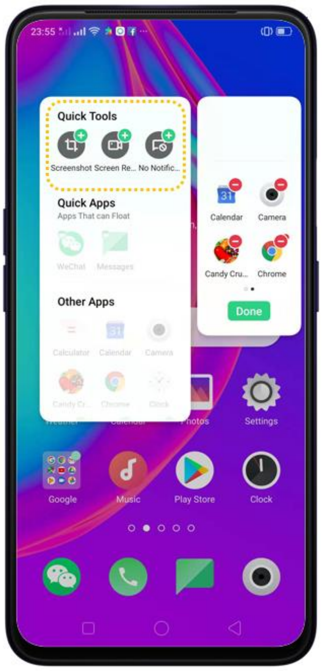

23:47
Quick Tools
Screenshot
Screen Re...
No Notific...
Quick Apps
Apps That can Float
WeChat
Messages
Other Apps
Calculator
Calendar
Camera
Candy Cr...
Chrome
Clock
Camera
Clock
Contacts
WeChat
Done
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock

The tools and apps available for Smart Sidebar

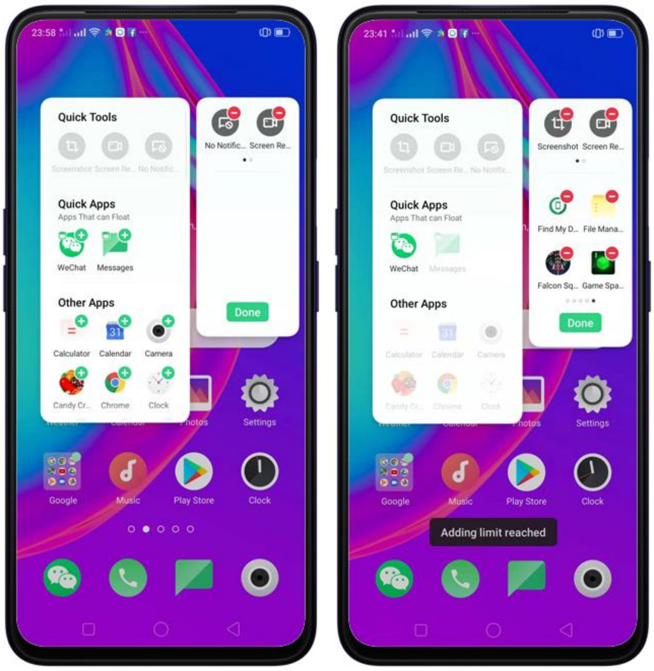
1. Quick tools. There are 3 available slots and tools to choose from. You

can add them all or just choose the one you like to show.

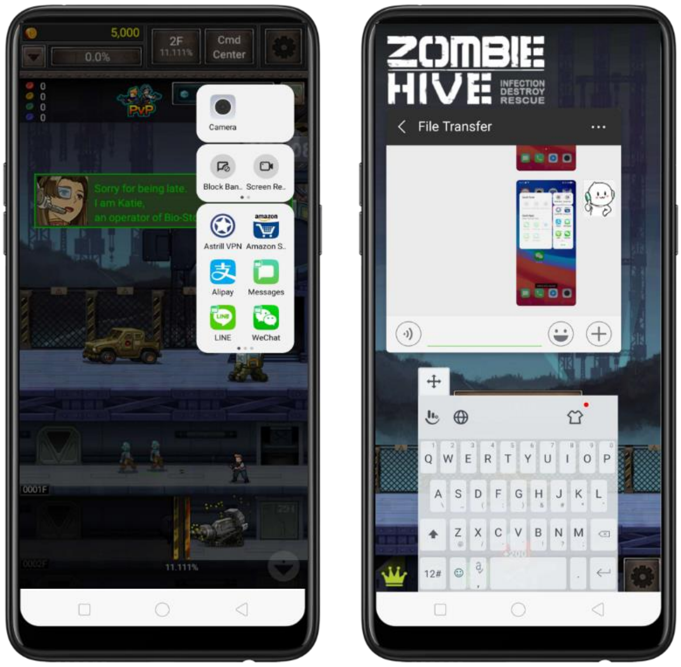
- Screenshot
- Screen Recording
- No Notifications


23:55
Quick Tools
Screenshot
Screen Re...
No Notific...
Quick Apps
Apps That can Float
WeChat
Messages
Other Apps
Calculator
Calendar
Camera
Candy Cr...
Chrome
Clock
Calendar
Camera
Candy Cru...
Chrome
Done
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock

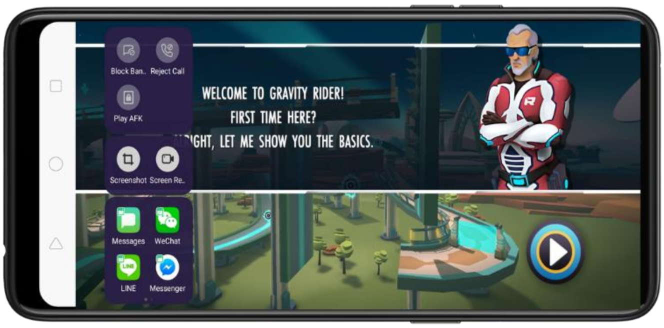
2. Quick Apps. Quick Apps has been divided into two: Apps that can float and other apps. As long as the app supports the floating feature then it will show on the floating apps.
3. Other Apps. Other Apps will show all apps that are on your phone. However, you can only add 18 apps on the Smart Sidebar. You will be notified "Adding limit reached" if Quick Apps slot is full. Choose the one that you frequently use.


Quick Tools
Screenshot
Screen Re...
No Notific...
Quick Apps
Apps That can Float
WeChat
Messages
Other Apps
Calculator
Calendar
Camera
Candy Cr...
Chrome
Clock
Done
Find My D...
File Mana...
Falcon Sq...
Game Spa...
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock
Adding limit reached

Smart game sidebar/Game Assistant. Enjoy your games and at the same time check and reply messages or posts on your social media. Never be left behind even when enjoying your games.

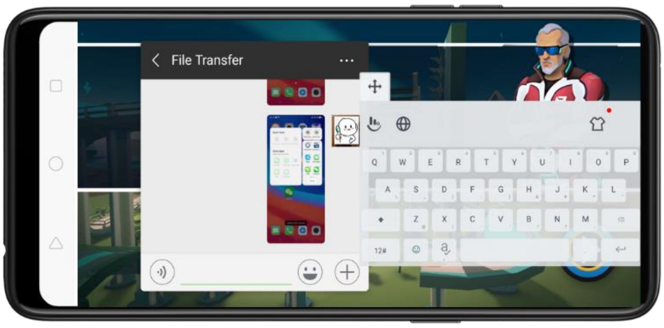

Sorry for being late.
I am Katie,
an operator of Bio-St

5,000
0.0%
2F
11.111%
Cmd Center
PvP
Camera
Block Ban...
Screen Re...
Astrill VPN
Amazon S...
Alipay
Messages
LINE
WeChat
ZOMBIE HIVE
INFECTION DESTROY RESCUE
File Transfer
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M
12#



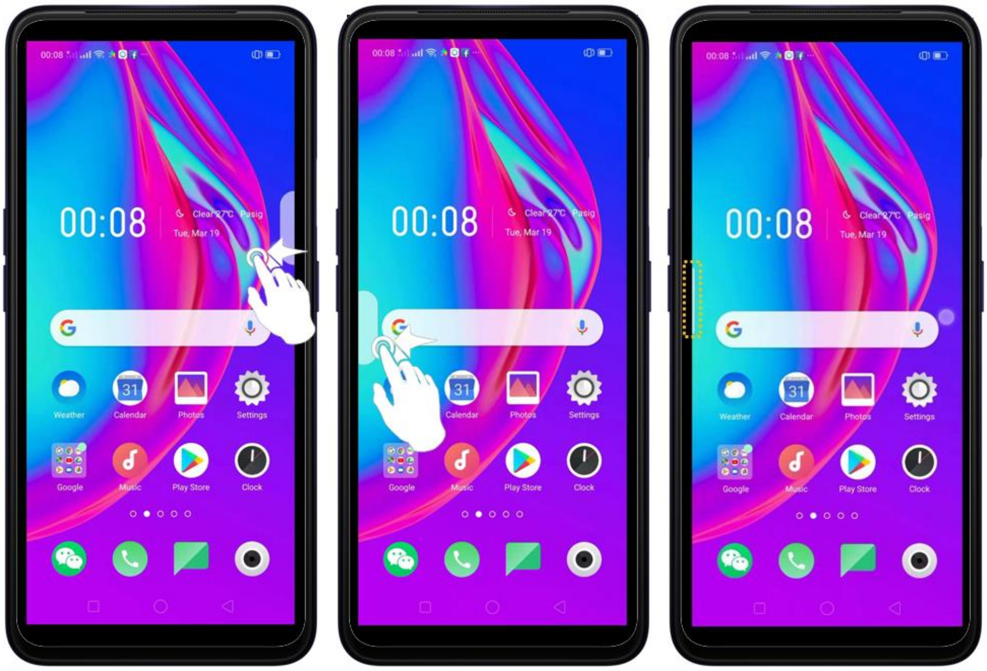
WELCOME TO GRAVITY RIDER!
FIRST TIME HERE?
IGHT, LET ME SHOW YOU THE BASICS.

Block Ban..
Reject Call
Play AFK
Screenshot
Screen Re..
Messages
WeChat
LINE
Messenger



File Transfer

Move or transfer the position of the Smart Sidebar from right to left side or vice versa. Press and hold the Smart Sidebar icon and drag it to the other side. You may put it on a higher or lower position.



00:08
Clear 27°C Pasig
Tue, Mar 19
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock

5. Basics

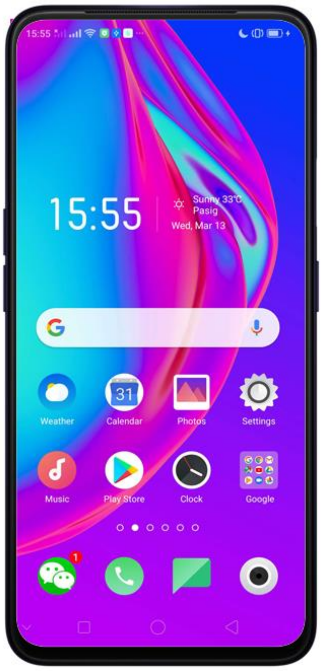
5.1 Use Apps

Open apps

The Home Screen shows all the apps on your phone. Tap any application icons to get started.

Apps will show the number of messages pending to be read in red on the Home Screen icon.

If you're using Swipe Gestures, see Navigation Gestures.


15:55
Sunny 33°C
Pasig
Wed, Mar 13
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Music
Play Store
Clock
Google

Quick Actions

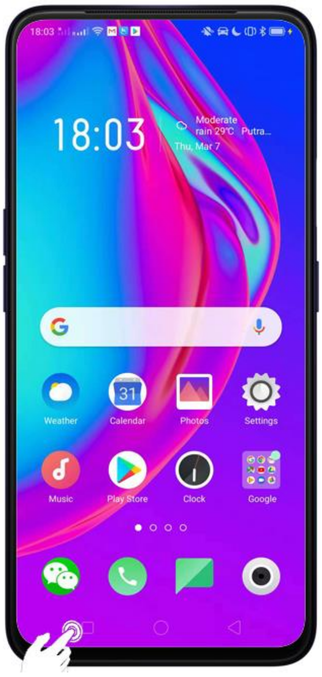
Press and hold an app icon to bring up "Quick Actions," which offers shortcuts to specific features within that app. When the menu appears, tap the shortcut you would like to use, then the app will open directly to that feature.

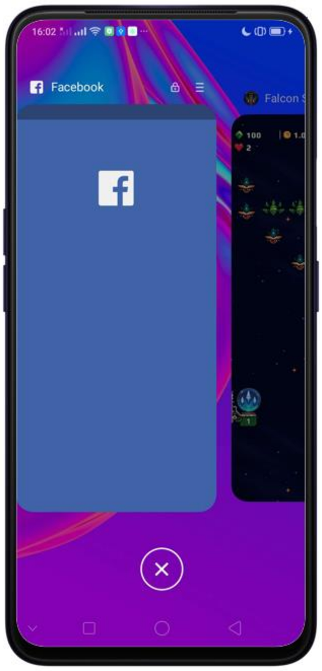
For example, go to your Home Screen and press and hold on the icon for the Camera app, you'll see a mini menu that lets you jump straight to Portrait Shooting, Beauty Selfie, Video Recording, or the App Info page.

15:58
Sunny 33°C
Pasig
Wed, Mar 13
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Portrait Shooting
Beauty Selfie
Video Recording
App Info
Music
Play Store

Switch between apps

Tapping **Menu button** on the bottom left would bring up a menu for apps that you were in. Swipe left or right to see more. To switch to another app, tap it.

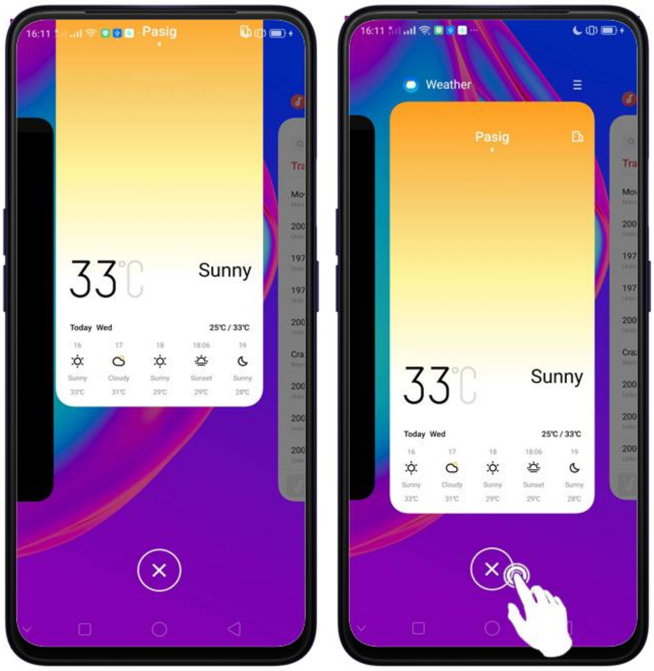

18:03
Moderate rain 29°C Putra...
Thu, Mar 7
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Music
Play Store
Clock
Google


Facebook
Falcon

Close apps

Tap Menu button on the bottom left, and then:

- **Close an app**: Swipe the app up to the top edge of the screen.
- **Close all apps**: Tap ⊗ to clean up the list.

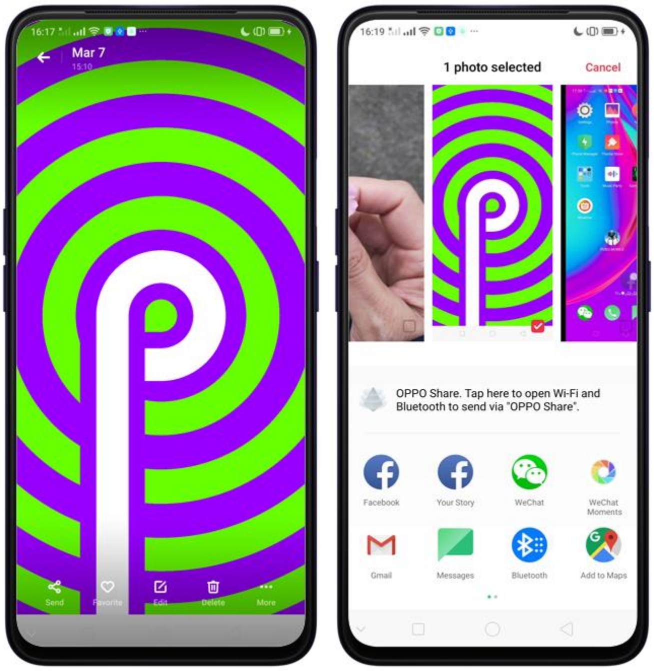

16:11
Pasig
33°C
Sunny
Today Wed
25°C / 33°C
Weather
Pasig
33°C
Sunny
Today Wed
25°C / 33°C

5.2 Share from Apps

In addition to sharing your information from the Files app, you can also share from many other apps on your device.

Share from apps. In many apps, you can tap Send or to choose how to share your information. The choices vary depending on the app you're using. Additional options may appear if you've downloaded apps with multiple sharing options.

Take the Photos app as an example, tap and you'll see all the sharing options.

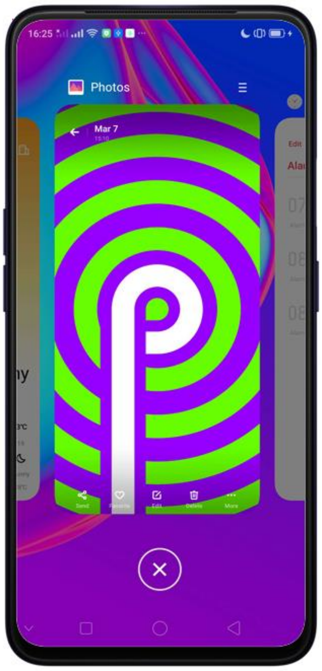

16:17
Mar 7
15:10
Send
Favorite
Edit
Delete
More
16:19
1 photo selected
Cancel
Facebook
Your Story
WeChat
WeChat Moments
Gmail
Messages
Bluetooth
Add to Maps

OPPO Share. Tap here to open Wi-Fi and Bluetooth to send via "OPPO Share".

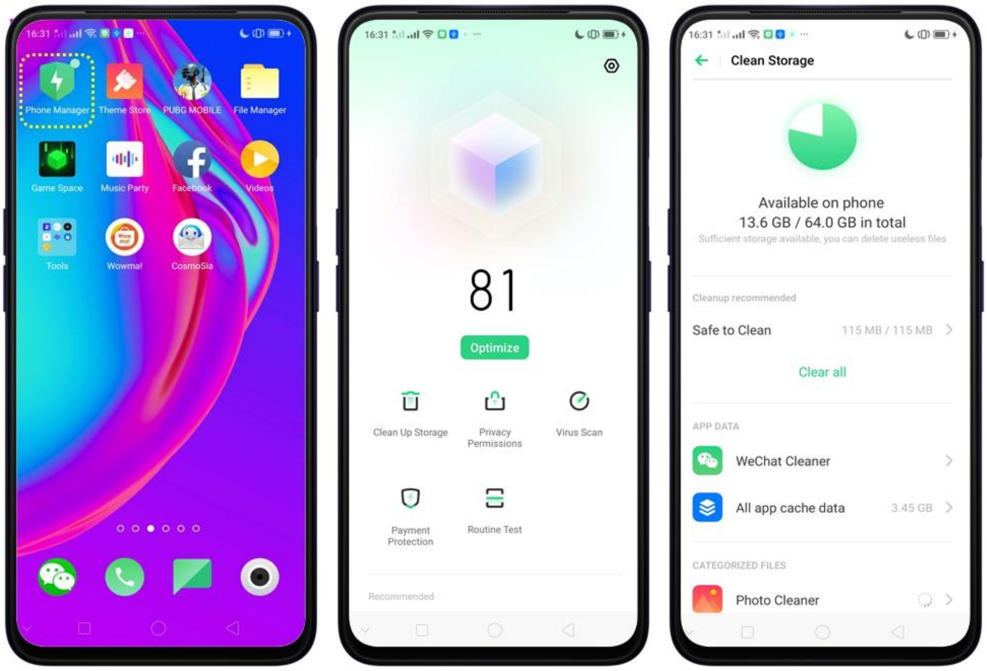
5.3 One-tap Cleanup

One-tap cleanup option helps you to make your phone perform steadily and faster.

Stop background apps. Tap **Menu button** then tap × to close all active apps. If you want to close a specific app, swipe it up.


16:25
Photos
Mar 7
Send
Favorite
Edit
Delete
More

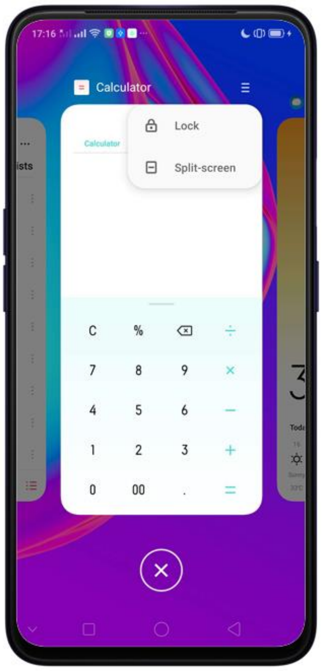
Clean-up & Accelerate. Tap **Phone Manager** on the Home Screen, then tap **[Clean Storage]**. Scan and delete all kinds of junk files. You can also delete the app data and other unnecessary files, such as photos, audio, videos**,** and documents.


Phone Manager
Theme Store
PUBG MOBILE
File Manager
Game Space
Music Party
Facebook
Videos
Tools
Wowma!
CosmoSia
81
Optimize
Clean Up Storage
Privacy Permissions
Virus Scan
Payment Protection
Routine Test
Recommended
Clean Storage
Available on phone
13.6 GB / 64.0 GB in total
Sufficient storage available, you can delete useless files
Cleanup recommended
Safe to Clean
115 MB / 115 MB
Clear all
APP DATA
WeChat Cleaner
All app cache data
3.45 GB
CATEGORIZED FILES
Photo Cleaner

5.4 Lock the Running Background Apps

If you want some apps to be always connected and reachable, do the following:

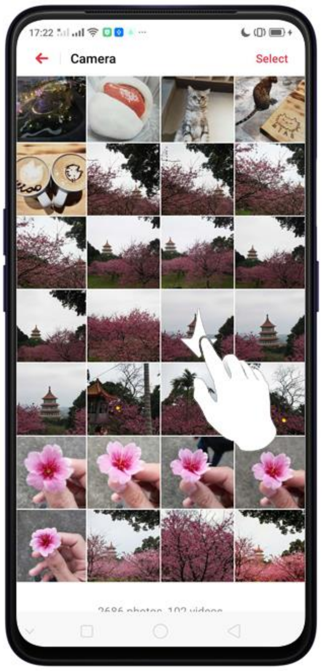
Lock an app. Tap **Menu** button to reveal your open apps, then tap 🔒, notice that a lock appears on the upper-left corner of the app.
Repeat the action for other apps.


Calculator
Lock
Split-screen

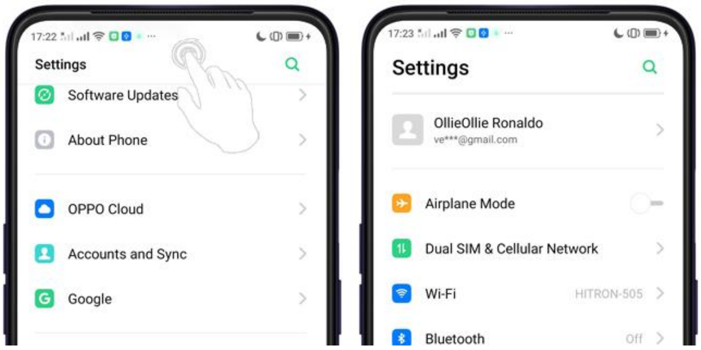
5.5 View, Zoom In and Out

Use the touchscreen to interact directly with what is displayed on your phone's screen.

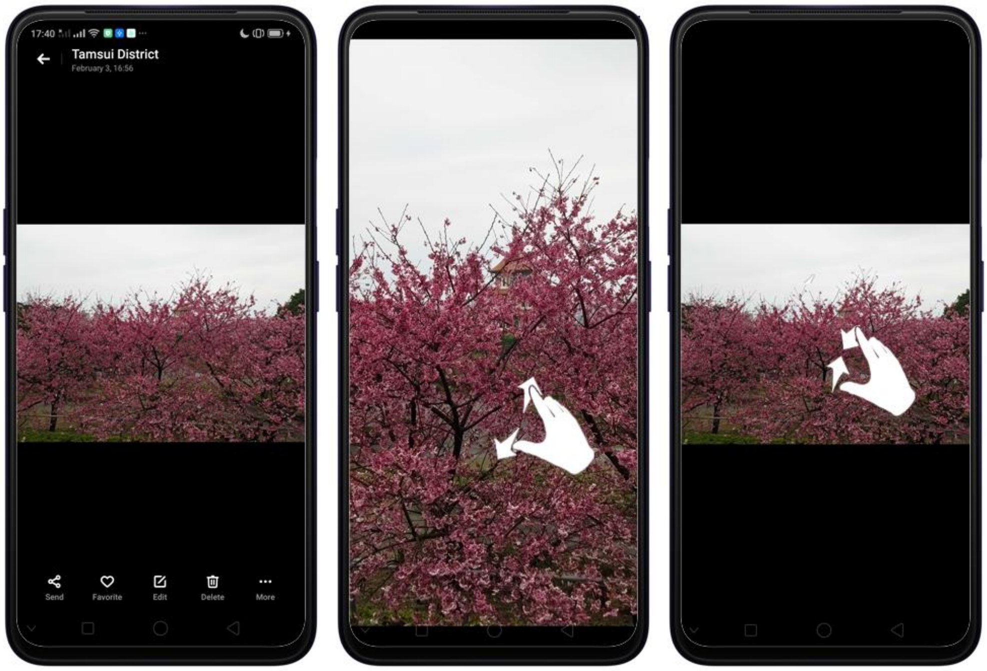
View items. Drag up or down to scroll. You can also drag some screens in any direction, such as webpages. Flick to scroll quickly. You can wait for the scrolling to come to a stop, or touch anywhere on the screen to stop it immediately.


Camera
Select

On some screens such as Settings and Contacts page, double-tap the status bar to quickly scroll to the top.


17:22
Settings
Software Updates
About Phone
OPPO Cloud
Accounts and Sync
Google
17:23
Settings
OllieOllie Ronaldo
ve***@gmail.com
Airplane Mode
Dual SIM & Cellular Network
Wi-Fi
HITRON-505
Bluetooth
Off

Zoom in and out. When viewing photos, maps, or web pages, you can zoom in and out. Pinch your fingers together or apart. For photos and web pages, you can double-tap to zoom in, then double-tap again to zoom out. For maps, double-tap to zoom in and tap once with two fingers to zoom out.

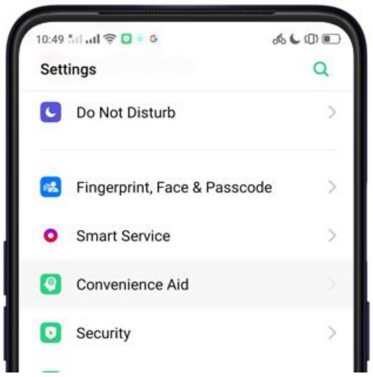

17:40
Tamsui District
February 3, 16:56
Send
Favorite
Edit
Delete
More

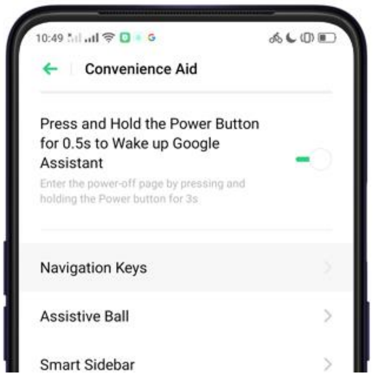
5.6 Convenience Aid

5.6.1. Navigation Keys

The virtual navigation keys appear at the bottom of every screen and can be hidden when not in use. You can also arrange the order of "Back" and "Recent" depending on your preference.

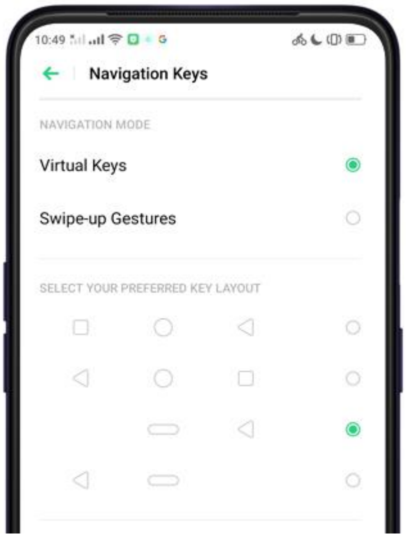
To switch between navigation keys and gestures, go to **[Settings]** > **[Convenience Aid]** > **[Navigation Keys]**.


10:49
Settings
Do Not Disturb
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart Service
Convenience Aid
Security


10:49
Convenience Aid
Press and Hold the Power Button for 0.5s to Wake up Google Assistant
Enter the power-off page by pressing and holding the Power button for 3s
Navigation Keys
Assistive Ball
Smart Sidebar

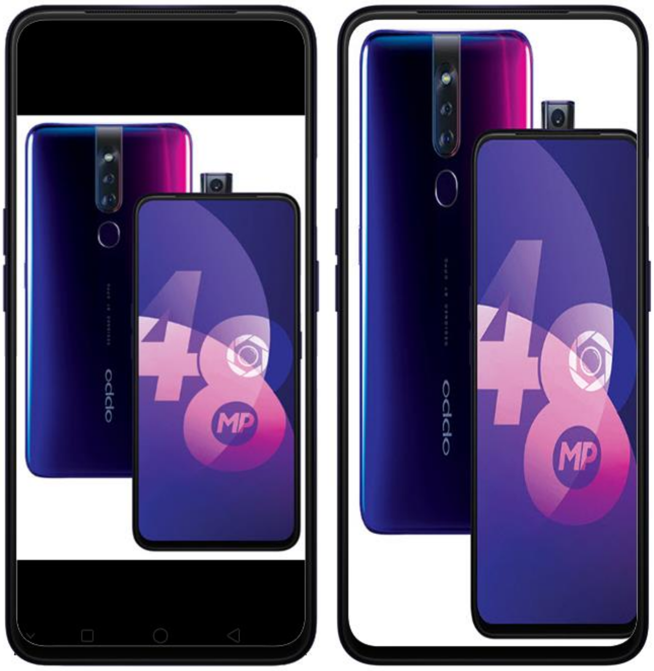
Virtual Key Navigation

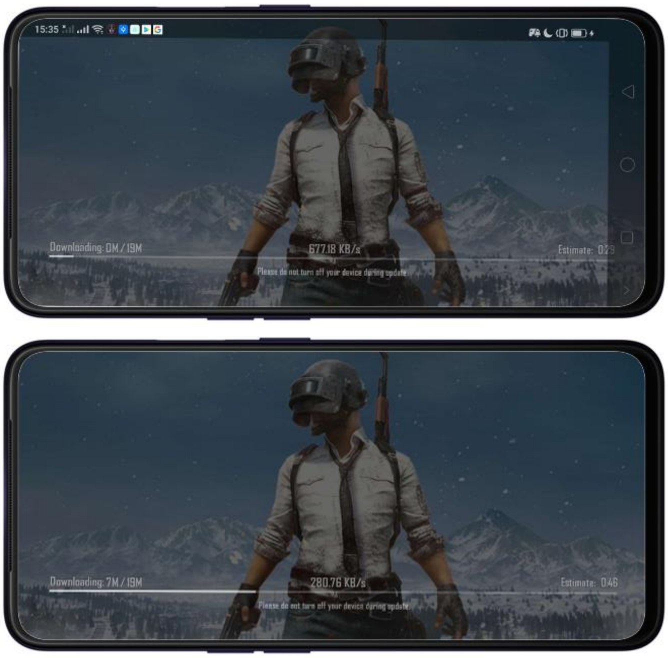
Enable virtual key navigation. Virtual key navigation is the default setting. If you want to enable it manually, tap **Virtual Key Navigation**.
Change the order of virtual navigation keys. The keys follow the typical order for OPPO: Menu, Home, and Return from left to right. If you are left-handed, you can change them to the **Return-Home-Menu** order.


10:49
Navigation Keys
NAVIGATION MODE
Virtual Keys ●
Swipe-up Gestures ○
SELECT YOUR PREFERRED KEY LAYOUT
□ ○ ◁ ○
◁ ○ □ ○
▭ ◁ ●
◁ ▭ ○

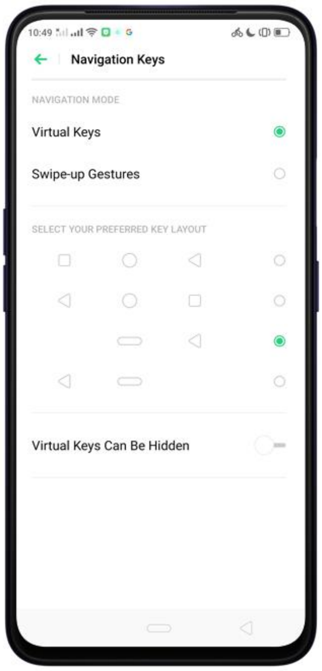
Hide the virtual navigation keys. When you launch a full-screen app, the keys will automatically hide~~,~~ and can be brought back with a simple swipe:

- When in portrait mode, swipe up from the bottom.
- When in landscape mode, swipe from the bottom to the left.




15:35
Downloading: 0M / 19M
677.18 KB/s
Please do not turn off your device during update
Downloading: 7M / 19M
280.76 KB/s
Estimate: 0:46
Please do not turn off your device during update

Manually hide the virtual navigation keys. To set the keys to appear only when needed, turn on **Virtual Navigation Keys Can Be Hidden**. Then you can tap ⌄ on the left-lower corner of the screen to hide the keys, and swipe from the bottom to reveal them.



Navigation Keys

NAVIGATION MODE

Virtual Keys ●

Swipe-up Gestures ○

SELECT YOUR PREFERRED KEY LAYOUT

□ ○ ◁ ○

◁ ○ □ ○

▭ ◁ ●

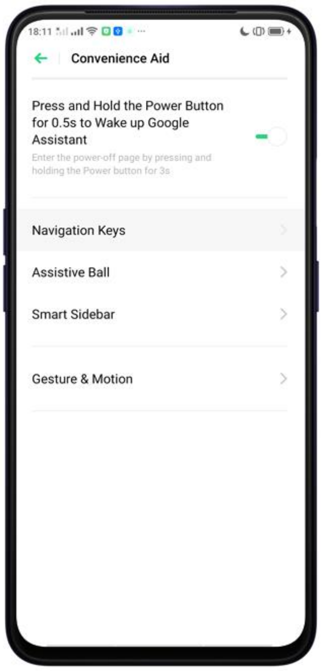
◁ ▭ ○

Virtual Keys Can Be Hidden

Swipe-up Gesture Navigation

Four kinds of new swipe-up navigation gestures are added to your phone, and you can choose one that suits you most.

Use swipe-up navigation gestures. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Convenience Aid]** > **[Navigation Keys]** and tap **[Swipe-up Gesture Navigation]**.



Convenience Aid

Press and Hold the Power Button for 0.5s to Wake up Google Assistant

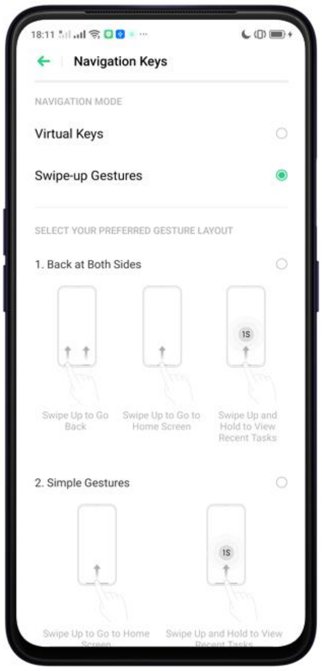
Enter the power-off page by pressing and holding the Power button for 3s

Navigation Keys

Assistive Ball

Smart Sidebar

Gesture & Motion



18:11
Swipe Up to Go Back
Swipe Up to Go to Home Screen
Swipe Up and Hold to View Recent Tasks
1S
Swipe Up to Go to Home Screen
Swipe Up and Hold to View Recent Tasks
1S

Navigation Keys

NAVIGATION MODE

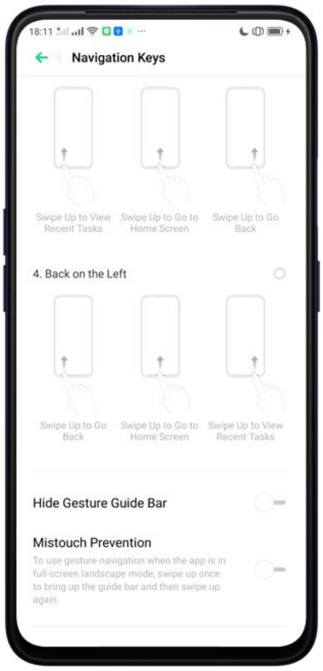
Virtual Keys ○

Swipe-up Gestures ●

SELECT YOUR PREFERRED GESTURE LAYOUT

1. Back at Both Sides ○

2. Simple Gestures ○



18:11
Swipe Up to View Recent Tasks
Swipe Up to Go to Home Screen
Swipe Up to Go Back
Swipe Up to Go Back
Swipe Up to Go to Home Screen
Swipe Up to View Recent Tasks

Navigation Keys

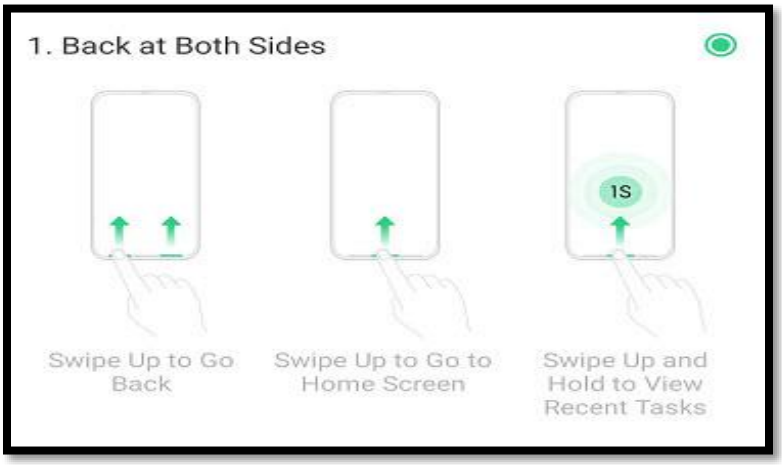
4. Back on the Left ○

Hide Gesture Guide Bar

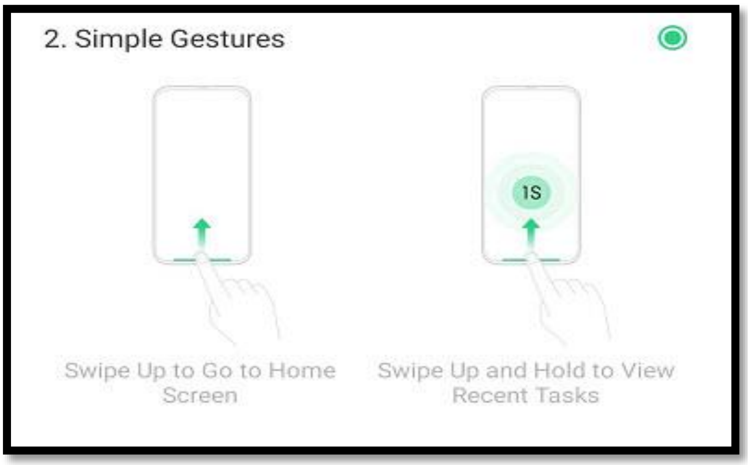
Mistouch Prevention

To use gesture navigation when the app is in full-screen landscape mode, swipe up once to bring up the guide bar and then swipe up again.

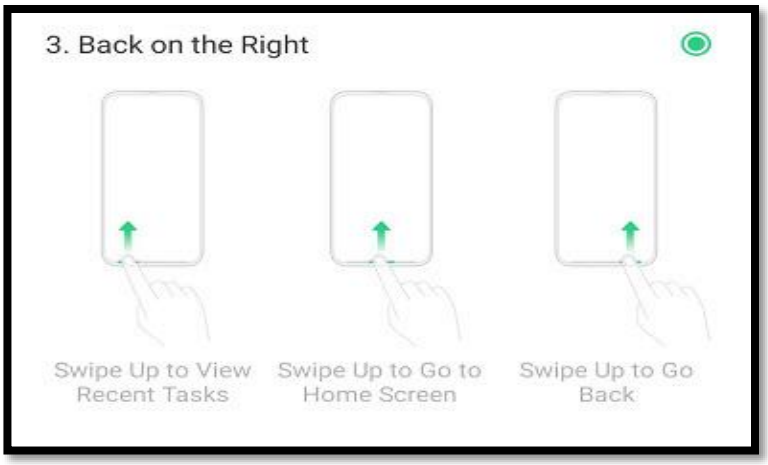
1. Back at both sides. Swipe up from the left or right bottom to return to upper page, swipe up from the middle bottom to get to the Home Screen, and swipe up from the middle bottom and pause 1 second to view recent tasks.


1. Back at Both Sides
1S
Swipe Up to Go Back
Swipe Up to Go to Home Screen
Swipe Up and Hold to View Recent Tasks

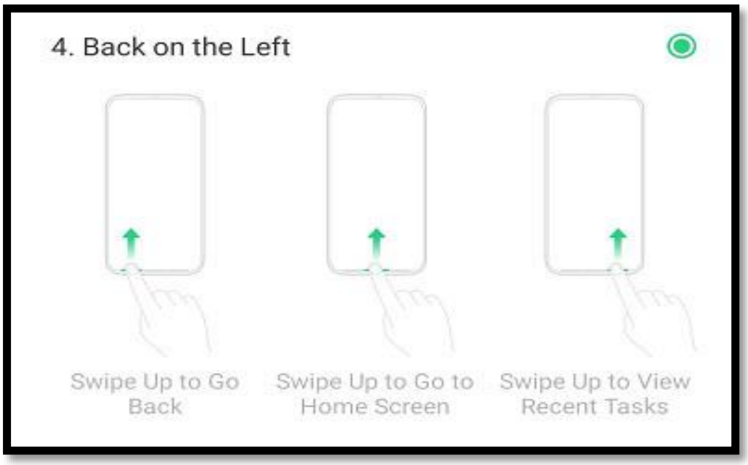
2. Simple gestures. Swipe up from the middle bottom to get to the Home Screen, and swipe up from the middle bottom and pause 1 second to view recent tasks.


2. Simple Gestures
1S
Swipe Up to Go to Home Screen
Swipe Up and Hold to View Recent Tasks

3. Back on the right. Swipe up from the left bottom to view recent tasks, swipe up from the middle bottom to get to the Home Screen, and swipe up from the right bottom to return to upper page.


3. Back on the Right
Swipe Up to View Recent Tasks
Swipe Up to Go to Home Screen
Swipe Up to Go Back

4. Back on the left. Swipe up from the left bottom to return to upper page, swipe up from the middle bottom to get to the Home Screen, and swipe up from the right bottom to view recent tasks.

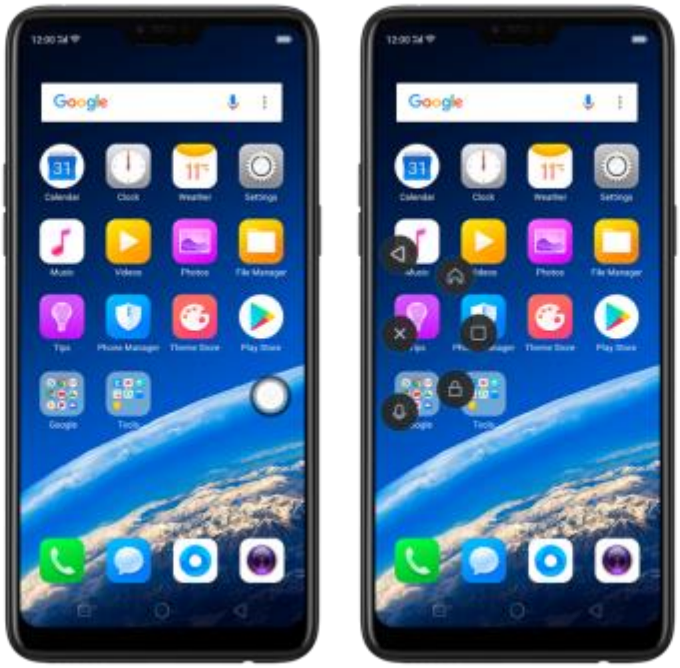


Hide Gesture Guide Bar. Gesture Guide Bar is the translucent line at the bottom of the screen, which allows you to quickly distinguish the left, middle, and right swipe-up regions. To hide the guide bar, turn on **[Hide Gesture Guide Bar]**.

Prevent mistakenly touching. Turn on **[Mistouch Prevention]**. To use gesture navigation when the app is in Landscape Mode, you need to swipe up to bring up the guide bar first, then swipe up again in the same area.

5.6.2. Assistive Ball

Applying the Assistive Ball feature provides options to access several regular phone features through the touchscreen, rather than the tactile buttons. It enables you to use the virtual navigation keys with just one finger, and also open the notification center, take a screenshot, and more. When you perform gestures that are difficult for you, Assistive Ball can help.

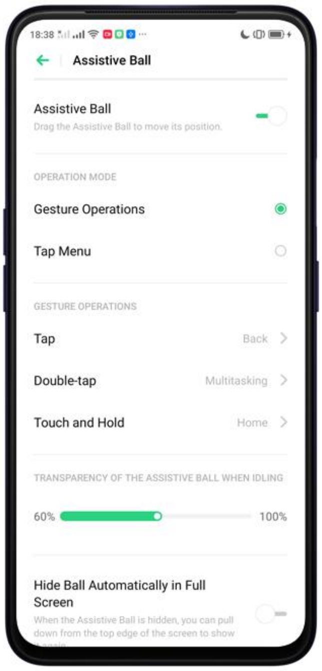


Assistive Ball lets you perform a wide range of features:

- Return to upper page
- Go to the Home Screen
- View recent tasks
- Open Notification Center
- Lock the screen
- Enter One-hand Mode
- Take a screenshot

To configure the Assistive Ball menu, go to **[Settings]** > **[Convenience Aid]** > **[Assistive Ball]**, then choose one operation mode:

Gesture Operations. You can assign different actions like single tap, double tap, or touch and hold. For example, assign “Home” to “Touch and hold”, then you can long press the Assistive Ball to go to the Home Screen.


Assistive Ball

Assistive Ball ●
Drag the Assistive Ball to move its position.

OPERATION MODE

Gesture Operations ●

Tap Menu ○

GESTURE OPERATIONS

Tap — Back

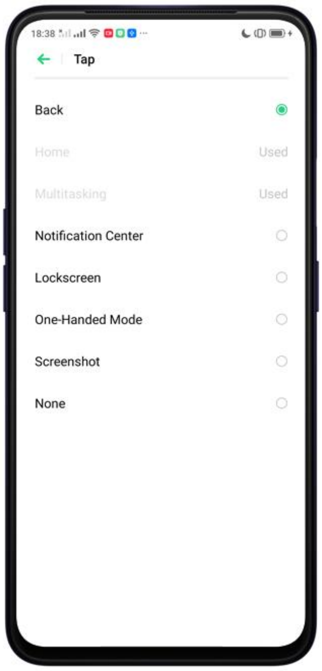
Double-tap — Multitasking

Touch and Hold — Home

TRANSPARENCY OF THE ASSISTIVE BALL WHEN IDLING

60% — 100%

Hide Ball Automatically in Full Screen ○
When the Assistive Ball is hidden, you can pull down from the top edge of the screen to show


Tap

Back ●

Home — Used

Multitasking — Used

Notification Center ○

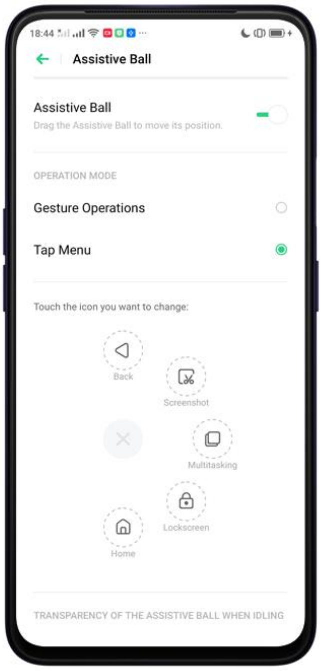
Lockscreen ○

One-Handed Mode ○

Screenshot ○

None ○

Tap Menu. There are five shortcuts for enabling different features in Tap Menu. Tap a shortcut and change the option to the one you preferred. On any screen, tap the Assistive Ball to pop up the shortcut menu.


Assistive Ball

Assistive Ball ●
Drag the Assistive Ball to move its position.

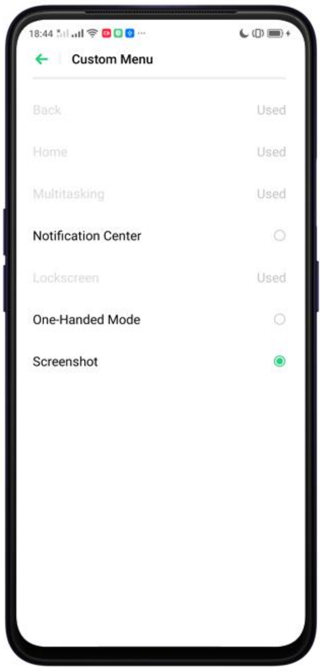
OPERATION MODE

Gesture Operations ○

Tap Menu ●

Touch the icon you want to change:

TRANSPARENCY OF THE ASSISTIVE BALL WHEN IDLING


Custom Menu

Back — Used

Home — Used

Multitasking — Used

Notification Center ○

Lockscreen — Used

One-Handed Mode ○

Screenshot ●

When Assistive Ball is on, you can hold the floating button and pull it around the screen to any location to get it out of the way or make it more accessible.

Adjust the transparency of the Assistive Ball when not in use. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Convenience Aid]** > **[Assistive Ball]**, then drag the slider.

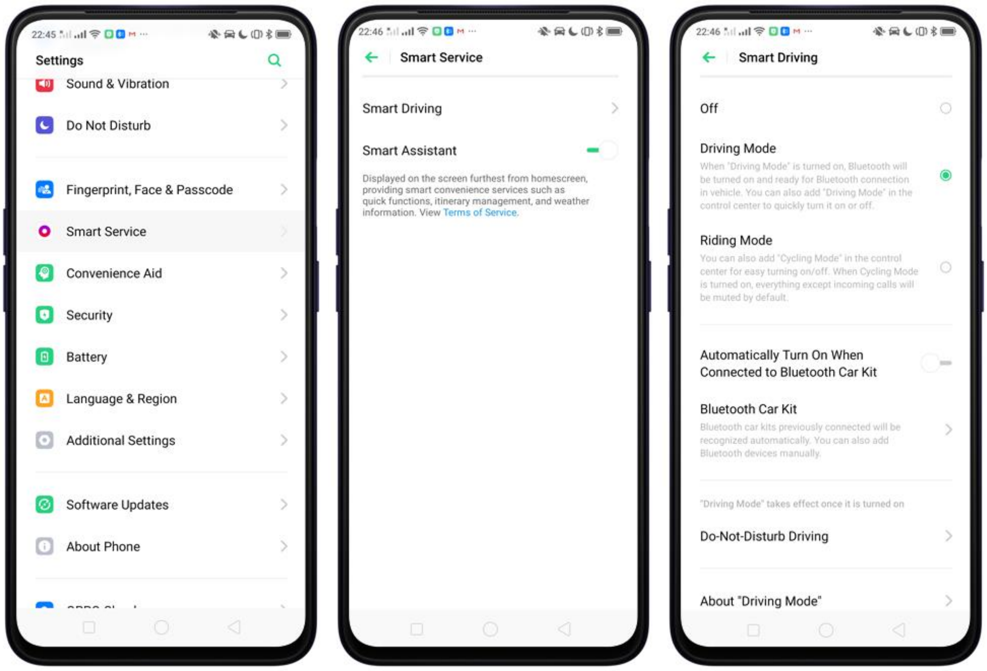
Hide the Assistive Ball automatically in full screen. Go to **[Settings]** >

[Convenience Aid] > **[Assistive Ball]** and turn on **[Hide Ball Automatically in Full screen]**. To reveal the Assistive Ball, swipe down from the top of the screen.

5.7 Smart Service

In ColorOS 6.0, Smart Service has been separate and focuses on Smart Driving and Smart Assistant.
Smart Driving supports both then Driving mode which is when you are driving a car and the Riding Mode when you are using a motorcycle or a bicycle.

To enable Driving mode or Riding mode, go to **[Settings]** > **[Smart Service]** > then choose if you want **[Driving Mode]** or [**Riding Mode**].


22:45
Settings
Sound & Vibration
Do Not Disturb
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart Service
Convenience Aid
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings
Software Updates
About Phone
22:46
Smart Service
Smart Driving
Smart Assistant
22:46
Smart Driving
Off ○
Driving Mode ●
Riding Mode ○
Automatically Turn On When Connected to Bluetooth Car Kit
Bluetooth Car Kit
Do-Not-Disturb Driving
About "Driving Mode"

Displayed on the screen furthest from homescreen, providing smart convenience services such as quick functions, itinerary management, and weather information. View Terms of Service.

When "Driving Mode" is turned on, Bluetooth will be turned on and ready for Bluetooth connection in vehicle. You can also add "Driving Mode" in the control center to quickly turn it on or off.

You can also add "Cycling Mode" in the control center for easy turning on/off. When Cycling Mode is turned on, everything except incoming calls will be muted by default.

Bluetooth car kits previously connected will be recognized automatically. You can also add Bluetooth devices manually.

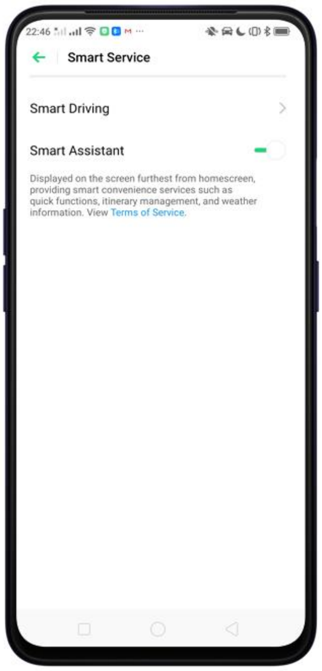
"Driving Mode" takes effect once it is turned on

See Driving mode
See Riding mode

Smart Assistant

Smart Assistant is your personal secretary on your phone.

To enable Smart Assistant, go to **[Settings]** > **[Smart Service]** > toggle [**Smart Assistant]** to green. See Smart Assistant



Smart Service

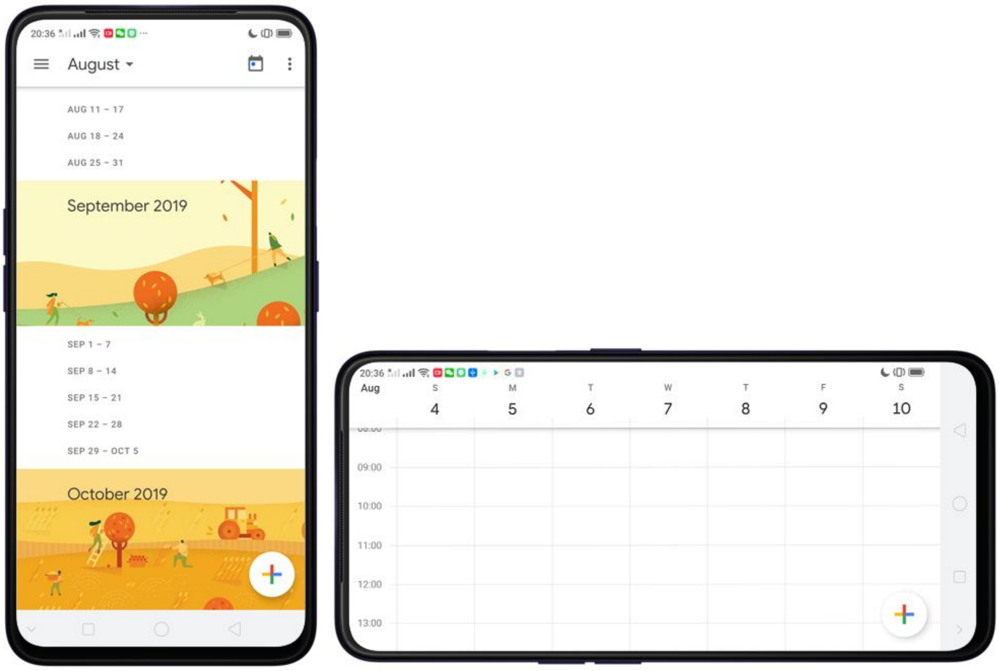
Smart Driving

Smart Assistant

Displayed on the screen furthest from homescreen, providing smart convenience services such as quick functions, itinerary management, and weather information. View Terms of Service.

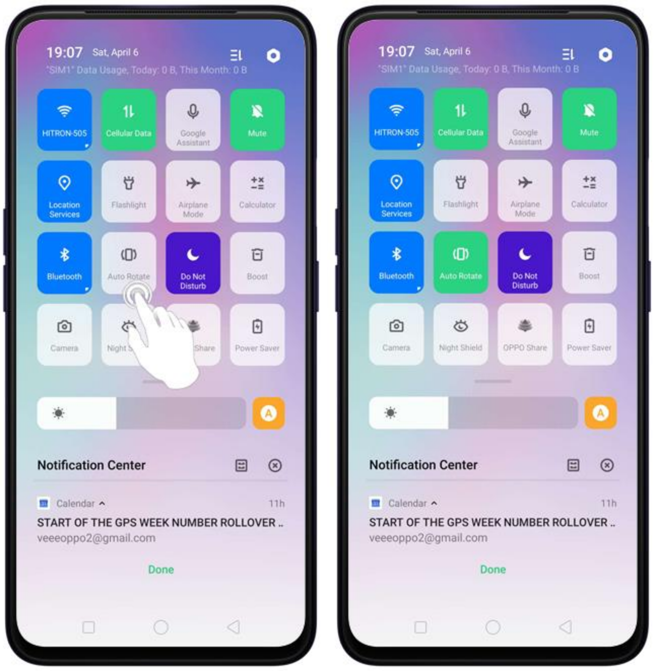
5.8 Change the Screen Orientation

Your device supports portrait and landscape screen orientations. Every time you shift your hands, the screen rotates.


20:36
August
AUG 11 – 17
AUG 18 – 24
AUG 25 – 31
September 2019
SEP 1 – 7
SEP 8 – 14
SEP 15 – 21
SEP 22 – 28
SEP 29 – OCT 5
October 2019
Aug
S 4
M 5
T 6
W 7
T 8
F 9
S 10
09:00
10:00
11:00
12:00
13:00

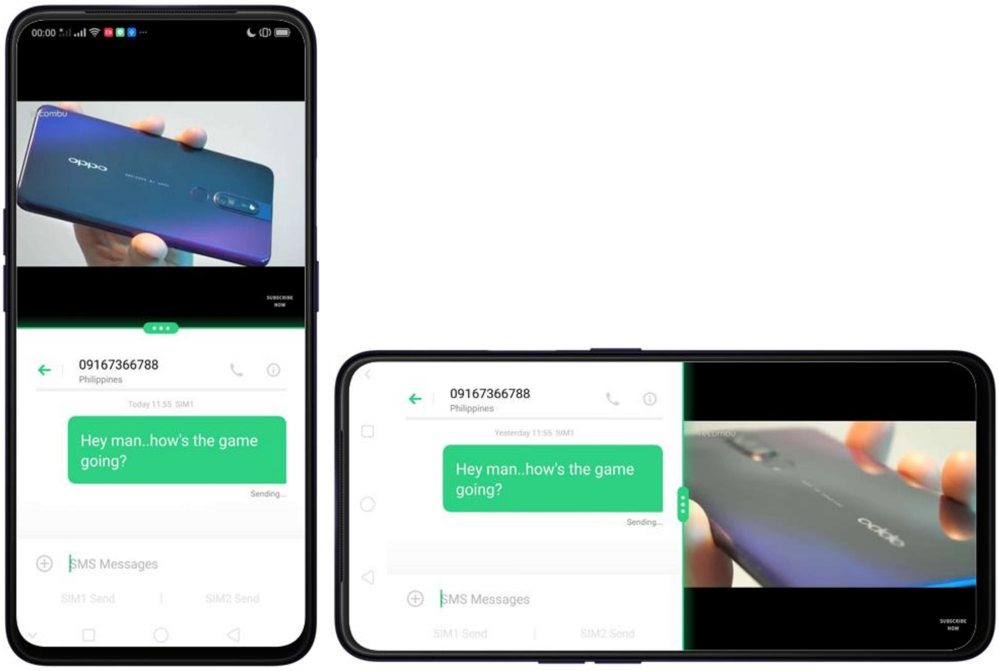
Enable Auto-Rotate, go to Control Center then swipe down from the very top of any screen then tap **Auto-Rotate.**

Note: By default, auto-rotate is enabled.


19:07 Sat, April 6
"SIM1" Data Usage, Today: 0 B, This Month: 0 B
HITRON-505
Cellular Data
Google Assistant
Mute
Location Services
Flashlight
Airplane Mode
Calculator
Bluetooth
Auto Rotate
Do Not Disturb
Boost
Camera
Night Shield
OPPO Share
Power Saver
Notification Center
Calendar
11h
START OF THE GPS WEEK NUMBER ROLLOVER ..
veeeoppo2@gmail.com
Done

5.9 Split-screen

The split-screen mode allows you to divide the screen into two areas, with each area showing a different scene at the same time. Now you can watch a movie and chat with friends at the same screen.


09167366788
Philippines
Today 11:55 SIM1
Sending...
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
09167366788
Philippines
Yesterday 11:55 SIM1
Sending...
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send

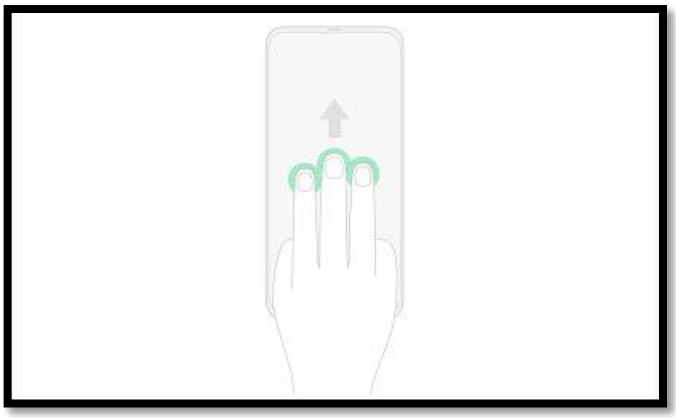
Hey man..how's the game going?

Hey man..how's the game going?

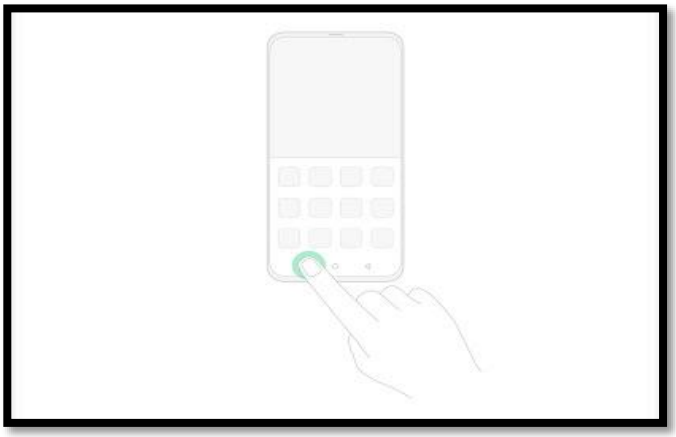
Use Split-screen. Go to **[Settings]** > **[App Split-screen]**, then turn on **[App Split-screen]** and **[Swipe up with 3 Fingers for Split-screen]**. There are four methods to enter Split-screen mode:

Note: Both apps need to support Split-screen function. Your phone will alert you if the app doesn't support that.

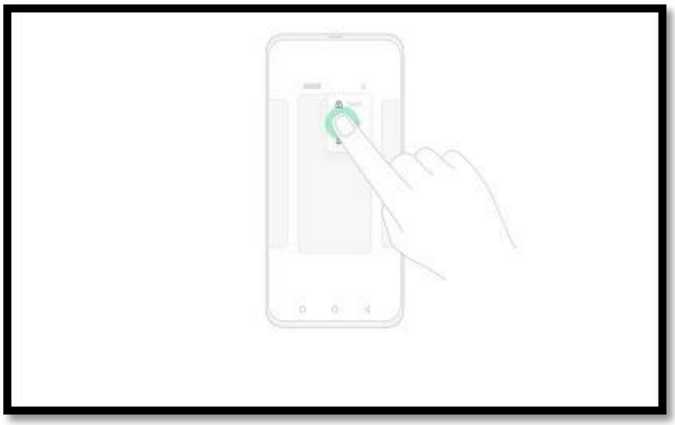
1. Under the interface of an app, swipe up the screen with three fingers to enter split-screen mode.



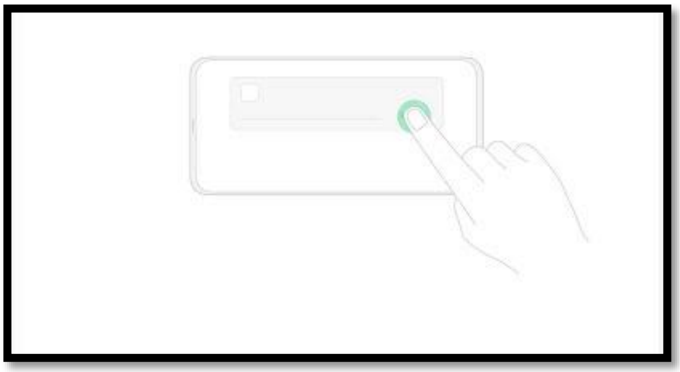
2. Under the interface of an app, press and hold the Multitask button to enter split-screen mode.



3. In recent tasks screen, swipe down a task card, then tap the "Spilt-screen" button to enter split-screen mode.



4. When you use an app in landscape mode and receive a message from other apps, tap "Split-screen Reply" to enter split-screen mode.

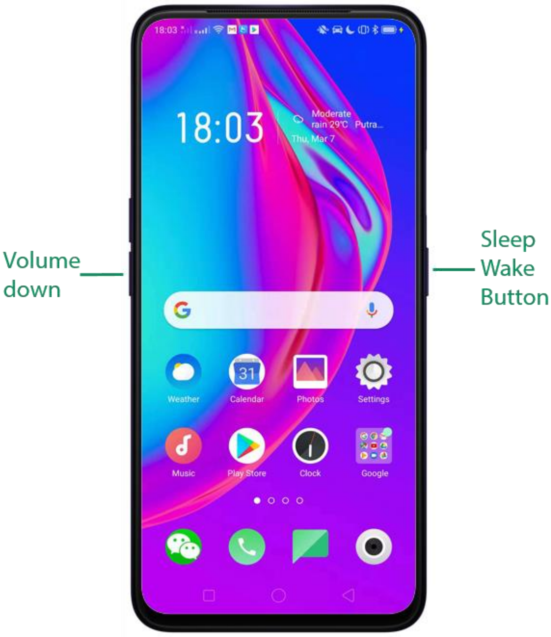


5.10 Take and Edit a Screenshot

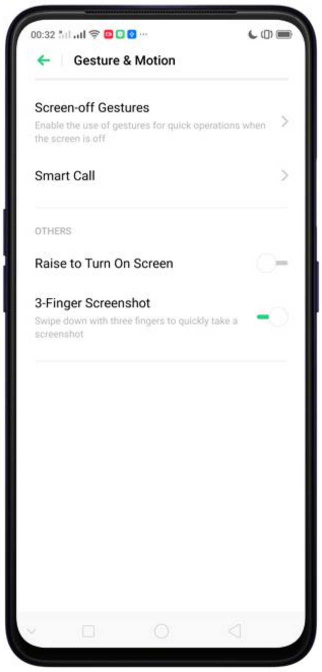
You can capture the screen on your OPPO smartphone using the following ways:

Capture the current page

- **Press and hold the Power and Volume Down buttons** for about 2 seconds, the screen will briefly flash white, and you'll hear a shutter sound if your phone's sound is on.


Volume down
Sleep Wake Button
18:03
Moderate rain 29℃ Putra...
Thu, Mar 7
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Music
Play Store
Clock
Google

- **Gesture Screenshot:** Go to **[Settings]** > **[Convenience Aid]** > **[Gesture & Motion]** and turn on **[3-Finger Screenshot]**. Then swipe down the screen with three fingers to take a screenshot.



Gesture & Motion

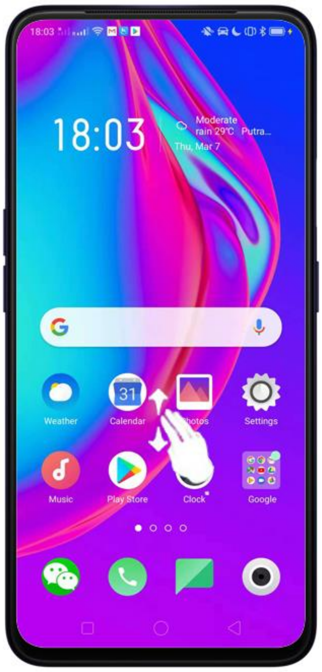
Screen-off Gestures
Enable the use of gestures for quick operations when the screen is off

Smart Call

OTHERS

Raise to Turn On Screen

3-Finger Screenshot
Swipe down with three fingers to quickly take a screenshot


18:03
Moderate rain 29℃ Putra...
Thu, Mar 7
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Music
Play Store
Clock
Google

Capture a long screenshot

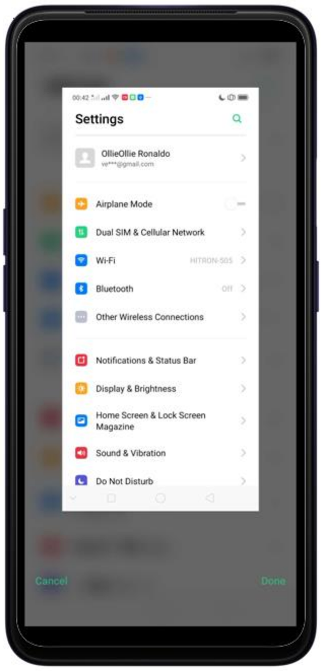
You can easily take longer and scrolling screenshot with simple taps. Long screenshot allows you to take scrolling screenshot of your conversations on messaging apps or a full webpage.

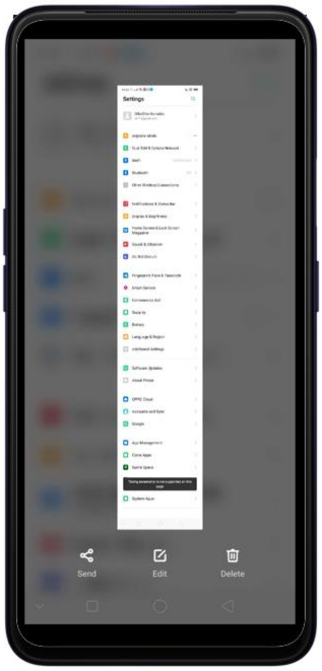
To capture long screenshots:

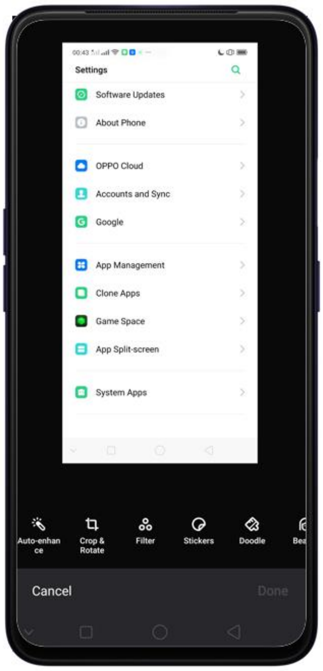
1. **Press and hold the Power and Volume Up buttons** for about 2 seconds, or swipe down the screen with three fingers to take a screenshot of the current page.
2. Tap the screenshot, tap **Long Screenshot**, **then** scroll the page up or down and stop whenever you want to.
3. Tap **Done** to generate a long screenshot. The image is saved in the **Photos** app.

Edit a screenshot

After you've taken a screenshot, tap it, then tap **Edit**. You can use the fancy new markup features to optimize it instantly, such auto-enhance, crop & rotate, filters, stickers, and more. Choose your options by tapping ☑ then tap **Done** to save your changes.


Settings
OllieOllie Ronaldo
Airplane Mode
Dual SIM & Cellular Network
Wi-Fi
Bluetooth
Off
Other Wireless Connections
Notifications & Status Bar
Display & Brightness
Home Screen & Lock Screen Magazine
Sound & Vibration
Do Not Disturb
Cancel
Done

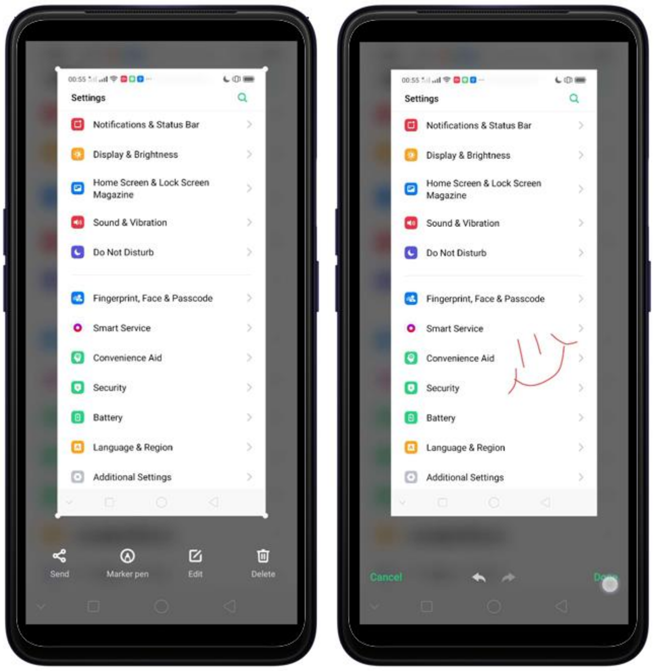

Send
Edit
Delete


Settings
Software Updates
About Phone
OPPO Cloud
Accounts and Sync
Google
App Management
Clone Apps
Game Space
App Split-screen
System Apps
Auto-enhance
Crop & Rotate
Filter
Stickers
Doodle
Cancel
Done

Use a Marker Pen

After you've taken a screenshot, tap it, then tap **Marker Pen**. You can highlight a word or write a note on the image. Tap **Done** to save your changes.

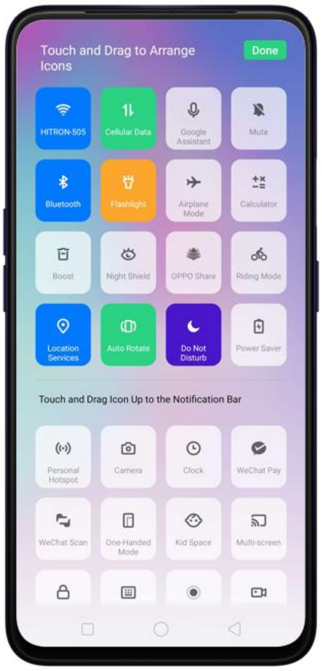
Note: Marker pen is only available in red color.


Settings
Notifications & Status Bar
Display & Brightness
Home Screen & Lock Screen Magazine
Sound & Vibration
Do Not Disturb
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart Service
Convenience Aid
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings
Send
Marker pen
Edit
Delete
Cancel
Done

5.11 Control Center, Notification, and Status Bar

Control Center

Control Center gives you instant access to the most frequently used features and allows you to view recent and earlier notifications with just a swipe. You can open Control Center from anywhere on your phone from any app or screen, even from the Lock Screen.


Touch and Drag to Arrange Icons
Done
HITRON-505
Cellular Data
Google Assistant
Mute
Bluetooth
Flashlight
Airplane Mode
Calculator
Boost
Night Shield
OPPO Share
Riding Mode
Location Services
Auto Rotate
Do Not Disturb
Power Saver
Touch and Drag Icon Up to the Notification Bar
Personal Hotspot
Camera
Clock
WeChat Pay
WeChat Scan
One-Handed Mode
Kid Space
Multi-screen

Open Control Center. Swipe down from the very top of any screen (except the notch at the top center of the display). You'll see the shortcuts listed on top, and notifications below.

Customize the shortcuts. By default, the phone will list ten shortcuts when you open Control Center. Swipe down the screen to show other shortcuts.

To change or rearrange the shortcuts, tap ☰ on the top, then hold down and drag an icon to your preferred position. To save your changes, tap Done.

Control the brightness. Drag the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen. When you drag the slider, other parts of Control Center will be temporarily hidden.

01:08
Cloudy 28°C
Pasig
Thu, Mar 14
High power consumption
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Music
Play Store
Clock
Google

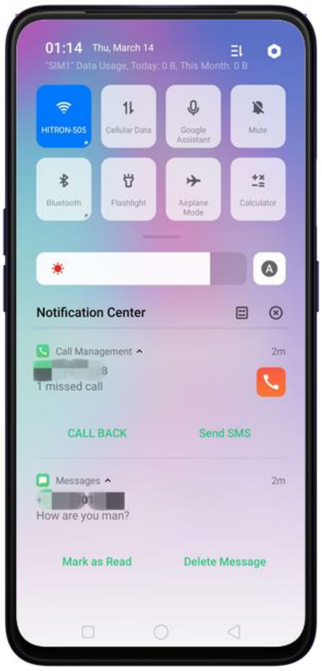
Notifications

View all notifications. Swipe down from the very top to view recent notifications.

Open the app to respond. Tap a notification to go to the related app.

When phone screen is locked, swipe the notification to the right. You may need to enter your passcode.

Dismiss notifications. Swipe the notification to the left, then tap **Delete**. To dismiss all notifications, tap ⊗.


HITRON-505
Cellular Data
Google Assistant
Mute
Bluetooth
Flashlight
Airplane Mode
Calculator
A

01:14 Thu, March 14

"SIM1" Data Usage, Today: 0 B, This Month: 0 B

Notification Center

Call Management 2m

[redacted]

1 missed call

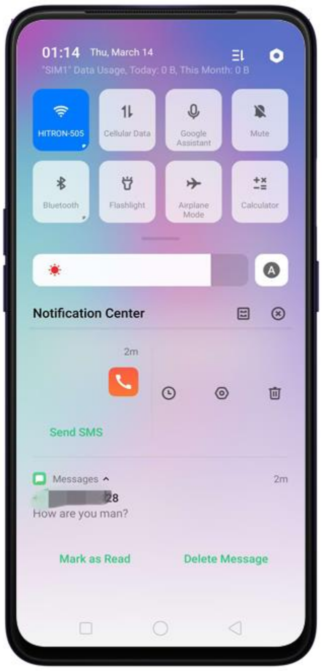
CALL BACK Send SMS

Messages 2m

[redacted]

How are you man?

Mark as Read Delete Message


HITRON-505
Cellular Data
Google Assistant
Mute
Bluetooth
Flashlight
Airplane Mode
Calculator
A

01:14 Thu, March 14

"SIM1" Data Usage, Today: 0 B, This Month: 0 B

Notification Center

2m

Send SMS

Messages 2m

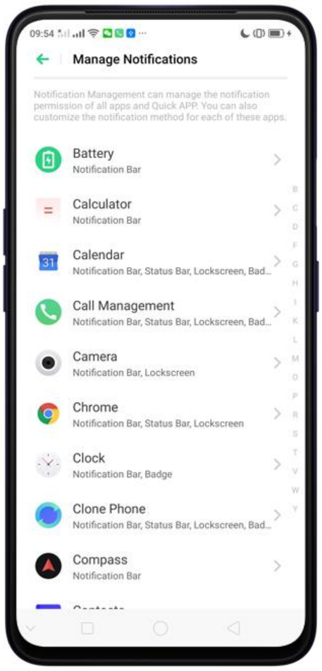
[redacted]

How are you man?

Mark as Read Delete Message

Manage your notification settings. Swipe the notification to the left, tap **Settings**, or go to **[Settings] > [Notification & Status Bar] > [Manage Notifications]**.

Select an app from the list to customize whether new notifications from that app appear on the Lock Screen or notification bar, display a banner, play a sound or vibrate, or whether show icon badges on the Home Screen. You can also allow ringing for notifications when Do Not Disturb is on.


09:54
B
C
D
F
G
H
I
K
L
M
O
P
R
S
T
V
W
Y

Manage Notifications

Notification Management can manage the notification permission of all apps and Quick APP. You can also customize the notification method for each of these apps.

Battery
Notification Bar

Calculator
Notification Bar

Calendar
Notification Bar, Status Bar, Lockscreen, Bad...

Call Management
Notification Bar, Status Bar, Lockscreen, Bad...

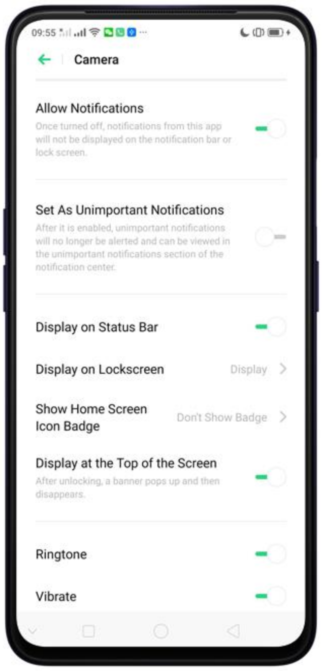
Camera
Notification Bar, Lockscreen

Chrome
Notification Bar, Status Bar, Lockscreen

Clock
Notification Bar, Badge

Clone Phone
Notification Bar, Status Bar, Lockscreen, Bad...

Compass
Notification Bar



Camera

Allow Notifications ●
Once turned off, notifications from this app will not be displayed on the notification bar or lock screen.

Set As Unimportant Notifications ○
After it is enabled, unimportant notifications will no longer be alerted and can be viewed in the unimportant notifications section of the notification center.

Display on Status Bar ●

Display on Lockscreen Display >

Show Home Screen Icon Badge Don't Show Badge >

Display at the Top of the Screen ●
After unlocking, a banner pops up and then disappears.

Ringtone ●

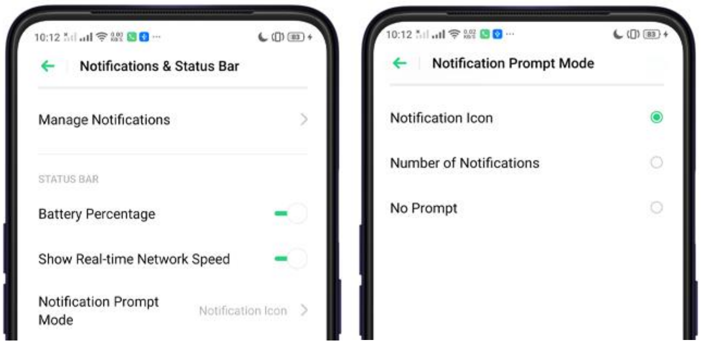
Vibrate ●

- **Allow notification bar in Lock Screen**. Go to **[Settings] > [Notification & Status Bar]** and turn its slider to green. A notification will prompt you even if your screen is locked.
- **Show data usage at the top of the notification bar.** Go to **[Settings] > [Notification & Status Bar]** and turn its slider to green. Your daily and monthly data usage will display at the top of the notification bar.

Status Bar

Status icons are displayed on the status bar, indicating, for instance, wireless connectivity, the battery status and time.

Display or hide battery percentage, network speed, and notification prompt mode. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Notification & Status Bar]**, and switch the sliders to green.



10:12

Notifications & Status Bar

Manage Notifications

STATUS BAR

Battery Percentage

Show Real-time Network Speed

Notification Prompt Mode — Notification Icon

10:12

Notification Prompt Mode

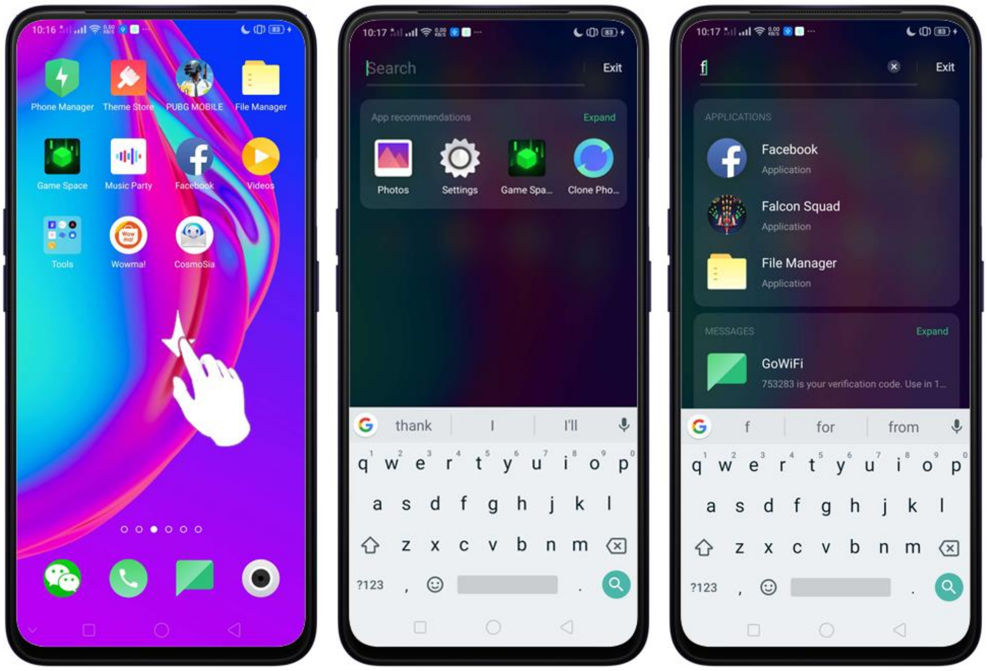
● Notification Icon

○ Number of Notifications

○ No Prompt

5.12 Search

Find specific apps, contacts, messages, or quickly search the Internet.
Search with OPPO phone. Swipe down on any page of the Home Screen. Do not start swiping at the very top of the screen - that will open the Notification Center instead. Type in your search query, then tap a search result on the list to open it.


Phone Manager
Theme Store
PUBG MOBILE
File Manager
Game Space
Music Party
Facebook
Videos
Tools
Wowma!
CosmoSia
Search
Exit
App recommendations
Expand
Photos
Settings
Game Spa...
Clone Pho...
thank
I
I'll
?123
f
Exit
APPLICATIONS
Facebook
Application
Falcon Squad
Application
File Manager
Application
MESSAGES
Expand
GoWiFi
753283 is your verification code. Use in 1...
f
for
from

Close Search. You can either Tap "Cancel", press the **Return button**, or swipe up the "Back" gesture that you have set.

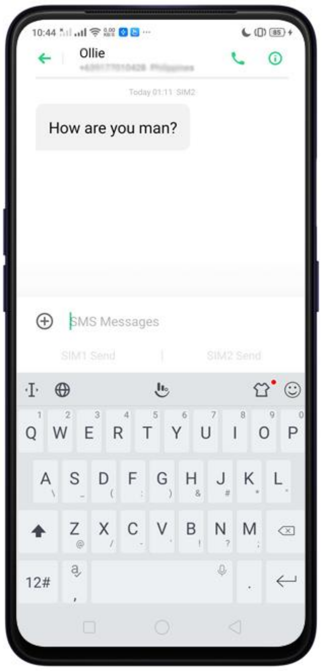
5.13 Text

5.12.1. Add or Change Keyboard Languages

If you need to type a foreign language on your OPPO phone, you can do so by adding and changing the input language:

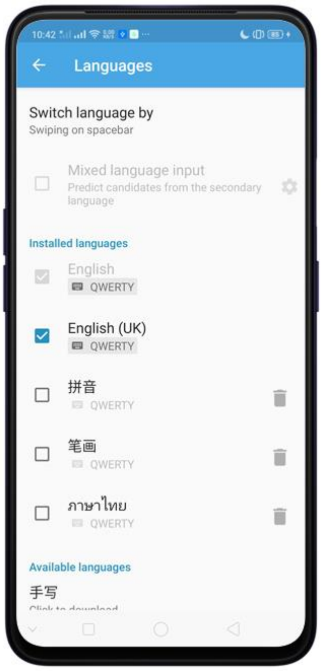
Add installed languages. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Keyboard & Input Method]** > **[TouchPal]** > **[Languages]**, then tick the languages to use.

You can also add languages as you type. Tap 🌐 > **[Add language]** and tick the languages to use.

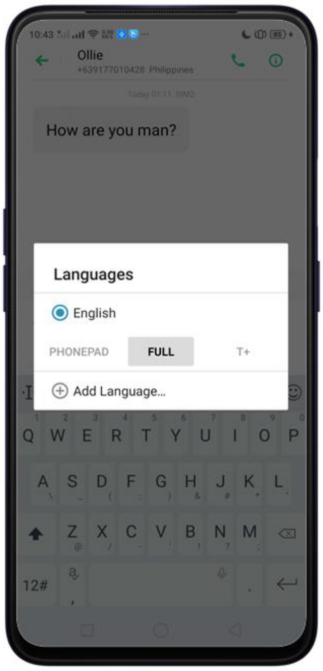


How are you man?

Ollie
Today 01:11 SIM2
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send



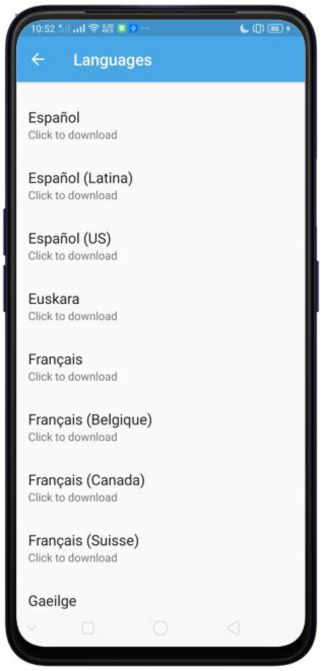
Languages
Switch language by
Swiping on spacebar
Mixed language input
Predict candidates from the secondary language
Installed languages
English
QWERTY
English (UK)
QWERTY
拼音
QWERTY
笔画
QWERTY
ภาษาไทย
QWERTY
Available languages
手写



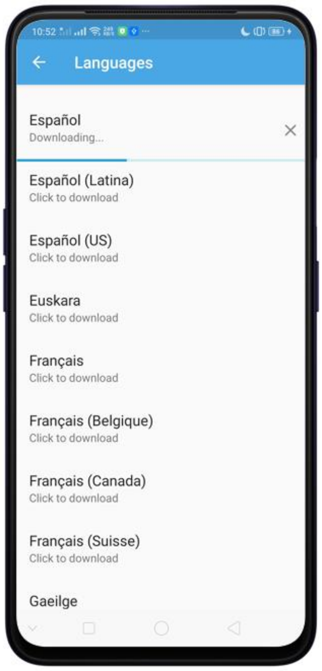
How are you man?

Ollie
+639177010428 Philippines
Languages
English
PHONEPAD
FULL
T+
Add Language...

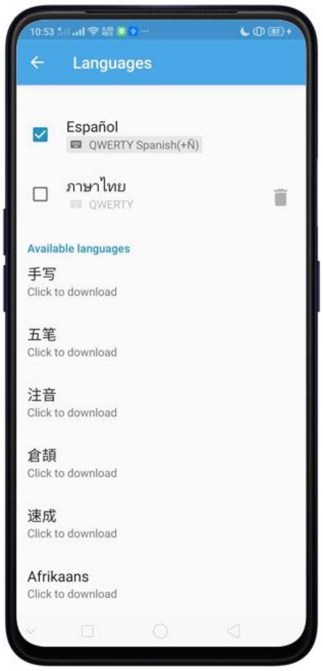
Download available languages. Tap to download the language pack. You'll see the language in Installed languages list when the download is completed.



Languages
Español
Click to download
Español (Latina)
Click to download
Español (US)
Click to download
Euskara
Click to download
Français
Click to download
Français (Belgique)
Click to download
Français (Canada)
Click to download
Français (Suisse)
Click to download
Gaeilge



Languages
Español
Downloading...
Español (Latina)
Click to download
Español (US)
Click to download
Euskara
Click to download
Français
Click to download
Français (Belgique)
Click to download
Français (Canada)
Click to download
Français (Suisse)
Click to download
Gaeilge



Languages
Español
QWERTY Spanish(+Ñ)
ภาษาไทย
QWERTY
Available languages
手写
Click to download
五笔
Click to download
注音
Click to download
倉頡
Click to download
速成
Click to download
Afrikaans
Click to download

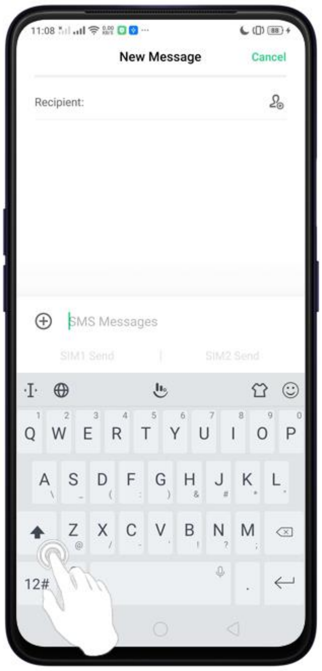
5.13.1 Type, Edit, and Delete Text

Type text

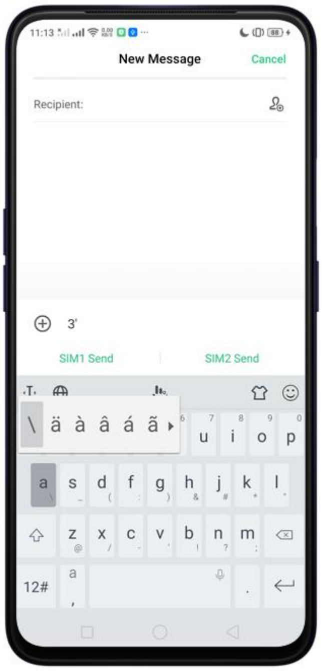
Tap a text field to pop up the keyboard, then tap the letter to type.

Type capital letters. OPPO smartphone is auto-capitalizing the first letter of a sentence, or you can tap ⬆ to type capital letters.

Turn on Caps Lock. Double-tap ⬆ . A line will appear under the arrow if you have done this correctly.

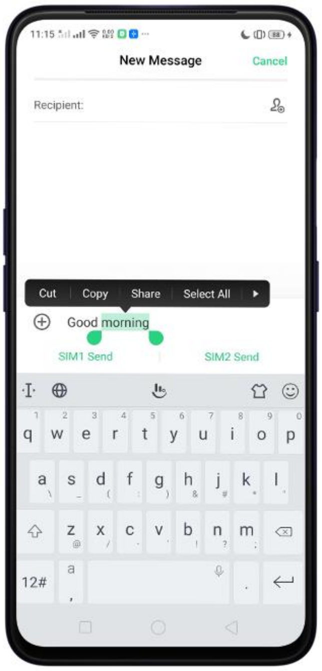

11:08
New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M
12#

Enter numbers, punctuation, or symbols. Tap 12#. To type alternate characters, touch and hold a key, then slide to choose one of the options.


11:13
New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
3'
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
\ ä à â á ã
u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
12#

Edit text

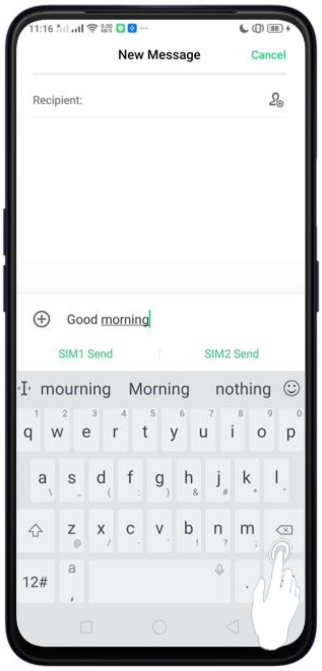
Select text. Touch and hold the target text, or double-tap the target text to select. Drag the control points on either side of the highlighted word to select more or less text, or tap **[Select all]** to highlight all of the text.
You can cut, copy, paste or share your text.


11:15
New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
Cut
Copy
Share
Select All
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
12#

Good morning

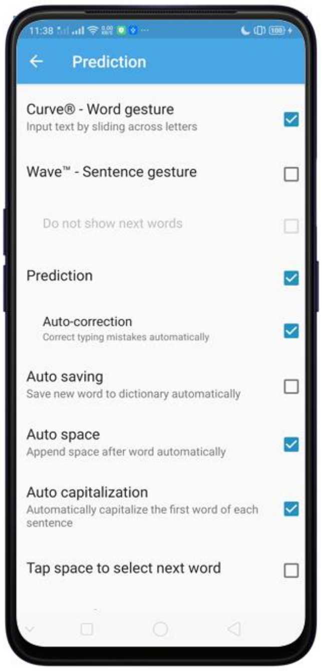
Delete text

Tap ⌫ to delete the selected text or characters before the cursor.


11:16
New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
Good morning
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
mourning
Morning
nothing
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
12#

5.13.2 Prediction

Prediction feature lets you to enter text with ease and without errors.
Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Keyboard & Input Method]** > **[TouchPal]** > **[Prediction]**.


11:38
Prediction

Curve® - Word gesture ☑
Input text by sliding across letters

Wave™ - Sentence gesture ☐

Do not show next words ☐

Prediction ☑

Auto-correction ☑
Correct typing mistakes automatically

Auto saving ☐
Save new word to dictionary automatically

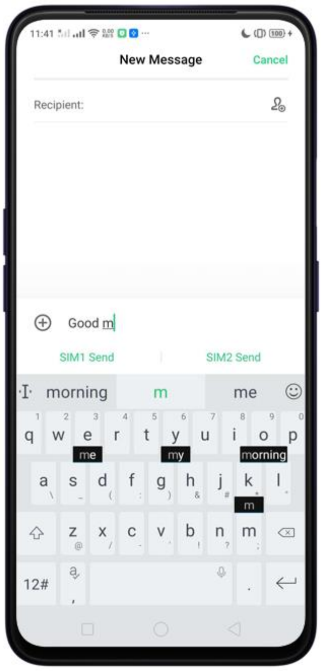
Auto space ☑
Append space after word automatically

Auto capitalization ☑
Automatically capitalize the first word of each sentence

Tap space to select next word ☐

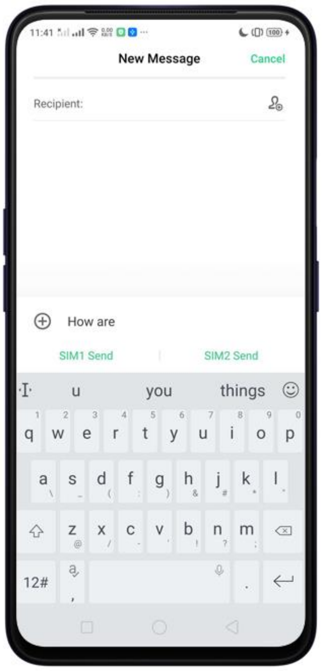
Use TouchPal Curve to input text simply by swiping across the keyboard, from one letter to another.

Use Wave – Sentence gesture to input commonly used phrases/sentences.


11:41
New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
morning
m
me
me
my
morning
m
12#

Good m

Predict text. While you type, the keyboard predicts your next word, and offer suggestions before you finish typing. Tap the word or the spacebar to select.

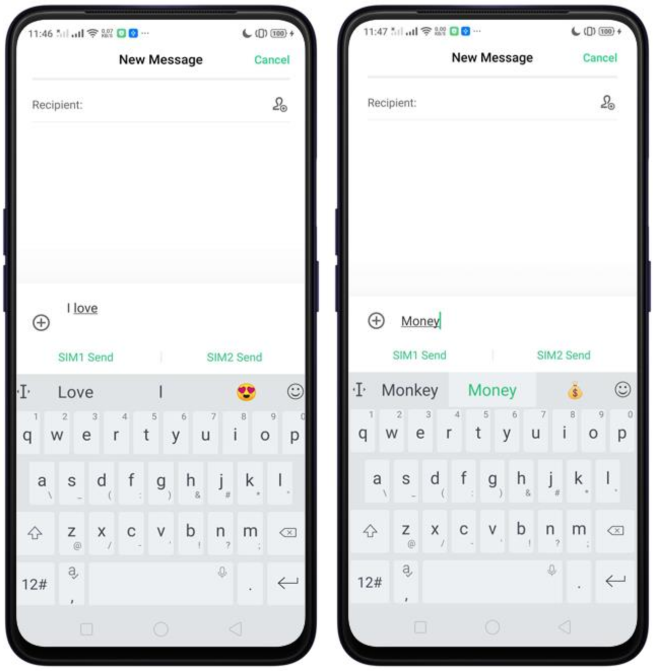

11:41
New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
u
you
things
12#

How are

Correct spelling automatically. The keyboard will automatically check and correct the spelling of the text.

Auto-saving new words, adding space, and capitalizing. As you type, the keyboard will also automatically save new words to the dictionary, add space after a

word and capitalize the first word of each sentence.
Predict emojis. As you type, the keyboard predicts what emoji comes next.

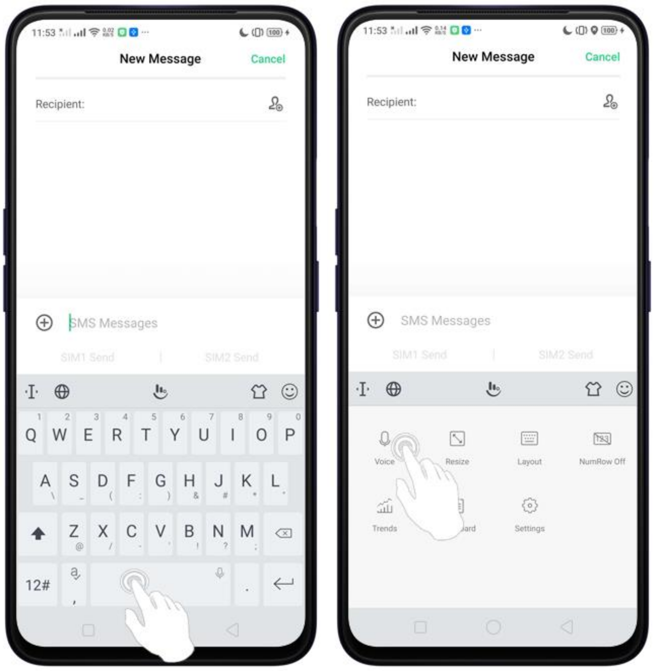

New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
I love
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
Love
I
12#
New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
Money
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
Monkey
Money
12#

Contextual prediction. The keyboard will suggest what it thinks are the most likely words based on what you're typing.
Import contact names. The names of your contacts will be added to user dictionary.
Learn from messages. Let the keyboard learn from your conversations and predict words you use most.
User dictionary. Tap **Edit user words**, then add your own words into the dictionary so that they appear in the word prediction fields when typing. You can also back up or restore your dictionary to or from the SD card, or rebuild, or clear your dictionary.

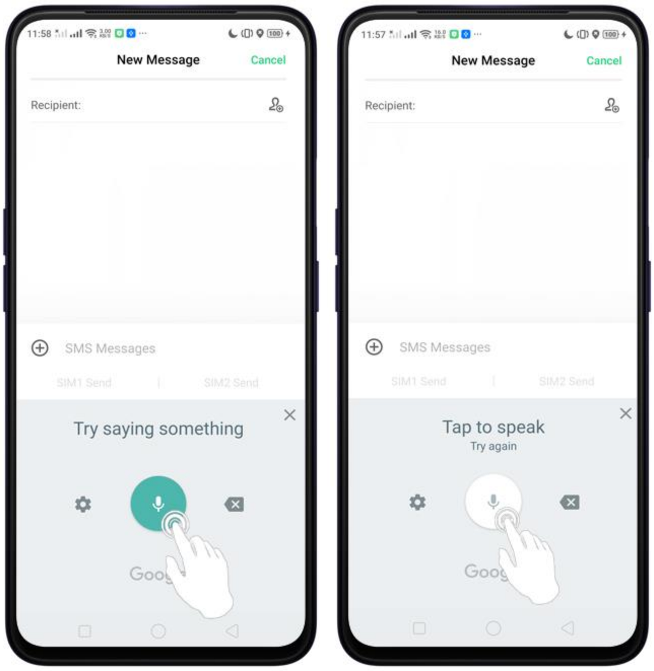
5.13.3 Voice Typing

When you’re connected to the Internet, you can use the built-in microphone to speak the text instead of typing it.

Start voice typing. Touch and hold the space bar on the bottom of the screen, or tap > **[Voice]**, then speak.


New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M
12#
Voice
Resize
Layout
NumRow Off
Trends
Settings

Pause voice typing. Tap the microphone icon to pause/continue dictating the words. Tap ✕ to quit voice typing.


New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
Try saying something
Tap to speak
Try again
Goog

Select input languages. Tap ⚙ on the panel, or go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Keyboard & Input Method]** > **[Google voice typing]** > **[Languages]**. Select your preferred languages. To select a primary language, touch and hold the language.

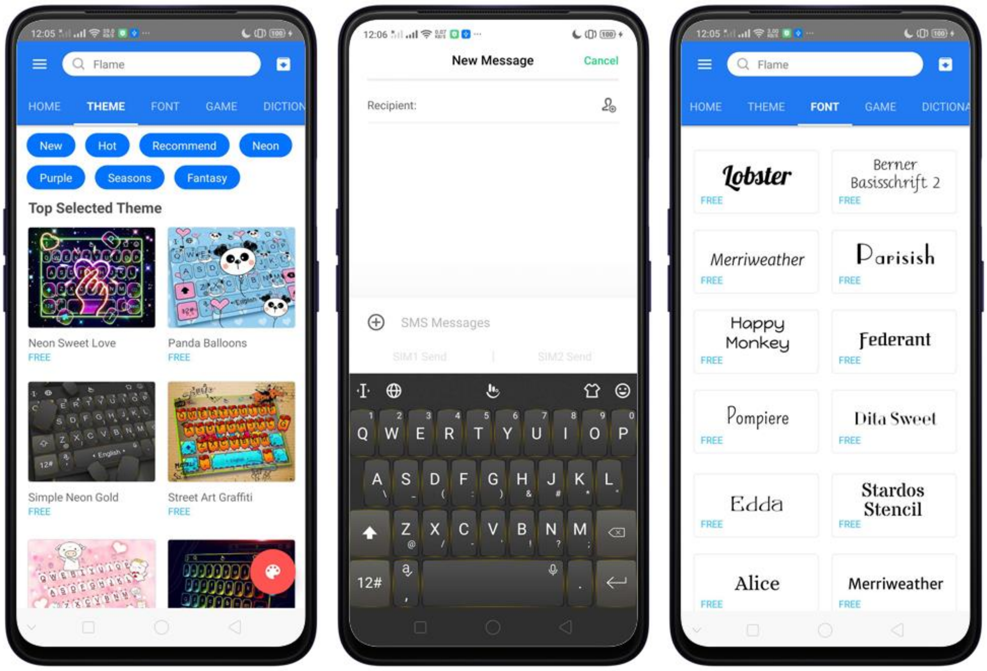
Insert and delete text. To insert or delete text, tap to place the insertion point first. Tap ⌫ to the right of the microphone icon to delete text.

To enable voice input while offline: Tap ⚙ on the panel to manage **[Offline speech recognition].**

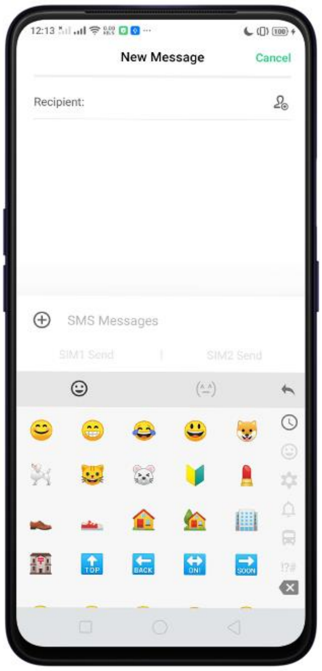
5.13.4 TouchPal for OPPO

TouchPal Keyboard is the default keyboard on OPPO smartphones. You can use it to enter text by tapping on the keys or swiping across the keyboard, from one letter to another. Besides its basic typing features, TouchPal has introduced some innovations. Tap ☝ on the on-screen keyboard to get more information.

Multiple themes available. You can dress up the keyboard with various themes or customize the keyboard by yourself.

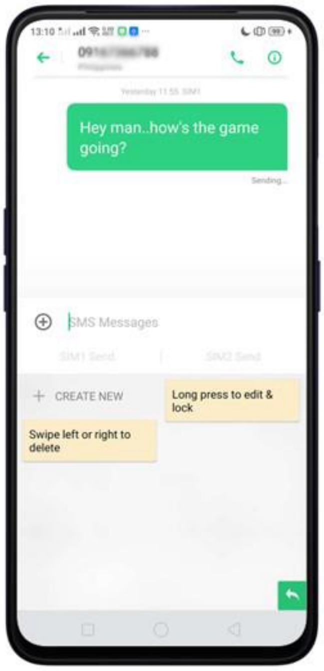

Flame
HOME
THEME
FONT
GAME
DICTION
New
Hot
Recommend
Neon
Purple
Seasons
Fantasy
Top Selected Theme
Neon Sweet Love
FREE
Panda Balloons
FREE
Simple Neon Gold
FREE
Street Art Graffiti
FREE
New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M
12#
Flame
HOME
THEME
FONT
GAME
DICTIONA
Lobster
FREE
Berner Basisschrift 2
FREE
Merriweather
FREE
Parisish
FREE
Happy Monkey
FREE
Federant
FREE
Pompiere
FREE
Dita Sweet
FREE
Edda
FREE
Stardos Stencil
FREE
Alice
FREE
Merriweather
FREE

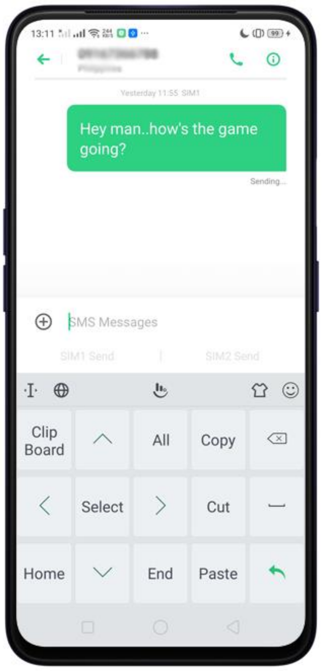
Emojis and stickers. TouchPal has multiple Emojis and stickers and can predict what Emoji comes next.


12:13
New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send

Intelligent input. With TouchPal Curve®, you can type by sliding from letter to letter instead of tapping. Advanced technologies such as Contextual Prediction, Auto correction**,** and User Dictionary also make typing faster. See Prediction.

Clip board. It allows you to type a long string of text by entering a shorter string. Create a keyboard shortcut for a word, phrase, or sentence. Whenever you type a specific shortcut, it will replace those letters with a predefined piece of text.


Hey man..how's the game going?
13:10
Yesterday 11:55 SIM1
Sending...
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
CREATE NEW
Long press to edit & lock
Swipe left or right to delete

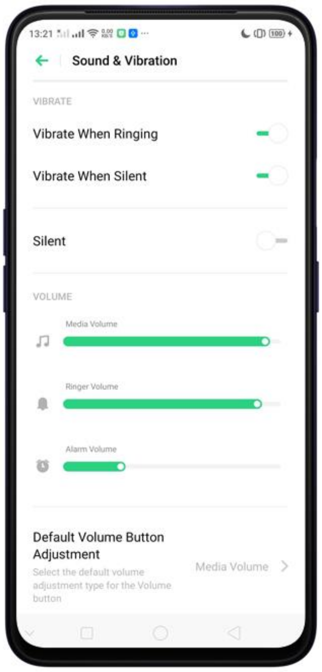

Hey man..how's the game going?
13:11
Yesterday 11:55 SIM1
Sending...
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
Clip Board
All
Copy
Select
Cut
Home
End
Paste

5.14 Sound, Vibration, and System Feedback

Set your device to sound or vibrate for incoming calls, messages, or other notifications, and let your phone send sound or haptic feedbacks on key taps.

Set your phone to vibrate. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Sound & Vibration]**. Separate controls let you set your phone to vibrate in ring mode, silent mode, or both.

Turn ringing on or off. Toggle the **[Silent]** slider to green or white. You can also Swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Control Center, then tap 🔕 to mute.



13:21
Sound & Vibration

VIBRATE

Vibrate When Ringing

Vibrate When Silent

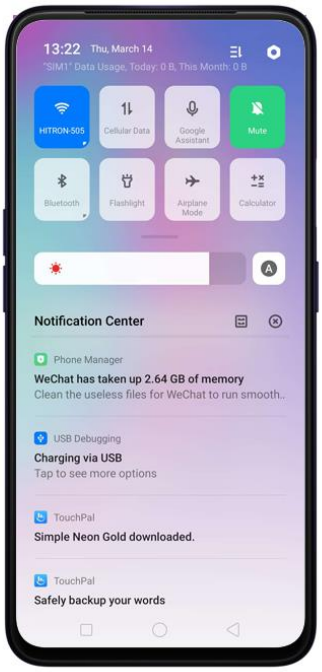
Silent

VOLUME

Media Volume
Ringer Volume
Alarm Volume

Default Volume Button Adjustment — Media Volume

Select the default volume adjustment type for the Volume button



13:22 Thu, March 14
HITRON-505
Cellular Data
Google Assistant
Mute
Bluetooth
Flashlight
Airplane Mode
Calculator
Notification Center

"SIM1" Data Usage, Today: 0 B, This Month: 0 B

Phone Manager
WeChat has taken up 2.64 GB of memory
Clean the useless files for WeChat to run smooth..

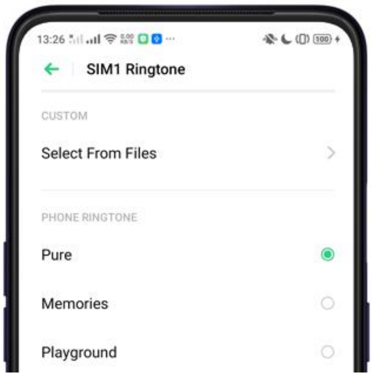
USB Debugging
Charging via USB
Tap to see more options

TouchPal
Simple Neon Gold downloaded.

TouchPal
Safely backup your words

Adjust the ringer, media and alarm volume. Drag the control point left or right.

Change ringtones for incoming calls, messages, **and other notifications**. In addition to the default ringtones, you can create ringtones using your own audio files.



13:26
SIM1 Ringtone

CUSTOM

Select From Files

PHONE RINGTONE

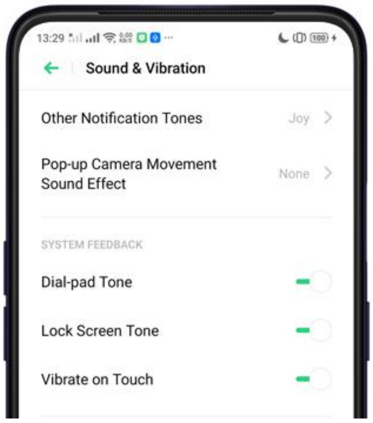
● Pure

○ Memories

○ Playground

Turn system feedback on or off. Toggle the sliders to green or white. When **Vibrate on Touch** is on, your phone vibrates when you touch the **Menu**, **Home**, and **Return** buttons.

To temporarily silence incoming calls and alerts (without vibrations), see Quite Time.



13:29

Sound & Vibration

Other Notification Tones Joy

Pop-up Camera Movement Sound Effect None

SYSTEM FEEDBACK

Dial-pad Tone

Lock Screen Tone

Vibrate on Touch

Real Sound Technology. Real Original Sound Technology is jointly developed by Dirac Research AB and OPPO. It delivers original sound in full fidelity and creates a spatial three-dimensional sound arena to provide you with a listening experience that's just like being at a live performance. Plug in the headphones then select a scene you want the sound to change to.

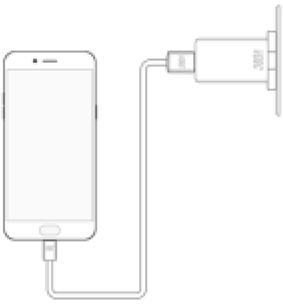
Headphones Monitor. When turned on, you can enjoy a live karaoke experience in real-time through your headphones.

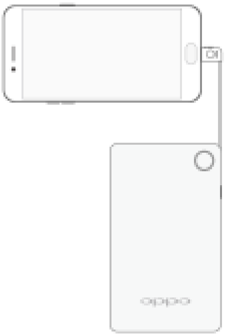
Note: Turn off the default headphones monitor function in the karaoke app to avoid sound problems.

5.15 Charge and Monitor the Battery

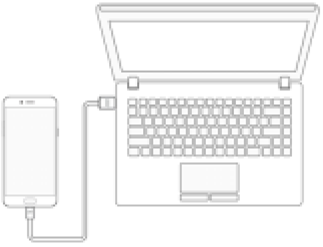
OPPO smartphones are equipped with a non-removable, lithium-ion rechargeable battery. Do not attempt to open your phone. Charge the phone using the cable and USB power adapter that's included when you purchased it.

Charge the battery. Connect your phone to a standard power outlet or a Power Bank.





Charge the battery and transfer files. Connect your phone to a computer.

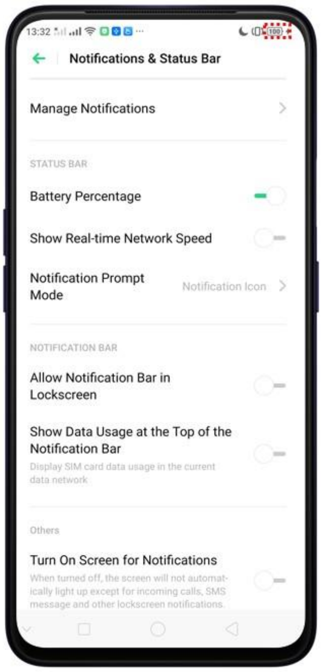


Note:

* All photos shown are for illustration purpose ONLY. Actual products may vary.

* Rechargeable batteries have a limited number of charge cycles and may eventually need to be replaced. The OPPO smartphone battery is not user replaceable; it can only be replaced by an authorized service provider. **Removing the battery yourself will void your warranty and might cause damage to your phone**.

Show percentage of battery in the status bar. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Notification & Status Bar]** and turn on **[Battery Percentage]**. Or go to **[Settings]** > **[Battery]** and turn on **[Show battery percentage on status bar]**.



13:32

Notifications & Status Bar

Manage Notifications

STATUS BAR

Battery Percentage

Show Real-time Network Speed

Notification Prompt Mode — Notification Icon

NOTIFICATION BAR

Allow Notification Bar in Lockscreen

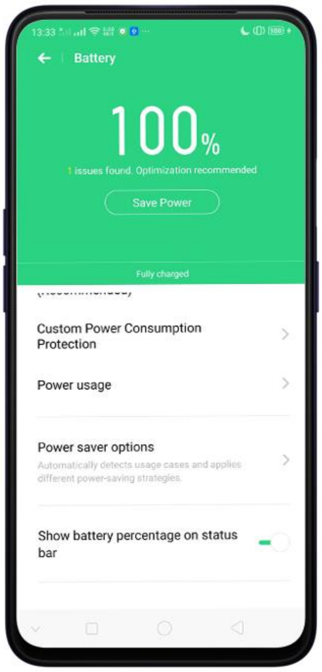
Show Data Usage at the Top of the Notification Bar

Display SIM card data usage in the current data network

Others

Turn On Screen for Notifications

When turned off, the screen will not automatically light up except for incoming calls, SMS message and other lockscreen notifications.



13:33

Battery

100%

1 issues found. Optimization recommended

Save Power

Fully charged

Custom Power Consumption Protection

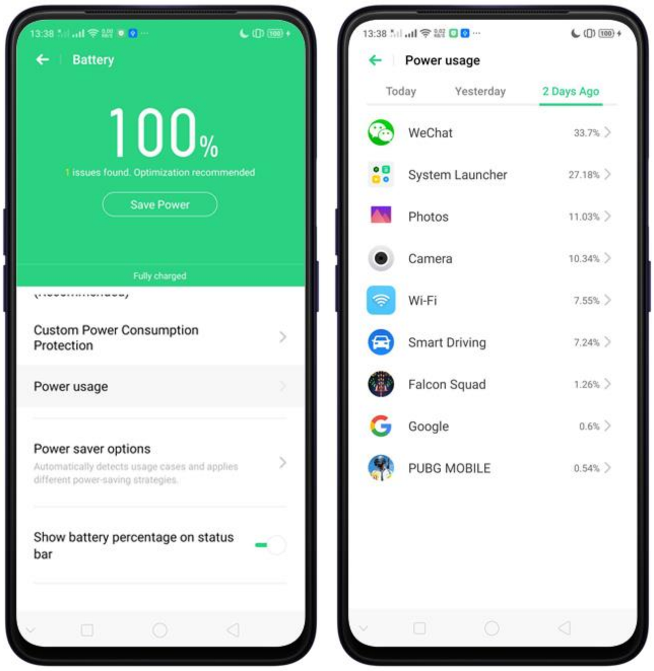
Power usage

Power saver options

Automatically detects usage cases and applies different power-saving strategies.

Show battery percentage on status bar

View detailed battery info listed for each app. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Battery] > [Power usage]**.

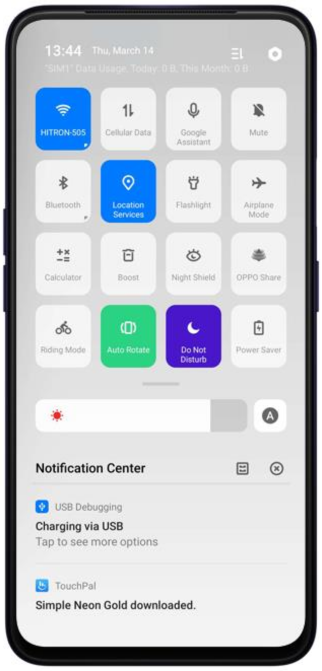

13:38
Battery
100%
1 issues found. Optimization recommended
Save Power
Fully charged
Custom Power Consumption Protection
Power usage
Power saver options
Automatically detects usage cases and applies different power-saving strategies.
Show battery percentage on status bar
13:38
Power usage
Today
Yesterday
2 Days Ago

WeChat	33.7%
System Launcher	27.18%
Photos	11.03%
Camera	10.34%
Wi-Fi	7.55%
Smart Driving	7.24%
Falcon Squad	1.26%
Google	0.6%
PUBG MOBILE	0.54%

5.16 Location Service

Apps like Maps, Weather, and Compass must know your exact position before it can provide accurate services and results.

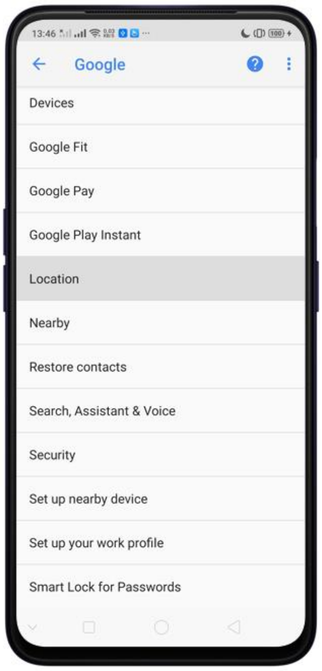
Turn on Location Service. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open Control Center, then tap 📍. You can also go to **[Settings]** > **[Google]** > **[Location]** and toggle the slider to green.

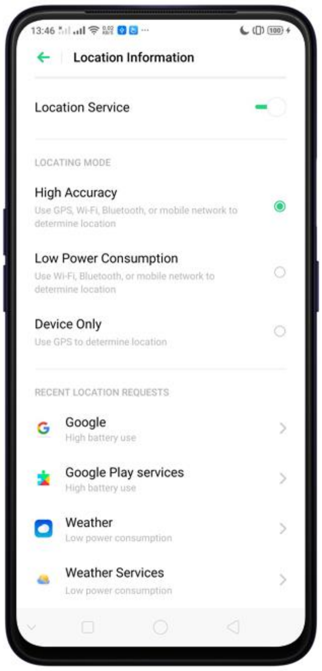

13:44 Thu, March 14
"SIM1" Data Usage. Today: 0 B, This Month: 0 B
HITRON-505
Cellular Data
Google Assistant
Mute
Bluetooth
Location Services
Flashlight
Airplane Mode
Calculator
Boost
Night Shield
OPPO Share
Riding Mode
Auto Rotate
Do Not Disturb
Power Saver
A

Notification Center

USB Debugging
Charging via USB
Tap to see more options

TouchPal
Simple Neon Gold downloaded.


13:46
Google
Devices
Google Fit
Google Pay
Google Play Instant
Location
Nearby
Restore contacts
Search, Assistant & Voice
Security
Set up nearby device
Set up your work profile
Smart Lock for Passwords



Location Information

Location Service

LOCATING MODE

High Accuracy ●
Use GPS, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, or mobile network to determine location

Low Power Consumption ○
Use Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, or mobile network to determine location

Device Only ○
Use GPS to determine location

RECENT LOCATION REQUESTS

Google
High battery use

Google Play services
High battery use

Weather
Low power consumption

Weather Services
Low power consumption

You can choose from three types of **positioning modes**, which differ in accuracy and battery drain:

1. **High accuracy** (GPS, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and mobile network).

2. **Battery saving** (Wi-Fi, Bluetooth and mobile network).

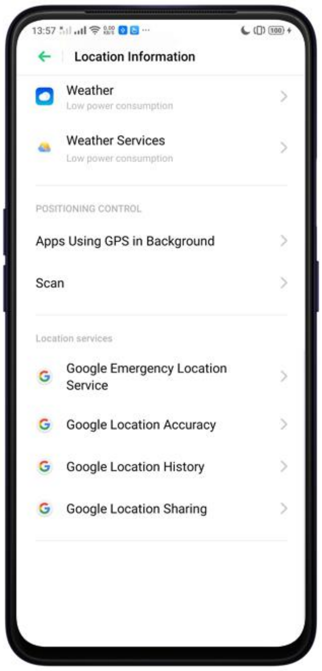
3. **Device only** (GPS).

A history of recent location requests. You'll see a list of apps that have requested location. Tap an app to enter the App info page that allows you to manage the app directly.

Positioning Control

Apps that use GPS in the background. Allows the app to use GPS in the background when enabled. Keeping background GPS of the apps active may drain the battery significantly.

Scan. Allows you to scan Wi-Fi and Bluetooth to improve location Accuracy



Location Information

Weather
Low power consumption

Weather Services
Low power consumption

POSITIONING CONTROL

Apps Using GPS in Background

Scan

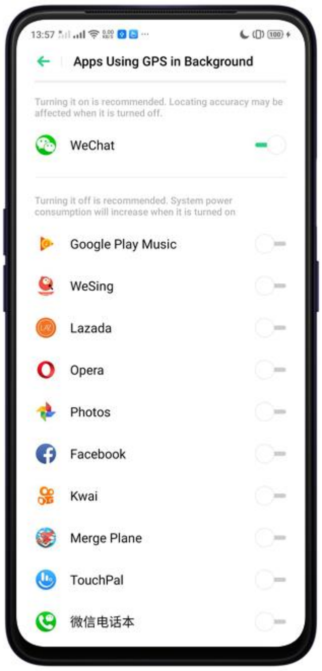
Location services

Google Emergency Location Service

Google Location Accuracy

Google Location History

Google Location Sharing



Apps Using GPS in Background

Turning it on is recommended. Locating accuracy may be affected when it is turned off.

WeChat

Turning it off is recommended. System power consumption will increase when it is turned on

Google Play Music

WeSing

Lazada

Opera

Photos

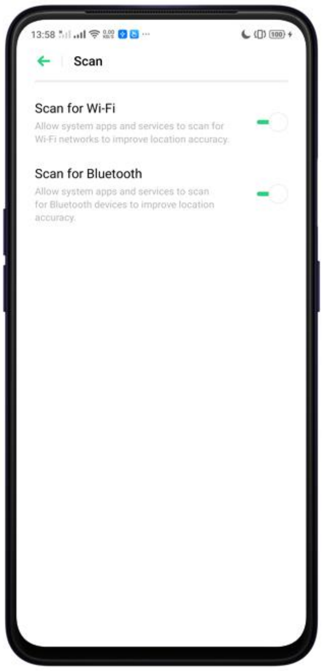
Facebook

Kwai

Merge Plane

TouchPal

微信电话本



Scan

Scan for Wi-Fi
Allow system apps and services to scan for Wi-Fi networks to improve location accuracy.

Scan for Bluetooth
Allow system apps and services to scan for Bluetooth devices to improve location accuracy.

Google Location service

Use **Google Location History** to retrace your steps. Google Location History will customize search results for location and search history.

Use **Google Location Sharing** to share your locations with friends and contacts in real time.

5.17 Use the phone internationally

When you travel overseas, stay connected to friends and family while traveling - without paying more than you have to. Follow these suggestions.

Unlock your phone. Call your wireless operator and ask if your phone needs to be unlocked. In order to prevent being overcharged, call the Customer Service Center to get the unlock code.

Shop international data roaming plans with your operator. Consult your operator or visit online websites to check roaming plans and fees that are mostly used in the country or region that you will visit.

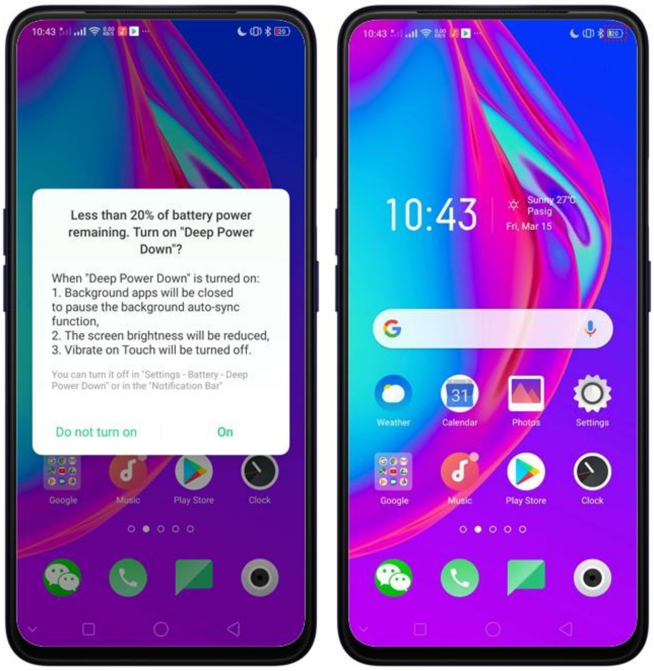
Buy or rent local Nano SIM cards. You can buy or rent SIM cards for most of the countries and regions. Learn more from travel guides and websites related to the country or region.

Use Wi-Fi. Turn off global roaming on your phone and head to a Wi-Fi hotspot, such as those in hotel lobby, or local cafes.

5.18 Power Saver

Power Saver helps increase battery life by turning off or limiting certain features, for example, turning off some background apps to pause background syncing, turning off Vibrate on Touch, and dimming the screen. Using Power Saver can give you at least extra 30 minutes to use the phone.

Turn on Power Saving. The phone will let you know when your battery level goes down to 20%, and again at 10%, and will ask you to turn on Power Saving. The battery indicator is on the top right corner will turn **yellow** while Power Saving is enabled.



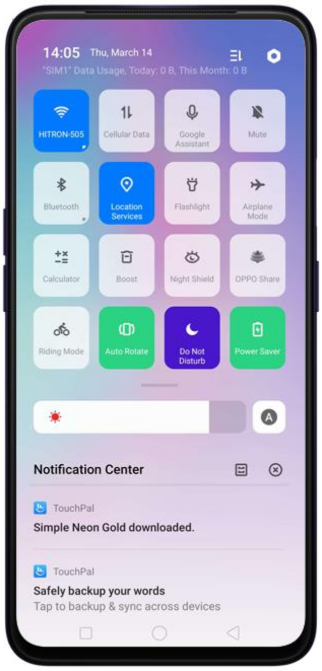
Less than 20% of battery power remaining. Turn on "Deep Power Down"?

When "Deep Power Down" is turned on:
1. Background apps will be closed to pause the background auto-sync function,
2. The screen brightness will be reduced,
3. Vibrate on Touch will be turned off.

You can turn it off in "Settings - Battery - Deep Power Down" or in the "Notification Bar"

Do not turn on
On
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock
10:43
Sunny 27°C
Pasig
Fri, Mar 15
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock

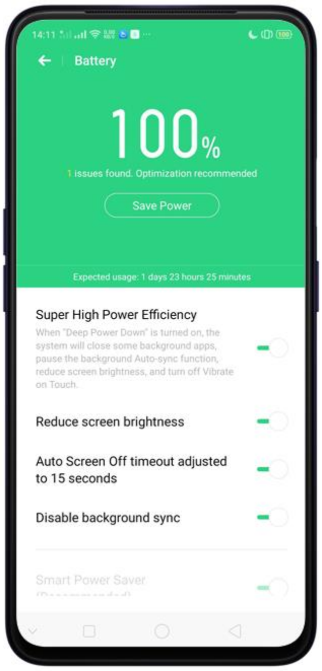
To manually turn on or off Power Saving Mode at any time, swipe down from the top of your screen to open Control Center, then tap . You can also go to **[Settings]** > **[Battery]** and enable **Super High Power Efficiency** which reduces screen brightness, auto-screen off every 15 seconds, & disables background sync.


14:05
Thu, March 14
"SIM1" Data Usage, Today: 0 B, This Month: 0 B
HITRON-505
Cellular Data
Google Assistant
Mute
Bluetooth
Location Services
Flashlight
Airplane Mode
Calculator
Boost
Night Shield
OPPO Share
Riding Mode
Auto Rotate
Do Not Disturb
Power Saver
A

Notification Center

TouchPal
Simple Neon Gold downloaded.

TouchPal
Safely backup your words
Tap to backup & sync across devices


14:11
Battery
100%
1 issues found. Optimization recommended
Save Power
Expected usage: 1 days 23 hours 25 minutes

Super High Power Efficiency
When "Deep Power Down" is turned on, the system will close some background apps, pause the background Auto-sync function, reduce screen brightness, and turn off Vibrate on Touch.

Reduce screen brightness

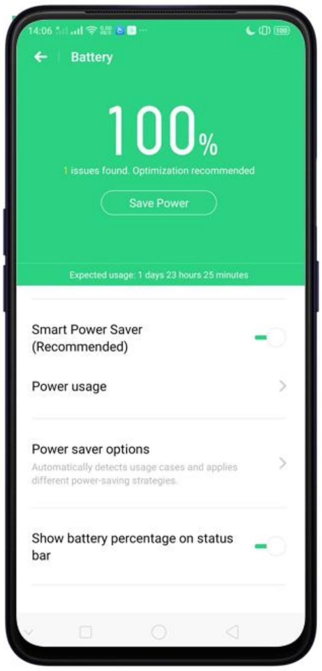
Auto Screen Off timeout adjusted to 15 seconds

Disable background sync

Smart Power Saver (Recommended)

Note: Your phone will automatically disable Power Saving when you charge it up to 80%. Power Saving is always temporary and only lasts until the next proper charge. **Optimize the power of your battery and manage those apps and settings that used up the most power. Know how to save more power so you can use it especially when it is most needed.**

To enable Smart Power Saver, go to [Settings] > [Battery] > toggle [Smart Power Saver (Recommended)] to green to enable.


14:06
Battery
100%
1 issues found. Optimization recommended
Save Power
Expected usage: 1 days 23 hours 25 minutes

Smart Power Saver (Recommended)

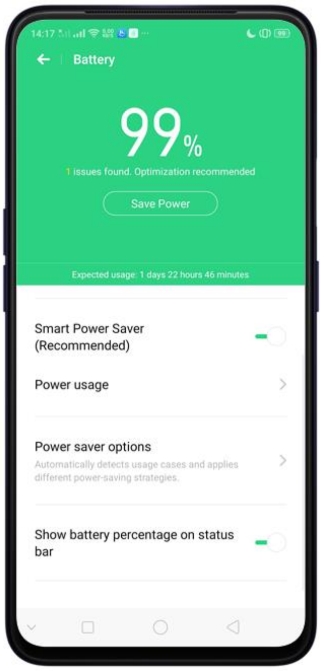
Power usage

Power saver options
Automatically detects usage cases and applies different power-saving strategies.

Show battery percentage on status bar

When Optimization is needed

When issue or issues are found, then it will prompt you that optimization is recommended. Just tap on **Save Power** and check those that needed optimization, tap **Extend Battery Life**, and then tap **Done** when finished. Note: Expected usage will be shown but this still depends on the usage and running apps on the background.



14:17

Battery

99%

1 issues found. Optimization recommended

Save Power

Expected usage: 1 days 22 hours 46 minutes

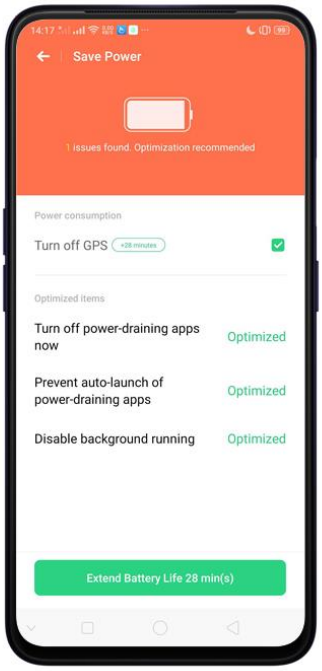
Smart Power Saver (Recommended)

Power usage

Power saver options

Automatically detects usage cases and applies different power-saving strategies.

Show battery percentage on status bar



14:17

Save Power

1 issues found. Optimization recommended

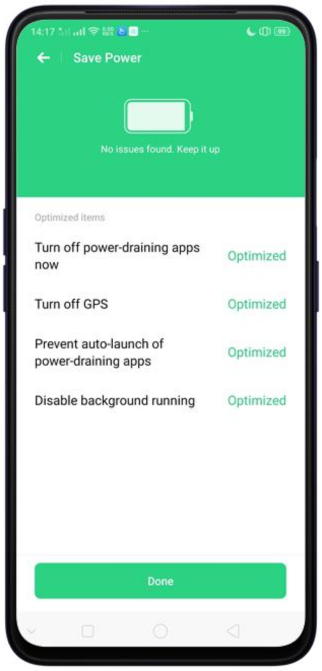
Power consumption

Turn off GPS +28 minutes ☑

Optimized items

Turn off power-draining apps now	Optimized
Prevent auto-launch of power-draining apps	Optimized
Disable background running	Optimized

Extend Battery Life 28 min(s)



14:17

Save Power

No issues found. Keep it up

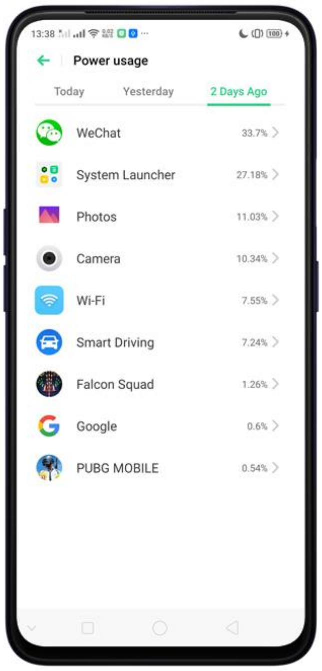
Optimized items

Turn off power-draining apps now	Optimized
Turn off GPS	Optimized
Prevent auto-launch of power-draining apps	Optimized
Disable background running	Optimized

Done

Other Power Saving features

- Power usage. Shows the apps that are consuming the most power. Tap Power usage to give lists from Today, Yesterday or 2 days ago.

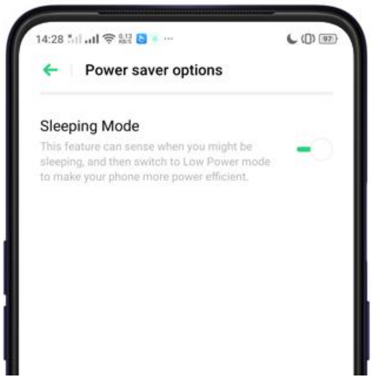


Power usage

Today Yesterday 2 Days Ago

WeChat	33.7%
System Launcher	27.18%
Photos	11.03%
Camera	10.34%
Wi-Fi	7.55%
Smart Driving	7.24%
Falcon Squad	1.26%
Google	0.6%
PUBG MOBILE	0.54%

- **Power Saver options. Can automatically detect each usage and applies different power saving strategies.**

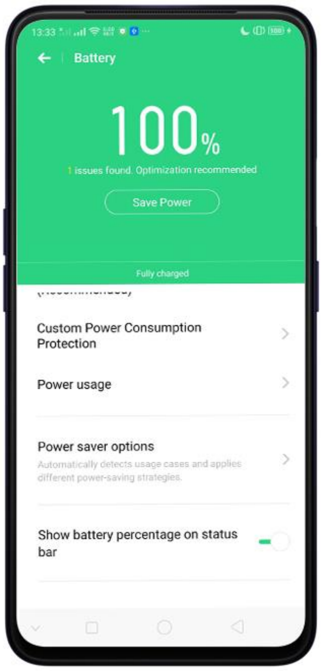


Power saver options

Sleeping Mode

This feature can sense when you might be sleeping, and then switch to Low Power mode to make your phone more power efficient.

- **Show battery percentage on the status bar. If you want to see how much battery is left just enable this feature by toggling [Show battery percentage on the status bar] to green to enable.**


13:33
Battery
100%
Save Power
Fully charged
Custom Power Consumption Protection
Power usage
Power saver options
Show battery percentage on status bar

1 issues found. Optimization recommended

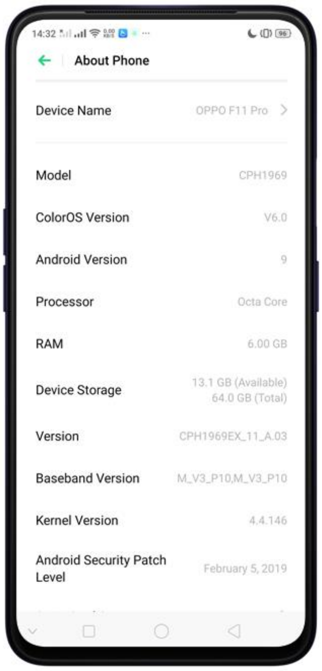
Automatically detects usage cases and applies different power-saving strategies.

6 Personalize your OPPO Phone

6.1.ColorOS 6.0 Device Name

If you scan for a Wi-Fi Direct or Bluetooth connection with your phone, your device name will display on the target devices.

Change device name for Wi-Fi and Bluetooth. Go to **[Settings]** > **[About Phone]**. You can also change the device name when you enable Bluetooth or Wi-Fi Direct.



About Phone

Device Name OPPO F11 Pro

Model CPH1969

ColorOS Version V6.0

Android Version 9

Processor Octa Core

RAM 6.00 GB

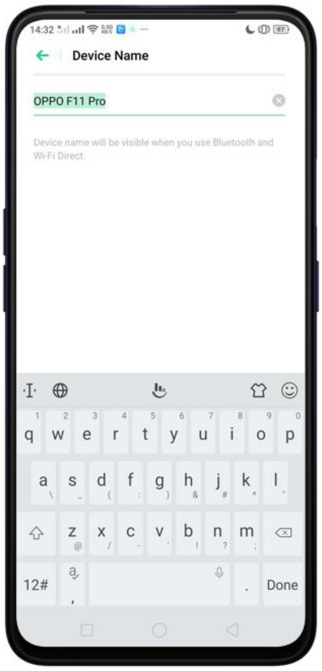
Device Storage 13.1 GB (Available) 64.0 GB (Total)

Version CPH1969EX_11_A.03

Baseband Version M_V3_P10,M_V3_P10

Kernel Version 4.4.146

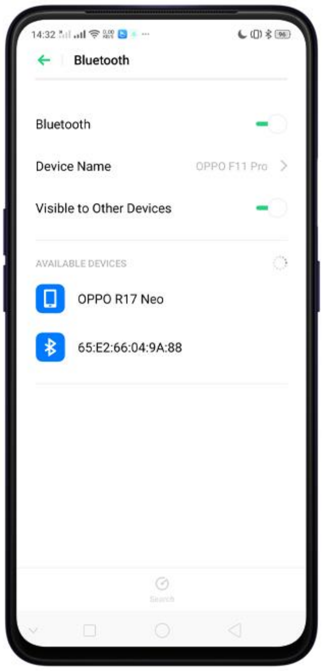
Android Security Patch Level February 5, 2019



Device Name

OPPO F11 Pro

Device name will be visible when you use Bluetooth and Wi-Fi Direct.



Bluetooth

Bluetooth

Device Name OPPO F11 Pro

Visible to Other Devices

AVAILABLE DEVICES

OPPO R17 Neo

65:E2:66:04:9A:88

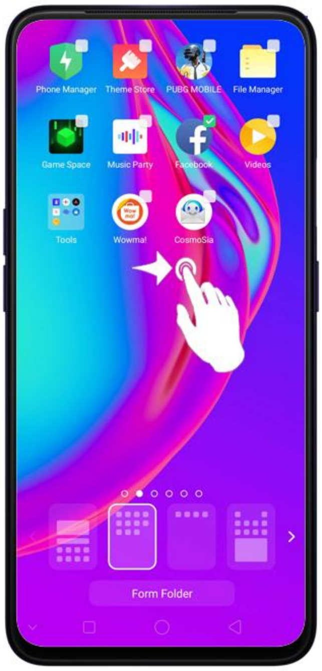
6.2.Personalize the Home Screen

6.2.1. Organize the Home Screen

From the Home Screen, you can access all your apps and widgets. To keep everything in order, you can organize your Home Screen to make it more manageable and ~~keep it~~ looking neat.

Add or Remove a Home Screen page

Add a Home Screen page. Swipe to the rightmost screen and drag an app or widget off the screen to the right.

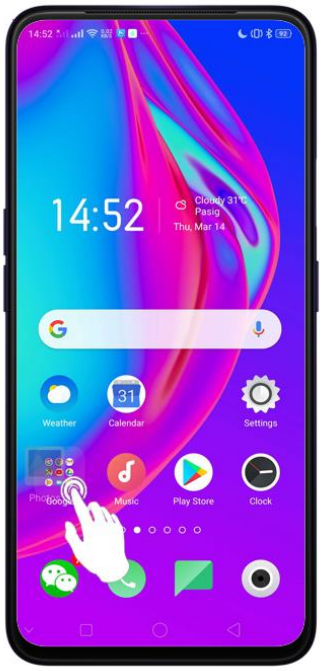

Phone Manager
Theme Store
PUBG MOBILE
File Manager
Game Space
Music Party
Facebook
Videos
Tools
Wowma!
CosmoSia
Form Folder

Remove a Home Screen page. Drag all the apps and widgets on a Home Screen page to another page. The empty Home Screen page will be automatically deleted.

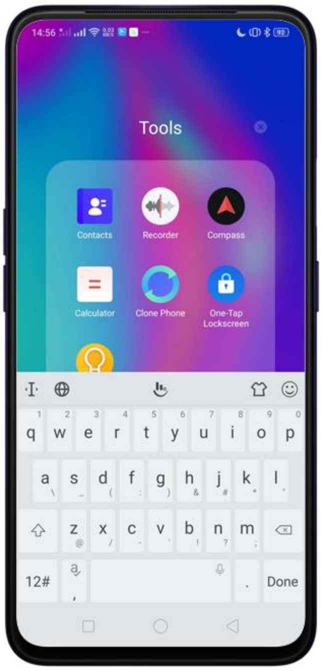
Group apps

You can put apps in folders, which can keep your Home Screen neat or help to organize similar apps.

Create a folder. Tap and hold an app until the icons start wiggling. Drag one of the apps into the other, and lift your finger when the first app seems to merge into the second one. Add more apps by dragging them in.


14:52
Cloudy 31°C
Pasig
Thu, Mar 14
Weather
Calendar
Settings
Music
Play Store
Clock

Edit the folder's name. When you first create a folder, your phone assigns a suggested name to it. To edit the name, tap on the text.


Tools
Contacts
Recorder
Compass
Calculator
Clone Phone
One-Tap Lockscreen
Done

Rearrange apps and folders

OPPO smartphone has set a default arrangement for users, but you can still rearrange the apps and folders to fit how you use your phone.

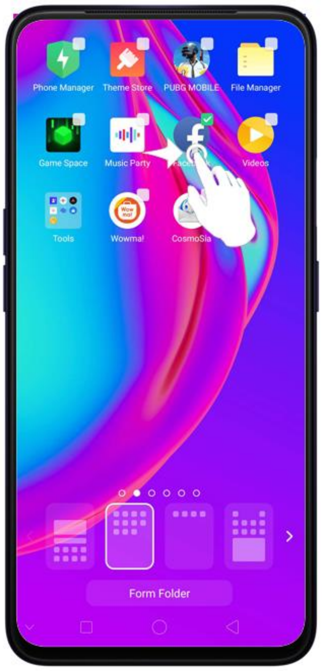
Remove apps from a folder. Tap the folder, then tap and hold-an app until the icons start wiggling. Drag the app out of the folder and into the Home Screen.

Delete a folder. Drag all the apps out of the folder and into the Home Screen, and the folder will disappear.

Rearrange apps. Tap and hold ~~on~~ an app until the icons start wiggling. Drag and drop the app icon to a new location. To save your changes, press the **Home** or **Return** button.

Note: Icons will be aligned to the left automatically.

Move the icon to a new screen. Drag the icon of the screen to the right and let it go when the new page appears.



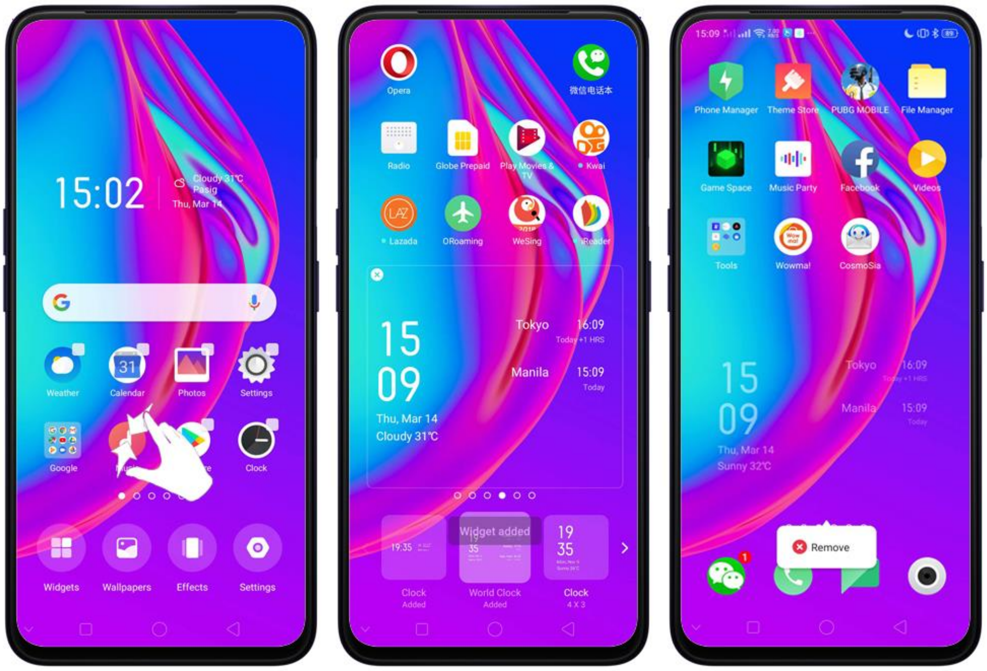
Add or remove Home Screen widgets. See Home Screen widgets.

6.2.2. Home Screen Widgets & Transition Effects

You can give yourself a fancy Home Screen with a highly-detailed set of widgets, for example, clock, weather, battery or mail widgets. You can also use them to tweak notifications, alarms and other options. In other words, there's considerably more here than just widgets. You can also change the transition effect on your phone, which is the style in which you slide the Home Screen right or left.

Manage Home Screen

Add a widget. Pinch your fingers together, then tap **[Widgets]**. You'll see all available widgets. Touch, hold and drag one widget to the screen. Make sure there is enough space for that widget.

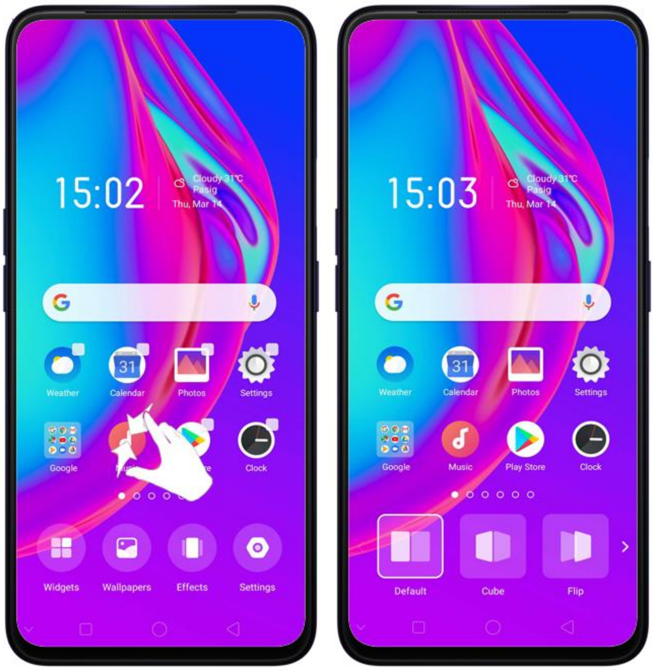

15:02
Thu, Mar 14
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Clock
Widgets
Wallpapers
Effects
Settings
Opera
Radio
Globe Prepaid
Kwai
Lazada
ORoaming
WeSing
15
09
Thu, Mar 14
Cloudy 31℃
Tokyo
16:09
Manila
15:09
Today
Widget added
Clock
Added
World Clock
Added
Clock
4 X 3
Phone Manager
Theme Store
PUBG MOBILE
File Manager
Game Space
Music Party
Facebook
Videos
Tools
Wowma!
CosmoSia
Sunny 32℃
Remove

Move a widget. Touch and hold a widget for about 2 seconds, then drag it around.

Delete a widget. Tap ✕ on the upper left corner of the widget or just tap on **Remove** notification that will appear.

Customize transition effect

Set up transition effect. Pinch your fingers together, then tap **[Effects]**.

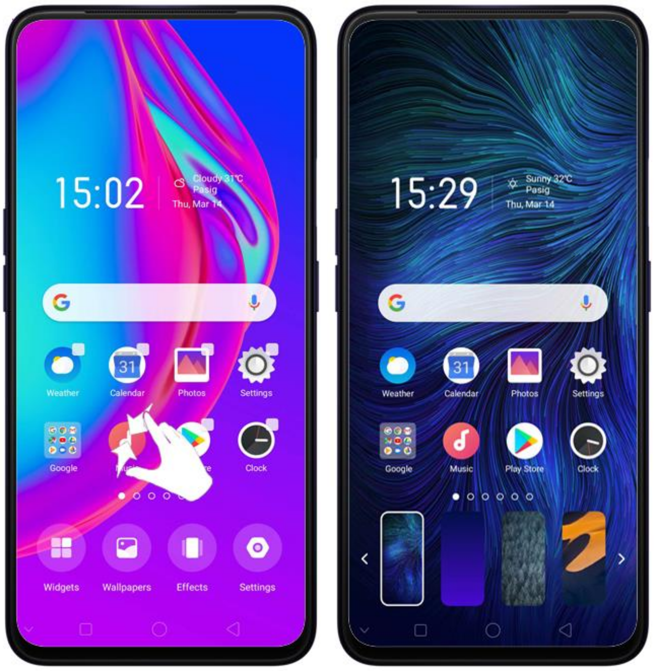

15:02
Cloudy 31°C
Pasig
Thu, Mar 14
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Clock
Widgets
Wallpapers
Effects
Settings
15:03
Cloudy 31°C
Pasig
Thu, Mar 14
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock
Default
Cube
Flip

Preview and choose an effect. Tap a transition effect and it will show the preview effect. You can choose one from the five options:

- Default Mode
- Cube Slide
- Flipping Slider
- Card Effect
- Tilting Mode

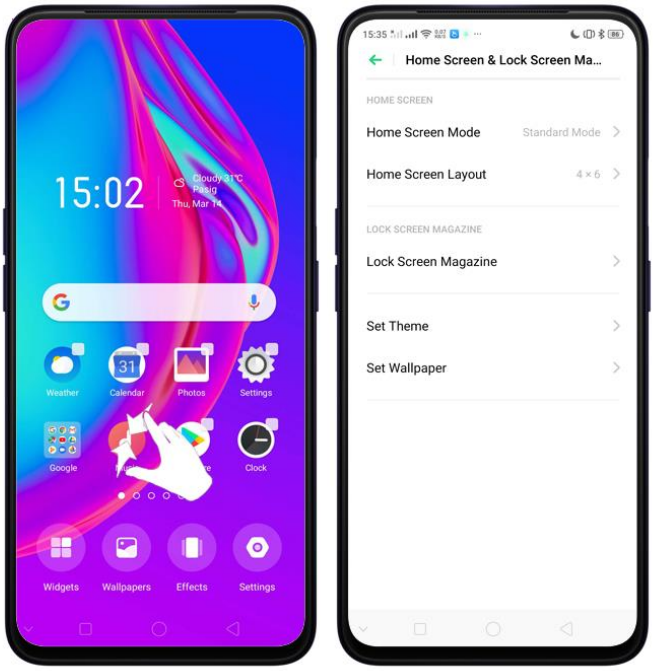
Quick change of Wallpapers Customize

Choose Wallpapers. Pinch your fingers together, then tap **[Wallpapers]**.


15:02
Cloudy 31°C
Pasig
Thu, Mar 14
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Clock
Widgets
Wallpapers
Effects
Settings
15:29
Sunny 32°C
Pasig
Thu, Mar 14
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock

Quick Shortcut to Home Screen and Locks Screen Magazine

Home Screen and Lock Screen Magazine Shortcut to Settings. For a quick shortcut, tap **[Settings]**.


15:02
Cloudy 31°C
Pasig
Thu, Mar 14
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Clock
Widgets
Wallpapers
Effects
Settings
15:35

Home Screen & Lock Screen Ma...

HOME SCREEN

Home Screen Mode Standard Mode

Home Screen Layout 4 × 6

LOCK SCREEN MAGAZINE

Lock Screen Magazine

Set Theme

Set Wallpaper

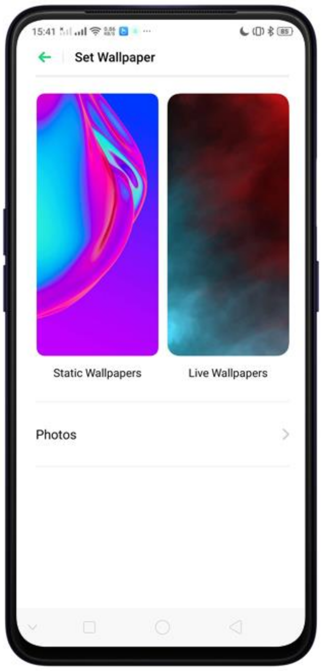
6.3.Change the Wallpaper

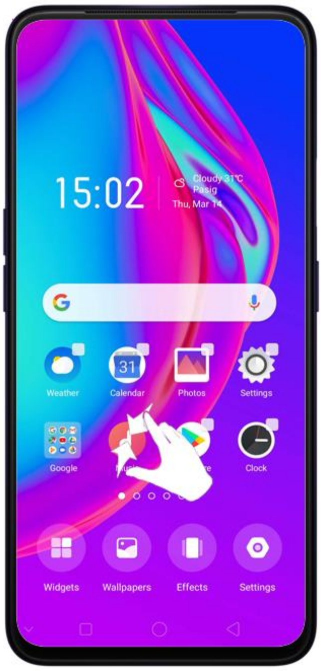
ColorOS 6.0 has amazing Wallpapers to choose from.

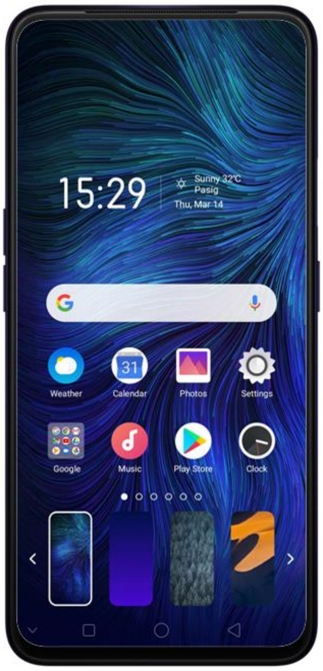
Change the wallpaper. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Home Screen & Lock Screen Magazine]**. Scroll to the end of the page, then tap **[Set wallpaper]**.

You now have an option of Static Wallpapers and Live ones. You can also make your Photos as a wallpaper.

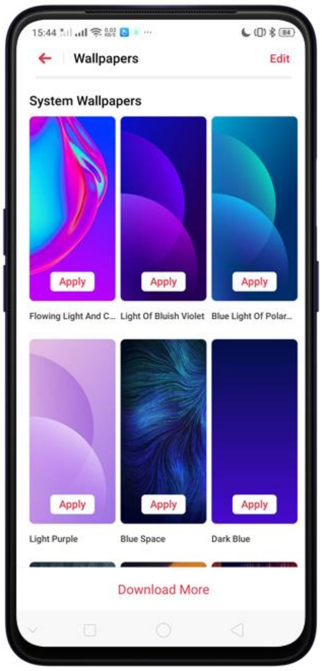
Note: You can quickly change your wallpaper by pinching your fingers together.

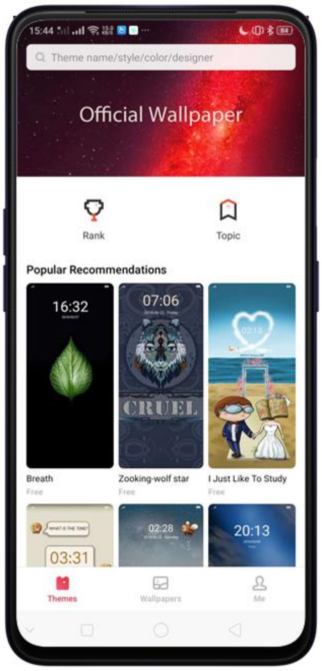

15:41
Set Wallpaper
Static Wallpapers
Live Wallpapers
Photos

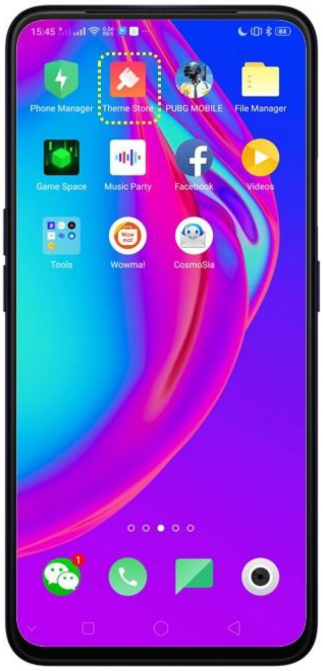

15:02
Cloudy 31°C
Pasig
Thu, Mar 14
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Clock
Widgets
Wallpapers
Effects
Settings


15:29
Sunny 32°C
Pasig
Thu, Mar 14
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock

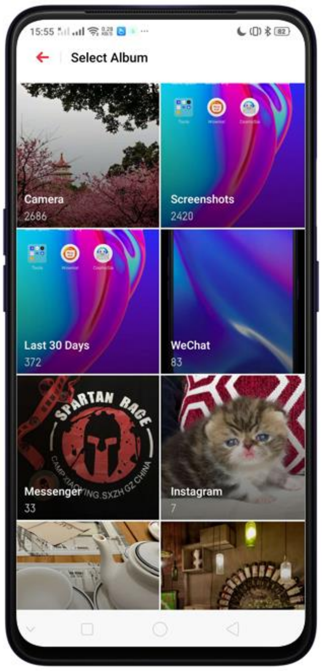
Download online wallpapers. Tap Wallpaper, then tap Download more. You can also tap Theme Store on the Home Screen directly to find more.


15:44
Wallpapers
Edit
System Wallpapers
Apply
Apply
Apply
Flowing Light And C...
Light Of Bluish Violet
Blue Light Of Polar...
Apply
Apply
Apply
Light Purple
Blue Space
Dark Blue
Download More


15:44
Theme name/style/color/designer
Official Wallpaper
Rank
Topic
Popular Recommendations
16:32
07:06
CRUEL
Breath
Free
Zooking-wolf star
Free
I Just Like To Study
Free
03:31
02:28
20:13
Themes
Wallpapers
Me


15:45
Phone Manager
Theme Store
PUBG MOBILE
File Manager
Game Space
Music Party
Facebook
Videos
Tools
Wowmal
CosmoSia

Use your own photos. Tap **Photos**, then select your favorite image from the photo gallery.



View more details in [Change the wallpaper and theme on your OPPO smartphone](#).

6.4.Lock Screen Magazine

You can let your Lock Screen's wallpaper to switch to a new picture every time you wake up your phone, lessening the likelihood of you getting bored with the same look.

Turn on Lock Screen Magazine. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Home Screen & Lock Screen Magazine]** and turn on **[Lock Screen magazine]**.

Update Using Mobile data. By default update will only be done via Wi-Fi. Disabling this is recommended to avoid consuming data.

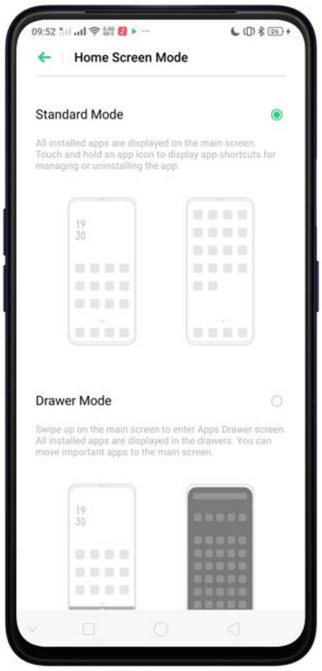
Current Resource Date. Update from time to time to have the most recent Lock Screen magazines.

Help and Feedback. When you want to write any feedback about Lock Screen magazine.

What's new in ColorOS 6.0!

Choose modes for your Home Screen. To go choose the Home Screen mode, go to [**Settings**] > [**Home Screen & Lock Screen Magazine**] > [**Home Screen Mode**] then choose which one you like best.

Standard Mode. All installed apps are displayed on the main screen.



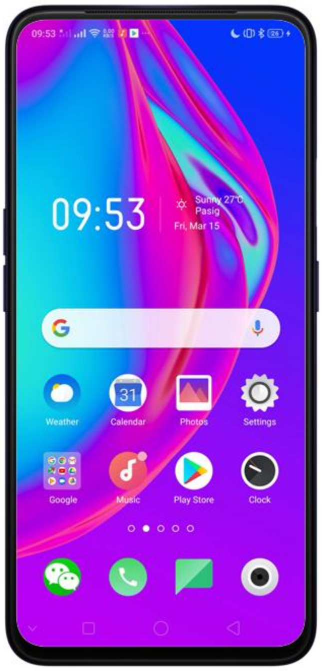
Home Screen Mode

Standard Mode ●

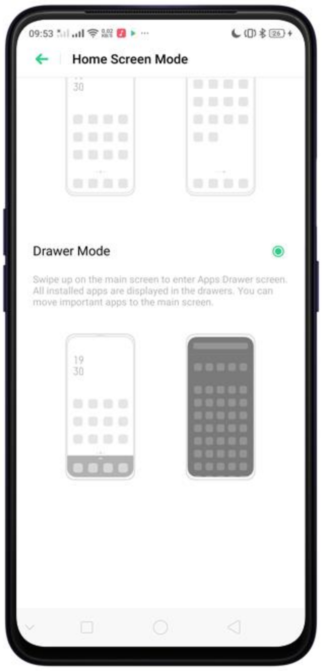
All installed apps are displayed on the main screen. Touch and hold an app icon to display app shortcuts for managing or uninstalling the app.

Drawer Mode ○

Swipe up on the main screen to enter Apps Drawer screen. All installed apps are displayed in the drawers. You can move important apps to the main screen.


09:53
Sunny 27°C
Pasig
Fri, Mar 15
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock

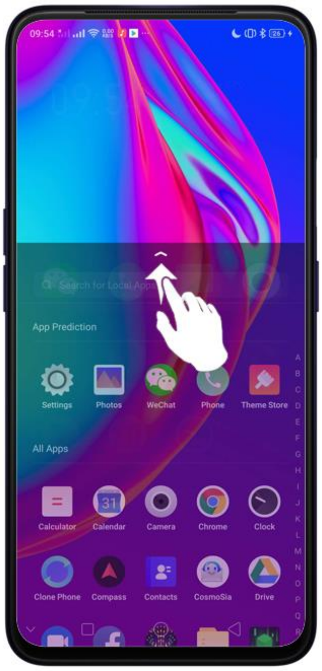
Drawer Mode. All installed apps are displayed in the Apps Drawer screen. You need to swipe up on the main screen to enter Apps Drawer screen.

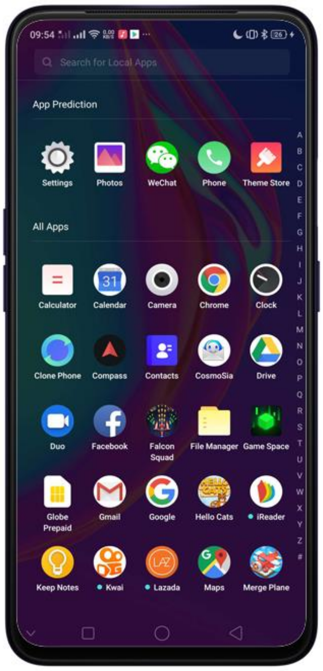


Home Screen Mode

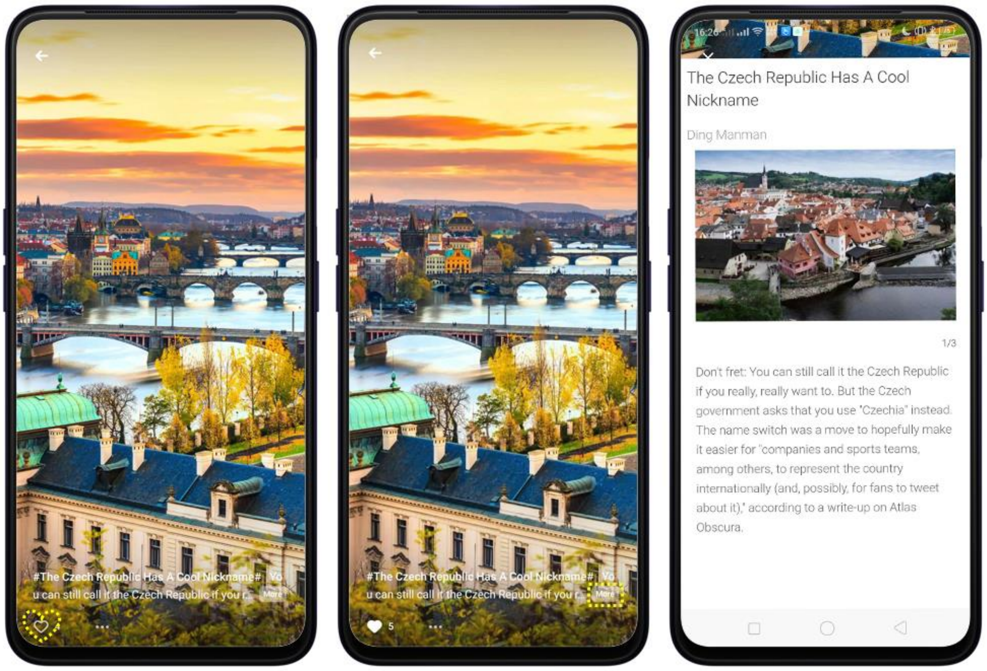
Drawer Mode ●

Swipe up on the main screen to enter Apps Drawer screen. All installed apps are displayed in the drawers. You can move important apps to the main screen.


Search for Local Apps
App Prediction
Settings
Photos
WeChat
Phone
Theme Store
All Apps
Calculator
Calendar
Camera
Chrome
Clock
Clone Phone
Compass
Contacts
CosmoSia
Drive


Search for Local Apps
App Prediction
Settings
Photos
WeChat
Phone
Theme Store
All Apps
Calculator
Calendar
Camera
Chrome
Clock
Clone Phone
Compass
Contacts
CosmoSia
Drive
Duo
Facebook
Falcon Squad
File Manager
Game Space
Globe Prepaid
Gmail
Google
Hello Cats
iReader
Keep Notes
Kwai
Lazada
Maps
Merge Plane

Lock Screen. Not only that you have amazing Lock Screen magazines, but right now you can like it by tapping ♡ and you can read about the image by tapping **More**.



#The Czech Republic Has A Cool Nickname# Yo u can still call it the Czech Republic if you r... More

The Czech Republic Has A Cool Nickname

Ding Manman

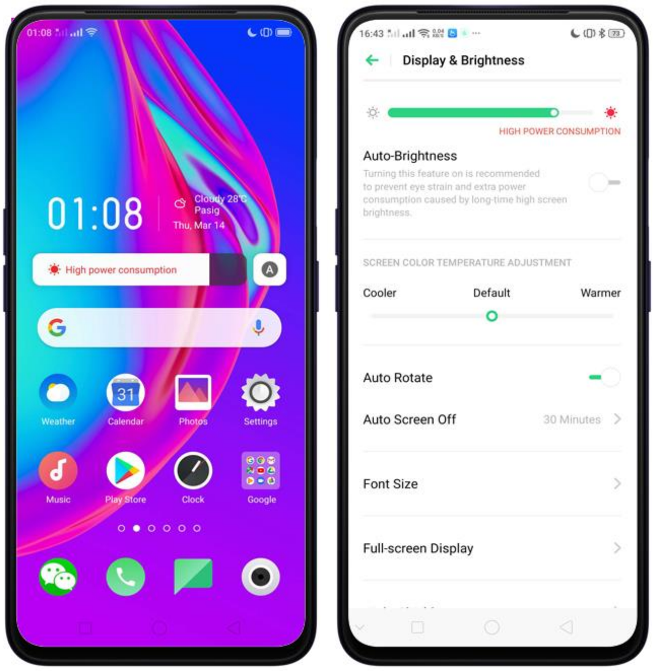
1/3

Don't fret: You can still call it the Czech Republic if you really, really want to. But the Czech government asks that you use "Czechia" instead. The name switch was a move to hopefully make it easier for "companies and sports teams, among others, to represent the country internationally (and, possibly, for fans to tweet about it)," according to a write-up on Atlas Obscura.

6.5.Adjust the Screen Brightness and Color Temperature

Protect your eyes and adjust color temperature according to your preference. Reducing screen brightness can also help to conserve battery life.

Adjust the screen brightness. Swipe up from the bottom of the screen to open Control Center, then drag ☀. Or go to **[Settings]** > **[Display & Brightness]**, then drag the slider.

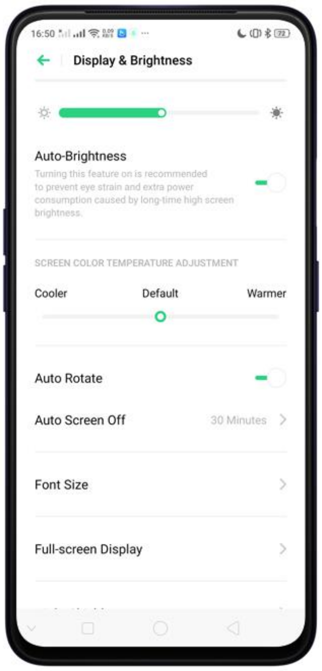

01:08
Cloudy 28°C
Pasig
Thu, Mar 14
High power consumption
A
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Music
Play Store
Clock
Google
16:43
Display & Brightness
HIGH POWER CONSUMPTION
Auto-Brightness
SCREEN COLOR TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT
Cooler
Default
Warmer
Auto Rotate
Font Size
Full-screen Display

Auto-Brightness: Turning this feature on is recommended to prevent eye strain and extra power consumption caused by long-time high screen brightness.

Auto Screen Off: 30 Minutes

Set OPPO phone to adjust screen brightness automatically. Open **Control Center**, then tap A or go to**[Settings]** > **[Display & Brightness]**, then toggle the **Auto-Brightness** slider to green. If Auto-Brightness is on, your phone adjusts the screen brightness for current light conditions using the built-in ambient light sensor.

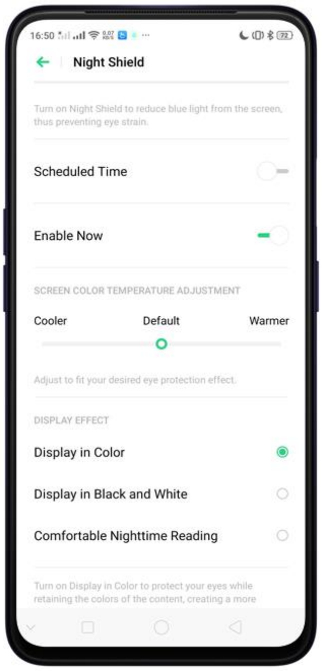
Use Night Shield. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Display & Brightness]** > **[Night Shield].** Drag the control point to adjust color temperature. The warmer you set your screen, the less blue light will be emitted from the display. When you use the OPPO phone at night, you can turn on Night Shield to cut down on eye strain and the sleeplessness you might get.


Display & Brightness

Auto-Brightness
Turning this feature on is recommended to prevent eye strain and extra power consumption caused by long-time high screen brightness.

SCREEN COLOR TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT
Cooler Default Warmer

Auto Rotate
Auto Screen Off 30 Minutes
Font Size
Full-screen Display


Night Shield

Turn on Night Shield to reduce blue light from the screen, thus preventing eye strain.

Scheduled Time
Enable Now

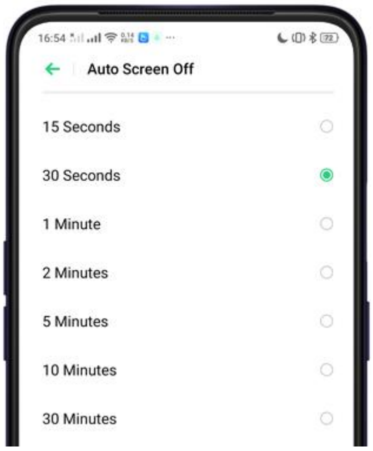
SCREEN COLOR TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT
Cooler Default Warmer
Adjust to fit your desired eye protection effect.

DISPLAY EFFECT
Display in Color ●
Display in Black and White ○
Comfortable Nighttime Reading ○

Turn on Display in Color to protect your eyes while retaining the colors of the content, creating a more

6.6.Change Auto-lock Time

By default, your device locks automatically after 30 seconds. To modify this, change the time yourself.
Change auto-lock time. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Display & Brightness]** > **[Auto Screen off]**. Options range from 15 seconds to 30 minutes.
Tip: The longer your display, the more the battery drains.

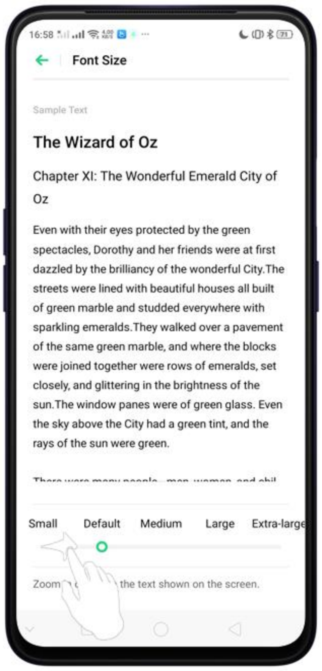

Auto Screen Off

15 Seconds ○
30 Seconds ●
1 Minute ○
2 Minutes ○
5 Minutes ○
10 Minutes ○
30 Minutes ○

6.7.Change the Font Size

Change the font size according to your preference.
Change the font size. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Display & Brightness]** > **[Font Size]**. Drag the slider to the left or right to shrink or enlarge sample text, then you'll see your new text size immediately applied to the menu text in the upper-left corner of the screen.

Tip: This will not affect the size of your icon text.


16:58
Font Size

Sample Text

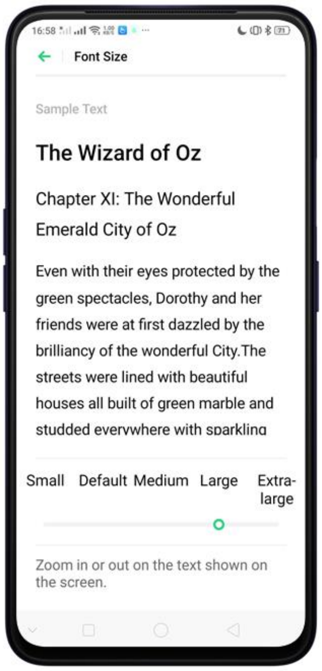
The Wizard of Oz

Chapter XI: The Wonderful Emerald City of Oz

Even with their eyes protected by the green spectacles, Dorothy and her friends were at first dazzled by the brilliancy of the wonderful City. The streets were lined with beautiful houses all built of green marble and studded everywhere with sparkling emeralds. They walked over a pavement of the same green marble, and where the blocks were joined together were rows of emeralds, set closely, and glittering in the brightness of the sun. The window panes were of green glass. Even the sky above the City had a green tint, and the rays of the sun were green.

Small Default Medium Large Extra-large

Zoom the text shown on the screen.


16:58
Font Size

Sample Text

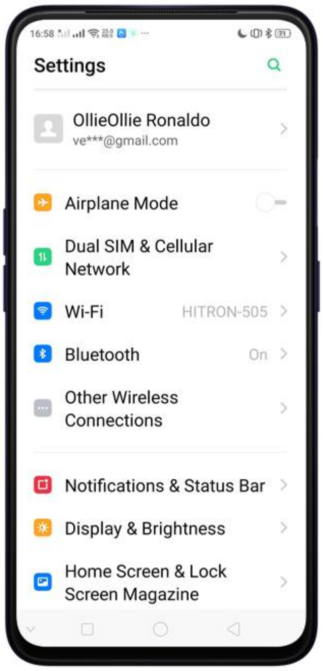
The Wizard of Oz

Chapter XI: The Wonderful Emerald City of Oz

Even with their eyes protected by the green spectacles, Dorothy and her friends were at first dazzled by the brilliancy of the wonderful City. The streets were lined with beautiful houses all built of green marble and studded everywhere with sparkling

Small Default Medium Large Extra-large

Zoom in or out on the text shown on the screen.


16:58
Settings

OllieOllie Ronaldo
ve***@gmail.com

Airplane Mode
Dual SIM & Cellular Network
Wi-Fi HITRON-505
Bluetooth On
Other Wireless Connections
Notifications & Status Bar
Display & Brightness
Home Screen & Lock Screen Magazine

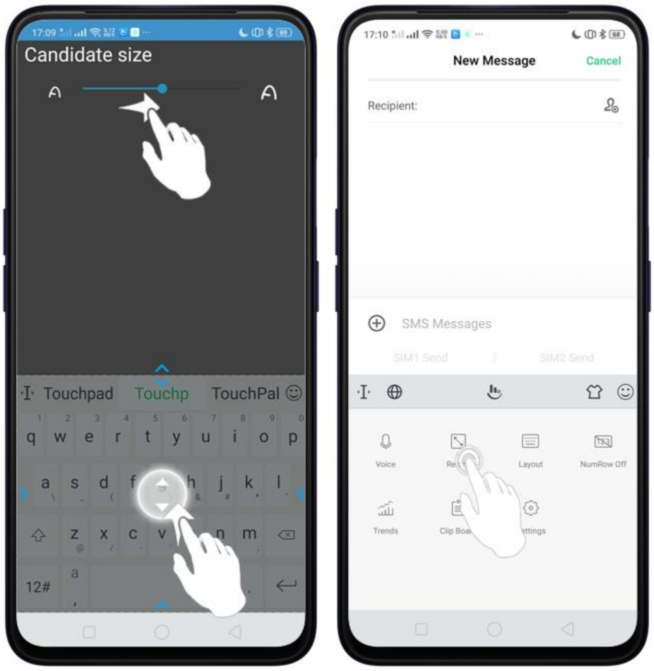
6.8.Keyboard and Input Method

6.8.1.Customize the Look of the Keyboard

Make your own keyboard by customizing the font and appearance.
Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Keyboard & Input Method]** > **[TouchPal for OPPO]** > **[Look & Feel]**.

Adjust the size of candidate words. Tap **[Candidate Size]**, then drag the control point to change font size to small, normal or large.

Customize keyboard appearance. Tap **[Candidate Size]**, or tap on the on-screen keyboard > **[Resize]**, then drag the control arrow to adjust keyboard height, width, and position.

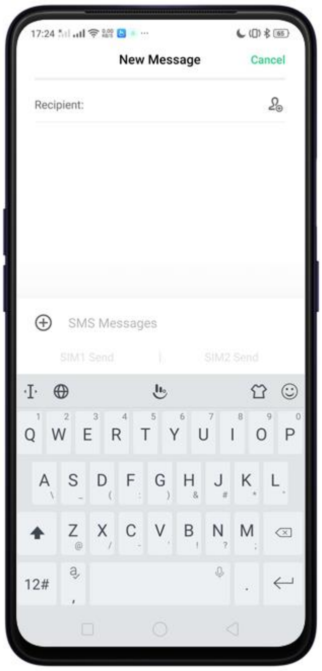

Candidate size
Touchpad
Touchp
TouchPal
New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
Voice
Layout
NumRow Off
Trends
Clip Board
Settings

6.8.2.Keyboard Layout

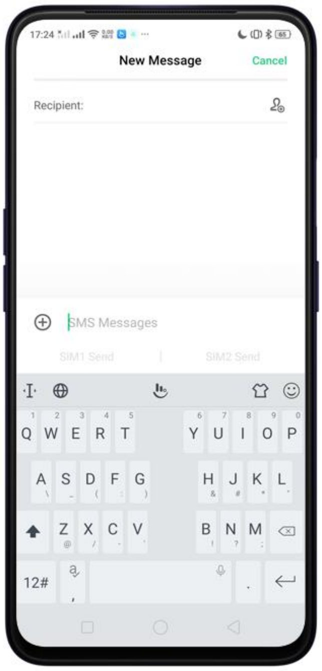
In addition to the default keyboard style, the undocked, one-handed, and split keyboard, your screen makes typing with both thumbs a breeze. You can use “Undock” feature to position the keyboard anywhere on screen, or narrow the keyboard with one-handed mode, or split the keyboard in half.

To change the keyboard layout, tap on the on-screen keyboard, then tap **Layout**.

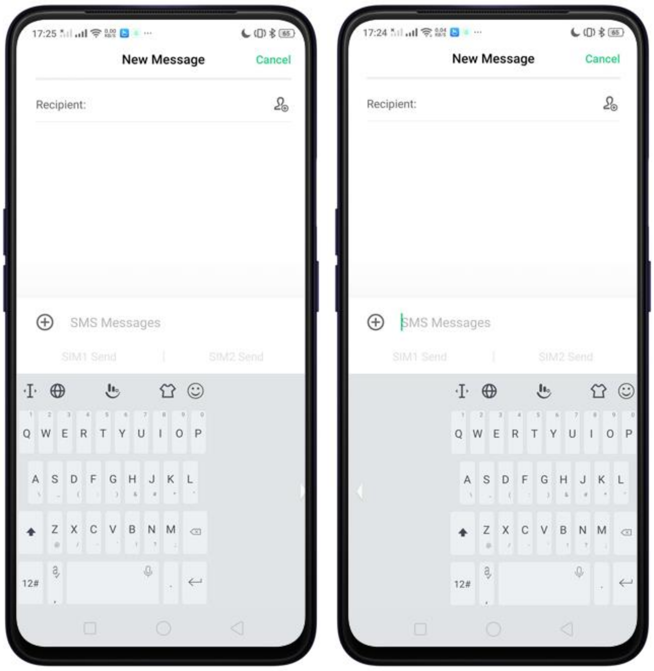
- **Normal keyboard**. The default keyboard layout on your phone.


17:24
New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
12#

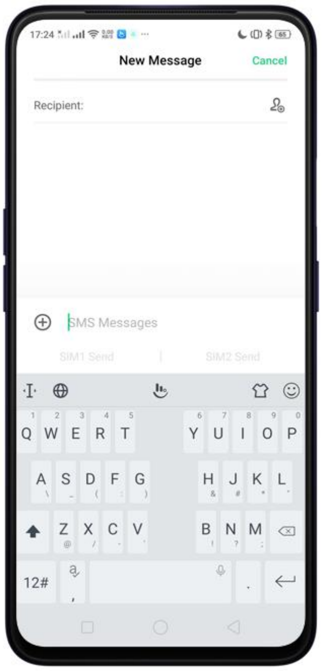
- **Undocked keyboard**. The keyboard becomes suspended and can be moved around on the screen. Tap ✥ to drag the keyboard to wherever on the screen that is most comfortable or convenient to you.


17:24
New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
12#

- **One-handed keyboard**. Shrink the keyboard so you can type with one hand easily. Tap ◁ or ▷ to adjust the keyboard left or right, depending on your preferred hand usage.


New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send

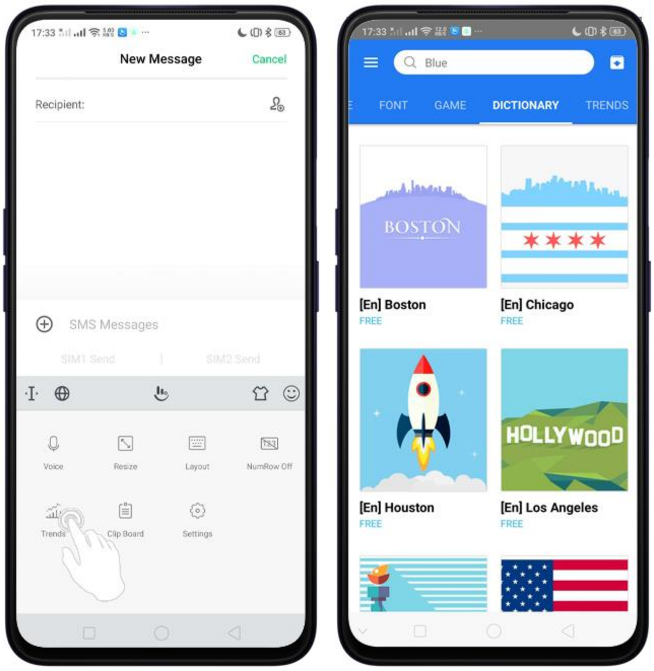
- **Split keyboard**. The keyboard will divide into two sections for easy thumb typing.


New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send

6.8.3.Trends

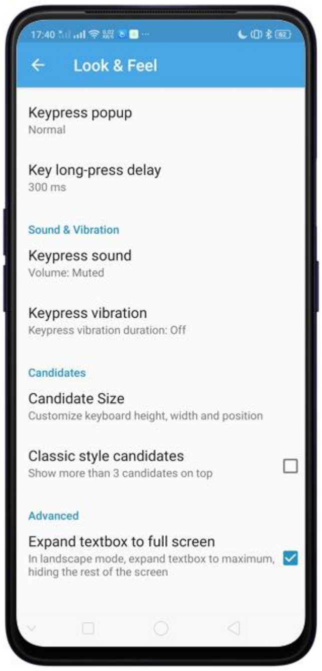
With TouchPal's Trends feature, you can download the buzzwords, change the keyboard theme and font, and get the latest headlines and games.

Get the latest trends. Tap 👆 on the on-screen keyboard, then tap Trends.


17:33
New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
Voice
Resize
Layout
NumRow Off
Trends
Clip Board
Settings
17:33
Blue
FONT
GAME
DICTIONARY
TRENDS
BOSTON
[En] Boston
FREE
[En] Chicago
FREE
HOLLYWOOD
[En] Houston
FREE
[En] Los Angeles
FREE

6.8.4.Keyboard General Settings

Your phone is preloaded with TouchPal Keyboard. You can change the keyboard settings directly on your phone. tap 👆 on the on-screen keyboard, then tap **[Settings]** > **[Look & Feel]**.



17:40

Look & Feel

Keypress popup
Normal

Key long-press delay
300 ms

Sound & Vibration

Keypress sound
Volume: Muted

Keypress vibration
Keypress vibration duration: Off

Candidates

Candidate Size
Customize keyboard height, width and position

Classic style candidates ☐
Show more than 3 candidates on top

Advanced

Expand textbox to full screen ☑
In landscape mode, expand textbox to maximum, hiding the rest of the screen

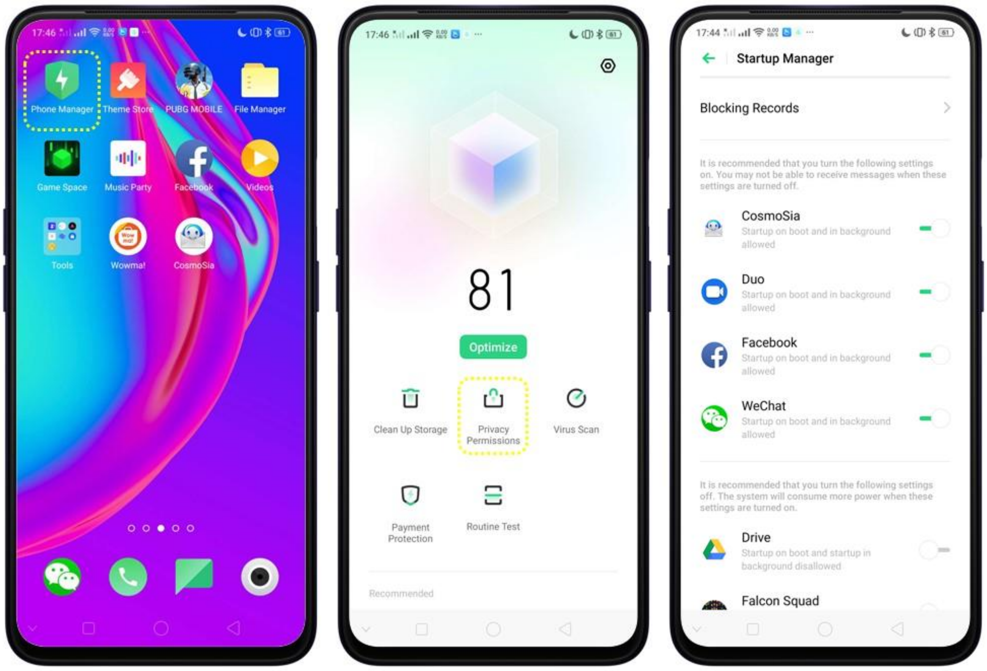
Setting	Effect
Keypress popup	A popup bubble displays when you tap a key.
Key long-press delay	Adjust the long-press delay time ranging from 200ms to 1000ms.
Keypress sound	Adjust the key press sound, or use the system volume.
Keypress vibration	Adjust the key press vibration duration, or use the system default setting.
Candidate Size	Change the size of candidate words, and adjust keyboard height, width, and position. See Customize the look of the keyboard.
Classic style candidate	Show more than three candidate words on top.
Expand textbox to full screen	Keyboard opens as full screen in landscape mode.
Expand textbox to full screen	Keyboard opens as full screen in landscape mode.

6.9.Set up Startup Manager

Startup Manager helps you to manage system startup entries. You can choose what apps to start first when your phone boots up to meet your using habits.

* Too many self-starting apps may cause a low startup or operating speed.

Set up Startup Manager. Tap **Phone Manager** on the Home Screen, then tap **[Privacy Permissions]** > **[Startup Manager]**. Toggle the sliders to white if you don't want to start apps when phone boots up.


17:46
Phone Manager
Theme Store
PUBG MOBILE
File Manager
Game Space
Music Party
Facebook
Videos
Tools
Wowma!
CosmoSia
17:46
81
Optimize
Clean Up Storage
Privacy Permissions
Virus Scan
Payment Protection
Routine Test
Recommended
17:44

Startup Manager

Blocking Records

It is recommended that you turn the following settings on. You may not be able to receive messages when these settings are turned off.

CosmoSia
Startup on boot and in background allowed

Duo
Startup on boot and in background allowed

Facebook
Startup on boot and in background allowed

WeChat
Startup on boot and in background allowed

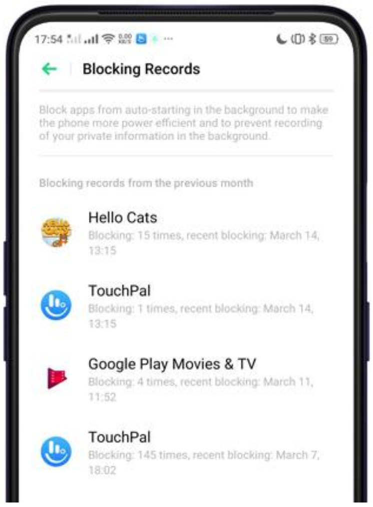
It is recommended that you turn the following settings off. The system will consume more power when these settings are turned on.

Drive
Startup on boot and startup in background disallowed

Falcon Squad

Tip: For apps that receive real-time messages, such as Facebook, Messenger, WhatsApp, and Twitter, it is best to allow them running in the background.

View the apps that had been blocked from starting in the background. Tap **Blocking Records.**


17:54

Blocking Records

Block apps from auto-starting in the background to make the phone more power efficient and to prevent recording of your private information in the background.

Blocking records from the previous month

Hello Cats
Blocking: 15 times, recent blocking: March 14, 13:15

TouchPal
Blocking: 1 times, recent blocking: March 14, 13:15

Google Play Movies & TV
Blocking: 4 times, recent blocking: March 11, 11:52

TouchPal
Blocking: 145 times, recent blocking: March 7, 18:02

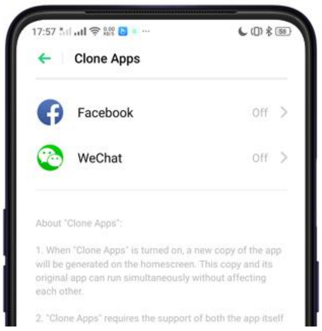
6.10. Clone Apps

Clone Apps allows an app to run two accounts on a single phone.
To turn on **[Clone Apps],** go to **[Settings]** > **[Clone Apps]**, choose an app and turn on **[Enable App Cloning]**. A new copy of this app will be generated on the homescreen after Clone Apps is enabled. This copy and its original app can run simultaneously without affecting each other.

1. "Clone Apps" works only if both the app itself and the phone supports it. If a cloned app does not work properly, it means that the function or operation is not supported by the app or phone.

2. "Clone Apps" currently does not support data transfer between a cloned app and a computer.

3. "Clone Apps" currently does not support to run more than two app clones simultaneously.


17:57

Clone Apps

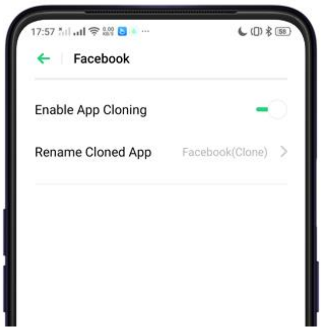
Facebook Off

WeChat Off

About "Clone Apps":

1. When "Clone Apps" is turned on, a new copy of the app will be generated on the homescreen. This copy and its original app can run simultaneously without affecting each other.

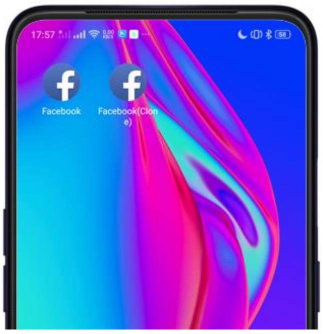
2. "Clone Apps" requires the support of both the app itself


17:57

Facebook

Enable App Cloning

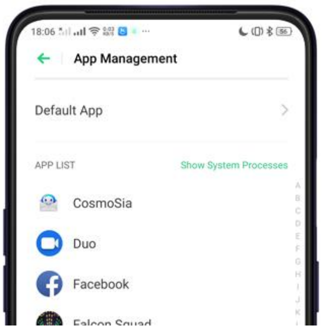
Rename Cloned App Facebook(Clone)

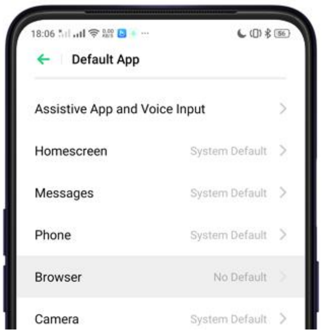


6.11. Manage Default App

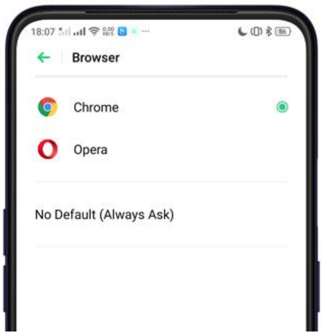
What is Default App? If you've installed two different applications that essentially do the same thing, for example, Google Chrome and Firefox Web Browser, you'll likely be presented with a pop-up menu when trying to open a web page, asking you which application you'd like to complete the action with. You can manage your default app and never be bothered when performing that action again.

Manage Default App. Go to **[Settings]** > **[App Management]** and tap **[Default App]**. Take **[Browser]** as an example, there are three apps and you can choose one of them to be the default one. You are suggested to use the original apps to get the best performance.


18:06
App Management
Default App
APP LIST
Show System Processes
CosmoSia
Duo
Facebook


18:06
Default App
Assistive App and Voice Input

Homescreen System Default
Messages System Default
Phone System Default
Browser No Default
Camera System Default

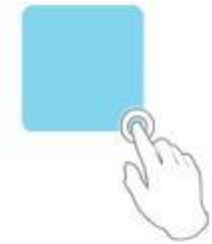

18:07
Browser

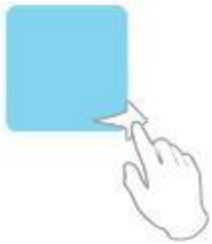
Chrome ●
Opera
No Default (Always Ask)

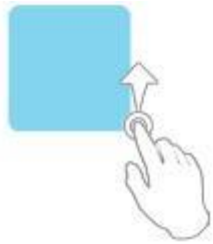
6.12. Gesture & Motion

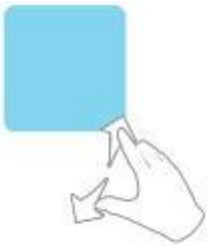
Gestures

OPPO smartphone is designed to understand gestures. You can use gestures such as tap, swipe, drag, and spread to operate your phone.

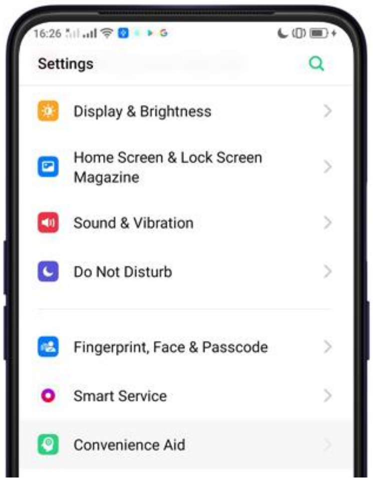


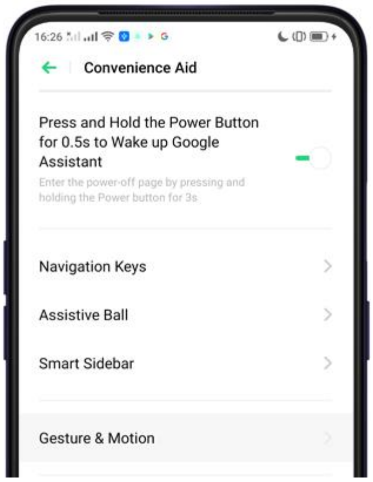






To set up complex gestures for specific functions, go to **[Settings]** > **[Convenience Aid]** > **[Gesture & Motion]**.


16:26
Settings
Display & Brightness
Home Screen & Lock Screen Magazine
Sound & Vibration
Do Not Disturb
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart Service
Convenience Aid


16:26
Convenience Aid

Press and Hold the Power Button for 0.5s to Wake up Google Assistant

Enter the power-off page by pressing and holding the Power button for 3s

Navigation Keys
Assistive Ball
Smart Sidebar
Gesture & Motion

Screen-off Gestures

To set up screen-off gestures, you need to turn it on first.

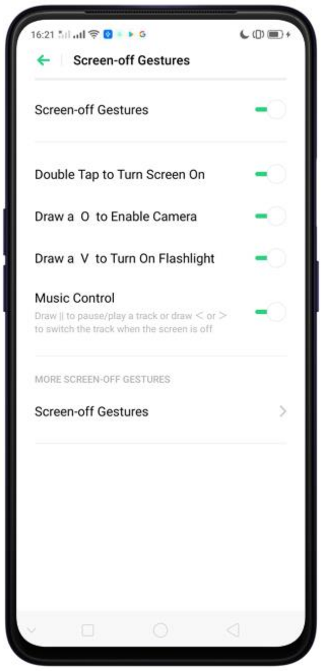
Double tap to turn screen on: Turn it on to wake up your locked screen by double-tapiing on the screen.

Draw O to start camera: When on lock or sleep mode, you can draw O on the locked screen to open Camera app.

Draw V to open torchlight: When on lock or sleep mode, you can draw V on the locked screen to open the torchlight.

Music control: When on lock or sleep mode, you can draw || to pause/play a track, or draw < or > to switch the track when the screen is off.

Add more screen-off gestures: Other 7 options are **Draw ^, Slide up, Slide down, Slide left, Slide right, Draw M and Draw W**. Choose one to unlock the phone, call someone or start an app.



Screen-off Gestures

Screen-off Gestures

Double Tap to Turn Screen On

Draw a O to Enable Camera

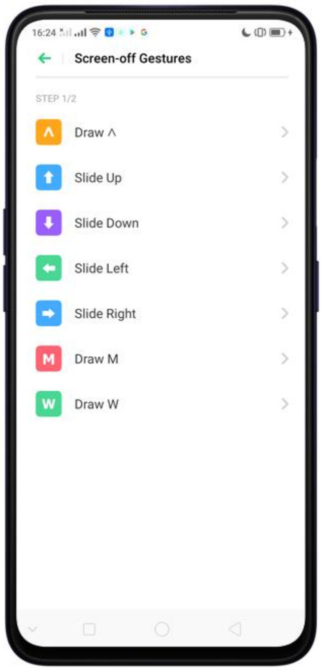
Draw a V to Turn On Flashlight

Music Control

Draw || to pause/play a track or draw < or > to switch the track when the screen is off

MORE SCREEN-OFF GESTURES

Screen-off Gestures >



Screen-off Gestures

STEP 1/2

Draw ʌ >

Slide Up >

Slide Down >

Slide Left >

Slide Right >

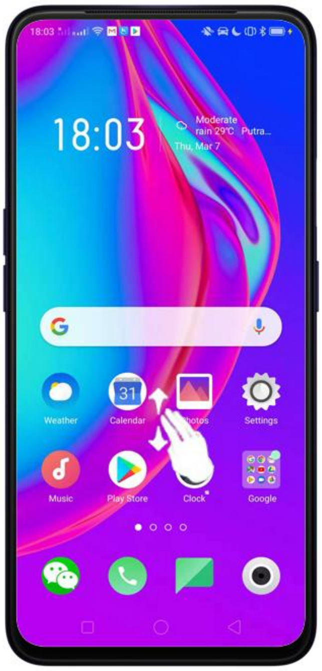
Draw M >

Draw W >

3-Finger Gesture

Take a screenshot. Swipe down the screen with three fingers.

Use Split-screen. Under the interface of an app, swipe up the screen with three fingers to enter split-screen mode.



18:03
18:03
Moderate rain 29℃ Putra...
Thu, Mar 7
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Music
Play Store
Clock
Google

Motion

The motion-sensing technology is used in OPPO smartphone. Use it to let your phone response to motion.

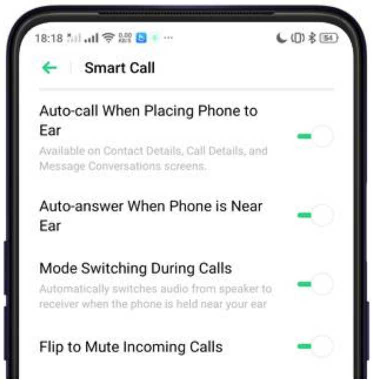
Smart call

Auto call when place at the ear: Before you can use auto call, you need to set the default SIM card for calling. Go to a contact detail, call detail, message conversation or info interface, put the phone near your ear and your phone will automatically call that specific person.

Auto answer when near the ear: This function lets your phone ~~to~~ answer any incoming calls automatically when putting the phone near your ear.

Switch from speaker for calls: Use it to automatically switch from speaker to receiver when you put the phone near your ear during phone calls.

Flip to mute incoming calls: Use it to silence the ringer by turning the phone over on the table or other flat surfaces.



Auto-call When Placing Phone to Ear
Available on Contact Details, Call Details, and Message Conversations screens.

Auto-answer When Phone is Near Ear

Mode Switching During Calls
Automatically switches audio from speaker to receiver when the phone is held near your ear

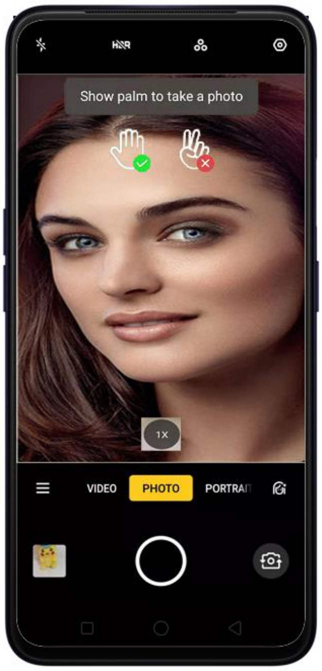
Flip to Mute Incoming Calls

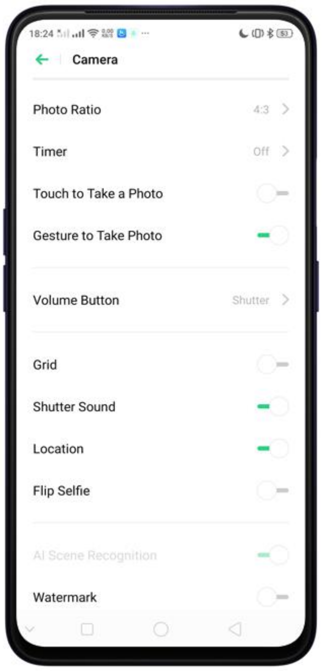
Mistouch Prevention Mode

Turn it on to prevent incorrect operations if the Lock Screen is covered.

Take selfies

Open Camera app and switch to the front camera. Tap ◎ at the upper right corner to open the setting of the camera then enable **Gesture to Take Photo**. Pose the same hand gesture towards the camera, once the camera captures that, it will take a photo automatically after two seconds. You can change your pose and expression within this two seconds.





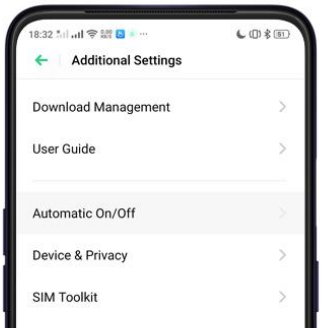
Camera

Photo Ratio 4:3
Timer Off
Touch to Take a Photo
Gesture to Take Photo
Volume Button Shutter
Grid
Shutter Sound
Location
Flip Selfie
AI Scene Recognition
Watermark

6.13. Preset Device On/Off Time or Automatic On/Off

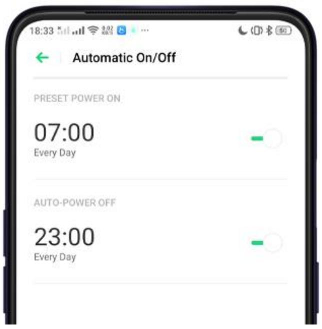
The feature helps you to automatically turn on or off your OPPO smartphone at the scheduled time you specify – for example, you can fall asleep while listening to your favorite music without having to worry about turning off your phone. It also gives you different ways to schedule the events for your needs, such as daily, weekly and only once.

Turn on Device ON/OFF Preset. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Automatic On/Off]**, then toggle the sliders to green as needed.



Additional Settings

Download Management
User Guide
Automatic On/Off
Device & Privacy
SIM Toolkit

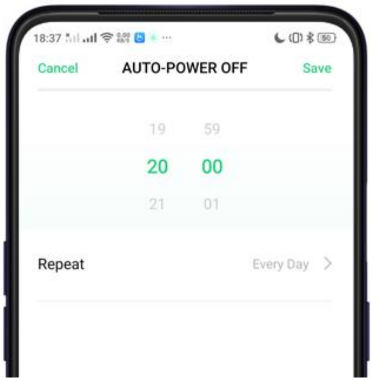


Automatic On/Off

PRESET POWER ON
07:00
Every Day

AUTO-POWER OFF
23:00
Every Day

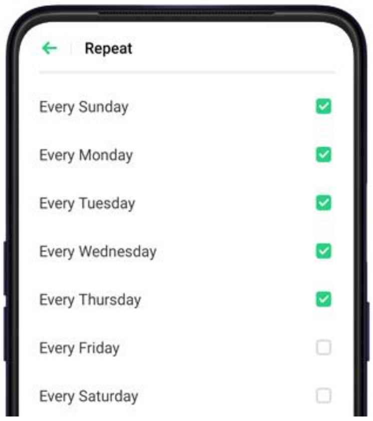
Set when to turn on or off the phone automatically. Tap the time, drag your finger across each column to change the time, then tap **Save**.


18:37

Cancel AUTO-POWER OFF Save

Repeat Every Day

Repeat the event on certain days. Tap the time, tap Repeat, and then choose the days.


Repeat

Every Sunday ☑

Every Monday ☑

Every Tuesday ☑

Every Wednesday ☑

Every Thursday ☑

Every Friday ☐

Every Saturday ☐

6.14. App Display in Full-screen

Adjust your app layouts. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Display & Brightness]** > **[Full-screen Display]** toggle the sliders to green if you want the apps to display in full-screen. Or you can open an app, then tap “Tap full-screen display.” App will restart when you turn on this feature.

Note: Turning on "Full-screen display" will improve your experience, but it may cause display issues due to incompatibility or other reasons.

7. Apps

7.1. Phone

7.1.1 Make and Answer Phone Calls

Make a call

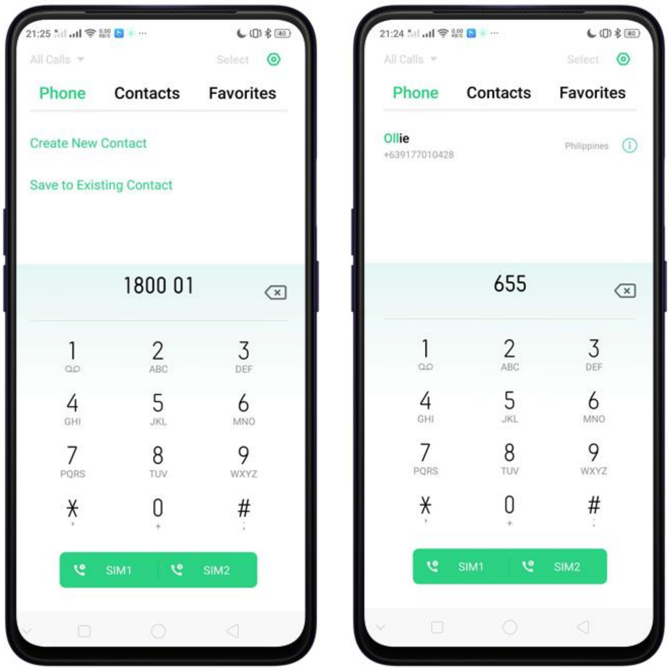
To make a call and talk to your friends, you can manually enter a phone number on the dialer, choose a number on your Contacts or Favorites, or tap one of the recent calls.

Note: The signal indicator at the upper-left corner of the screen shows whether you're in range of your operator's network and can make and receive calls. The more bars, the stronger the signal.

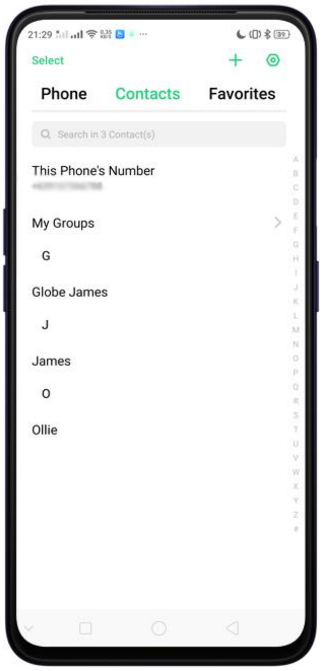
Dial the number you want to call. Tap Phone, tap the keypad to enter the number, then choose the SIM you want to make a call (if you are 2 SIM cards). Tap

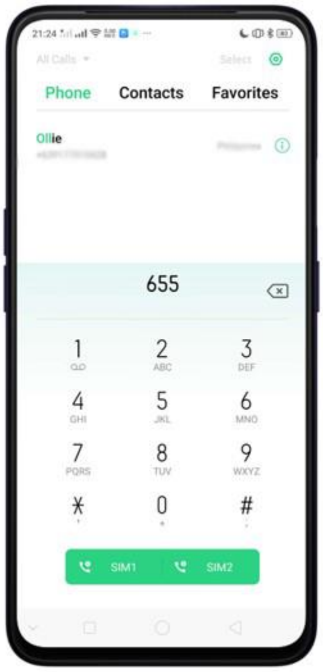
⌫ if you made a mistake. You can also copy a phone number and open the keypad, then tap the number to paste it to the keypad.

Besides, if you're not sure what the exact phone number is, you can quickly search the contact by dialing the numbers that contain the contact's name or initial letters on the keypad. For example, if you want to call Ollie, tap "655" and you'll see the contact.

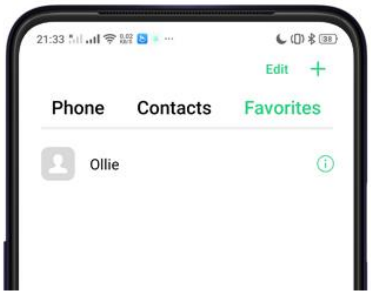

21:25
All Calls
Select
Phone
Contacts
Favorites
Create New Contact
Save to Existing Contact
1800 01
1
2 ABC
3 DEF
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
*
0 +
#
SIM1
SIM2
21:24
All Calls
Select
Phone
Contacts
Favorites
Ollie
+639177010428
Philippines
655
SIM1
SIM2

Call someone on your contacts list. Tap Contacts and choose a contact, then tap the phone number to make a call. You can also use Search feature to find a contact, see Search.

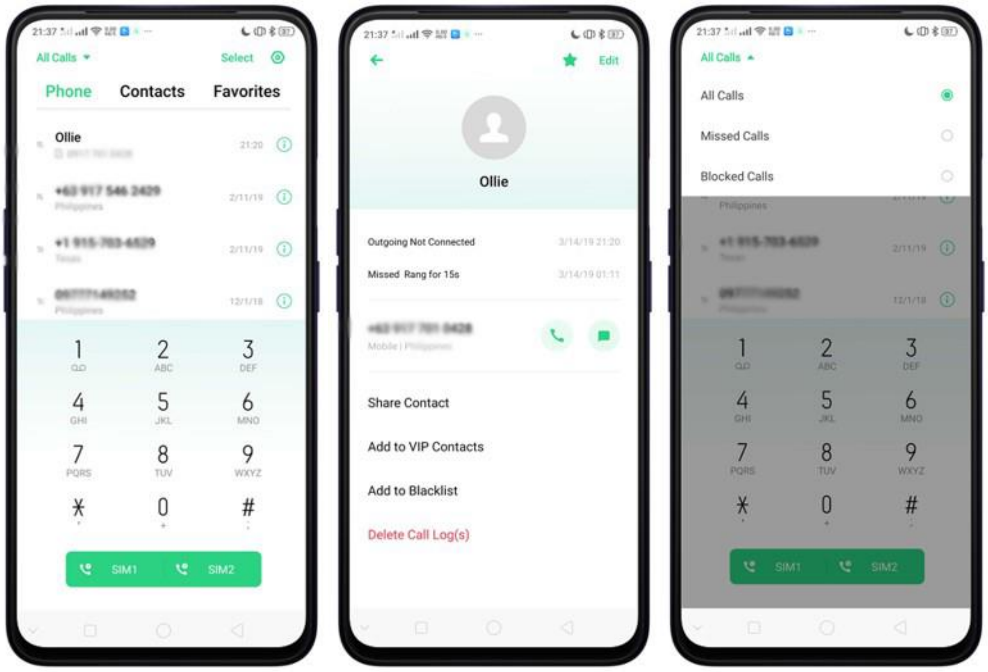

21:29
Select
Phone
Contacts
Favorites
Search in 3 Contact(s)
This Phone's Number
My Groups
G
Globe James
J
James
O
Ollie


21:24
All Calls
Select
Phone
Contacts
Favorites
Ollie
655
1
2
ABC
3
DEF
4
GHI
5
JKL
6
MNO
7
PQRS
8
TUV
9
WXYZ
*
0
#
SIM1
SIM2

Call someone on your favorites list. Tap Favorites and choose a contact. To add favorites, tap +.


21:33
Edit
+
Phone
Contacts
Favorites
Ollie

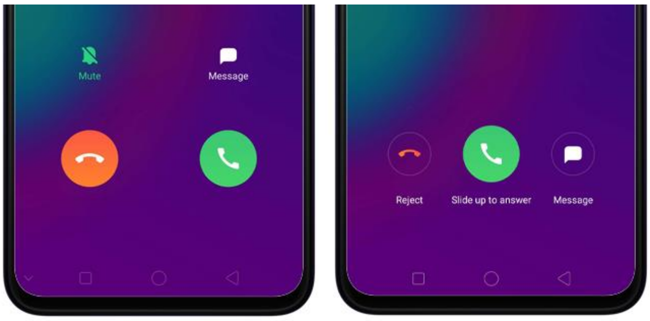
Call someone you’ve recently called or who has recently called you. Tap Phone, and you’ll see the recent calls. Tap a number to make the call. Tap ⓘ to get more info about the call, or the caller. Tap “**All**” to see all, only missed, or only blocked calls.


All Calls
Select
Phone
Contacts
Favorites
Ollie
SIM1
SIM2
Edit
Ollie
Outgoing Not Connected
Missed Rang for 15s
Share Contact
Add to VIP Contacts
Add to Blacklist
Delete Call Log(s)
All Calls
All Calls
Missed Calls
Blocked Calls

Answer or reject a call

When someone calls you, your phone rings and displays the caller's information, if available.

Answer a call. Tap Answer. If the phone is locked, tap Slide up to answer.

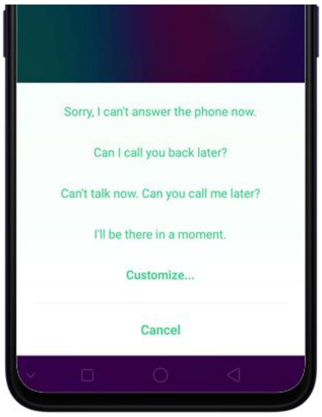

Mute
Message
Reject
Slide up to answer
Message

If you're listening through the headset, you can tap the mic button to answer.

Silence a call. Tap Mute, or press the **Sleep/Wake** button or either of the volume buttons once to stop the phone from ringing or vibrating.

Reject a call. Tap Reject, or press the **Sleep/Wake** button twice quickly.

Respond with a text message instead of answering. Tap Message, then choose a reply or tap Customize to reply with your own words. To create your own default replies, go to **[Settings]** > [**System Apps**] > **[Call]** > **[Respond with SMS]**. Tap a reply and edit the message.



Sorry, I can't answer the phone now.

Can I call you back later?

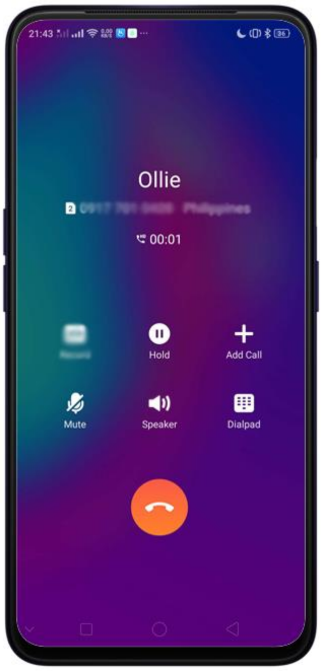
Can't talk now. Can you call me later?

I'll be there in a moment.

Customize...
Cancel

While you’re on a call

While on a call, call options will show up on your screen.

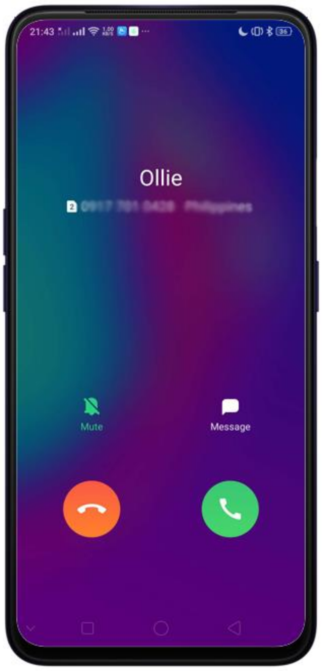

21:43
Ollie
00:01
Hold
Add Call
Mute
Speaker
Dialpad

To	Do this
Get contact info.	Tap Contacts.
Put a call on hold.	Tap Hold.
Mute the microphone.	Tap Mute. The caller can’t hear you when you are on mute, but you can still hear the caller. Tap Mute again to cancel it.
Activate Speakerphone.	Tap Speaker.

Use the dial pad to enter information.	Tap Dial pad.
Make a second call during a call.	Tap Add call and make a second call. The first call will be put on hold. Tap the phone number to switch back to the first call and put the second call on hold. Tap Merge calls to merge the two calls, so all three of you can talk and hear each other. See Conference calls.

Respond to a second call, do one of the following:

- **To reject the call**, tap Reject.
- **To hold the first call and answer the new call**, tap Answer.



Use other features while on a call. Tap the **Home** button or swipe up the middle bottom to return home and still do other things. Tap the green status bar on the top of the screen to return to the call.

10:11
Sunny 27°C
Pasig
Fri, Mar 15
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock

7.1.2. Conference Calls

A conference call lets you talk to more than one person at a time. You can merge up to six calls including the host for a phone conference.

Note: Please contact your network operator to activate conferencing services first.

Make a conference call. Do the following:

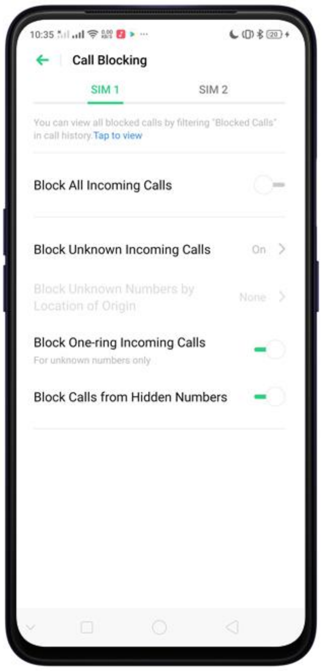
1. Make a call.
2. Tap Add Call and make another call. The first call will be put on hold.
3. Tap Merge calls. The calls are merged onto one line and everyone can hear each other.
4. Repeat the second and third steps to add more calls to the conference.

10:10
Ollie
On hold
Calling...
Swap
Add Call
Mute
Speaker
Dialpad

7.1.3. Block Calls

Block feature helps prevent unwanted phone calls. You can also add numbers to **Block calls**. Go to **[Settings]** > [**System Apps**] > **[Call]** > **[Block] > [Call Blocking]**, or go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[Anti-harassment/Fraud]**. Tap **[Block Calls]**, you'll see several options available for blocking incoming calls:

- Block All Incoming Calls
- Block Unknown Incoming Calls
- Block Unknown Numbers by Location of Origin
- Block One-ring Incoming Calls
- Block Calls from Hidden Numbers



10:35

Call Blocking

SIM 1 SIM 2

You can view all blocked calls by filtering "Blocked Calls" in call history. Tap to view

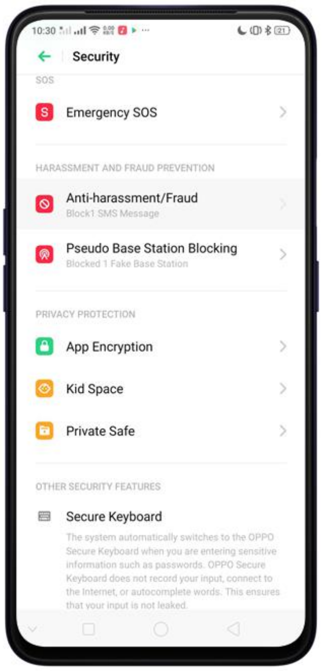
Block All Incoming Calls

Block Unknown Incoming Calls On

Block Unknown Numbers by Location of Origin None

Block One-ring Incoming Calls
For unknown numbers only

Block Calls from Hidden Numbers



10:30

Security

SOS

Emergency SOS

HARASSMENT AND FRAUD PREVENTION

Anti-harassment/Fraud
Block1 SMS Message

Pseudo Base Station Blocking
Blocked 1 Fake Base Station

PRIVACY PROTECTION

App Encryption

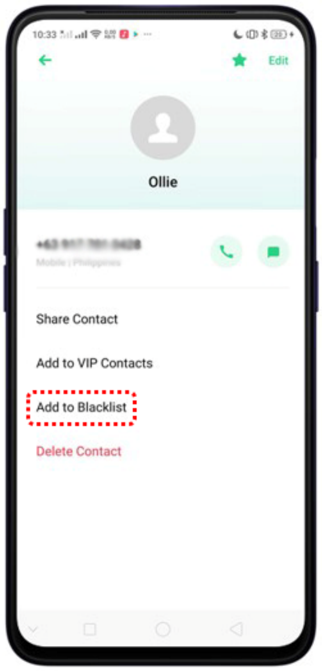
Kid Space

Private Safe

OTHER SECURITY FEATURES

Secure Keyboard
The system automatically switches to the OPPO Secure Keyboard when you are entering sensitive information such as passwords. OPPO Secure Keyboard does not record your input, connect to the Internet, or autocomplete words. This ensures that your input is not leaked.

You can also tap on the contact and add them to blacklist to block specific phone numbers from calling.



10:33

Edit

Ollie

[redacted]

Share Contact

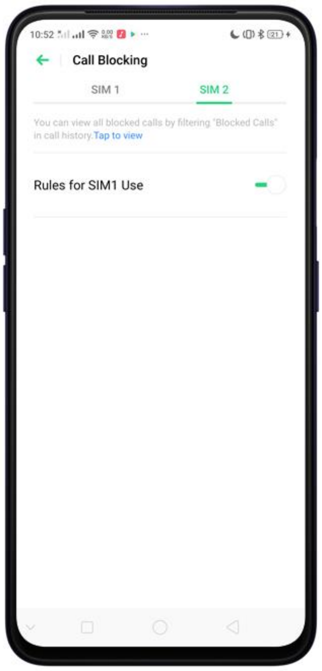
Add to VIP Contacts

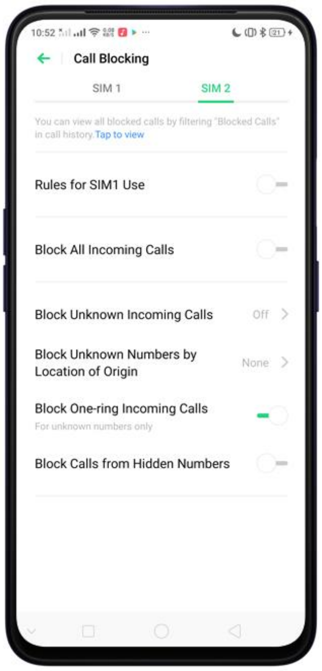
Add to Blacklist

Delete Contact

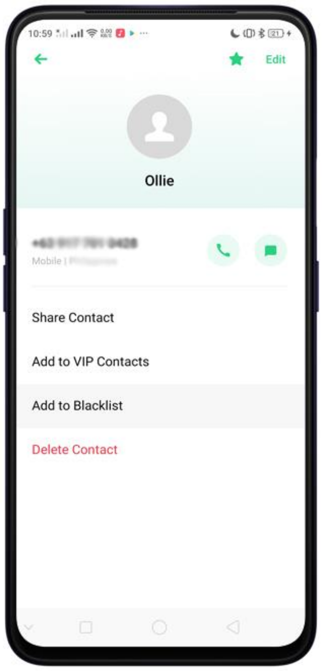
Note: The unknown number refers to an unsaved real phone number, and your phone is able to show its number and location; while the hidden number means the caller’s number or location is not accessible.

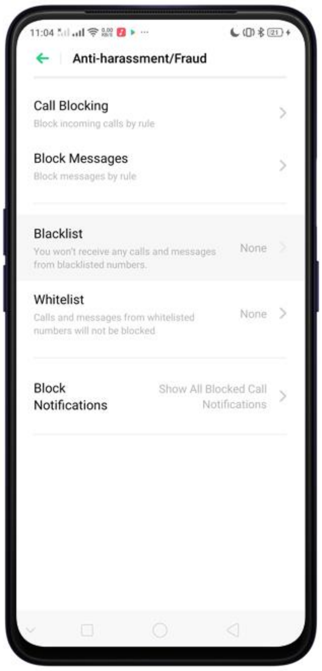
Manage blocking of calls per SIM. While on the Call Blocking screen, you can tap SIM2 and you will have an option “Rule for SIM1 Use” as a default. You may customize it by toggling to white.

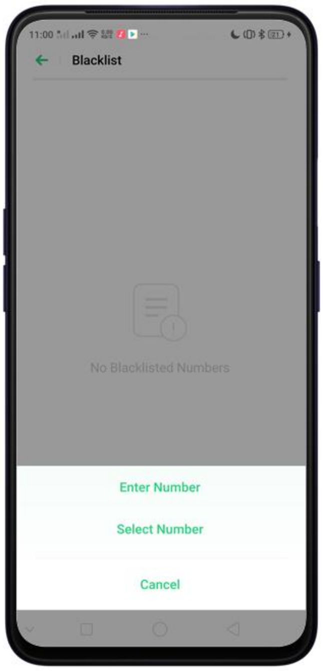

10:52
Call Blocking
SIM 1
SIM 2
You can view all blocked calls by filtering "Blocked Calls" in call history. Tap to view
Rules for SIM1 Use


10:52
Call Blocking
SIM 1
SIM 2
You can view all blocked calls by filtering "Blocked Calls" in call history. Tap to view
Rules for SIM1 Use
Block All Incoming Calls
Block Unknown Incoming Calls Off
Block Unknown Numbers by Location of Origin None
Block One-ring Incoming Calls
For unknown numbers only
Block Calls from Hidden Numbers

Add a contact or a phone number to the blacklist. Tap Phone, then tap Contacts. Choose a contact, then tap **Add to Blacklist**. You can also go to Go to **[Settings]** > [**System Apps**] > **[Call]** > **[Block]** > **[Blacklist]** tap +Add, or go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[Anti-harassment/Fraud]** > **[Blacklist]** tap +Add, then **Enter Number** or **Select Number**.


10:59
Edit
Ollie
[redacted]
Mobile | [redacted]
Share Contact
Add to VIP Contacts
Add to Blacklist
Delete Contact


11:04
Anti-harassment/Fraud
Call Blocking
Block incoming calls by rule
Block Messages
Block messages by rule
Blacklist
You won't receive any calls and messages from blacklisted numbers.
None
Whitelist
Calls and messages from whitelisted numbers will not be blocked
None
Block Notifications
Show All Blocked Call Notifications


11:00
Blacklist
No Blacklisted Numbers
Enter Number
Select Number
Cancel

You can also add contacts or phone numbers to the whitelist, which calls and messages from these numbers will not be blocked.

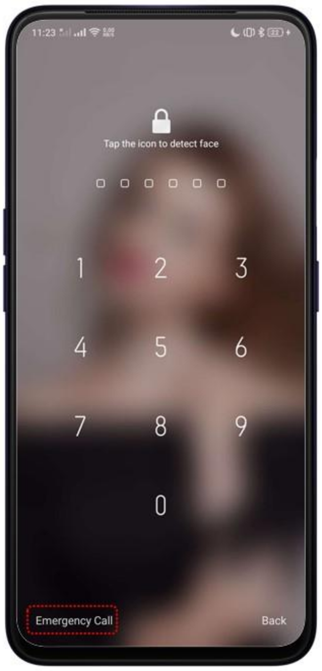
7.1.4. Emergency Calls

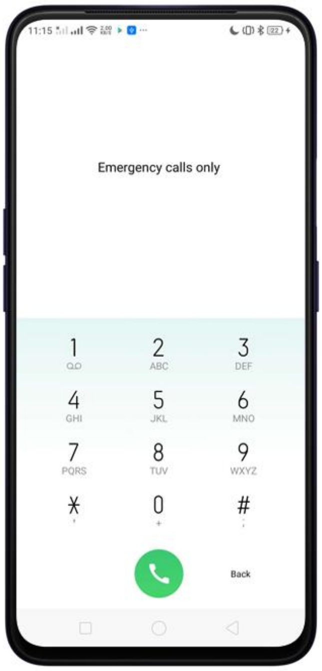
What is emergency Number?
Emergency numbers are numbers of emergency services which provide immediate help during Medical emergency, Threat to life, Fire, Accidents.

In many countries, the public telephone network has a single emergency telephone number (sometimes known as the universal emergency telephone number or occasionally the emergency services number) that allows a caller to contact local emergency services for assistance.

You can make an emergency call even if you do not have a SIM card installed on your OPPO smartphone.

Make an emergency call. Tap Phone, tap keypad and dial the number, then tap ☎. If your phone is locked with a passcode, tap **Emergency Call**, then dial the emergency number.

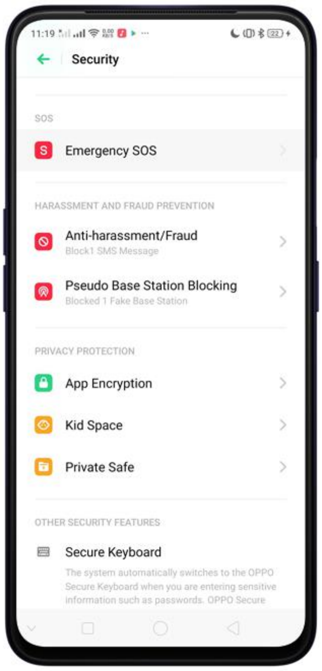

11:23
Tap the icon to detect face
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
Emergency Call
Back

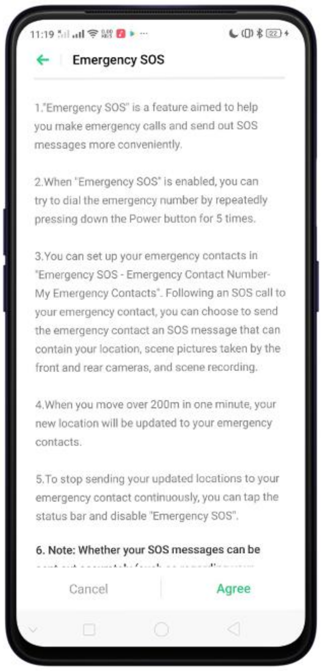

11:15
Emergency calls only
1
2 ABC
3 DEF
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
*
0
#
Back

7.1.5. Emergency SOS

Emergency SOS is a feature that helps you dial emergency numbers and send out SOS messages quicker and more conveniently when in time of need or other fortuitous events.

To use the Emergency SOS feature, go to [Settings] > [Emergency SOS] > Read terms and conditions > [Agree] or [Cancel] if you don't accept the terms & conditions.


11:19
Security
SOS
Emergency SOS
HARASSMENT AND FRAUD PREVENTION
Anti-harassment/Fraud
Block1 SMS Message
Pseudo Base Station Blocking
Blocked 1 Fake Base Station
PRIVACY PROTECTION
App Encryption
Kid Space
Private Safe
OTHER SECURITY FEATURES
Secure Keyboard
The system automatically switches to the OPPO Secure Keyboard when you are entering sensitive information such as passwords. OPPO Secure


11:19
Emergency SOS

1."Emergency SOS" is a feature aimed to help you make emergency calls and send out SOS messages more conveniently.

2.When "Emergency SOS" is enabled, you can try to dial the emergency number by repeatedly pressing down the Power button for 5 times.

3.You can set up your emergency contacts in "Emergency SOS - Emergency Contact Number-My Emergency Contacts". Following an SOS call to your emergency contact, you can choose to send the emergency contact an SOS message that can contain your location, scene pictures taken by the front and rear cameras, and scene recording.

4.When you move over 200m in one minute, your new location will be updated to your emergency contacts.

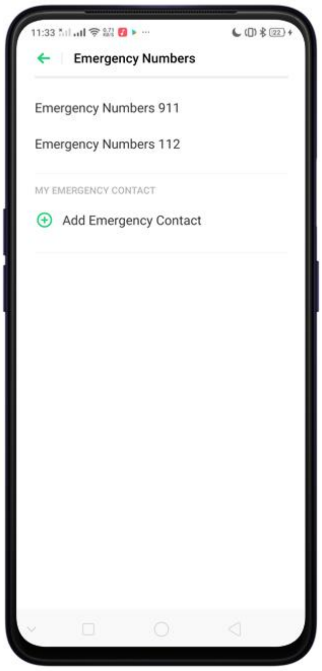
5.To stop sending your updated locations to your emergency contact continuously, you can tap the status bar and disable "Emergency SOS".

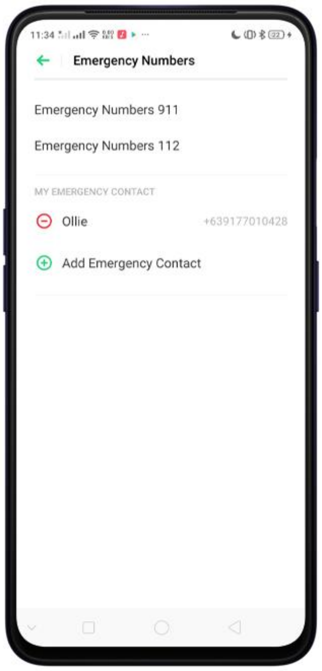
6. Note: Whether your SOS messages can be

Cancel
Agree

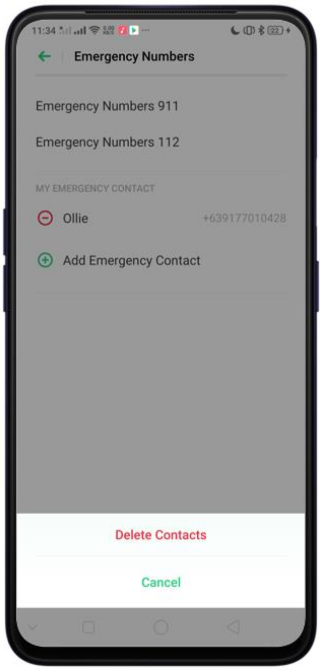
To add emergency number/s. Tap [Emergency Numbers] then tap⊕.

Add Emergency Contact. You can choose from the list on your contacts, tap Add. You can add up to 3 contacts. Emergency numbers specific on your region is also pre-added.


11:33
Emergency Numbers
Emergency Numbers 911
Emergency Numbers 112
MY EMERGENCY CONTACT
Add Emergency Contact

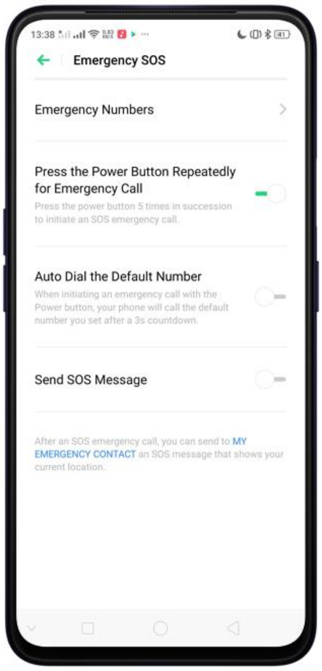

11:34
Emergency Numbers
Emergency Numbers 911
Emergency Numbers 112
MY EMERGENCY CONTACT
Ollie
+639177010428
Add Emergency Contact

To delete or change the emergency contacts, just tap ⊖ then tap Delete Contacts.


11:34
Emergency Numbers
Emergency Numbers 911
Emergency Numbers 112
MY EMERGENCY CONTACT
Ollie
+639177010428
Add Emergency Contact
Delete Contacts
Cancel

Press the Power Button Repeatedly for Emergency Call. Toggle [Press the Power Button Repeatedly For Emergency Call] to enable pressing the power button 5 times in succession to initiate an SOS emergency call.

Make an emergency call. Just press the power button 5 times in succession.



Emergency SOS

Emergency Numbers

Press the Power Button Repeatedly for Emergency Call

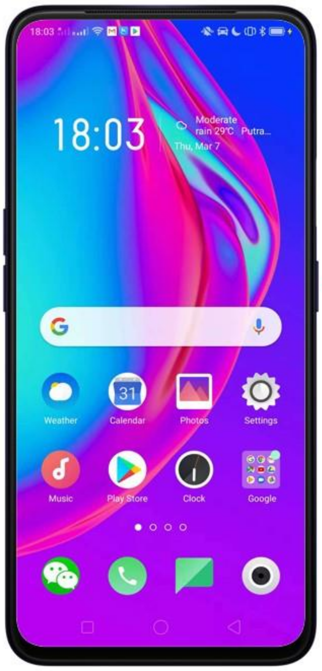
Press the power button 5 times in succession to initiate an SOS emergency call.

Auto Dial the Default Number

When initiating an emergency call with the Power button, your phone will call the default number you set after a 3s countdown.

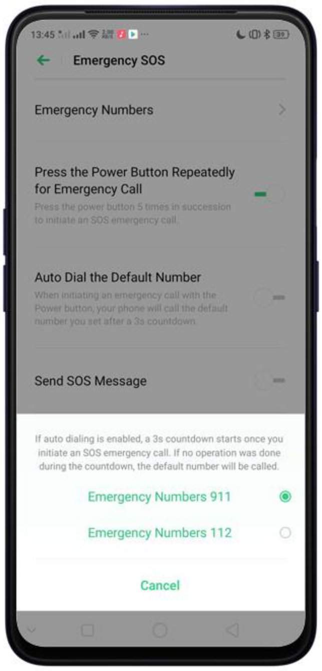
Send SOS Message

After an SOS emergency call, you can send to MY EMERGENCY CONTACT an SOS message that shows your current location.



Press 5x

Auto Dial the Default Number. Toggle [Auto Dial the Default Number] to green and a 3 second countdown will be enabled. A 3S countdown starts once you initiate an SOS emergency call. If nothing takes place during the countdown, the default number will be called.



Emergency SOS

Emergency Numbers

Press the Power Button Repeatedly for Emergency Call

Press the power button 5 times in succession to initiate an SOS emergency call.

Auto Dial the Default Number

When initiating an emergency call with the Power button, your phone will call the default number you set after a 3s countdown.

Send SOS Message

If auto dialing is enabled, a 3s countdown starts once you initiate an SOS emergency call. If no operation was done during the countdown, the default number will be called.

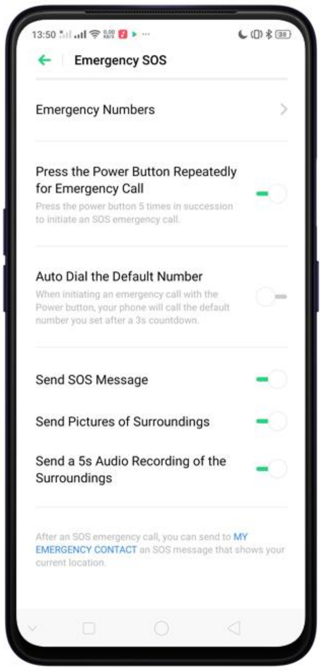
Emergency Numbers 911 ●

Emergency Numbers 112 ○

Cancel

Send SOS Message. Send pictures and audio recordings. Toggle [Send Pictures of Surroundings] or [Send a 5s Audio Recording of the Surroundings] to enable.

Note: These two will only show after enabling Send SOS Message.



Emergency SOS

Emergency Numbers

Press the Power Button Repeatedly for Emergency Call

Press the power button 5 times in succession to initiate an SOS emergency call.

Auto Dial the Default Number

When initiating an emergency call with the Power button, your phone will call the default number you set after a 3s countdown.

Send SOS Message

Send Pictures of Surroundings

Send a 5s Audio Recording of the Surroundings

After an SOS emergency call, you can send to MY EMERGENCY CONTACT an SOS message that shows your current location.

My Emergency Contact. After an SOS emergency call, you can send to MY EMERGENCY CONTACT an SOS message that shows your current location.

Note: Please note that sending SOS message accurately still depends on your location, environmental factors, network connectivity, if GPS is available and the conditions of you and your emergency contact's devices (including but not limited to battery level). Also, SOS messages might generate additional charges. Please contact your carrier for details.

Privacy concerns. Once Emergency SOS is activated, this will automatically be permitted to:

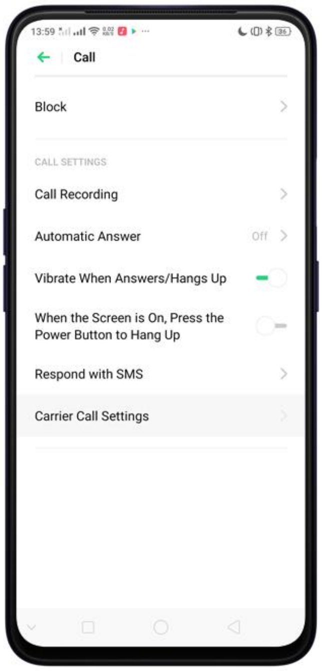
1. **Access your location.**
2. **Read, write, or delete external storage.**
3. **Read your phone status.**
4. **Take photos.**
5. **Record sounds.**
6. **Read your contacts.**

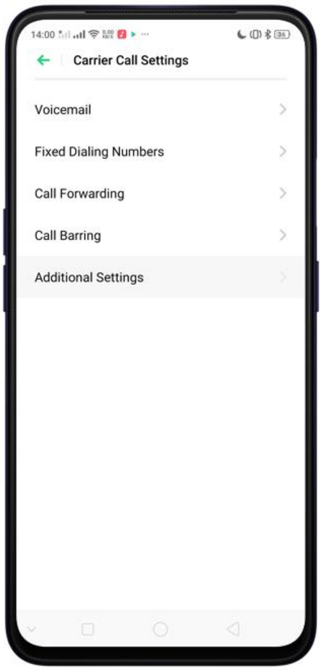
7.1.6. Carrier’s Call Settings

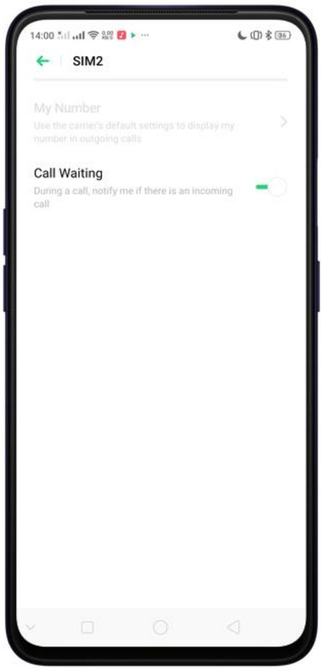
Your device includes several calling features such as Call Forwarding, Call Waiting, Voicemail**,** and more.

Set up calling features. Go to **[Settings]** > [**System Apps**] > **[Call]** > **[Carrier Call Settings]**.

- **Voicemail**: When you're away or can't get to the phone, your Voicemail does the answering for you. Callers can leave recorded audio messages to you, and you can view, listen to, and manage the messages.
- **Fixed Dialing Numbers**: Add numbers to the FDN list, and when activated, FDN restricts outgoing calls to only those numbers listed, or to numbers with certain prefixes.
- **Call Forwarding**: An incoming call will be redirected to another telephone number where the desired called party is able to answer. Notice that ☎ appears on the status bar.
- **Call Barring**: Certain types of outgoing calls (such as international calls) and/or incoming calls will be restricted.
- **Additional Settings**: Includes your SIM number/s and Call Waiting where when enable makes you hear short beeps if someone calls you while you’re on **a** call.


13:59
Call
Block
CALL SETTINGS
Call Recording
Automatic Answer
Off
Vibrate When Answers/Hangs Up
When the Screen is On, Press the Power Button to Hang Up
Respond with SMS
Carrier Call Settings


14:00
Carrier Call Settings
Voicemail
Fixed Dialing Numbers
Call Forwarding
Call Barring
Additional Settings


14:00
SIM2
My Number
Use the carrier's default settings to display my number in outgoing calls
Call Waiting
During a call, notify me if there is an incoming call

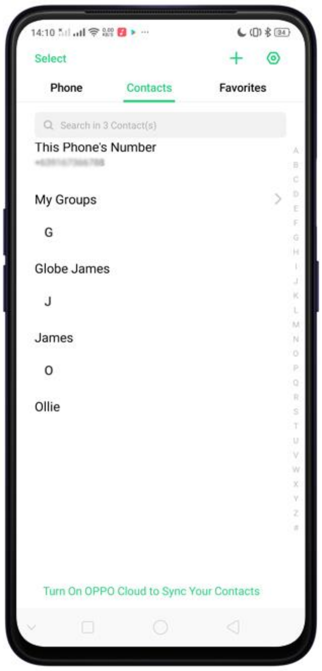
7.5.Message

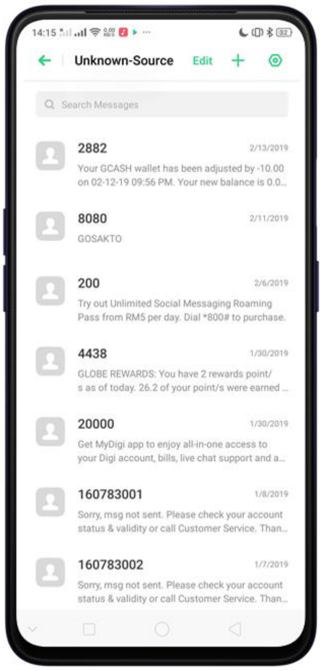
7.5.1.Send and Receive Messages

You can send and receive text messages anytime you're in range of the cell network. Depending on your phone plan, you may be charged for messages you send or receive.

Send a new message. Tap +, then enter a phone number or name. Contacts matching what you've typed will appear below. You can also use the Call app then tap **Contacts** and choose a contact from your contacts list. Type a message then choose the SIM you want to send it or tap ▶ if you only put one SIM.

Tip: As you type, tap ⊕ next to the text field to add an attachment.


14:10
Select
Phone
Contacts
Favorites
Search in 3 Contact(s)
This Phone's Number
[redacted]
My Groups
G
Globe James
J
James
O
Ollie
Turn On OPPO Cloud to Sync Your Contacts


14:15
Unknown-Source
Edit
Search Messages

2882 2/13/2019
Your GCASH wallet has been adjusted by -10.00 on 02-12-19 09:56 PM. Your new balance is 0.0...

8080 2/11/2019
GOSAKTO

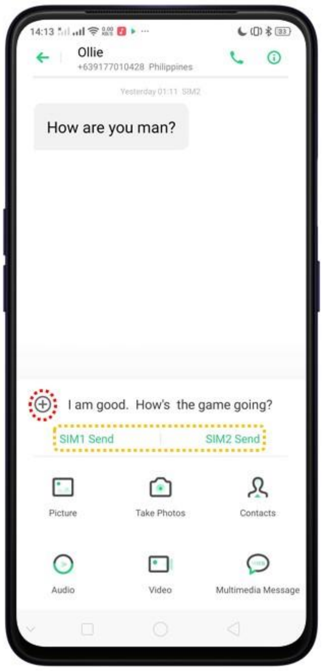
200 2/6/2019
Try out Unlimited Social Messaging Roaming Pass from RM5 per day. Dial *800# to purchase.

4438 1/30/2019
GLOBE REWARDS: You have 2 rewards point/s as of today. 26.2 of your point/s were earned ...

20000 1/30/2019
Get MyDigi app to enjoy all-in-one access to your Digi account, bills, live chat support and a...

160783001 1/8/2019
Sorry, msg not sent. Please check your account status & validity or call Customer Service. Than...

160783002 1/7/2019
Sorry, msg not sent. Please check your account status & validity or call Customer Service. Than...


14:13
Ollie
+639177010428 Philippines
Yesterday 01:11 SIM2
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
Picture
Take Photos
Contacts
Audio
Video
Multimedia Message

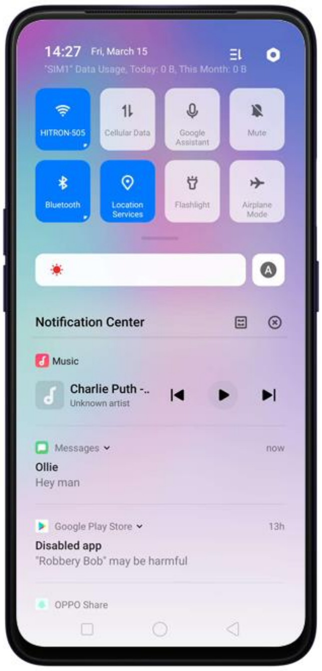
How are you man?

I am good. How's the game going?

Send a message to multiple people. Tap +, then enter multiple recipients, or tap **Contacts** and tick all contacts you wish to include in the group message, then tap **Add**.

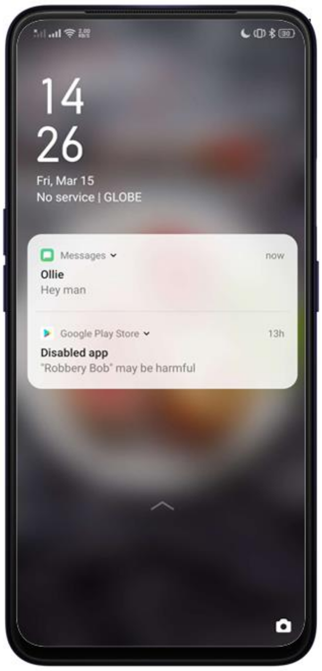
Read and reply to a new message. Tap the notification after scrolling the Control Center. When phone screen is locked, just unlock phone and go to the message app.

Read and type your reply then choose the SIM you want to send it or tap ▶ if you only put one SIM.


14:27 Fri, March 15
"SIM1" Data Usage, Today: 0 B, This Month: 0 B
HITRON-505
Cellular Data
Google Assistant
Mute
Bluetooth
Location Services
Flashlight
Airplane Mode
Notification Center
Music
Charlie Puth -..
Unknown artist
Messages
now
Ollie
Google Play Store
13h
OPPO Share

Hey man

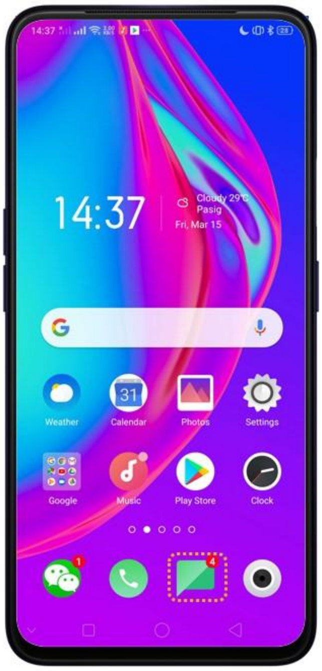
Disabled app
"Robbery Bob" may be harmful


14
26
Fri, Mar 15
No service | GLOBE
Messages
now
Ollie
Google Play Store
13h

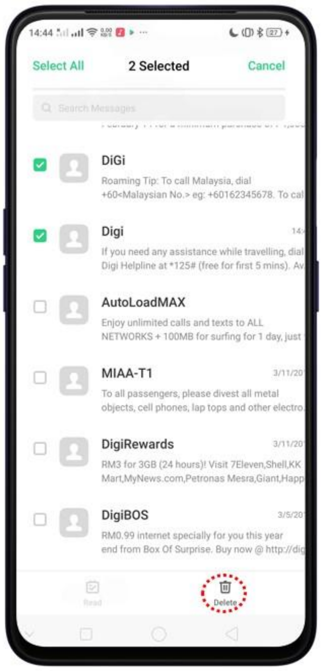
Hey man

Disabled app
"Robbery Bob" may be harmful

Tip: The Messages icon on the Home Screen shows the total number of unread text messages you have.


14:37
Cloudy 29°C
Pasig
Fri, Mar 15
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock
1
4

Delete conversations from the Messages list. Tap **Edit**, tick the conversations and tap Delete. You can also delete any reply in the conversation by long pressing any reply then you'll be given options and one is to delete.


14:44
Select All
2 Selected
Cancel
Search Messages
Read
Delete

☑ **DiGi**
Roaming Tip: To call Malaysia, dial +60<Malaysian No.> eg: +60162345678. To cal

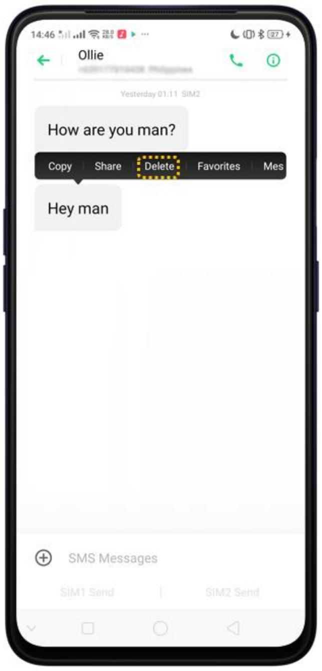
☑ **Digi** 14:
If you need any assistance while travelling, dial Digi Helpline at *125# (free for first 5 mins). Av

☐ **AutoLoadMAX**
Enjoy unlimited calls and texts to ALL NETWORKS + 100MB for surfing for 1 day, just

☐ **MIAA-T1** 3/11/20
To all passengers, please divest all metal objects, cell phones, lap tops and other electro

☐ **DigiRewards** 3/11/20
RM3 for 3GB (24 hours)! Visit 7Eleven,Shell,KK Mart,MyNews.com,Petronas Mesra,Giant,Happ

☐ **DigiBOS** 3/5/20
RM0.99 internet specially for you this year end from Box Of Surprise. Buy now @ http://dig

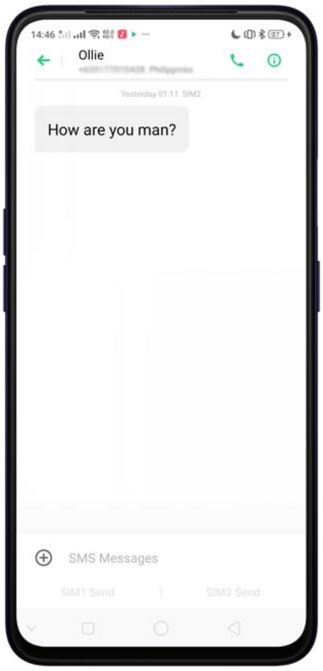

14:46
Ollie
Copy
Share
Delete
Favorites
Mes
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send

[redacted]

Yesterday 01:11 SIM2

How are you man?

Hey man


14:46
Ollie
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send

[redacted]

Yesterday 01:11 SIM2

How are you man?

7.5.2.Customize Message Settings

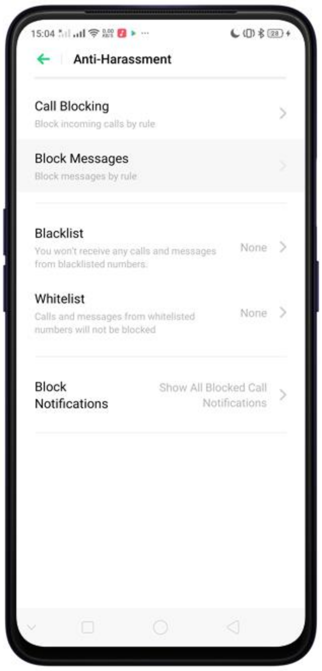
The Messages settings menu lets you control options for your text and MMS messages including message limits, displays, notifications, and more. Go to **[Settings]** > [**System Apps**] > **[Messages]**.

Block messages. Tap **[Anti-Harassment]** > **[Block Messages]**.

Keywords for Spam Messages. Customize and enter the keywords for spam messages.

Block Messages from Unknown Numbers. To block all unknown messages, toggle the slider to green.

Note: When **Block Messages from Unknown Numbers** is turned on, you might miss important verification text messages, as well as messages from people who you know, but are not on your contact list.

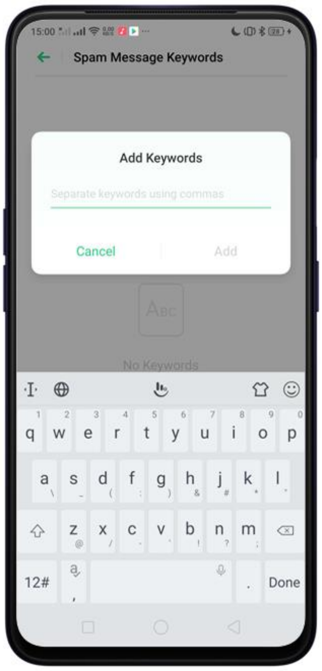

15:04
Anti-Harassment
Call Blocking
Block Messages
Blacklist
None
Whitelist
None
Block Notifications
Show All Blocked Call Notifications

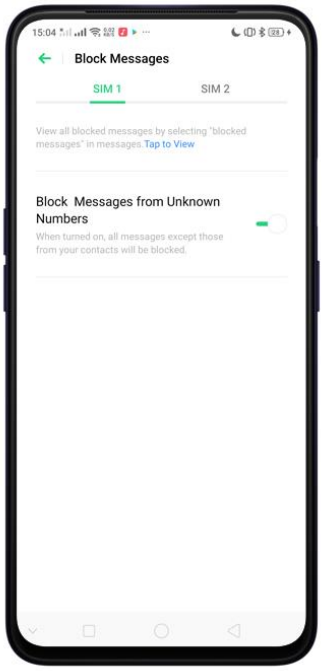
Block incoming calls by rule

Block messages by rule

You won't receive any calls and messages from blacklisted numbers.

Calls and messages from whitelisted numbers will not be blocked


15:00
Spam Message Keywords
Add Keywords
Separate keywords using commas
Cancel
Add
ABC
No Keywords
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
12#
Done

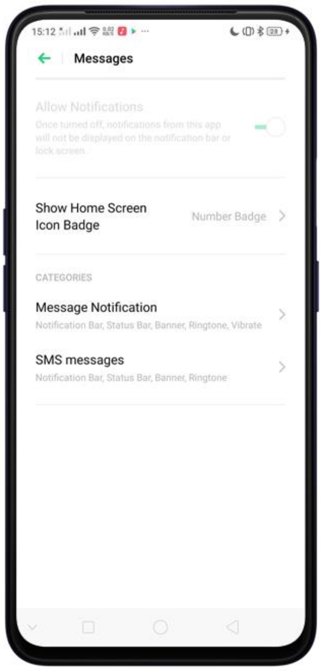

15:04
Block Messages
SIM 1
SIM 2
Tap to View
Block Messages from Unknown Numbers

View all blocked messages by selecting "blocked messages" in messages.

When turned on, all messages except those from your contacts will be blocked.

Note: You may apply same rule or customize blocking messages for SIM2 if you are using two SIM Cards.

Manage Messages settings. To display notifications of new messages, turn on [**Notification Management**] > **[Allow Notifications]**. You can customize whether new notifications from Messages appear on the Lock Screen or status bar, display at the top of the screen, play a sound or vibrate. You can also allow ringing for notifications when Do Not Disturb is on.



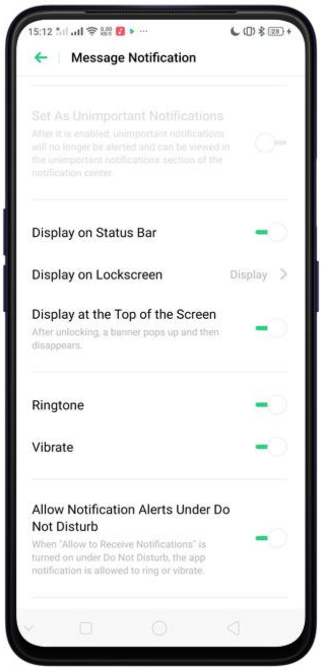
Allow Notifications
Once turned off, notifications from this app will not be displayed on the notification bar or lock screen.

Show Home Screen Icon Badge — Number Badge

CATEGORIES

Message Notification
Notification Bar, Status Bar, Banner, Ringtone, Vibrate

SMS messages
Notification Bar, Status Bar, Banner, Ringtone



Set As Unimportant Notifications
After it is enabled, unimportant notifications will no longer be alerted and can be viewed in the unimportant notifications section of the notification center.

Display on Status Bar

Display on Lockscreen — Display

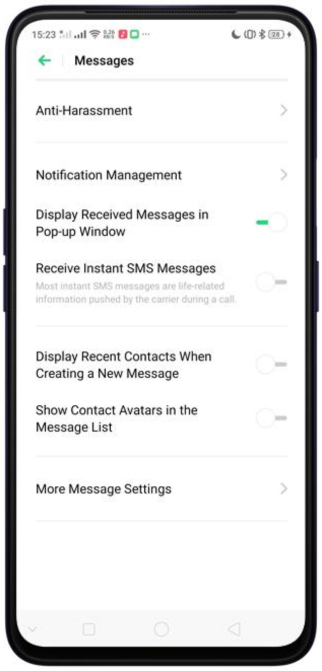
Display at the Top of the Screen
After unlocking, a banner pops up and then disappears.

Ringtone

Vibrate

Allow Notification Alerts Under Do Not Disturb
When "Allow to Receive Notifications" is turned on under Do Not Disturb, the app notification is allowed to ring or vibrate.

Display received messages in pop-up window. The phone will automatically pop up a window with the content of the message. You can close the window or reply to the message directly.



Anti-Harassment

Notification Management

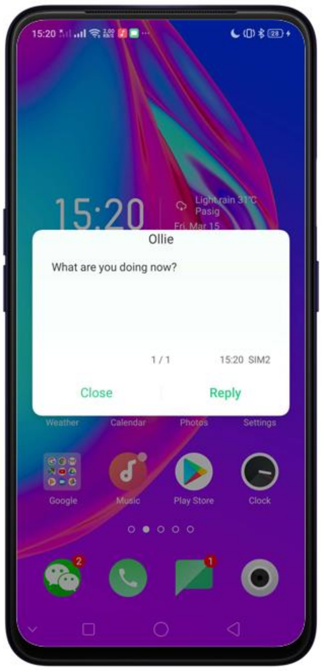
Display Received Messages in Pop-up Window

Receive Instant SMS Messages
Most instant SMS messages are life-related information pushed by the carrier during a call.

Display Recent Contacts When Creating a New Message

Show Contact Avatars in the Message List

More Message Settings



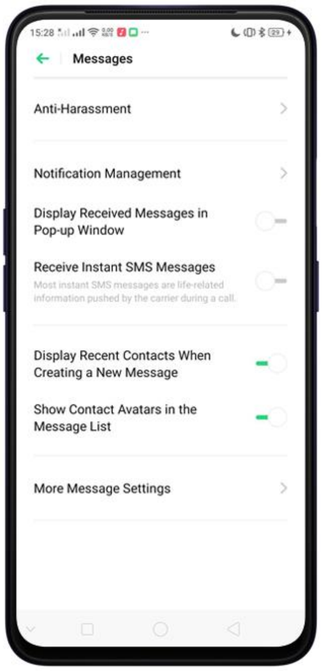
Ollie

What are you doing now?

1 / 1 15:20 SIM2

Receive instant SMS messages. Toggle the slider to green if you want to receive life-related messages pushed by your operator during a call.

Display recent contacts when sending a message and show contact's portrait in the Message list. Toggle the sliders to green.


15:28
Messages

Anti-Harassment

Notification Management

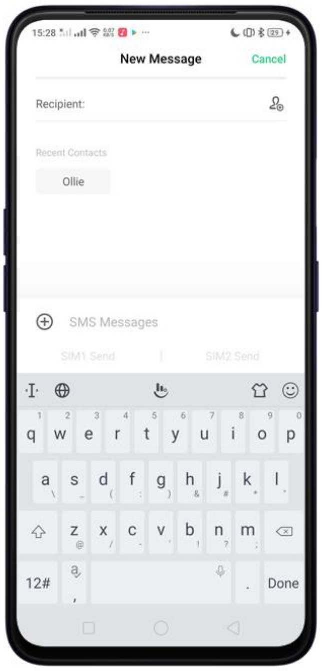
Display Received Messages in Pop-up Window

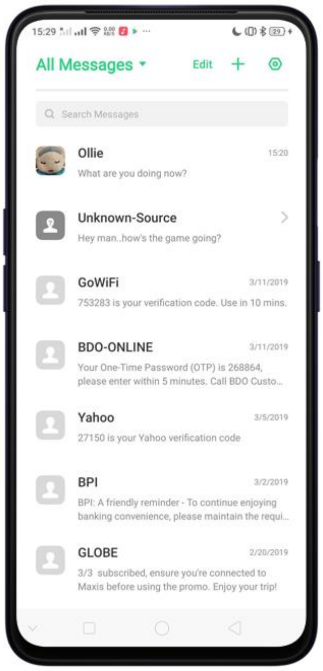
Receive Instant SMS Messages
Most instant SMS messages are life-related information pushed by the carrier during a call.

Display Recent Contacts When Creating a New Message

Show Contact Avatars in the Message List

More Message Settings


15:28
New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
Recent Contacts
Ollie
SMS Messages
SIM1 Send
SIM2 Send
12#
Done


15:29
All Messages
Edit
Search Messages

Ollie 15:20
What are you doing now?

Unknown-Source
Hey man..how's the game going?

GoWiFi 3/11/2019
753283 is your verification code. Use in 10 mins.

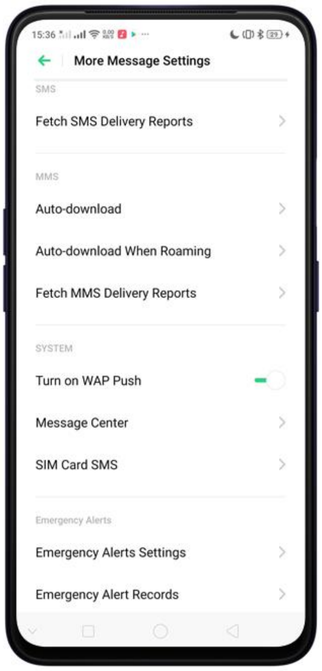
BDO-ONLINE 3/11/2019
Your One-Time Password (OTP) is 268864, please enter within 5 minutes. Call BDO Custo...

Yahoo 3/5/2019
27150 is your Yahoo verification code

BPI 3/2/2019
BPI: A friendly reminder - To continue enjoying banking convenience, please maintain the requi...

GLOBE 2/20/2019
3/3 subscribed, ensure you're connected to Maxis before using the promo. Enjoy your trip!

Customize advanced settings. Tap **[More Message Settings]**, then set up more SMS, MMS, system, and emergency alert related settings.


15:36
More Message Settings

SMS

Fetch SMS Delivery Reports

MMS

Auto-download

Auto-download When Roaming

Fetch MMS Delivery Reports

SYSTEM

Turn on WAP Push

Message Center

SIM Card SMS

Emergency Alerts

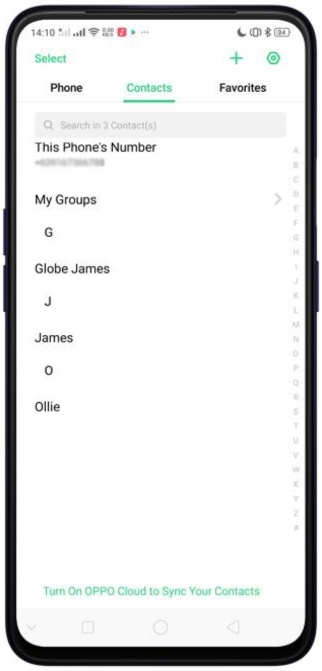
Emergency Alerts Settings

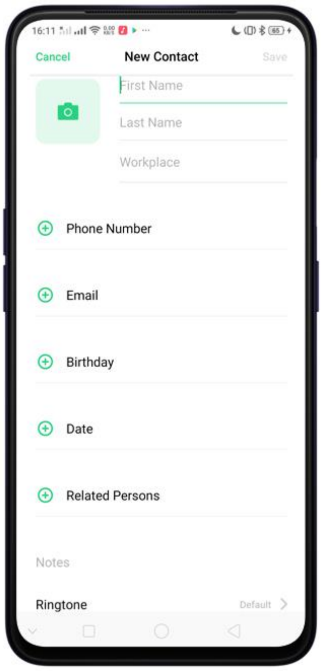
Emergency Alert Records

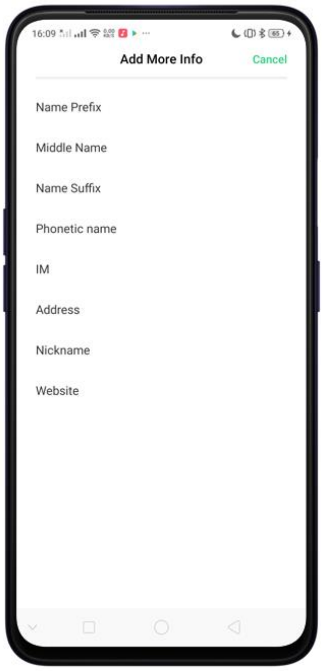
7.6.Contacts

7.6.1.Add a Contact

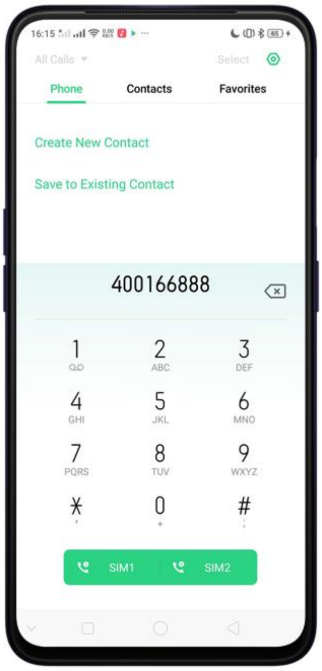
Add a new contact. Open Call app then tap Contacts, tap +, enter the contact information. You can customize ringtone as well as add more information for each contact.


14:10
Select
+
Phone
Contacts
Favorites
Search in 3 Contact(s)
This Phone's Number
My Groups
G
Globe James
J
James
O
Ollie
Turn On OPPO Cloud to Sync Your Contacts

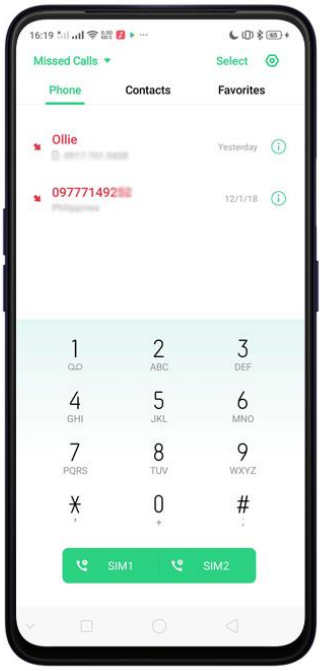

16:11
Cancel
New Contact
Save
First Name
Last Name
Workplace
Phone Number
Email
Birthday
Date
Related Persons
Notes
Ringtone
Default

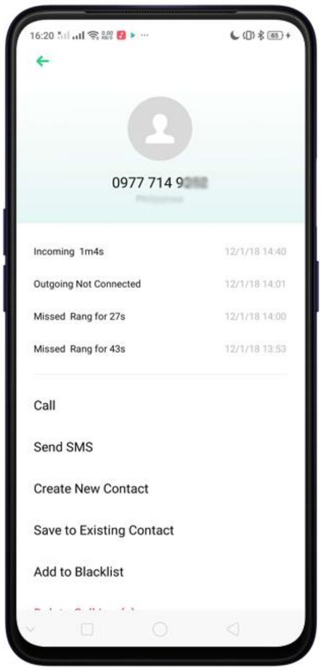

16:09
Add More Info
Cancel
Name Prefix
Middle Name
Name Suffix
Phonetic name
IM
Address
Nickname
Website

Add a contact from a number entered using the keypad. Tap Phone app and enter a number, then tap **Create New Contact** and enter the contact information, or tap **Add to Existing Contact** and choose a contact that is already saved.


16:15
All Calls
Select
Phone
Contacts
Favorites
Create New Contact
Save to Existing Contact
400166888
1
2 ABC
3 DEF
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
*
0 +
#
SIM1
SIM2

Add a recent caller's information to your contacts. Tap Phone app, and you'll see the recent calls. Tap ⓘ, then tap **Create New Contact** or **Add to Existing Contact**.


16:19
Missed Calls ▾
Select
Phone
Contacts
Favorites
Ollie
Yesterday
097771492
12/1/18
1
2 ABC
3 DEF
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
*
0 +
#
SIM1
SIM2



Incoming 1m4s	12/1/18 14:40
Outgoing Not Connected	12/1/18 14:01
Missed Rang for 27s	12/1/18 14:00
Missed Rang for 43s	12/1/18 13:53

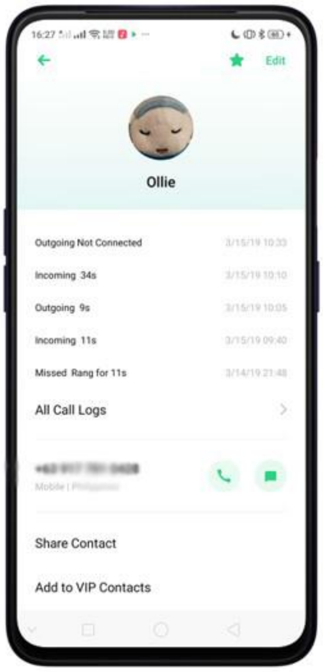
16:20
0977 714 9
Call
Send SMS
Create New Contact
Save to Existing Contact
Add to Blacklist

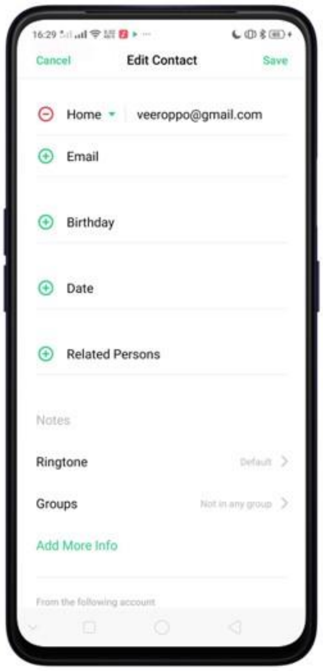
7.6.2.Edit and Delete a Contact

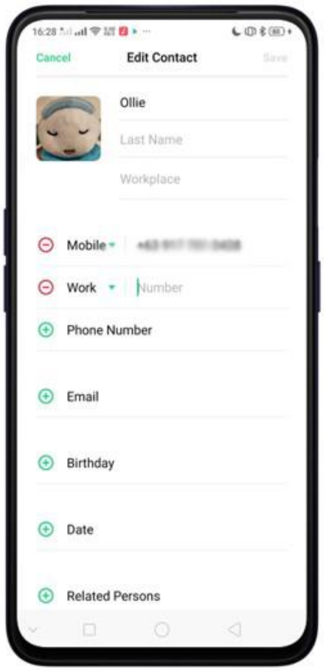
You can make changes on your contacts.

Edit a contact's phone number, address, and other information. Tap **Contacts** and choose a contact, then tap **Edit**, once done just tap **Save**.

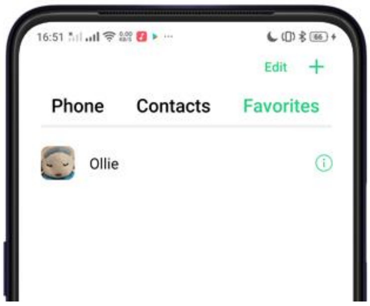
- To add an item - such as an Email address or phone number, tap + next to the item.
- To delete an item, tap ⊖ next to it.


16:27
Edit
Ollie
Outgoing Not Connected 3/15/19 10:33
Incoming 34s 3/15/19 10:10
Outgoing 9s 3/15/19 10:05
Incoming 11s 3/15/19 09:40
Missed Rang for 11s 3/14/19 21:48
All Call Logs
Share Contact
Add to VIP Contacts


16:29
Cancel
Edit Contact
Save
Home
veeroppo@gmail.com
Email
Birthday
Date
Related Persons
Notes
Ringtone
Default
Groups
Not in any group
Add More Info
From the following account


16:28
Cancel
Edit Contact
Save
Ollie
Last Name
Workplace
Mobile
Work
Number
Phone Number
Email
Birthday
Date
Related Persons

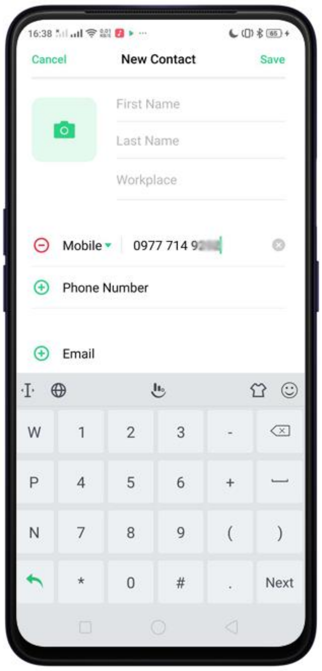
Adding contacts to favorites. Just tap the name and contacts will be added to **Favorites**.


16:51
Edit
+
Phone
Contacts
Favorites
Ollie

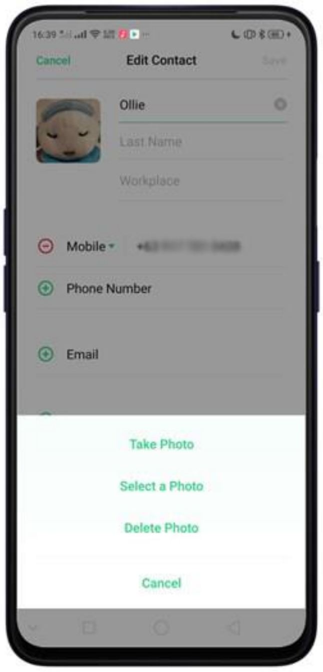
Assign a photo to a contact or change a contact's photo.

1. Tap 📷, or tap the existing photo.

2. Tap **Take Photo** to use the camera to take a picture, or tap **Select a Photo** and select an existing photo, or tap **Delete Photo** to delete the photo.
3. Drag to region to crop the photo, then tap **Done**.

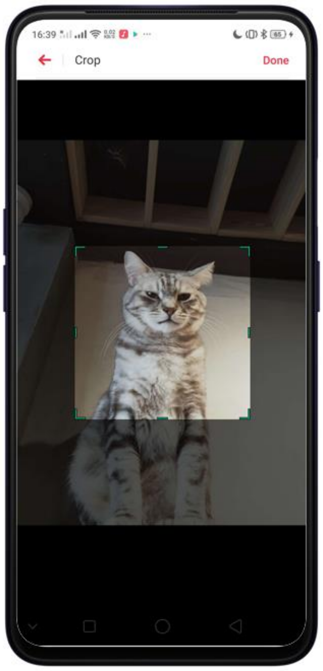

16:38
Cancel
New Contact
Save
First Name
Last Name
Workplace
Mobile
Phone Number
Email
Next

Mobile 0977 714 9[redacted]

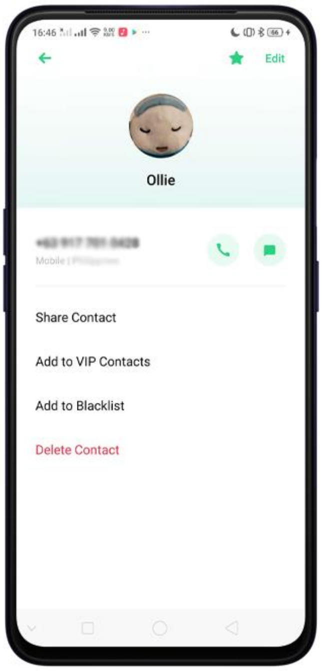

16:39
Cancel
Edit Contact
Save
Last Name
Workplace
Mobile
Phone Number
Email
Take Photo
Select a Photo
Delete Photo
Cancel

Ollie

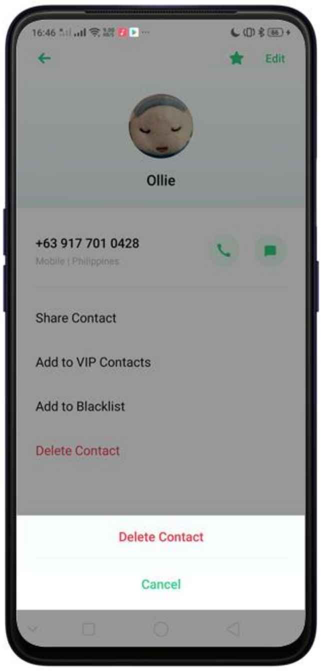
Mobile [redacted]


16:39
Crop
Done

Delete a contact. Tap **Delete Contact** on the Contact Details page or Scroll to the bottom of the contact information and tap **Delete Contact**.


16:46
Edit
Ollie
Share Contact
Add to VIP Contacts
Add to Blacklist
Delete Contact

[redacted]


16:46
Edit
Ollie
Share Contact
Add to VIP Contacts
Add to Blacklist
Delete Contact
Delete Contact
Cancel

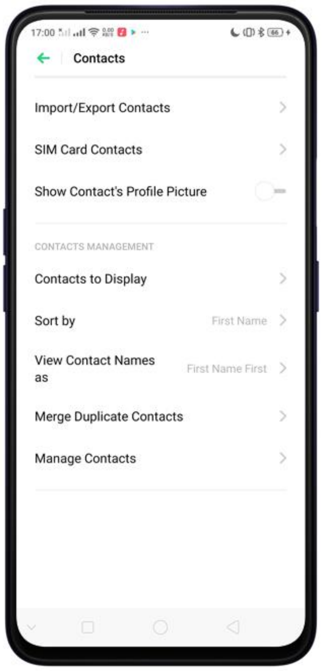
+63 917 701 0428
Mobile | Philippines

7.6.3.Import and Export Contacts

You can import/export contacts from/to the phone storage or your SIM card. If you have contacts stored on your old phone, you can transfer them through Bluetooth from that phone. If there are repeat contacts, the phone will automatically merge them when you import contacts.

Import contacts. Go to **[Settings]** > **[System Apps]** > **[Contacts]** > **[Import/Export Contacts]**.

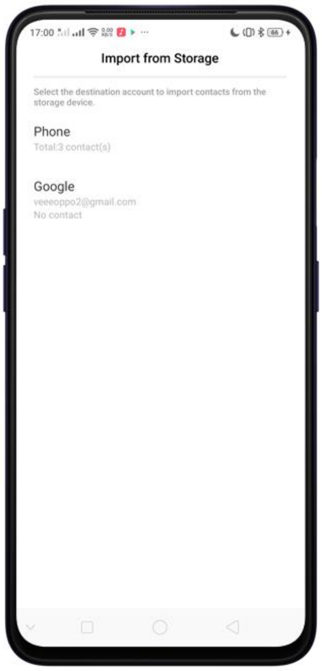
- **Import from storage.** Save the imported contacts to your phone.
- **Import from other phones**. Import the contacts stored on other phones to your OPPO phone through Bluetooth.


17:00
Contacts
Import/Export Contacts
SIM Card Contacts
Show Contact's Profile Picture
CONTACTS MANAGEMENT
Contacts to Display

Sort by First Name

View Contact Names as First Name First

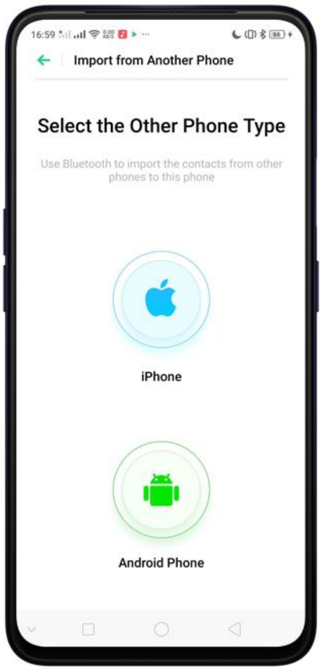
Merge Duplicate Contacts
Manage Contacts


17:00
Import from Storage

Select the destination account to import contacts from the storage device.

Phone
Total:3 contact(s)

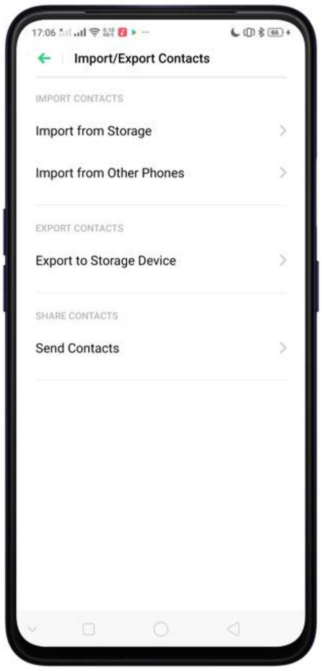
Google
veeeoppo2@gmail.com
No contact

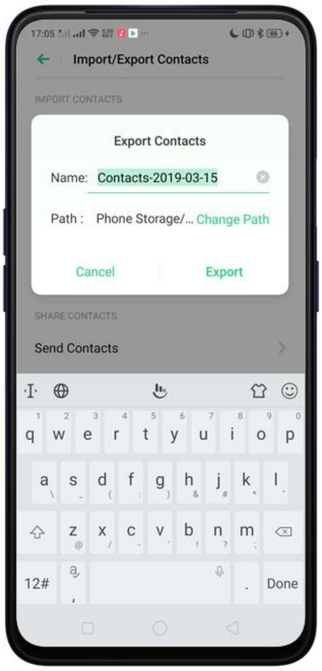

16:59
Import from Another Phone
Select the Other Phone Type

Use Bluetooth to import the contacts from other phones to this phone

iPhone
Android Phone

Export Contacts. Export your contacts to the phone storage. Contacts you export are saved as .vcf file. You can tap **Change path** if you want to change the folder or create a new folder for your contacts to be saved and exported.

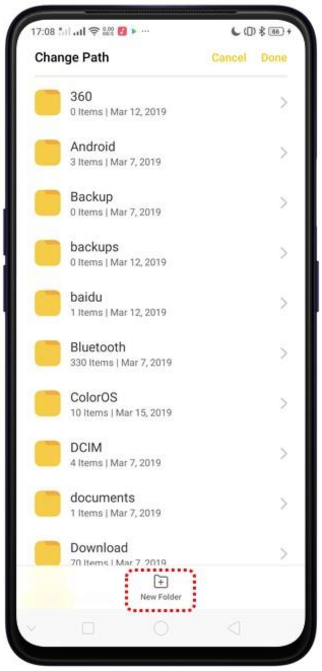

17:06
Import/Export Contacts
IMPORT CONTACTS
Import from Storage
Import from Other Phones
EXPORT CONTACTS
Export to Storage Device
SHARE CONTACTS
Send Contacts


17:05
Import/Export Contacts
IMPORT CONTACTS
Export Contacts

Name: Contacts-2019-03-15

Path : Phone Storage/... Change Path

Cancel
Export
SHARE CONTACTS
Send Contacts
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
12#
Done


17:08
Change Path
Cancel
Done

360
0 Items | Mar 12, 2019

Android
3 Items | Mar 7, 2019

Backup
0 Items | Mar 7, 2019

backups
0 Items | Mar 12, 2019

baidu
1 Items | Mar 12, 2019

Bluetooth
330 Items | Mar 7, 2019

ColorOS
10 Items | Mar 15, 2019

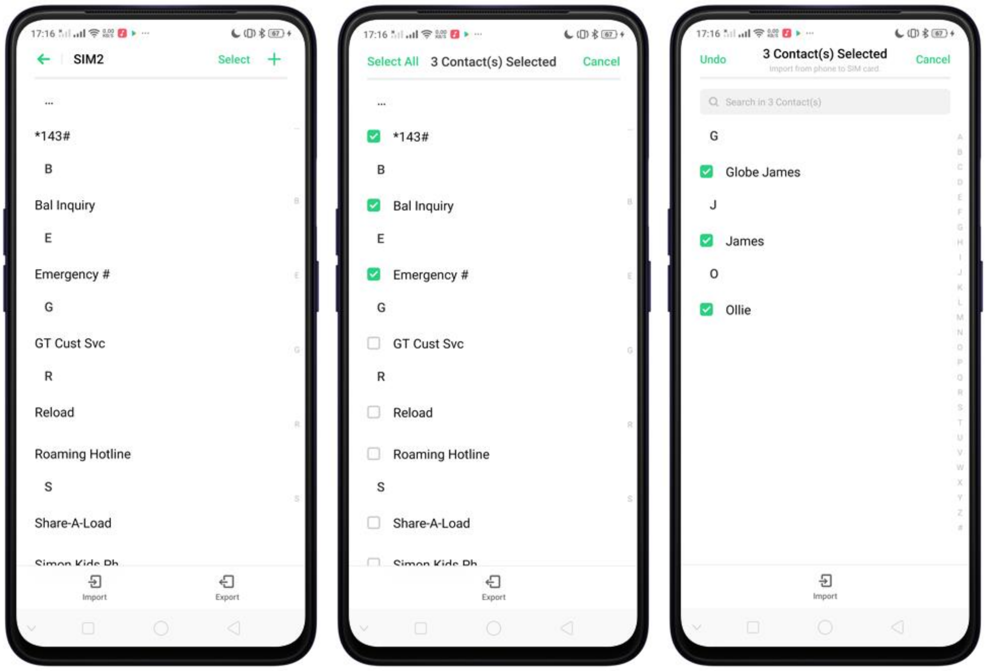
DCIM
4 Items | Mar 7, 2019

documents
1 Items | Mar 7, 2019

Download
70 Items | Mar 7, 2019

New Folder

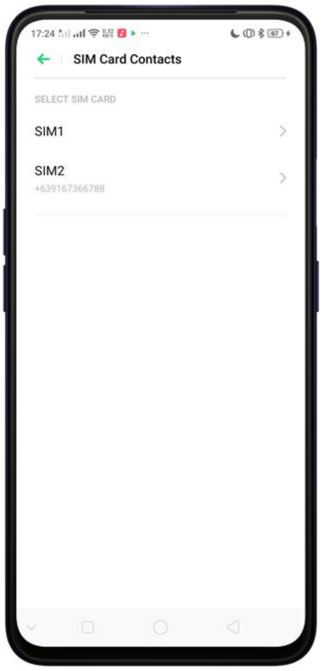
Import/export SIM card contacts. Go to **[Settings]** > [**System Apps**] > **[Contacts]** > **[SIM Card Contacts]**, tap Export or Import, then tick the contacts and move them to either SIM or phone.

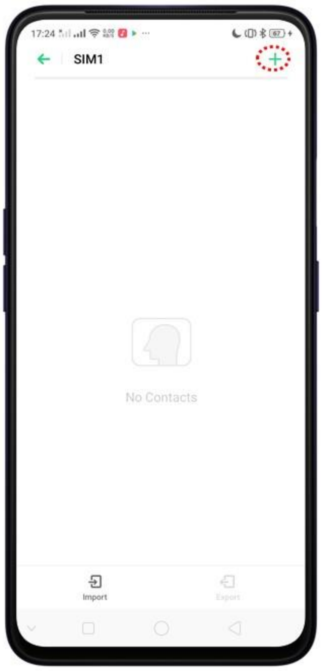


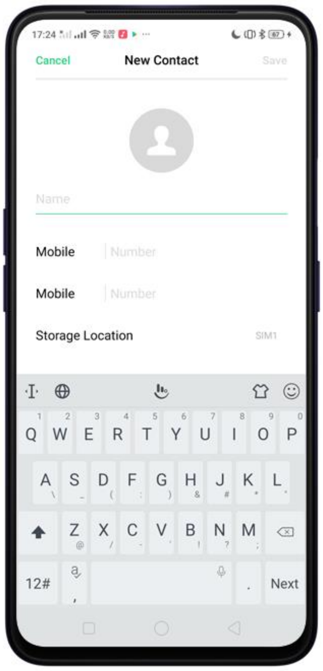
17:16
SIM2
Select
+
...
*143#
B
Bal Inquiry
E
Emergency #
G
GT Cust Svc
R
Reload
Roaming Hotline
S
Share-A-Load
Simon Kids Ph
Import
Export
Select All
3 Contact(s) Selected
Cancel
Export
Undo
Import from phone to SIM card
Search in 3 Contact(s)
Globe James
J
James
O
Ollie
Import

7.6.4.SIM Contacts

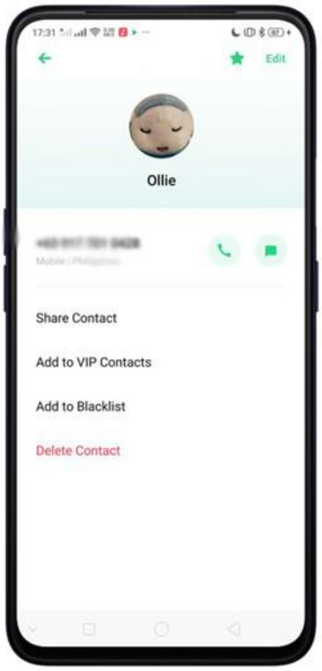
You can add, edit, delete, import, and export SIM contacts directly on your OPPO smartphone. Go to **[Settings]** > [**System Apps**] > **[Contacts]** > **[SIM Card Contacts]**. **Add a SIM contact**. Tap +, then enter the contact information and tap **Save**.


17:24
SIM Card Contacts
SELECT SIM CARD
SIM1
SIM2
+639167366788

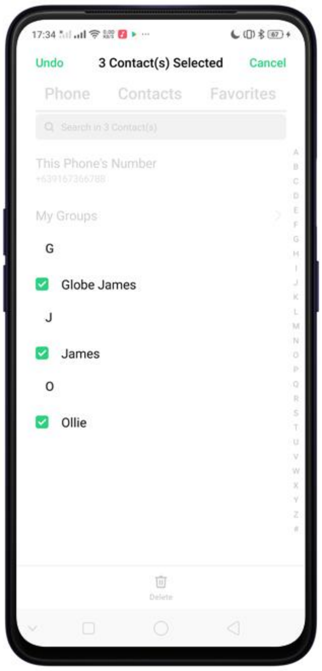

17:24
SIM1
No Contacts
Import
Export


17:24
Cancel
New Contact
Save
Name
Mobile
Number
Mobile
Number
Storage Location
SIM1
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M
12#
Next

Edit and delete a SIM contact. Tap a contact, then tap **Edit**. Tap **Delete Contact** to delete the contact.


17:31
Edit
Ollie
Share Contact
Add to VIP Contacts
Add to Blacklist
Delete Contact

Delete chosen SIM contacts all at the same time. Tap **Select** on the upper-right corner, tick the contacts you don't want anymore and tap 🗑 Delete.


17:34
Undo
3 Contact(s) Selected
Cancel
Phone
Contacts
Favorites
Search in 3 Contact(s)
This Phone's Number
My Groups
G
☑ Globe James
J
☑ James
O
☑ Ollie
Delete

Display SIM contacts on the Contacts list. You need to import SIM contacts to your phone. See [Import and export contacts].

7.6.5.Manage Contacts

Contacts allows you to easily save and edit contact information, including names, numbers, addresses, and more. To make your contacts more organized and available, do the following:

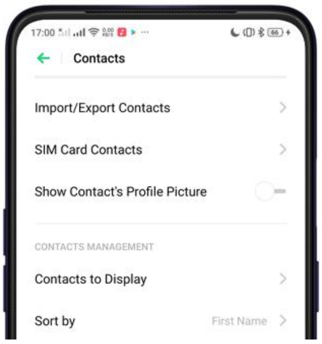
Add a new contact. Tap Phone on the Home Screen, tap Contacts, and then tap +.

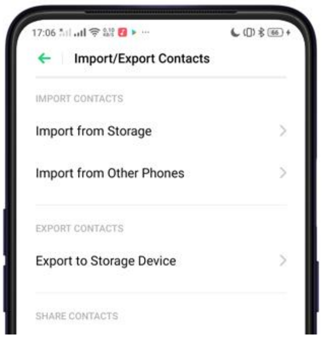
The contact will be saved to your phone storage.

Modify existing contacts. If you want to add details to an existing account, tap the account then edit.

Import or export contacts. Go to **[Settings]** > [System Apps] > **[Contacts]**, then select the import/export path. View Import and export contacts on your OPPO smartphone.

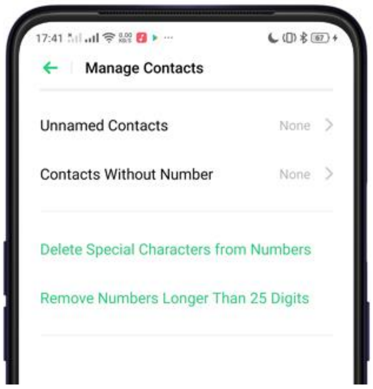
Contacts to Display. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Contacts]** then tap **Contacts to Display.** To only show contacts with numbers, toggle the slider to green. You can also tap a category of contacts that you want to display. Tap **Customize** to select contacts by group.


17:00
Contacts
Import/Export Contacts
SIM Card Contacts
Show Contact's Profile Picture
CONTACTS MANAGEMENT
Contacts to Display
Sort by
First Name

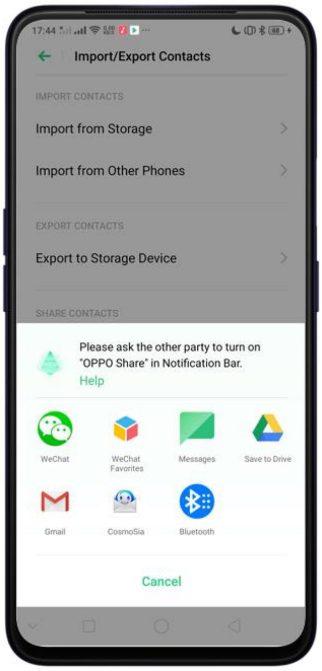

17:06
Import/Export Contacts
IMPORT CONTACTS
Import from Storage
Import from Other Phones
EXPORT CONTACTS
Export to Storage Device
SHARE CONTACTS

Merge duplicate contacts. Tap **Merge duplicate contacts.** The phone will automatically merge contacts with the same name.

Manage contacts. Manage contacts without name or number, or quickly remove invalid numbers, tap **[Manage Contacts]**.


17:41
Manage Contacts
Unnamed Contacts
None
Contacts Without Number
None
Delete Special Characters from Numbers
Remove Numbers Longer Than 25 Digits

Send Contacts. Go to **[Settings]** > [**System Apps**] > **[Contacts]** > **[Import/Export Contacts]** > **[Send Contacts]**. All contacts stored on your phone will be shared.


Import/Export Contacts
IMPORT CONTACTS
Import from Storage
Import from Other Phones
EXPORT CONTACTS
Export to Storage Device
SHARE CONTACTS
Help
WeChat
WeChat Favorites
Messages
Save to Drive
Gmail
CosmoSia
Bluetooth
Cancel

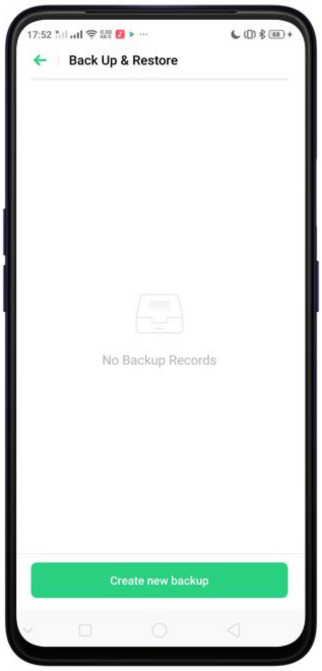
Please ask the other party to turn on "OPPO Share" in Notification Bar.

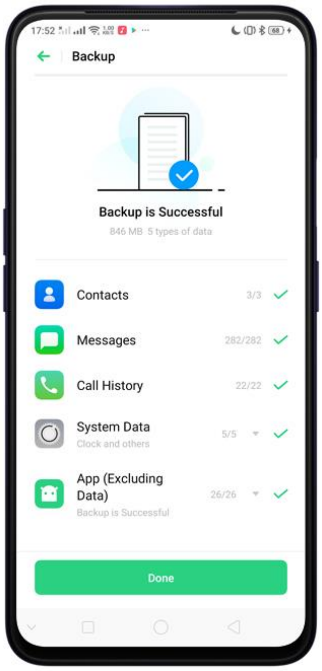
Backup your contacts. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Back up & reset]** > **[Backup & Restore]** > **[Create New Backup]**. View Back up your OPPO smartphone.

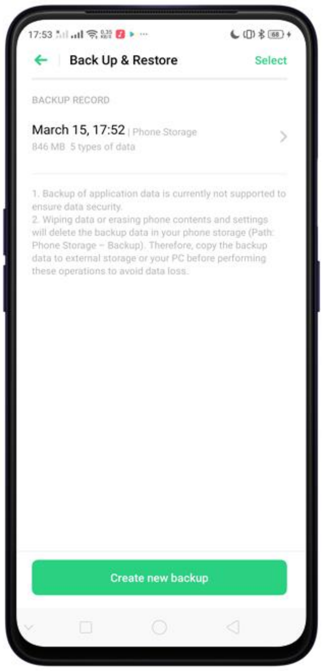
7.6.6.Back Up your Contacts

We use our phone on a regular basis and it is best to back up contacts so that you can easily restore them or use them on another device.

Use the built-in backup tool. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Back up and reset]**, then tap **[Backup and Restore]**. Back up your contacts. You need to make a copy of the existing backup file and move it to another storage device.


17:52
Back Up & Restore
No Backup Records
Create new backup


17:52
Backup
Backup is Successful
846 MB 5 types of data
Contacts 3/3
Messages 282/282
Call History 22/22
System Data 5/5
Clock and others
App (Excluding Data) 26/26
Backup is Successful
Done


17:53
Back Up & Restore
Select
BACKUP RECORD
March 15, 17:52 | Phone Storage
846 MB 5 types of data
Create new backup

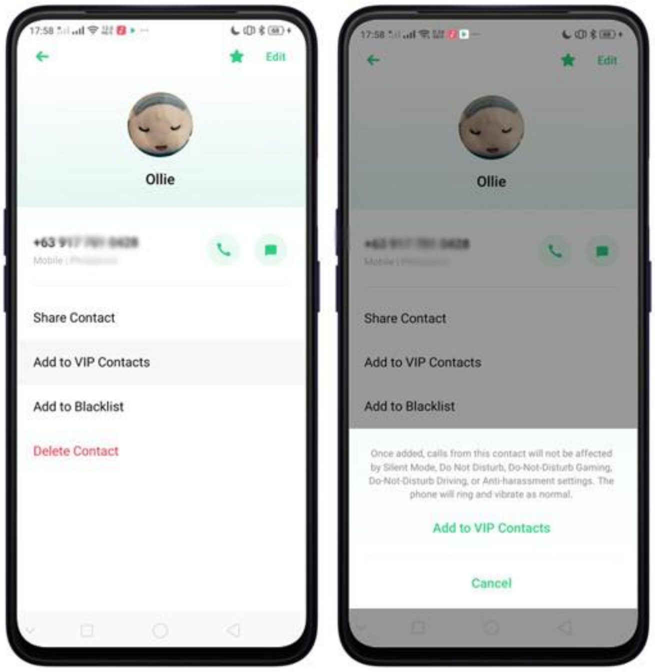
1. Backup of application data is currently not supported to ensure data security.
2. Wiping data or erasing phone contents and settings will delete the backup data in your phone storage (Path: Phone Storage – Backup). Therefore, copy the backup data to external storage or your PC before performing these operations to avoid data loss.

Export contacts. Export your contacts to your SIM card or a folder on your phone. See Import and export contacts.

7.6.7.VIP Contacts

When you put the phone into Silent mode, or when you set the phone to block calls and notifications using Quiet Time, Game Acceleration, or Anti-harassment, you can add certain contacts to VIP Contacts, which will allow them to override the phone settings and have their calls come through and ring.

Add contacts to VIP Contacts. Go to Contacts, select a contact, and then tap Add to VIP Contacts.


17:58
Edit
Ollie
[redacted]
Share Contact
Add to VIP Contacts
Add to Blacklist
Delete Contact
17:58
Edit
Ollie
[redacted]
Share Contact
Add to VIP Contacts
Add to Blacklist

Once added, calls from this contact will not be affected by Silent Mode, Do Not Disturb, Do-Not-Disturb Gaming, Do-Not-Disturb Driving, or Anti-harassment settings. The phone will ring and vibrate as normal.

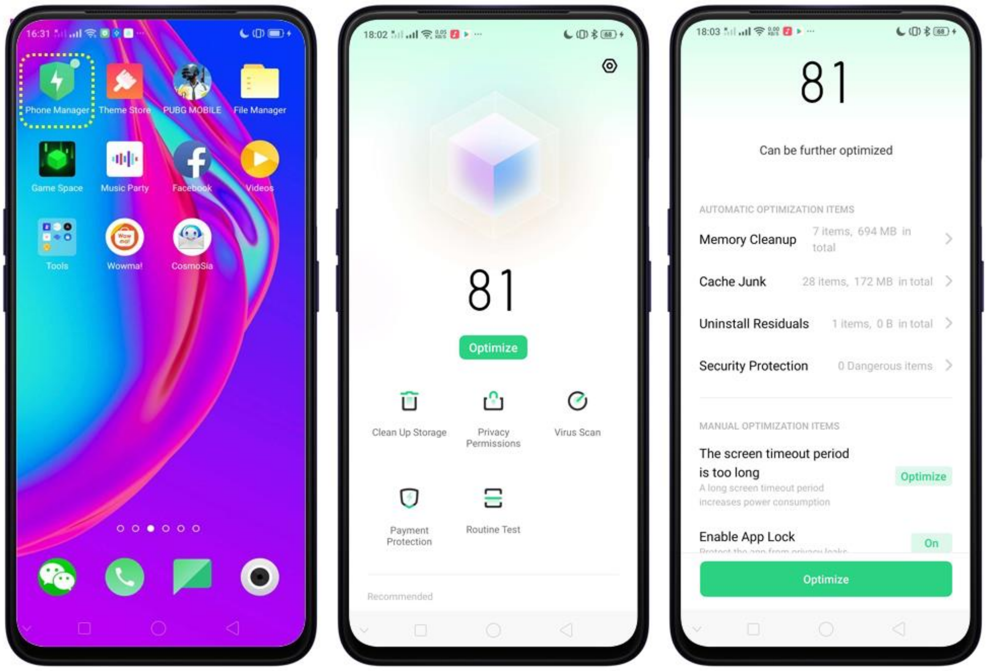
Add to VIP Contacts
Cancel

7.7.Phone Manager

7.7.1.Scan and Optimize the Phone

Regularly optimizing your device can make it perform steadily and faster.

Automatic optimization items. Go to **[Phone Manager]**, the system will start scanning your phone automatically. After the scan is over, tap **[Optimize]**, then tap **[One Touch Optimization]**. You can also select the items that you want to optimize optionally.


Phone Manager
Theme Store
PUBG MOBILE
File Manager
Game Space
Music Party
Facebook
Videos
Tools
Wowma!
CosmoSia
81
Optimize
Clean Up Storage
Privacy Permissions
Virus Scan
Payment Protection
Routine Test
Recommended
Optimize
On
Optimize

81

Can be further optimized

AUTOMATIC OPTIMIZATION ITEMS

Memory Cleanup 7 items, 694 MB in total

Cache Junk 28 items, 172 MB in total

Uninstall Residuals 1 items, 0 B in total

Security Protection 0 Dangerous items

MANUAL OPTIMIZATION ITEMS

The screen timeout period is too long
A long screen timeout period increases power consumption

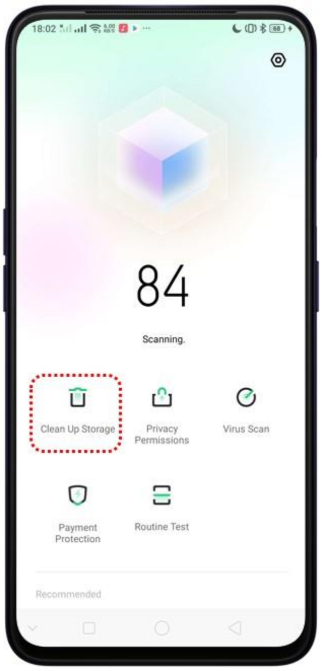
Enable App Lock

Manual optimization items. Tap the green button on the right side of each item, respectively, then do as the phone prompts.

7.7.2.Clean Up Storage

Clean Up Storage. Use Clean Up Storage to quickly detect and remove hidden temp (temporary folders or files), cookie and cache files generated by inner calculations and data exchanges to free up more storage space. You can also quickly browse and delete unnecessary user files.

Tap **Clear all** to delete all kinds of junk files. You can also choose files to be deleted.



84

Scanning.

Clean Up Storage

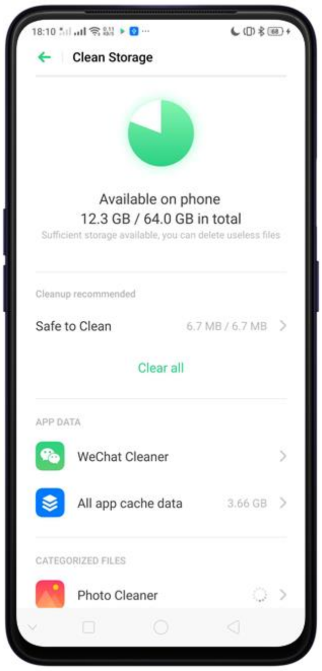
Privacy Permissions

Virus Scan

Payment Protection

Routine Test

Recommended



Clean Storage

Available on phone
12.3 GB / 64.0 GB in total
Sufficient storage available, you can delete useless files

Cleanup recommended

Safe to Clean 6.7 MB / 6.7 MB

Clear all

APP DATA

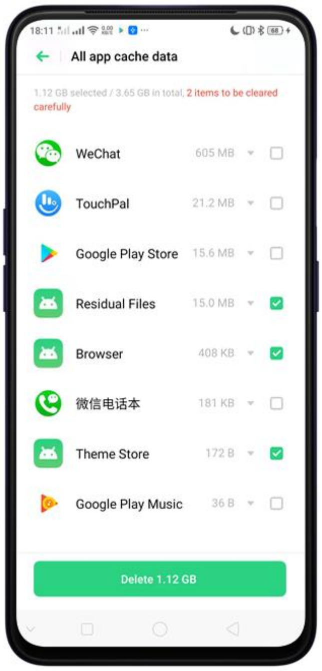
WeChat Cleaner

All app cache data 3.66 GB

CATEGORIZED FILES

Photo Cleaner

Delete app data. Tap All app cache data, select the apps that has caches, then tap **Delete**. The action cannot be undone.



All app cache data

1.12 GB selected / 3.65 GB in total, 2 items to be cleared carefully

WeChat	605 MB	☐
TouchPal	21.2 MB	☐
Google Play Store	15.6 MB	☐
Residual Files	15.0 MB	☑
Browser	408 KB	☑
微信电话本	181 KB	☐
Theme Store	172 B	☑
Google Play Music	36 B	☐

Delete 1.12 GB

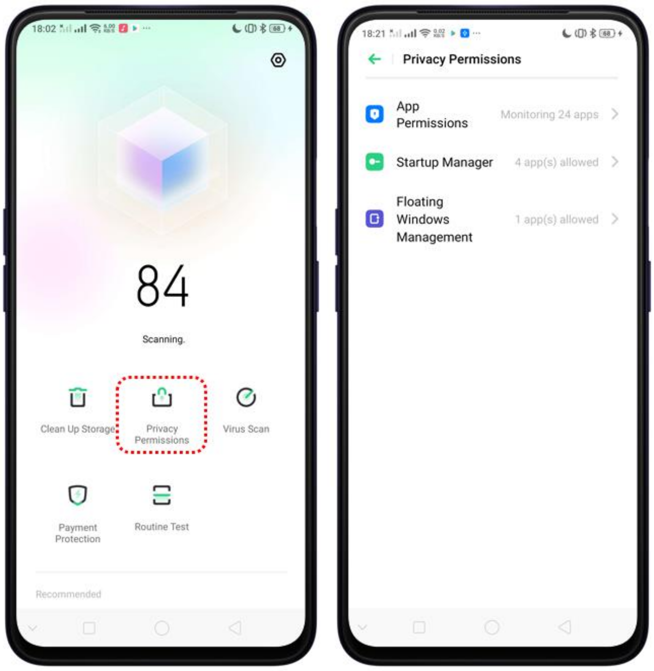
For some commonly used instant-messaging apps like WeChat and WhatsApp, the Phone Manager provides separate entries for you to clean up their files.

See Frequently Used Functions.

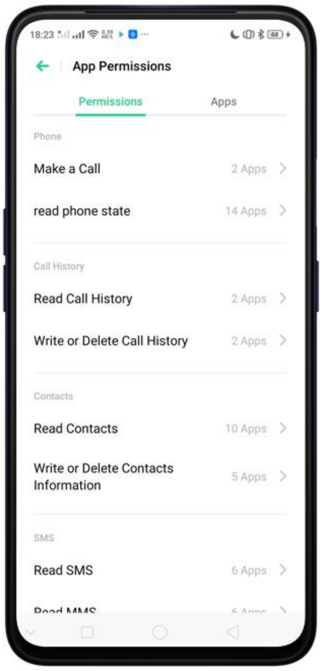
Free up more storage space. You can delete your unnecessary files on the phone, including photos, audio, videos, and documents.

7.7.3.Privacy Permissions

Privacy Permissions. Use Privacy permissions feature to manage app permissions, protect your privacy, and manage apps that start when phone boots up. Tap Phone Manager, then tap Privacy Permissions.


18:02
84
Scanning.
Clean Up Storage
Privacy Permissions
Virus Scan
Payment Protection
Routine Test
Recommended
18:21
Privacy Permissions
App Permissions
Monitoring 24 apps
Startup Manager
4 app(s) allowed
Floating Windows Management
1 app(s) allowed

Manage the App permissions. Open Phone Manager, then tap **Privacy Permissions.** You can go through each permission or app on your phone and, with full control, accept, decline or limit each permission of apps according to your requirements.



App Permissions

Permissions | Apps

Phone

Make a Call	2 Apps
read phone state	14 Apps

Call History

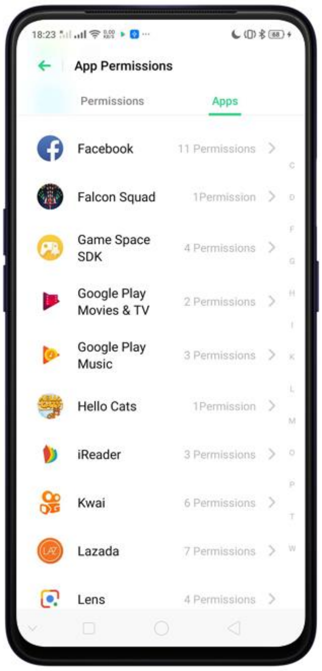
Read Call History	2 Apps
Write or Delete Call History	2 Apps

Contacts

Read Contacts	10 Apps
Write or Delete Contacts Information	5 Apps

SMS

Read SMS	6 Apps
Read MMS	6 Apps

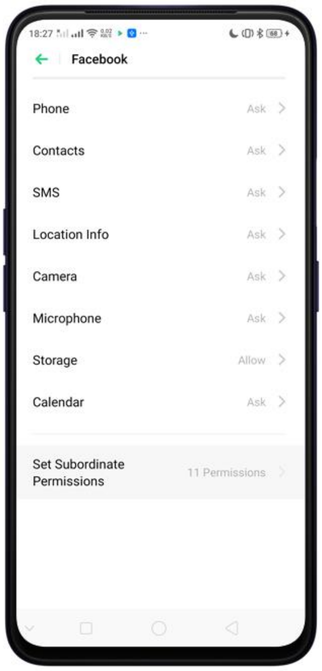


App Permissions

Permissions | Apps

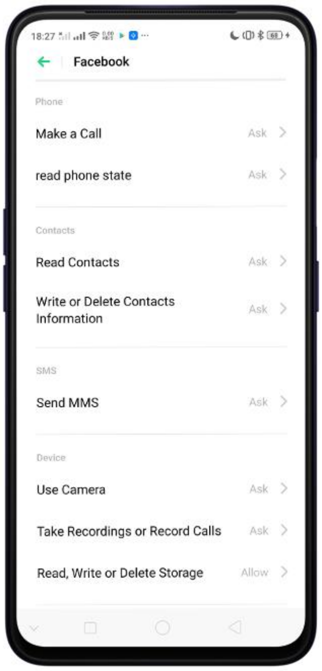
Facebook	11 Permissions
Falcon Squad	1Permission
Game Space SDK	4 Permissions
Google Play Movies & TV	2 Permissions
Google Play Music	3 Permissions
Hello Cats	1Permission
iReader	3 Permissions
Kwai	6 Permissions
Lazada	7 Permissions
Lens	4 Permissions

Tap **[Set Individual Permission]** to view and set more detailed permissions.



Facebook

Phone	Ask
Contacts	Ask
SMS	Ask
Location Info	Ask
Camera	Ask
Microphone	Ask
Storage	Allow
Calendar	Ask
Set Subordinate Permissions	11 Permissions



Facebook

Phone

Make a Call	Ask
read phone state	Ask

Contacts

Read Contacts	Ask
Write or Delete Contacts Information	Ask

SMS

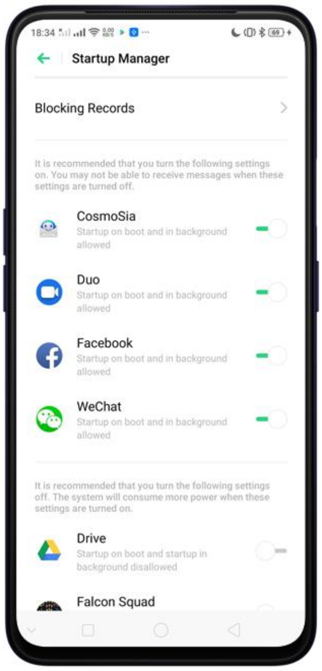
Send MMS	Ask

Device

Use Camera	Ask
Take Recordings or Record Calls	Ask
Read, Write or Delete Storage	Allow

Allow apps to start when phone boots or in background. Tap Startup Manager. Toggle the app slider to green if you want an app running in the background. See Set up Startup Manager.

To view the apps that had been blocked from starting in the background, tap Blocking Records.



Startup Manager

Blocking Records

It is recommended that you turn the following settings on. You may not be able to receive messages when these settings are turned off.

CosmoSia
Startup on boot and in background allowed

Duo
Startup on boot and in background allowed

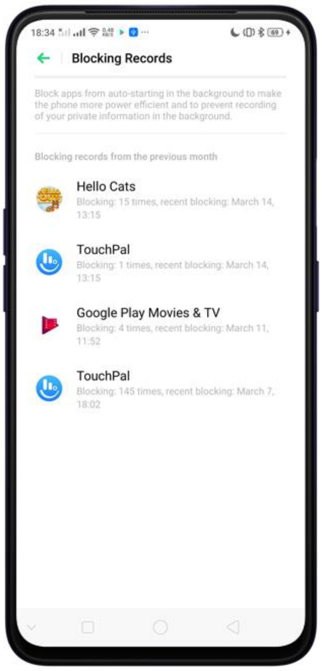
Facebook
Startup on boot and in background allowed

WeChat
Startup on boot and in background allowed

It is recommended that you turn the following settings off. The system will consume more power when these settings are turned on.

Drive
Startup on boot and startup in background disallowed

Falcon Squad



Blocking Records

Block apps from auto-starting in the background to make the phone more power efficient and to prevent recording of your private information in the background.

Blocking records from the previous month

Hello Cats
Blocking: 15 times, recent blocking: March 14, 13:15

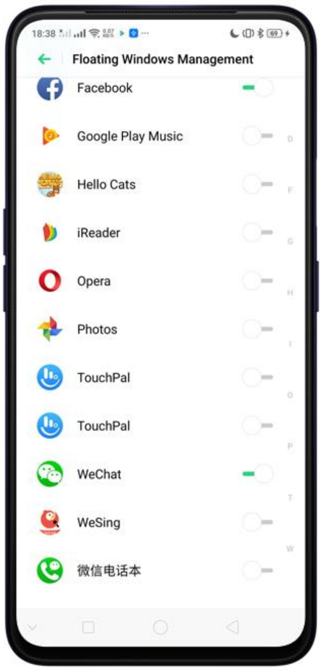
TouchPal
Blocking: 1 times, recent blocking: March 14, 13:15

Google Play Movies & TV
Blocking: 4 times, recent blocking: March 11, 11:52

TouchPal
Blocking: 145 times, recent blocking: March 7, 18:02

Enable floating windows. Toggle the App slider to green so your app message will be displayed in the floating window for easy viewing and use.

Note: Only for apps which can support Floating window feature.



Floating Windows Management

Facebook

Google Play Music

Hello Cats

iReader

Opera

Photos

TouchPal

TouchPal

WeChat

WeSing

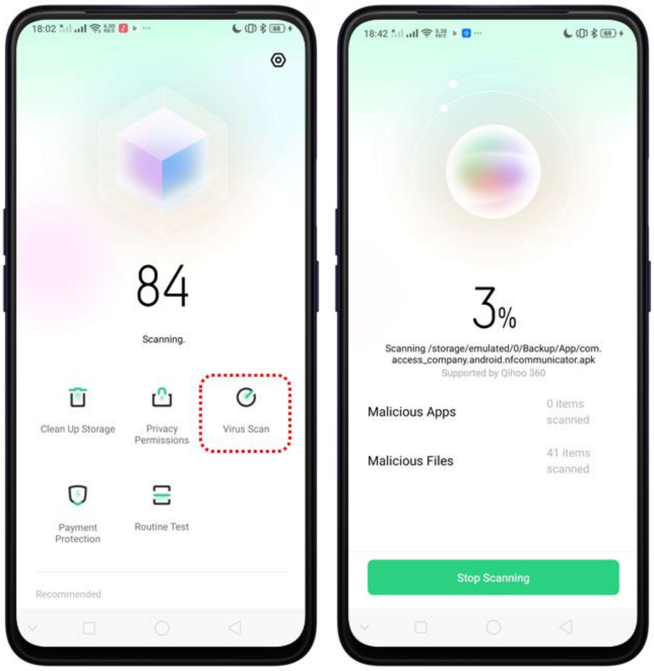
微信电话本

View more details in Use Phone Manager on your OPPO smartphone.

7.7.4.Virus Scan

Virus Scan. For better security, you can regularly scan and remove potential and actual threats on your phone.

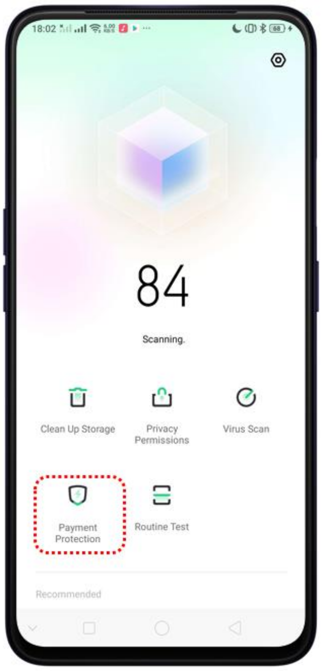
Scan for virus. Tap Phone Manager, then tap **Virus Scan**. Wait for the scan to complete. If threats were found, remove them; if not, you will see a message that says your phone is in ~~a~~ good state.

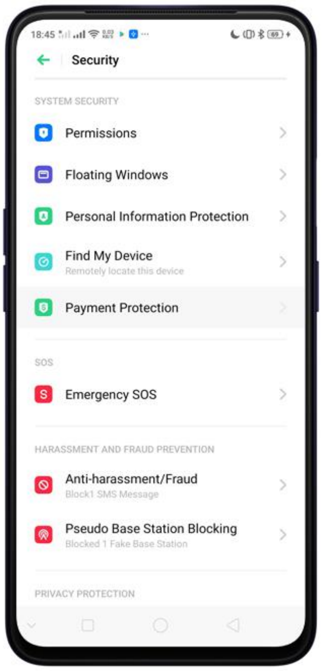

18:02
84
Scanning.
Clean Up Storage
Privacy Permissions
Virus Scan
Payment Protection
Routine Test
Recommended
18:42
3%
Supported by Qihoo 360
Malicious Apps
0 items scanned
Malicious Files
41 items scanned
Stop Scanning

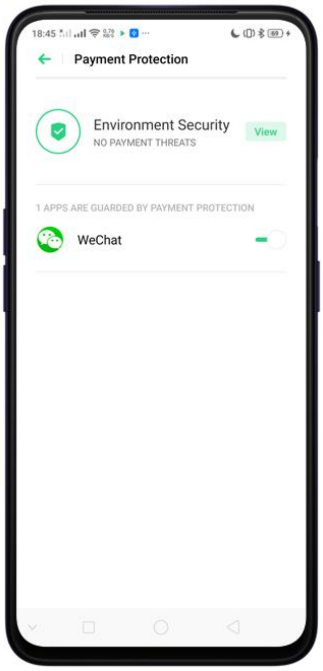
Scanning /storage/emulated/0/Backup/App/com.access_company.android.nfcommunicator.apk

7.7.5.Payment Protection

While you shop online, your OPPO phone will provide protection for the mobile transactions, such as detecting the security of system, captcha, and the app itself.
Set up payment protection for apps. Open Phone Manager, then tap **Payment Protection**. You can also go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** and tap **[Payment Protection]**.

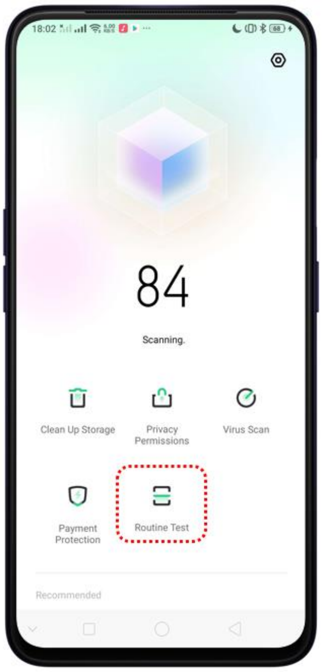

18:02
84
Scanning.
Clean Up Storage
Privacy Permissions
Virus Scan
Payment Protection
Routine Test
Recommended

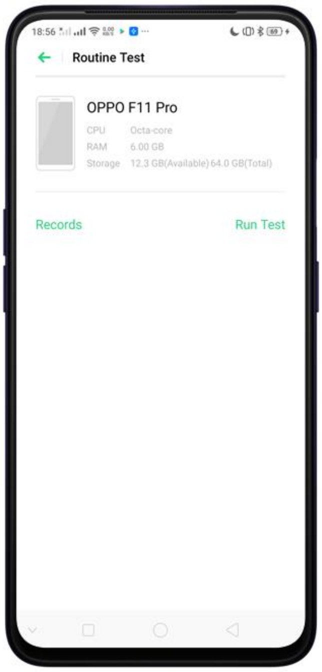

18:45
Security
SYSTEM SECURITY
Permissions
Floating Windows
Personal Information Protection
Find My Device
Remotely locate this device
Payment Protection
SOS
Emergency SOS
HARASSMENT AND FRAUD PREVENTION
Anti-harassment/Fraud
Block1 SMS Message
Pseudo Base Station Blocking
Blocked 1 Fake Base Station
PRIVACY PROTECTION


18:45
Payment Protection
Environment Security
NO PAYMENT THREATS
View
1 APPS ARE GUARDED BY PAYMENT PROTECTION
WeChat

7.7.6.Routine Test

Phone Manager allows you to diagnose common phone problems and find solutions to quickly deal with them.

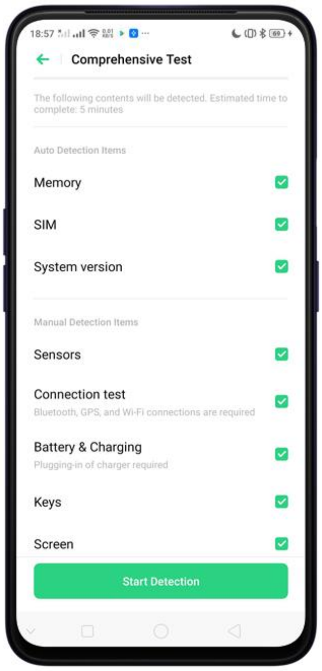

18:02
84
Scanning.
Clean Up Storage
Privacy Permissions
Virus Scan
Payment Protection
Routine Test
Recommended


18:56
Routine Test
OPPO F11 Pro
CPU Octa-core
RAM 6.00 GB
Storage 12.3 GB(Available) 64.0 GB(Total)
Records
Run Test

Routine Test. Tap [Phone Manager] > [Run Test], select the items you want to detect, then tap [Start Detection].

- **Auto Detection Items: including phone memory, SIM card(s), and system** version. The phone will automatically complete the detection.

- Manual Detection Items: including sensors, connections, battery and charging, physical keys, screen, camera, audio, and vibration. During the detection, you need to operate the phone as per onscreen instructions.



The following contents will be detected. Estimated time to complete: 5 minutes

Auto Detection Items

Memory ☑

SIM ☑

System version ☑

Manual Detection Items

Sensors ☑

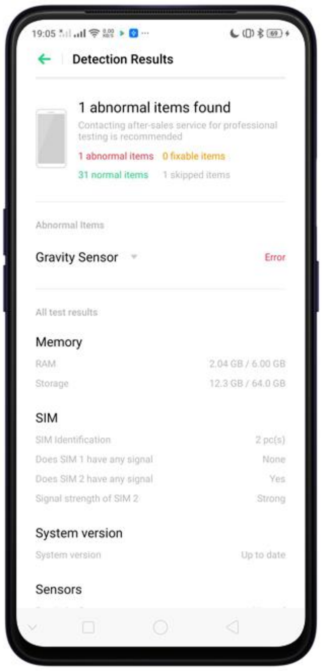
Connection test ☑
Bluetooth, GPS, and Wi-Fi connections are required

Battery & Charging ☑
Plugging-in of charger required

Keys ☑

Screen ☑

The phone will list all the test results of the system and intuitively display the abnormal items. Tap the abnormal item to view the solution your phone offers.



Detection Results

1 abnormal items found

Contacting after-sales service for professional testing is recommended

1 abnormal items 0 fixable items

31 normal items 1 skipped items

Abnormal Items

Gravity Sensor Error

All test results

Memory

RAM 2.04 GB / 6.00 GB

Storage 12.3 GB / 64.0 GB

SIM

SIM Identification 2 pc(s)

Does SIM 1 have any signal None

Does SIM 2 have any signal Yes

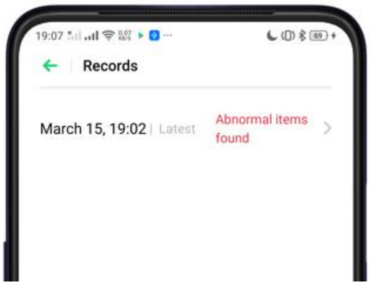
Signal strength of SIM 2 Strong

System version

System version Up to date

Sensors

Detection records. Tap [Records] and you can view all the detection records.

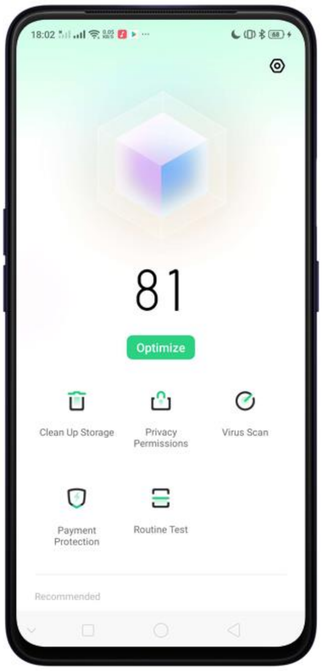


Records

March 15, 19:02 | Latest Abnormal items found

7.7.7.Frequently Used Functions

In Phone Manager, you can quickly clear your downloads and junk files of the apps which are used frequently, such as WeChat, WhatsApp, and more.


18:02
81
Optimize
Clean Up Storage
Privacy Permissions
Virus Scan
Payment Protection
Routine Test
Recommended

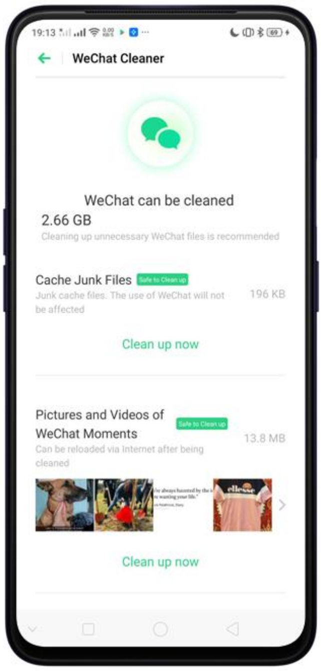
WhatsApp Cleaner

Clear cache and junk files. Tap **[Clear Now]** button to clear the cache files generated when the app was in use.

Clear other app files. You can delete the app files to free up the phone storage, including pictures, videos, audio, voice messages, and files. Select an option, tap Select to select the files, then tap Delete.

WeChat Cleaner

Cache Junk Files. Tap **[Clean up now]** button to clear the cache files generated when the app was in use.

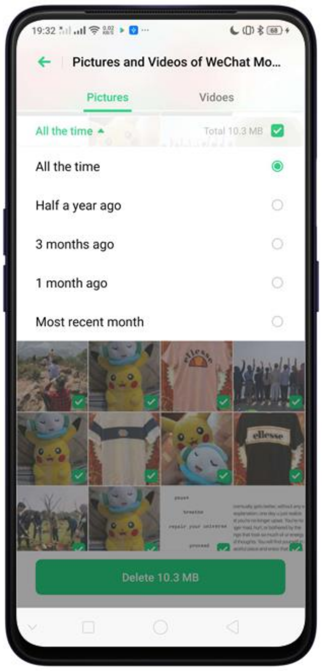

19:13
WeChat Cleaner
WeChat can be cleaned
2.66 GB
Cache Junk Files
Safe to Clean up
196 KB
Clean up now
Pictures and Videos of WeChat Moments
Safe to Clean up
13.8 MB
Clean up now

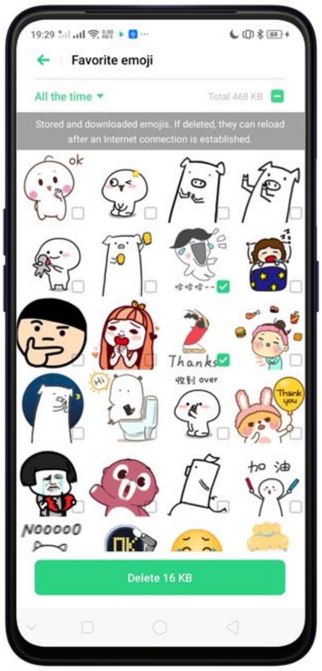
Cleaning up unnecessary WeChat files is recommended

Junk cache files. The use of WeChat will not be affected

Can be reloaded via Internet after being cleaned

Pictures and Videos of WeChat Moments. Tap **pictures, videos, emojis, voice, and received file.** For example choose pictures and videos or emojis you want to delete, then tap **Delete**. The deleted files can be reloaded via internet after being cleaned.

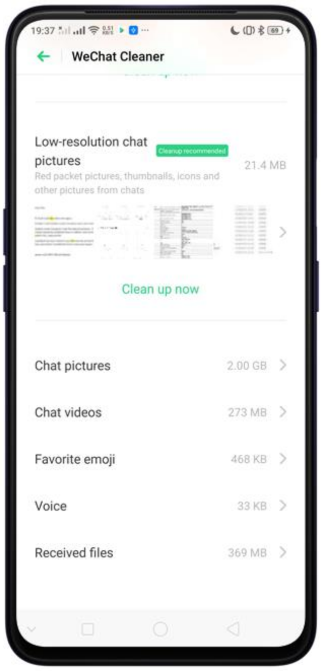

19:32
Pictures and Videos of WeChat Mo...
Pictures
Videos
All the time
Total 10.3 MB
All the time ●
Half a year ago ○
3 months ago ○
1 month ago ○
Most recent month ○
Delete 10.3 MB


19:29
Favorite emoji
All the time
Total 468 KB
ok
Thanks
收到 over
Hi
Thank you
加 油
Nooooo
OK
Delete 16 KB

Stored and downloaded emojis. If deleted, they can reload after an Internet connection is established.

Clear low-resolution pictures from chats. Tap **[Clear up now]** button to clear the red packet pictures, thumbnails, icons, and other pictures. You can to delete from the most recent month, 1 month, 3 months ago, half a year ago or the whole time you've used it.

You can select all by tapping ☐ or manually choose the files.



WeChat Cleaner

Low-resolution chat pictures 21.4 MB

Cleanup recommended

Red packet pictures, thumbnails, icons and other pictures from chats

Clean up now

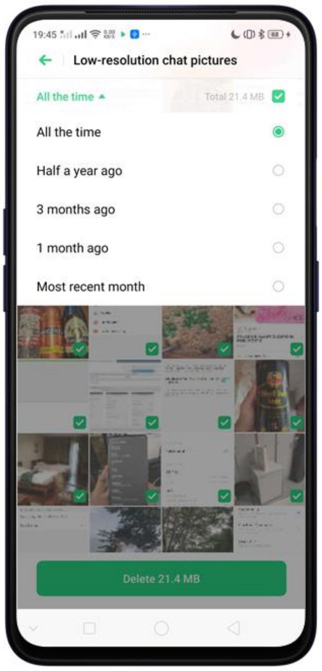
Chat pictures 2.00 GB

Chat videos 273 MB

Favorite emoji 468 KB

Voice 33 KB

Received files 369 MB



Low-resolution chat pictures

All the time ▲ Total 21.4 MB ☑

All the time ●

Half a year ago ○

3 months ago ○

1 month ago ○

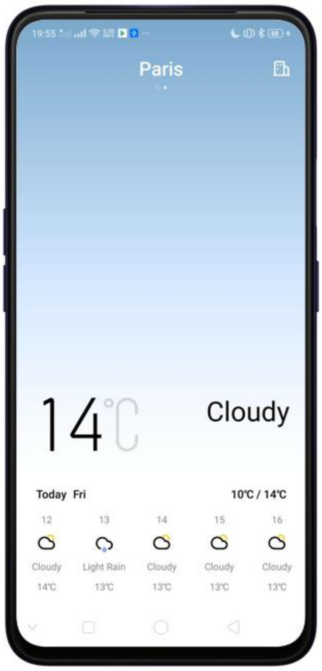
Most recent month ○

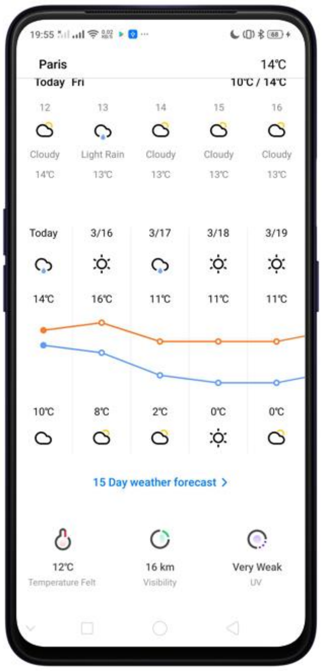
Delete 21.4 MB

Note: These kinds of files cannot be recovered after cleaning.

7.8.Weather

Tap Weather from the Home Screen to see the latest weather conditions and forecasts for the city of your choice, including the current temperature, hourly forecasts for the next 24 hours, and up to 15-days of forecast information. You can store multiple cities for quick access.


19:55
Paris
14℃
Cloudy
Today Fri
10℃ / 14℃
12 13 14 15 16
Cloudy Light Rain Cloudy Cloudy Cloudy
14℃ 13℃ 13℃ 13℃ 13℃

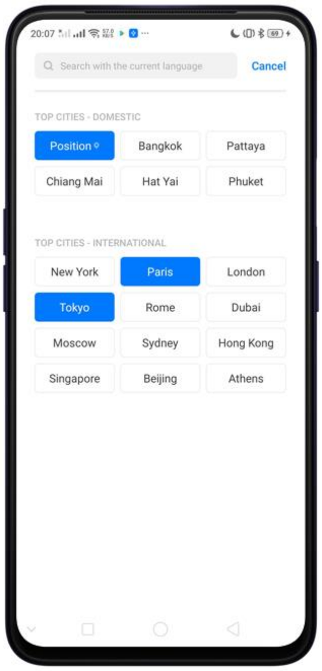

19:55
Paris
14℃
Today Fri
10℃ / 14℃
12 13 14 15 16
Cloudy Light Rain Cloudy Cloudy Cloudy
14℃ 13℃ 13℃ 13℃ 13℃
Today 3/16 3/17 3/18 3/19
14℃ 16℃ 11℃ 11℃ 11℃
10℃ 8℃ 2℃ 0℃ 0℃
15 Day weather forecast >
12℃
Temperature Felt
16 km
Visibility
Very Weak
UV

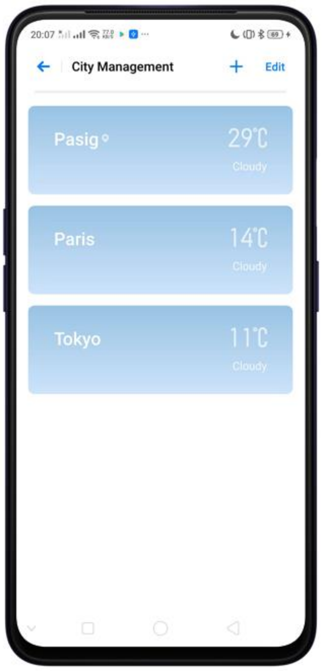
Look at your local weather. Open Weather app and your phone will find your current location using the Location Services. Scroll down to see more details, including humidity, visibility, and more.

View the hourly forecast. Swipe the hourly display left or right. It also provides you the time of sunrise and sunset.

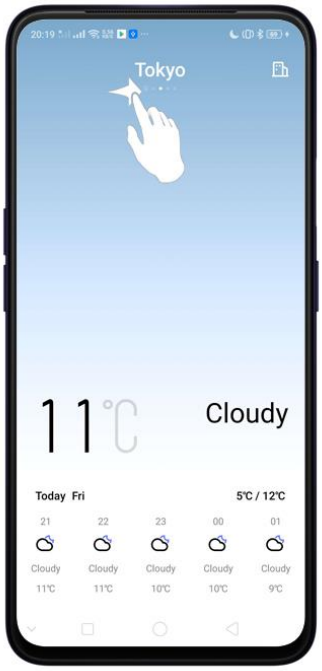
Get daily forecast for 15 days. The phone shows the forecast information for the upcoming five days. Tap **15 Day weather forecast >** to get extended forecasts on your browser.

Add a city. Tap , then tap +. Enter a city name, then tap **Search**. You can also choose on the default cities that are already provided.

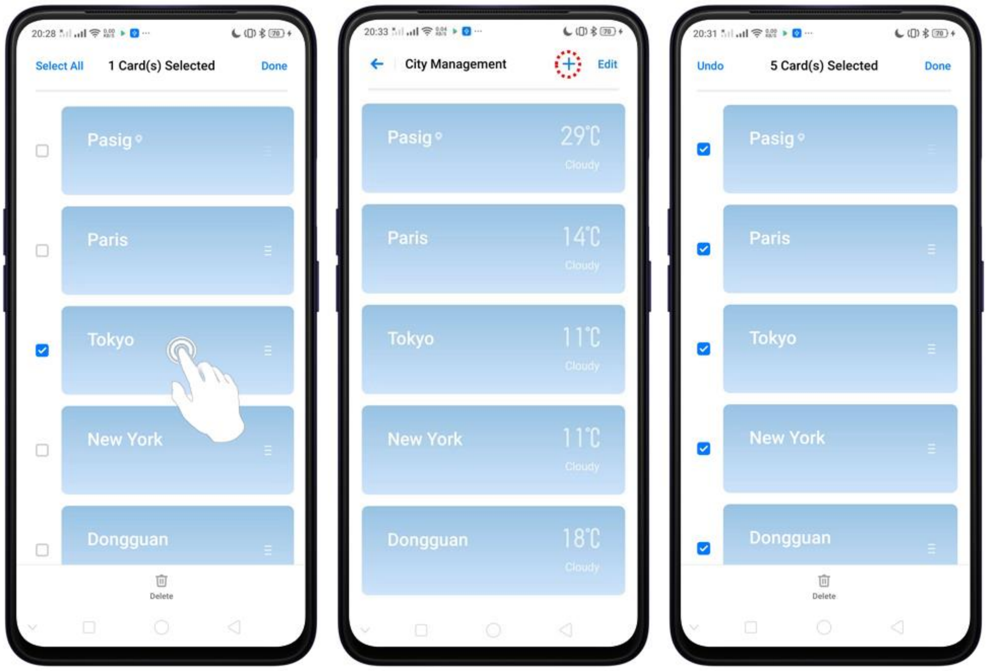

20:07
Search with the current language
Cancel
TOP CITIES - DOMESTIC
Position
Bangkok
Pattaya
Chiang Mai
Hat Yai
Phuket
TOP CITIES - INTERNATIONAL
New York
Paris
London
Tokyo
Rome
Dubai
Moscow
Sydney
Hong Kong
Singapore
Beijing
Athens


20:07
City Management
+
Edit
Pasig
29℃
Cloudy
Paris
14℃
Cloudy
Tokyo
11℃
Cloudy

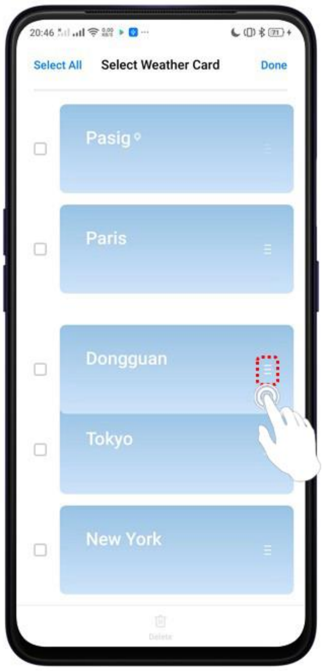
Switch to another city. Swipe left or right. The number of dots below the city name shows how many cities are stored.


20:19
Tokyo
11℃
Cloudy
Today Fri
5℃ / 12℃
21
22
23
00
01
Cloudy
Cloudy
Cloudy
Cloudy
Cloudy
11℃
11℃
10℃
10℃
9℃

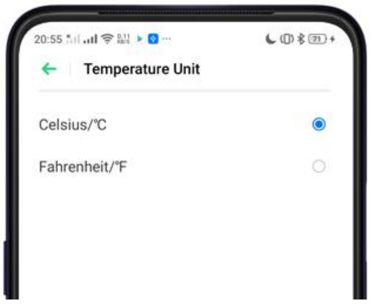
Delete a city. Tap , long press on the city, then tap Delete, or tap **Edit**, tap ☐ next to a city, then tap Delete. **Select All** if you want to delete everything, **Undo** if you change your mind then tap **Done**.


Select All
1 Card(s) Selected
Done
Pasig
Paris
Tokyo
New York
Dongguan
Delete
City Management
Edit
Pasig 29℃ Cloudy
Paris 14℃ Cloudy
Tokyo 11℃ Cloudy
New York 11℃ Cloudy
Dongguan 18℃ Cloudy
Undo
5 Card(s) Selected
Done
Pasig
Paris
Tokyo
New York
Dongguan
Delete

Reorder cities. Tap 🏢, long press the city or tap **Edit**, then touch and drag ☰ icon next to a city up or down on the list. **Note**: Makes sure your finger touches the drag icon else the city won't move.


Select All
Select Weather Card
Done
Pasig
Paris
Dongguan
Tokyo
New York
Delete

Choose Fahrenheit or Celsius. Go to **[Settings]** > [**System Apps**] > **[Weather]** > **[Temperature unit]**.


Temperature Unit

Celsius/℃ ●

Fahrenheit/℉ ○

7.9.Camera

7.9.1.Take Photos

You can use the cameras to take pictures and videos.

Open Camera. Tap Camera icon. To quickly get to the camera, touch Camera icon on the Lock Screen and swipe up.

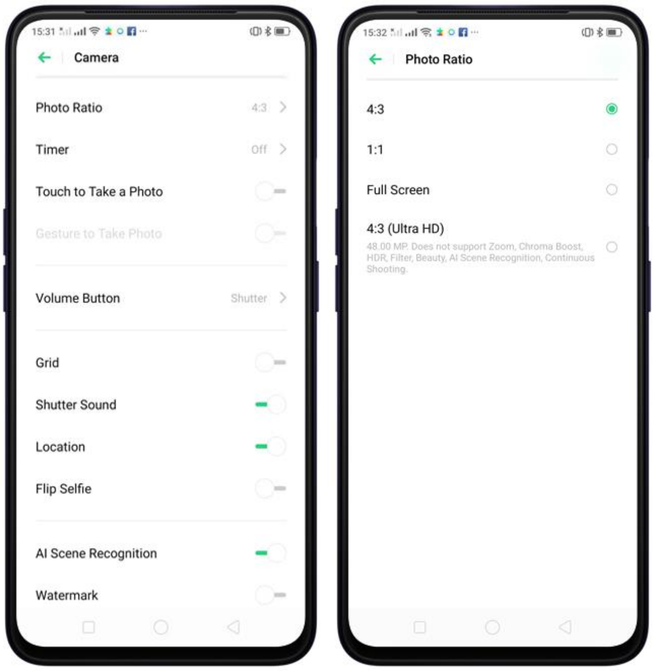

Camera

Photo Ratio 4:3

Timer Off

Touch to Take a Photo

Gesture to Take Photo

Volume Button Shutter

Grid

Shutter Sound

Location

Flip Selfie

AI Scene Recognition

Watermark

Photo Ratio

4:3 ●

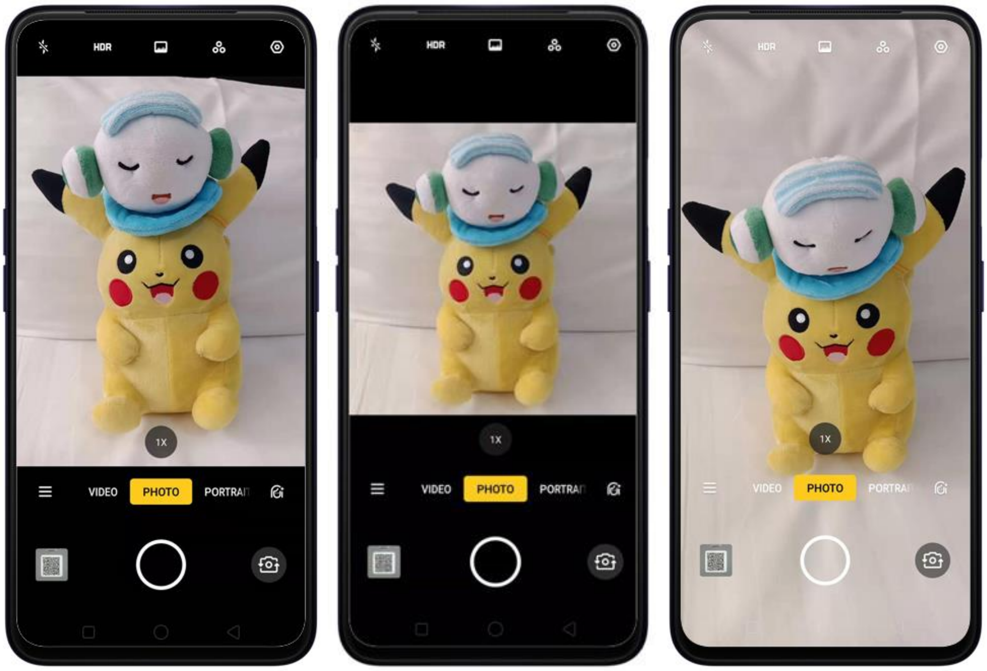
1:1 ○

Full Screen ○

4:3 (Ultra HD) ○

48.00 MP. Does not support Zoom, Chroma Boost, HDR, Filter, Beauty, AI Scene Recognition, Continuous Shooting.

Choose a photo mode. Tap **Photo**, then tap ⚙ on the top-right corner to choose a photo ratio. The default is 4:3.


HDR
1X
VIDEO
PHOTO
PORTRAIT

You can choose Square 4:3, 1:1, or full screen photos or 4:3 (48MP). The difference between 4:3 and 4:3 (48MP) is that 48MP uses 48 million pixels making your images more clear even if you zoom it in and out.

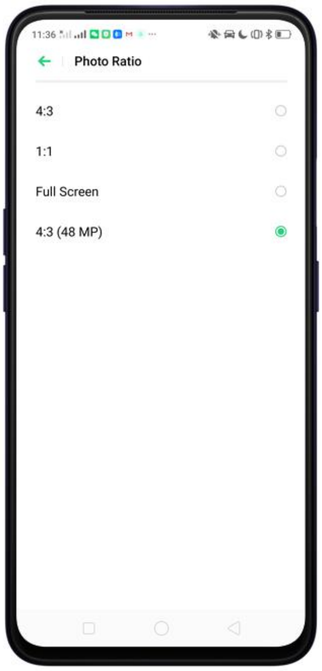


Photo Ratio

4:3 ○

1:1 ○

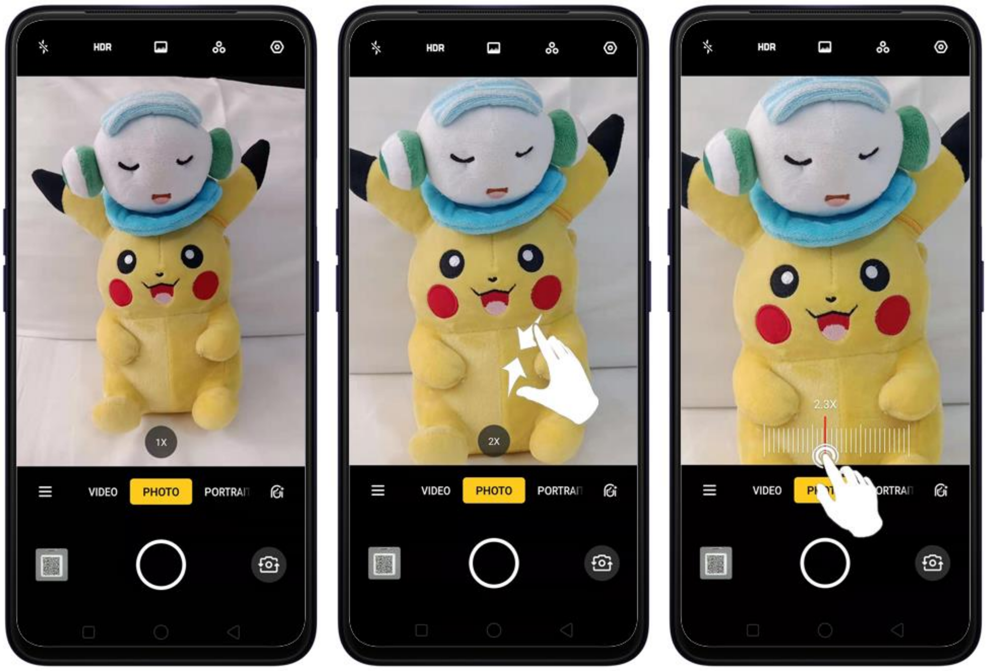
Full Screen ○

4:3 (48 MP) ●

Switch the cameras. Tap .

Take a photo. Aim your camera at the subject and tap ○ .

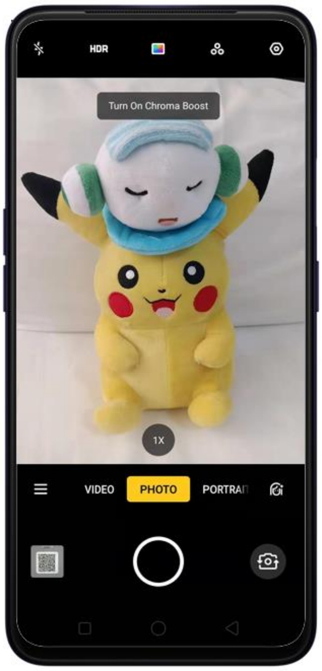
Zoom in or out. The camera captures full-resolution video and stills at 1x and 2x zoom. To quickly switch, toggle 1x or 2x . You can also pinch the screen to zoom in and out or press and hold the zoom number until a line comes out and adjust it by dragging to left or right.



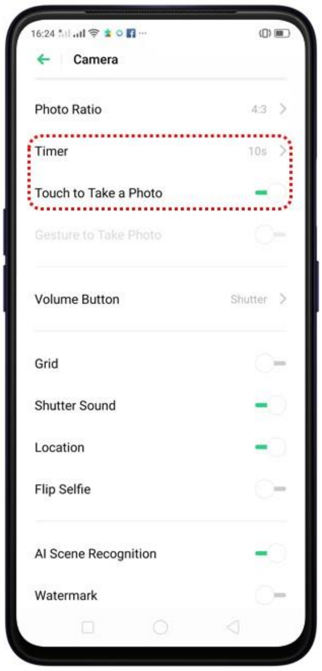
Turn the flash on or off. Tap ⚡, then tap On or Off. When you tap Auto, your phone will automatically detect lighting conditions and determine if flash is necessary. When you tap Fill Light, your phone will use the built-in flash as the fill light.

Turn HDR on or off. Tap HDR, then tap On, Off or Auto. When HDR (high dynamic range) is on, photos take multiple exposures of the same scene and then combine them to create a better looking, more detailed image.

Turn on Chroma Boost. Tap 🖼. To add more color to your picture.



Use the capture timer. Capture timer gives you enough time to take a picture. Tap ◎ the top-right corner to go to Camera settings, then choose timer at 3s or 10s. To touch screen and take a photo, tap ◎ again then toggle [**Touch to Take a Photo**] to green to enable.


16:24

Camera

Photo Ratio 4:3

Timer 10s

Touch to Take a Photo ●

Gesture to Take Photo ○

Volume Button Shutter

Grid ○

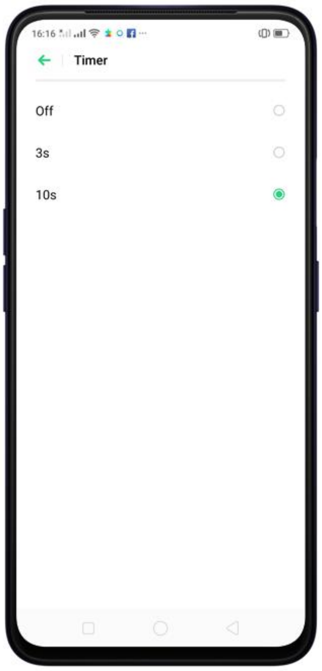
Shutter Sound ●

Location ●

Flip Selfie ○

AI Scene Recognition ●

Watermark ○

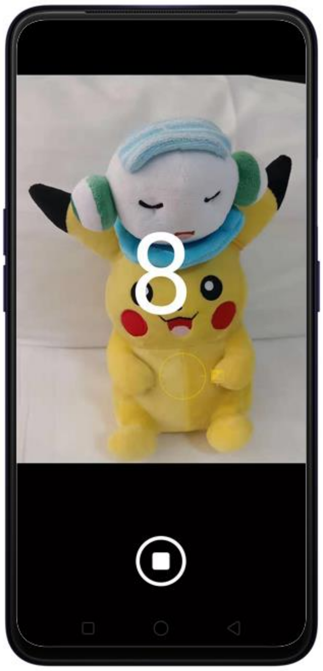

16:16

Timer

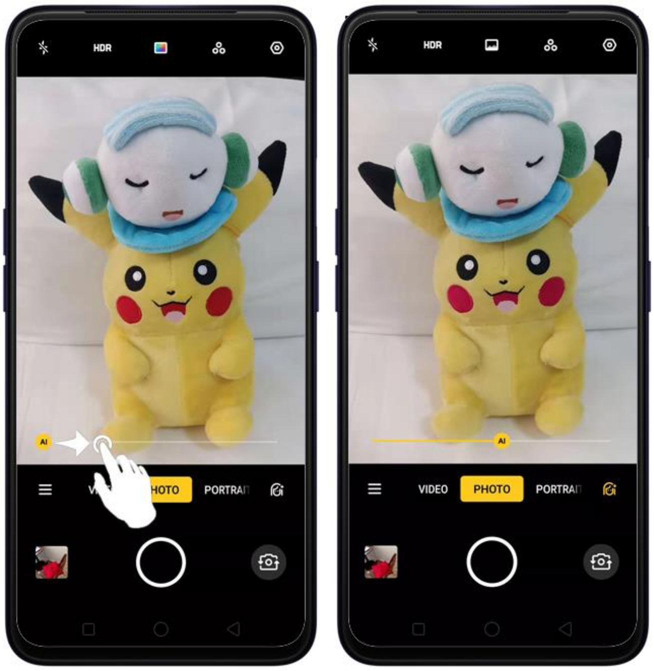
Off ○

3s ○

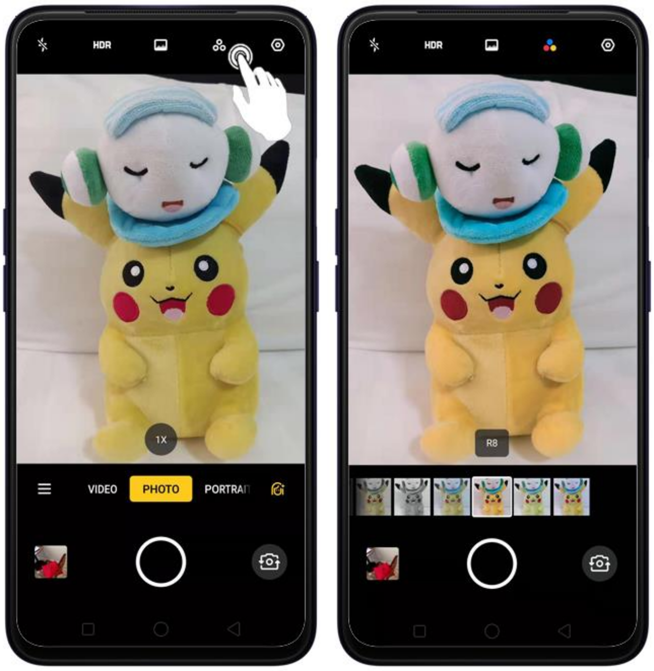
10s ●



Use Beauty Mode. Tap then you drag AI to adjust the skin tone, enhance facial features, and make other minor changes you want on your subject.

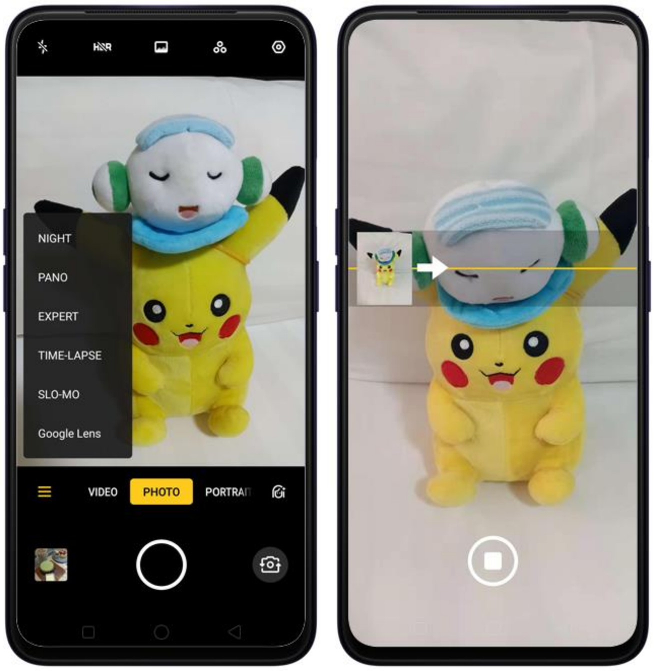

HDR
AI
HOTO
PORTRAIT
VIDEO
PHOTO

Add a filter. You can apply a filter before you take a photo. Tap ∴ then you'll see a series of filter options, with each one showing a preview of what it will look like when applied to your photo. Tap the filter you want to use. Switch to ORIGINAL to remove the filter.

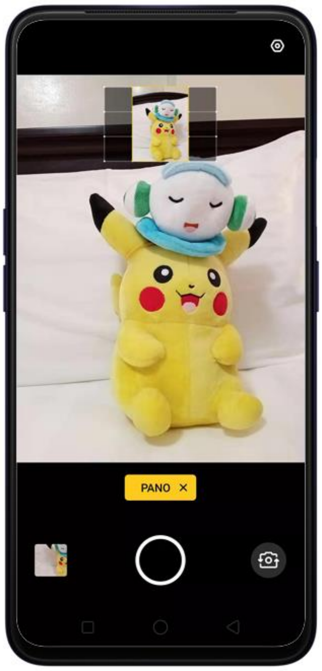

HDR
1X
VIDEO
PHOTO
PORTRAIT
R8

Take a panorama photo. Tap ☰ then choose PANO.

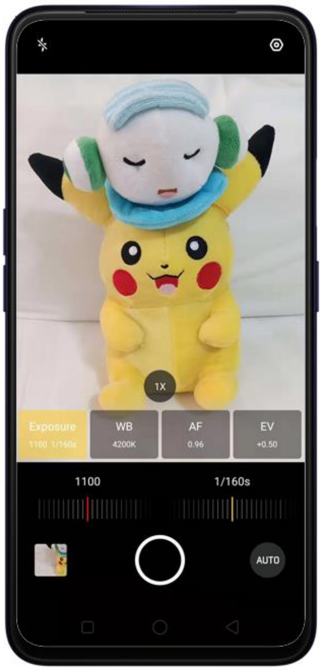
- With the rear cameras, tap the Shutter button, then move the phone slowly and steadily across the subject you want to capture. Tap the button again when you've got your full photo.


NIGHT
PANO
EXPERT
TIME-LAPSE
SLO-MO
Google Lens
VIDEO
PHOTO
PORTRAI

- With the front camera, tap the Shutter button and you'll hear a “Ding” sound. Rotate the phone left or right until the phone sounds again. The photo will be taken automatically.



Use Expert mode. EXPERT Mode allows you to take more professional-looking photos. Tap ☰ then choose **EXPERT**, then you can adjust camera's white balance, exposure compensation, ISO, shutter speed, and more.
Note: **EXPERT mode is only available when taking pictures using the rear camera.**



Exposure 1100 1/160s
WB 4200K
AF 0.96
EV +0.50
1100
1/160s

Take Portrait photo. Tap PORTRAIT to take a picture that focuses more on you and you can choose some filters as well.

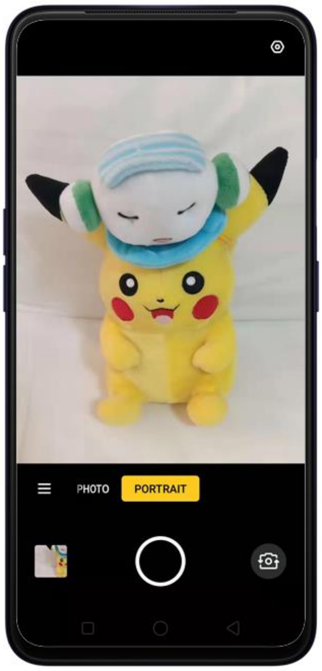
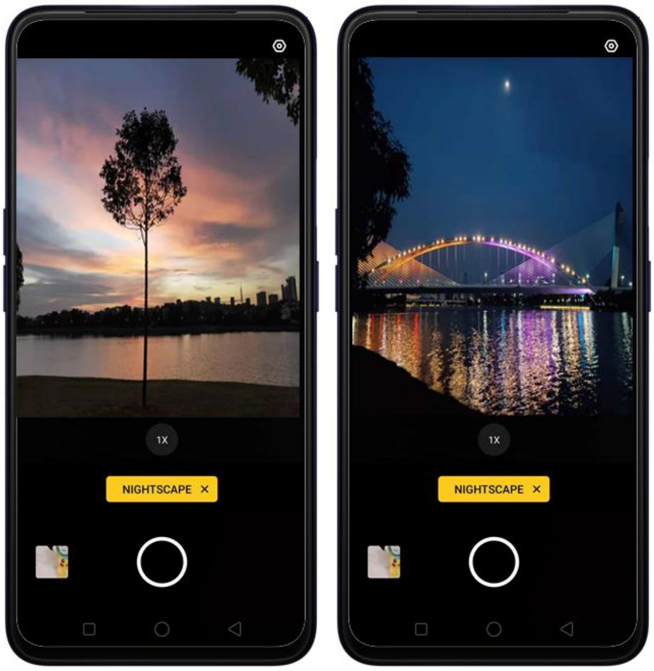
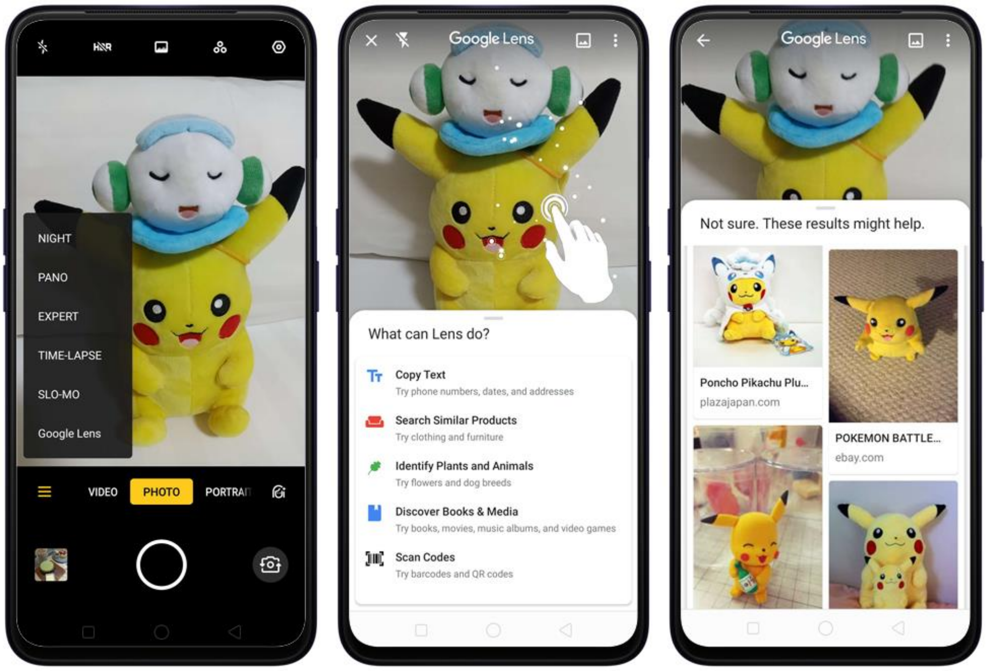


PHOTO
PORTRAIT

Take night scene photo. To take better pictures at night, choose **NIGHT**.


1X
NIGHTSCAPE ×
1X
NIGHTSCAPE ×

Use Google Lens. Analyze what your camera sees and it will give you results in real time. It will tell you what the image is or give you links to understand it better. Tap on the image so it will be analyzed.


NIGHT
PANO
EXPERT
TIME-LAPSE
SLO-MO
Google Lens
VIDEO
PHOTO
PORTRAIT
Google Lens
Google Lens

What can Lens do?

Copy Text
Try phone numbers, dates, and addresses

Search Similar Products
Try clothing and furniture

Identify Plants and Animals
Try flowers and dog breeds

Discover Books & Media
Try books, movies, music albums, and video games

Scan Codes
Try barcodes and QR codes

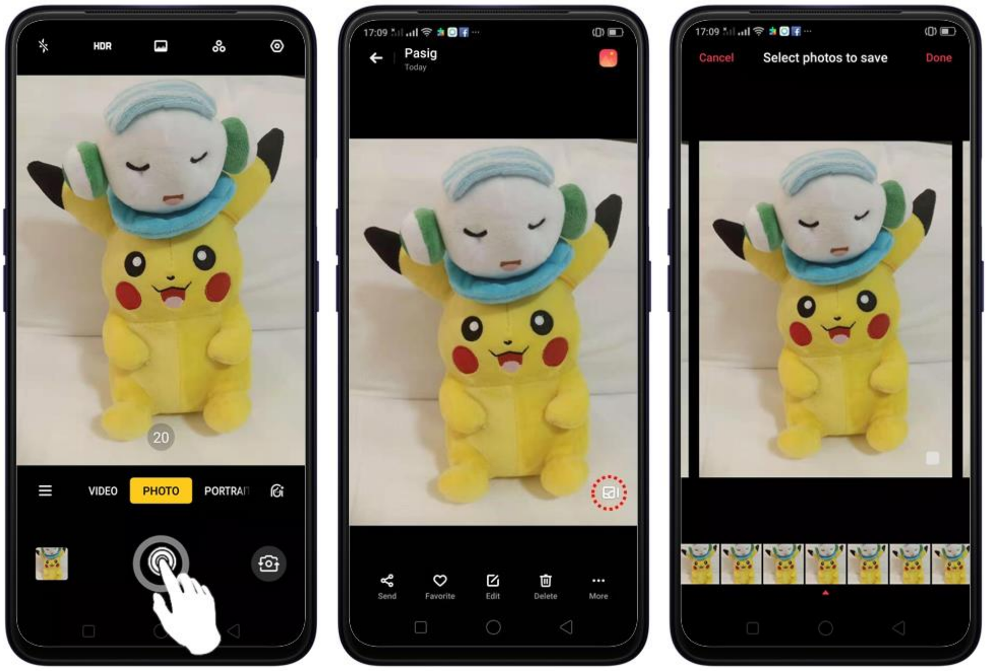
Not sure. These results might help.

Poncho Pikachu Plu...
plazajapan.com

POKEMON BATTLE...
ebay.com

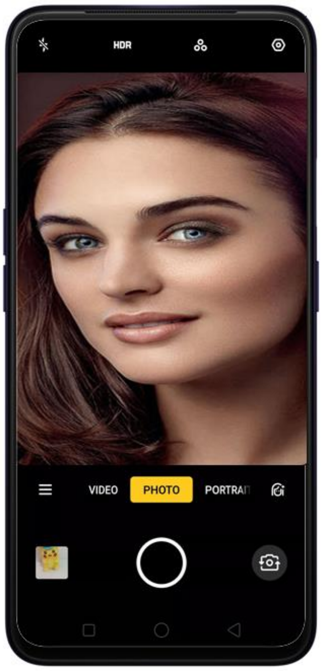
Note: You need internet connection for this to work.

Take Burst shots. Choose **PHOTO,** touch and hold the Shutter button, and you'll see an onscreen count rapidly rise, which shows the number of photos you're taking. Lift your finger to stop. To select the photos you want to keep, tap on the image, tap 🖼, select the best photo you want, then tap **Done**. Maximum photos that can be taken in burst shot is 20.

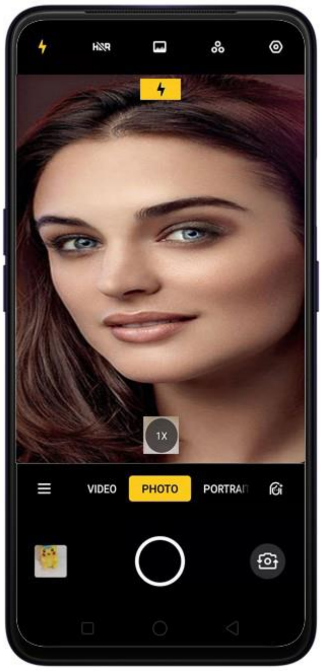

HDR
20
VIDEO
PHOTO
PORTRAIT
17:09
Pasig
Today
Send
Favorite
Edit
Delete
More
17:09
Cancel
Select photos to save
Done

7.9.2.Take a selfie

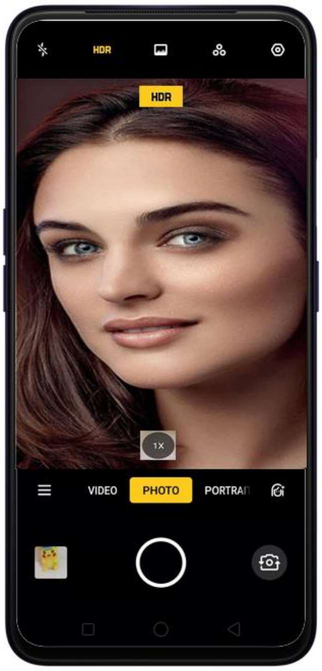
To switch to the front-facing camera, tap on the lower-right corner of the screen.



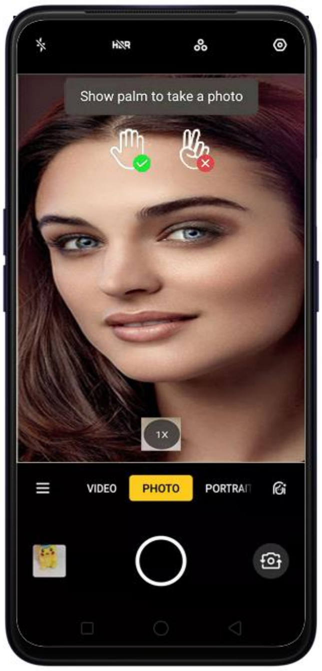
Turn the flash on. Tap , then tap if you want to activate it or have it in Auto mode. A white screen at full brightness is used as front-facing flash.

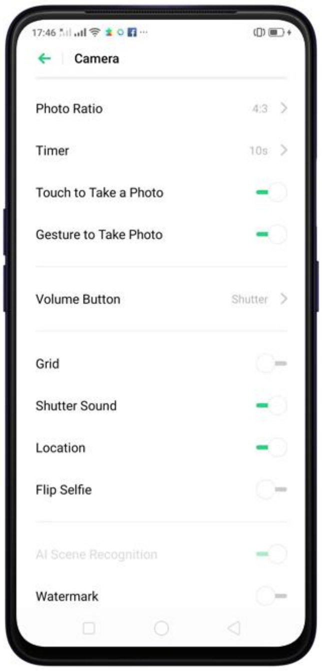

1X
VIDEO
PHOTO
PORTRAIT

Turn Front 3-HDR on or off. Tap HDR, then tap Off, On or Auto. When capturing images in bright sunlight or shade, front 3-HDR helps you to adjust the ratio of light to dark in the photo and make your subject look better.


HDR
HDR
HDR
1X
VIDEO
PHOTO
PORTRAIT

Use the capture timer. Capture timer gives you enough time to take a picture. Tap ◎ the top-right corner to go to Camera settings, then choose timer at 3s or 10s. To touch screen and take a photo, tap ◎ again then toggle [**Touch to Take a Photo**] or [**Gesture to Take Photo**] to green to enable.


HDR
Show palm to take a photo
1X
VIDEO
PHOTO
PORTRAIT


17:46

Camera

Photo Ratio 4:3

Timer 10s

Touch to Take a Photo ●

Gesture to Take Photo ●

Volume Button Shutter

Grid ○

Shutter Sound ●

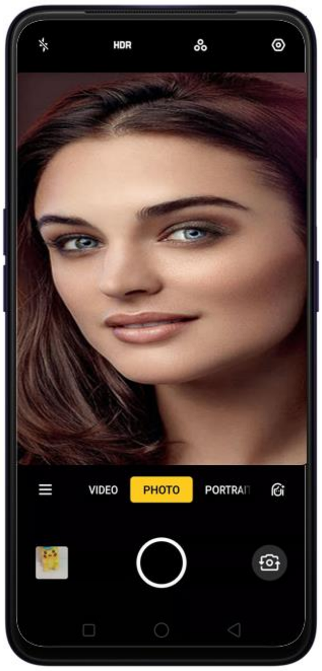
Location ●

Flip Selfie ○

AI Scene Recognition ●

Watermark ○

Choose a photo mode. Tap ◎ on the top-right corner to go to Camera settings, then choose 4:3, 1:1, or full screen photos or 4:3 (48MP) is that 48MP uses 48 million pixels making your images more clear even if you zoom it in and out.


HDR
VIDEO
PHOTO
PORTRAIT

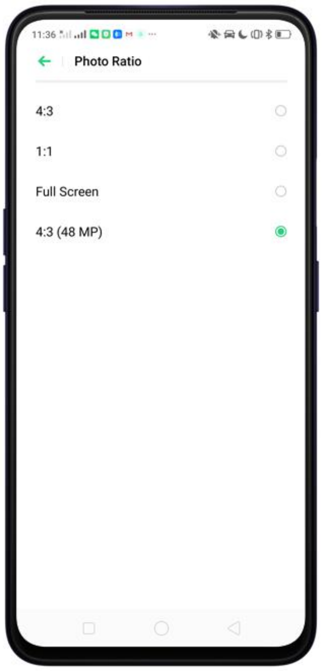

11:36

Photo Ratio

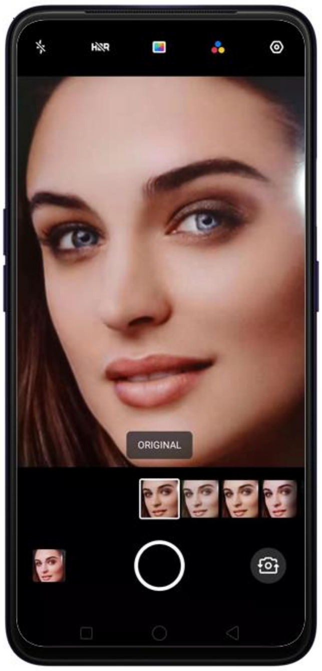
4:3 ○

1:1 ○

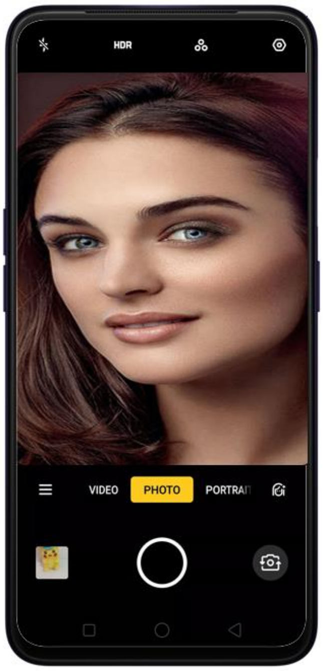
Full Screen ○

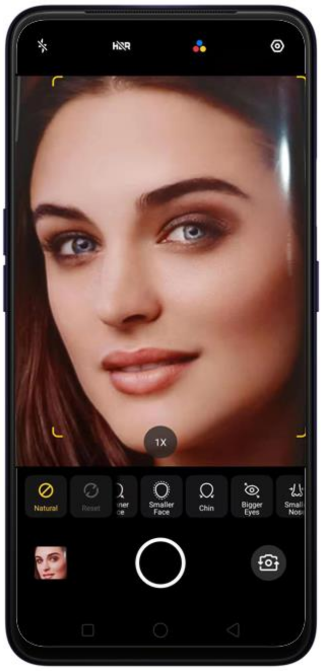
4:3 (48 MP) ●

Add a filter. You can apply a filter before you take a photo. Tap then you'll see a series of filter options, with each one showing a preview of what it will look like when applied to your photo. Tap the filter you want to use. Switch to ORIGINAL to remove the filter.


HDR
ORIGINAL

Use Beauty Mode. Tap . The built-in beauty filter will automatically adjust the skin tone, enhance facial features, and make other minor changes to your appearance.

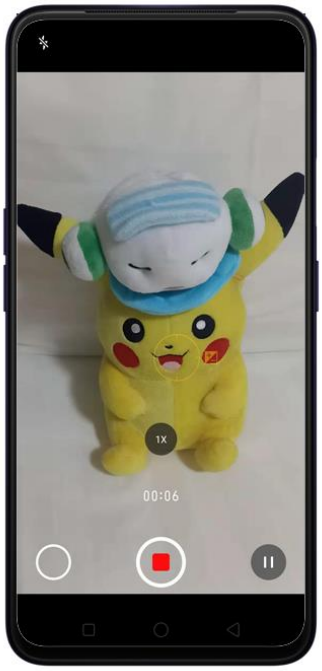

HDR
VIDEO
PHOTO
PORTRAI


HDR
1X
Natural
Reset
Smaller Face
Chin
Bigger Eyes
Small Nos

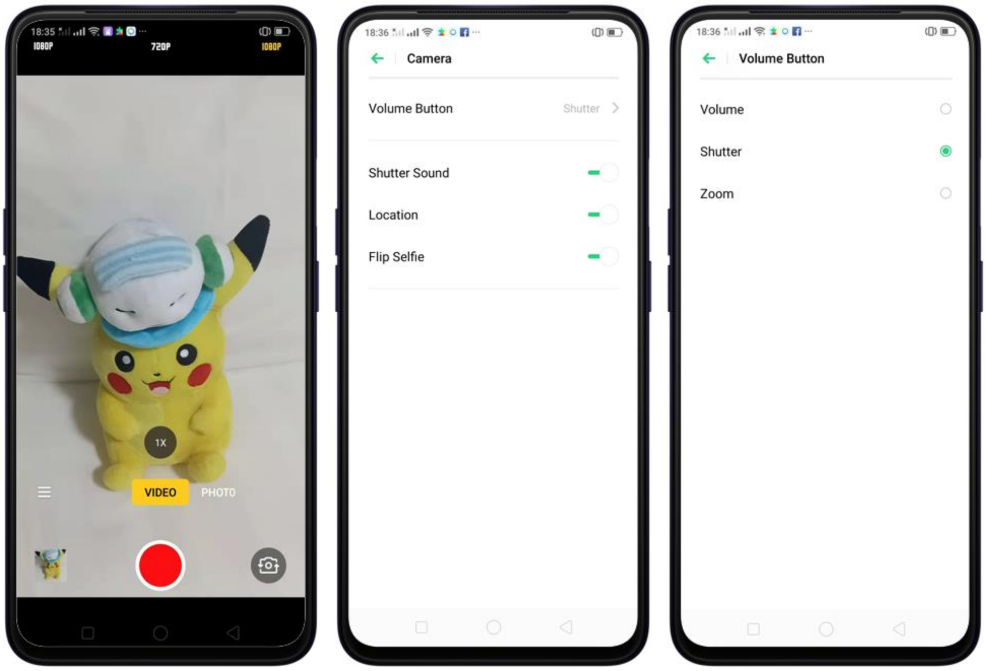
- **Use Natural**: Tap AI. This will take a picture filter-free.
- **Choose Custom beauty**: Choose from smooth skin, thinner face, smaller face, chin, bigger eyes, smaller nose, touch up, or 3D. Tap **Reset** if you want to start over.

7.9.3.Shoot video

With Camera you can shoot video, including time-lapse and 10s short videos. Press ⏸ to pause and tap ▶ to play.



Record a video. Choose Video, then tap the Record button, or press either volume button, to start and stop recording. You can choose between 720, 720P, 1080P. Just tap ◎ on the top-right corner to go to Camera settings.


18:35
1080P
720P
1080P
1X
VIDEO
PHOTO
18:36
18:36

Camera

Volume Button Shutter

Shutter Sound

Location

Flip Selfie

Volume Button

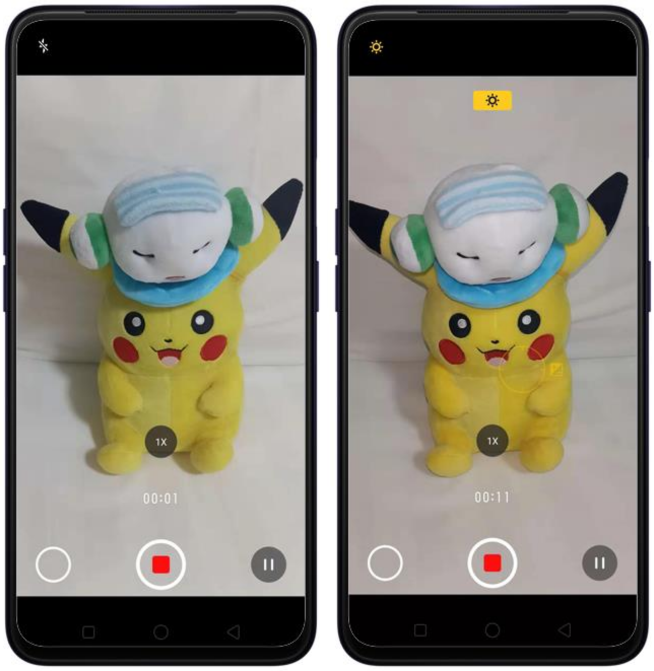
Volume ○

Shutter ●

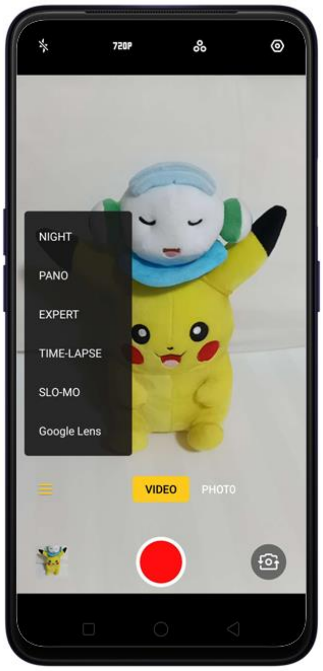
Zoom ○

Zoom in or out when shooting video. (rear camera) Toggle 1x or 2x. You can also pinch the screen to zoom in and out or press and hold the zoom number until a line comes out and adjust it by dragging to left or right. Same process as taking photo.

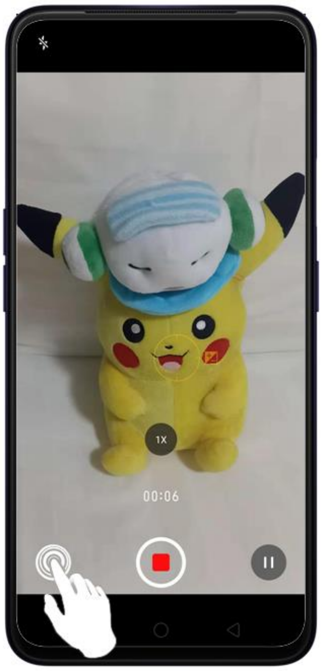
Turn the flash on or off. Tap ⚡ turn on the Fill Light which gives more light to the subject. Tap ☼ to turn off the flash.


1X
00:01
1X
00:11

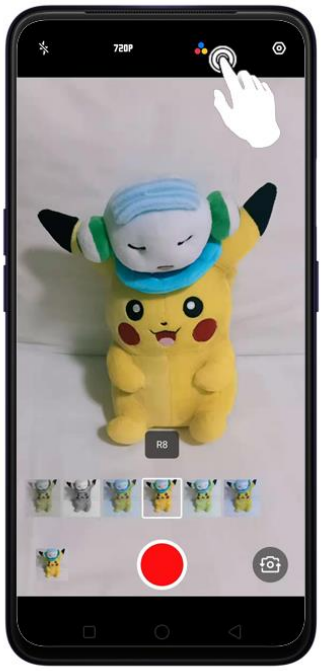
To choose TIME-LAPSE or SLO-MO video tap ≡. TIME-LAPSE records a scene or object that has a slow state-of-change and turns it into a video that plays back in high speed while SLO-MO records a scene or object that has a normal action or move and turns it into a video that plays back in very low speed.


720P
NIGHT
PANO
EXPERT
TIME-LAPSE
SLO-MO
Google Lens
VIDEO
PHOTO

Take photos when shooting a video. Tap the Shutter button in the lower-left corner of the screen.

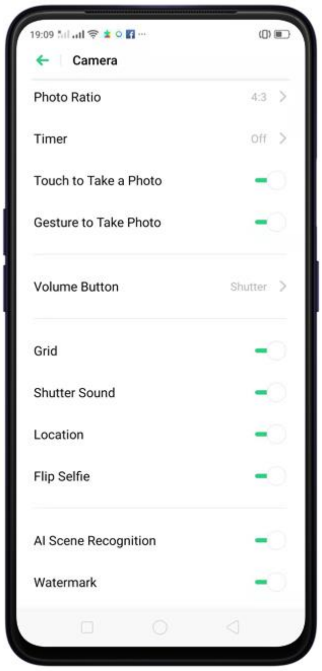


Add a filter. You can apply a filter before you take a photo. Tap ∴, then you'll see a series of filter options, with each one showing a preview of what it will look like when used. Tap the filter you want to use. Switch to ORIGINAL to remove the filter.



7.9.4.Camera Settings

Camera settings are special options that help you to take pictures or record videos or manage the camera sound when taking a photo. From your Camera just tap ◎ on the top-right corner to Camera settings or go to **[Settings]** > **[System Apps]**> **[Camera]**.



Camera

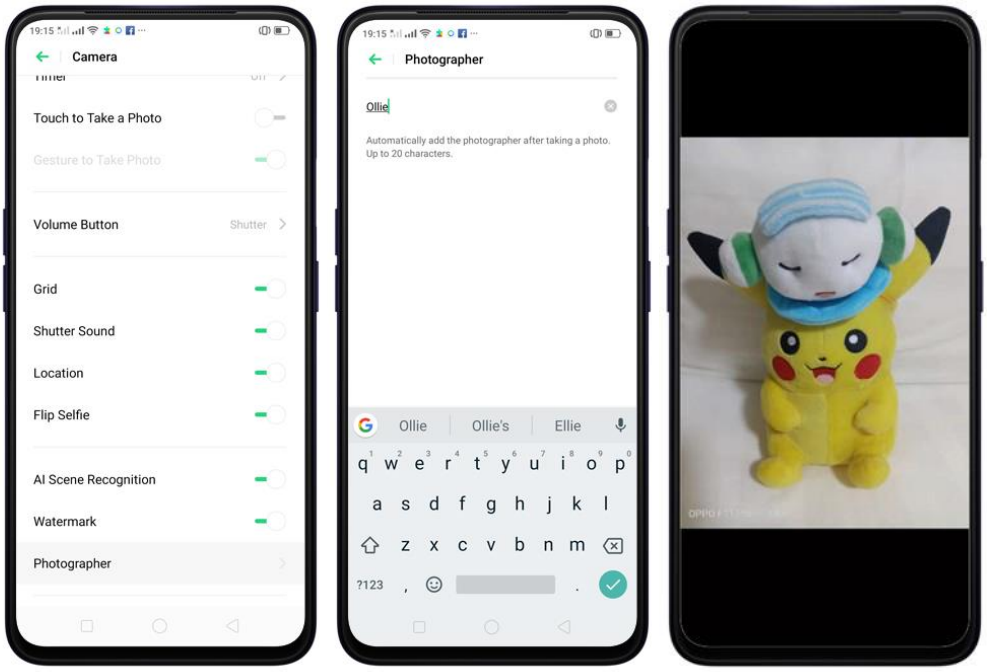
Photo Ratio 4:3 >
Timer Off >
Touch to Take a Photo
Gesture to Take Photo

Volume Button Shutter >

Grid
Shutter Sound
Location
Flip Selfie

AI Scene Recognition
Watermark

Photo Ratio: Set the screen size to Default 4:3, Square 1:1, full screen, 4:3 Ultra HD.
Timer: You can set timer to 3s, 10s, or none.
Touch to take a photo: Makes you take picture by touching the screen.
Gesture to take a photo: This is available for taking selfie only. Just show your palm to take a picture.
Volume button: Set the Volume buttons to function as a volume or zoom controls, or the shutter release. (Note: For Video, volumes up and down can be used to start and stop a recording).
Grid: Display grid lines to ensure the camera is leveled.
Shutter sound: Make or mute camera shutter sound when capturing photos.
Location: Tag your photos with geo-locations.
Flip selfie: Mirror flips your front facing camera photos.
AI Scene Recognition: Automatically recognizes scenes or subjects.
Watermark: Automatically add an OPPO watermark after taking a photo.
Photographer: You can manually add the name of the photographer and will automatically say that it is shot from an OPPO phone.



Camera

Touch to Take a Photo

Gesture to Take Photo

Volume Button — Shutter

Grid

Shutter Sound

Location

Flip Selfie

AI Scene Recognition

Watermark

Photographer

Photographer

Ollie

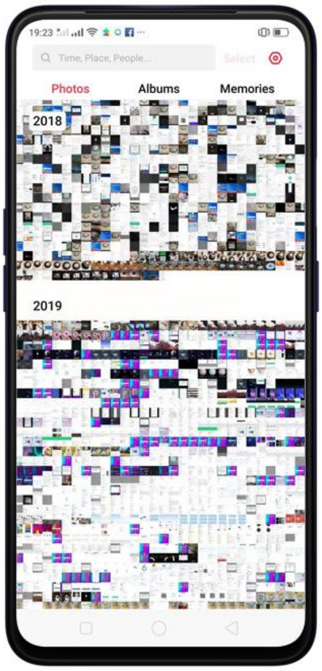
Automatically add the photographer after taking a photo. Up to 20 characters.

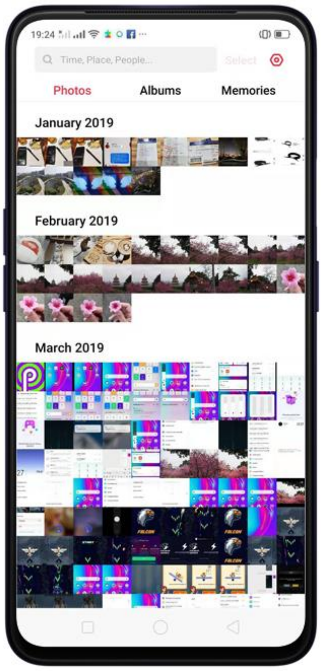
7.10. Photos

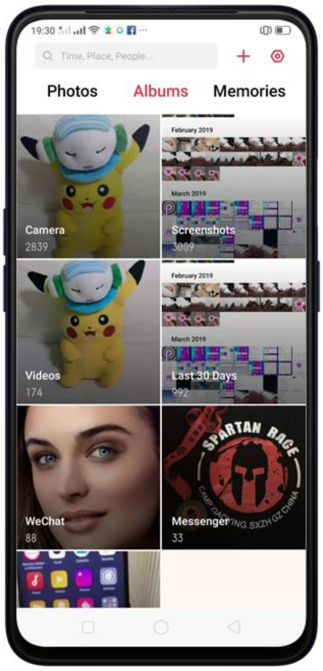
7.10.1. Photos Overview

The Photos app is where you store your photos and videos, including those you've taken with the built-in camera, saved from an app or a webpage, copied from optional storage devices, and more. You can view, share, and edit your photos and videos directly on your phone.

View Photos. You can view the roll of photos in either Camera or Photos. All photos are sorted by the dates and time~~s~~ they were taken. In Photos, select Year or Month view in timeline to quickly lock the look-up scope. Tap an album to view the photos or videos on that album. You can also pinch the screen to zoom in and out


19:23
Time, Place, People...
Select
Photos
Albums
Memories
2018
2019

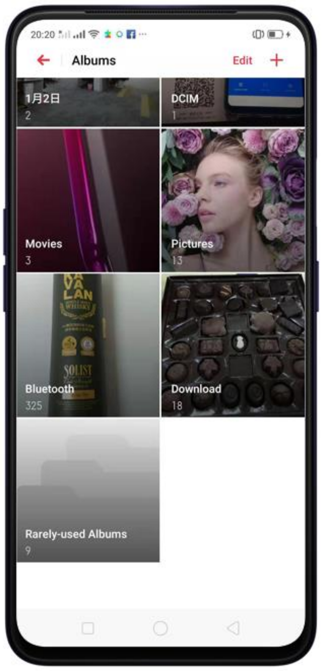

19:24
Time, Place, People...
Select
Photos
Albums
Memories
January 2019
February 2019
March 2019


19:30
Time, Place, People...
Photos
Albums
Memories
Camera
2839
Screenshots
3009
Videos
174
Last 30 Days
992
WeChat
88
Messenger
33

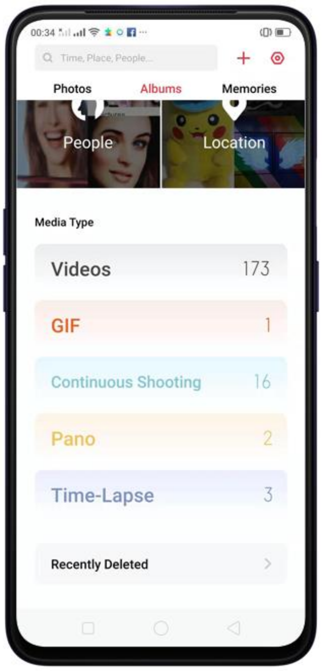
7.10.2. Albums

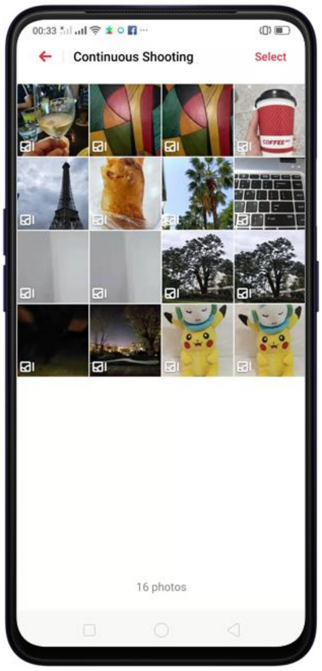
Each time you take a new photo, by default, it gets stored in the Photos album. Within the Photos app, there are a number of default albums into which your photos get automatically organized. In addition to these, you can also create your own albums ~~in~~to which you can organize photos further.

You can see your photo albums by tapping **Albums** at the bottom right of the Photos app.

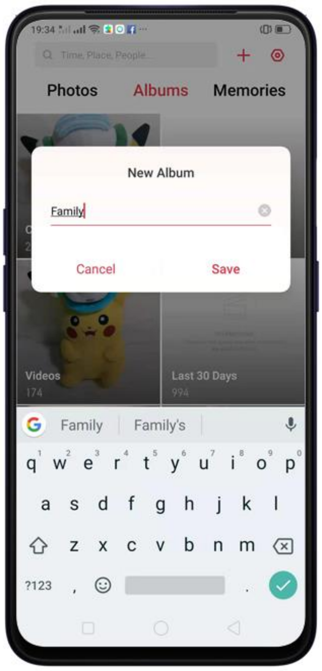

20:20
Albums
Edit
1月2日
2
DCIM
1
Movies
3
Pictures
13
Bluetooth
325
Download
18
Rarely-used Albums
9

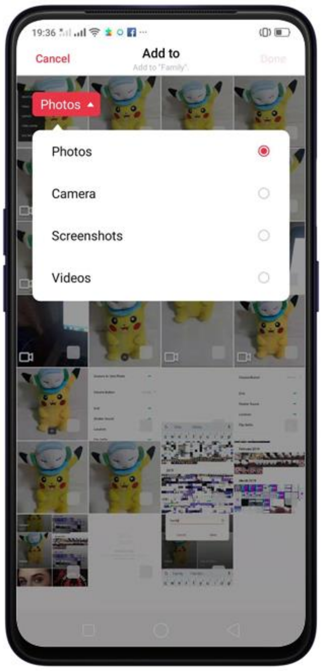
What's new in ColorOS 6.0? If you scroll down at the bottom of the Album page, you will see Media type which categorizes the type of mode when you took the shot. GIF and Recently Deleted have been added too.

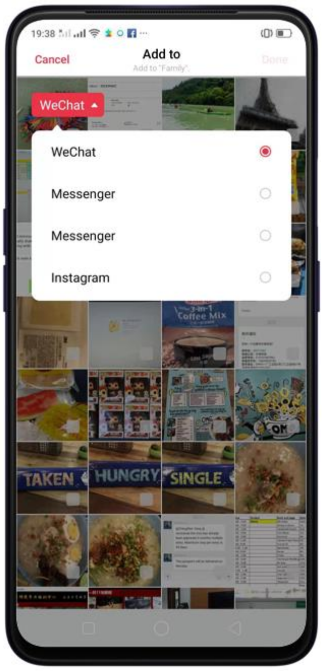

00:34
Time, Place, People...
Photos
Albums
Memories
People
Location
Media Type
Videos 173
GIF 1
Continuous Shooting 16
Pano 2
Time-Lapse 3
Recently Deleted


00:33
Continuous Shooting
Select
16 photos

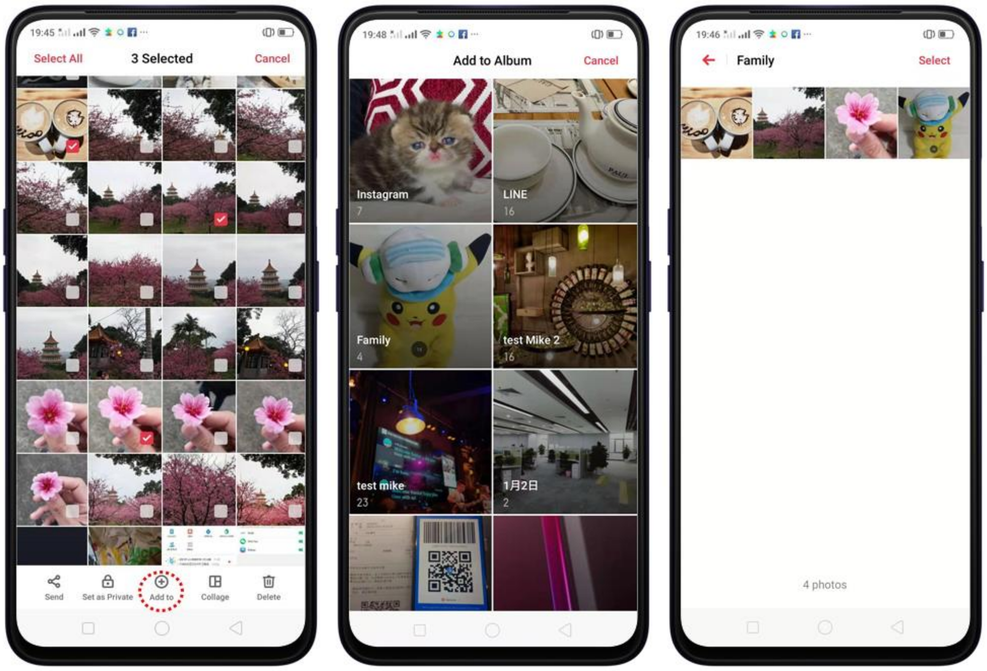
Create a new album. Tap +, enter a name, then tap **Save**. Once saved, you'll be given categories of photos that you can transfer to your album. Just choose the image or tap Select all then tap **Save**.


19:34
Time, Place, People...
Photos
Albums
Memories
New Album
Family
Cancel
Save
Videos
174
Last 30 Days
994
Family
Family's
?123

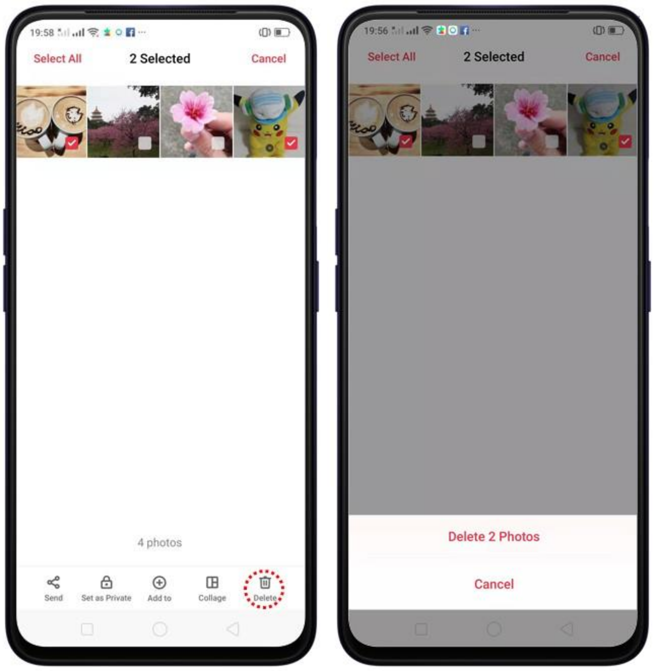

19:36
Cancel
Add to
Add to "Family"
Done
Photos
Photos
Camera
Screenshots
Videos


19:38
Cancel
Add to
Add to "Family"
Done
WeChat
WeChat
Messenger
Messenger
Instagram

Add items to an existing album. While viewing photos, tap **Select**, select items, tap ⊕ Add to, then select an album.


19:45
Select All
3 Selected
Cancel
Send
Set as Private
Add to
Collage
Delete
19:48
Add to Album
Cancel
Instagram
7
LINE
16
Family
4
test Mike 2
16
test mike
23
1月2日
2
19:46
Family
Select
4 photos

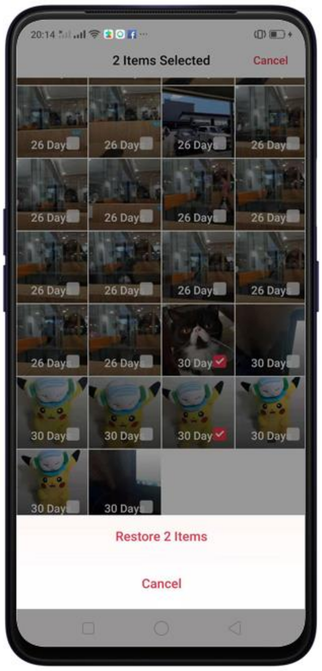
Remove items from an album. From the album screen, tap **Select**, select items, tap Delete , then tap **Delete _ Photos**.


19:58
Select All
2 Selected
Cancel
4 photos
Send
Set as Private
Add to
Collage
Delete
19:56
Select All
2 Selected
Cancel
Delete 2 Photos
Cancel

Delete an album. From the Albums screen, tap **Edit** then tap albums you want to delete, tap 🗑 Delete > **Delete _ Albums**. Default photo albums cannot be deleted.

Delete a photo or video from Photos. Tap a photo or video or tap **Select** or **Select All** then select the photos or videos to be deleted, then tap 🗑 Delete > **Delete _ Items**. . Deleted photos and videos are kept in the Recently Deleted album for 30 days before they're permanently removed.

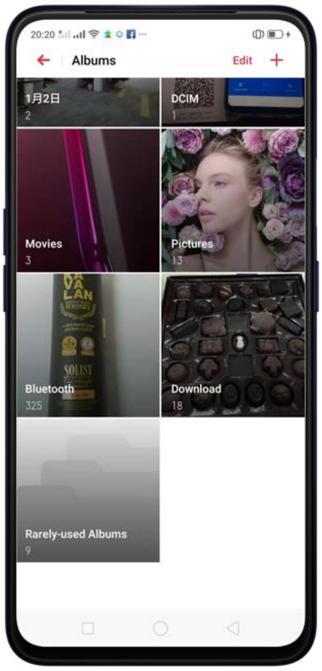
Restore a deleted photo or video. In the Recently Deleted album, tap the photo or video or tap **Edit** to manage the photos then tap **Restore** > **Restore _ Items.**



Smart album search and cleanup. You can search your photo library depending on the date, location, people, and content of the photos on your device. In Phone Manager, you can also clean up photos in batches such as similar and blurry photos. See [Clean Up Storage]

Optimized album management

- In addition to the frequently used social apps, images downloaded from third-party apps will be saved in Rarely-used Album. You can put other images into Rarely-used Album by tapping an image then tap ⊕ Add to > **Set as rarely-used**.



- Your photos will be put into sequential order by modification time. In other words, once an old photo or video has been modified, it will be saved as the latest photo or video.
- Photos downloaded from spam applications will be controlled by phone’s blacklist and will not be displayed in albums.

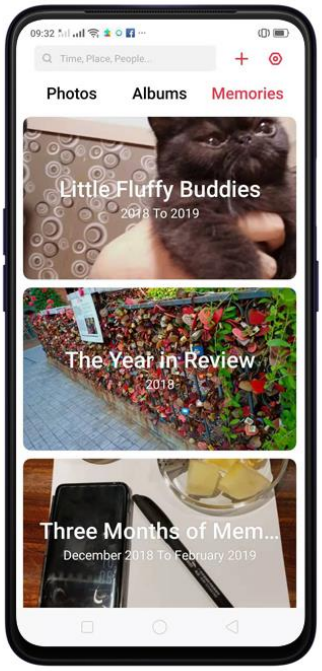
Note: Memories and Stories are terms that can be interchangeably used and doesn't affect the full functionality of the phone.

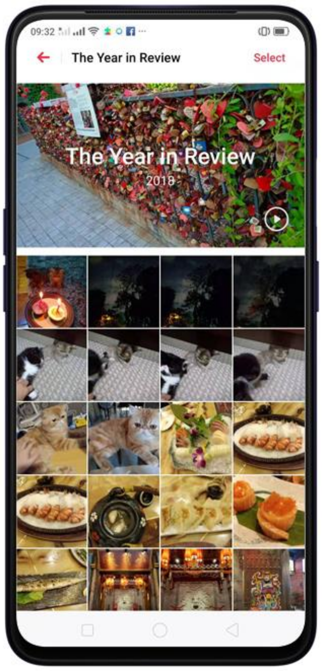
7.10.3. Stories / Memories

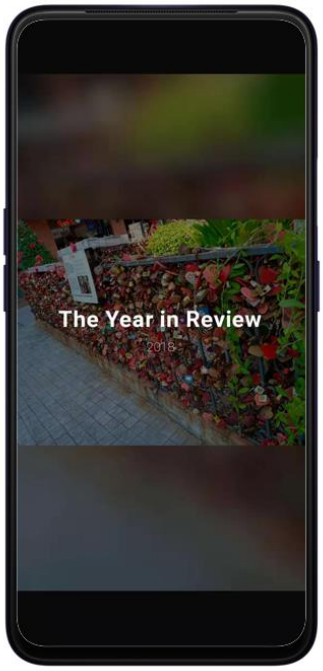
Using the on-device facial recognition and AI detection of what’s on your images, your phone can combine photos into themed mini-movies complete with transitions and a soundtrack. For instance, it will put together an album about your last vacation in Europe, or an album of your kids growing up. You can also edit them and share them with others.

Play a Memory movie. Choose **Memories**, tap a Memory, then tap ▶. The movie will play in landscape mode by default. To pause, tap the movie, then tap II.

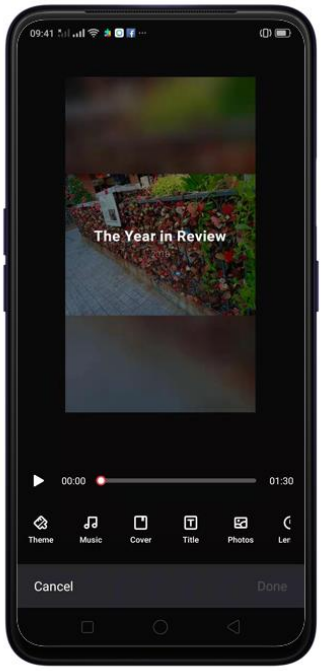
Note: Your phone categorizes your photos weekly while your phone is plugged and locked.


09:32
Time, Place, People...
Photos
Albums
Memories
Little Fluffy Buddies
2018 To 2019
The Year in Review
2018
Three Months of Mem...
December 2018 To February 2019


09:32
The Year in Review
Select
The Year in Review
2018

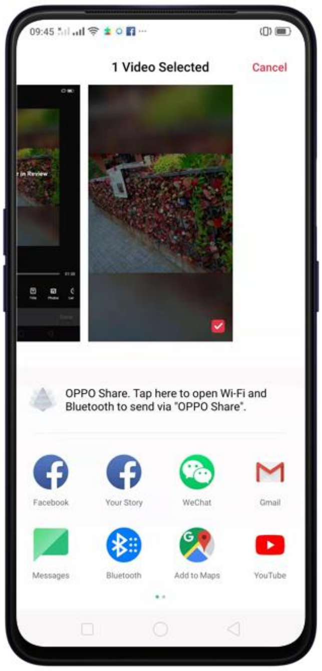

The Year in Review
2018

Customize a Memory movie. Tap a memory, while it's playing, then tap Edit to do the following:


09:41
The Year in Review
00:00
01:30
Theme
Music
Cover
Title
Photos
Len
Cancel
Done

- **Change the theme**: Tap Theme, then tap a theme or swipe the themes left or right to pick a new one, such as Joyful, Cozy, and more. For each theme, there is a music of the Memory movie.

- **Choose different music**: Tap Music, then swipe the music left or right to pick a new one. You can also use your local and saved music.
- **Choose a cover**: Tap Cover, then tap the photo you want to use.
- **Edit the title**: Tap Title, edit the title, then tap Save.
- **Choose or delete photos**: Tap Photos, tap +, then select the photos you want in the movie. Tap 🗑 to remove the photos from the movie.
- **Change the movie length**: Tap Length, then scroll the wheels to change the length.
- **Share a Memory movie**. Tap a Memory while it's playing then tap ⋖ then tap Send.


1 Video Selected

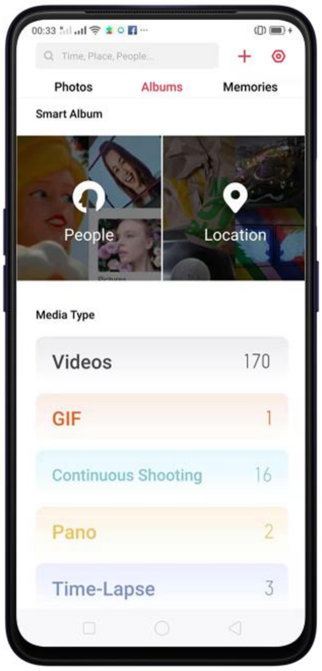
OPPO Share. Tap here to open Wi-Fi and Bluetooth to send via "OPPO Share".

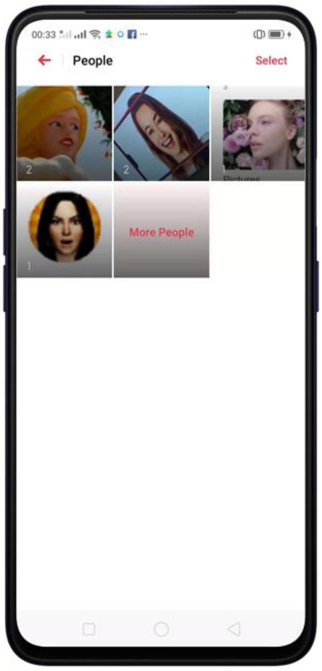
Note: Memories and Stories are terms that can be interchangeably used and don't affect the full functionality of the feature.

7.10.4. People

In the Photos app, there's an album called "People." It uses facial technology to identify the people in the pictures or those with combine identifications, then group pictures of the same people together. You can name or rename a People album, hide People albums, merge People albums into one, and more.

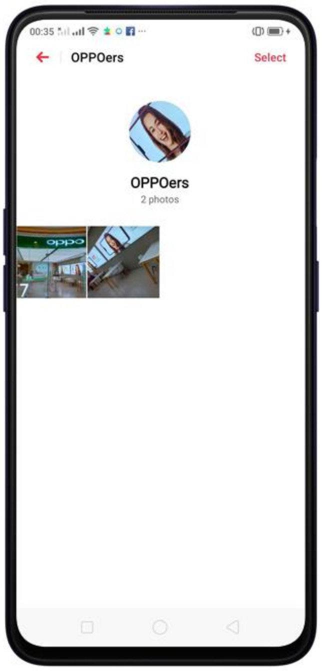
Note: Your phone generates People album while your phone is plugged and locked.

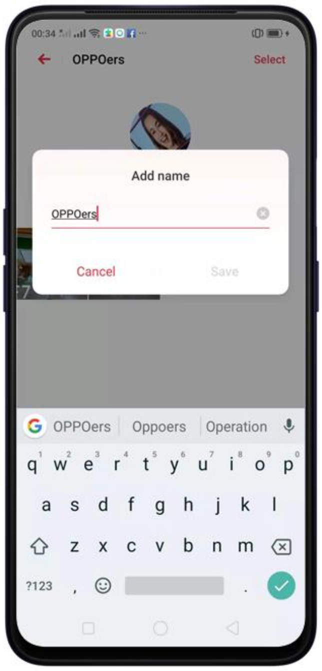

Time, Place, People...
Photos
Albums
Memories
Smart Album
People
Location
Media Type
Videos 170
GIF 1
Continuous Shooting 16
Pano 2
Time-Lapse 3


People
Select
More People

Name or rename a People album

If a profile is unnamed, tap the People album, tap "**Add Name**", then type in the name you want to use and tap **Save**.
If a profile has a wrong name, tap the People album, tap the name, then type in the name you want to use and tap **Save**.


OPPOers
Select
OPPOers
2 photos


OPPOers
Select
Add name
OPPOers
Cancel
Save
OPPOers
Oppoers
Operation

Add photos to a People album

Tap a People album, tap **More People**, and select the photos you want to be added on the album, then tap **Display.**

Hide, display, and merge People albums

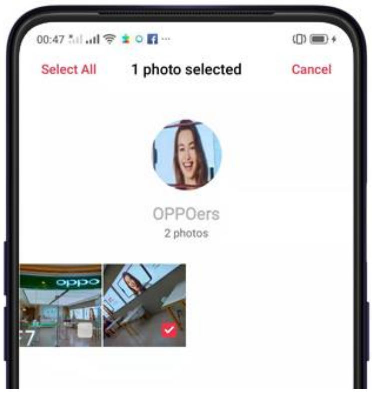
Hide People albums. Open the People albums, then **Select** > **Hide**. The hidden albums are collected in **More People**.
Display People albums. To display the hidden albums, tap **More People**, tap Select and choose the people you want to display, then tap **Display**.
Merge People albums into one. Tap **Select**, select at least two People albums, and then tap **Merge**.

Remove misidentified photos from an album

Tap an album you want to remove photos from, tap **Select**, select the misidentified photos, and then tap **Wrong Person**. The photos will be moved to **More People**.

Set a cover of the People album

Tap an Album, tap the portrait, then choose the photo you want as the cover.



Note: Memories and Stories are terms that can be interchangeably used and doesn't affect the full functionality of the phone.

7.10.5. View and use photos and videos

View your photos and videos. Tap Photos, and then tap a photo or video. Tap ▶ to play a video. Or tap Camera, and then tap the thumbnail on the lower-left corner of the screen.

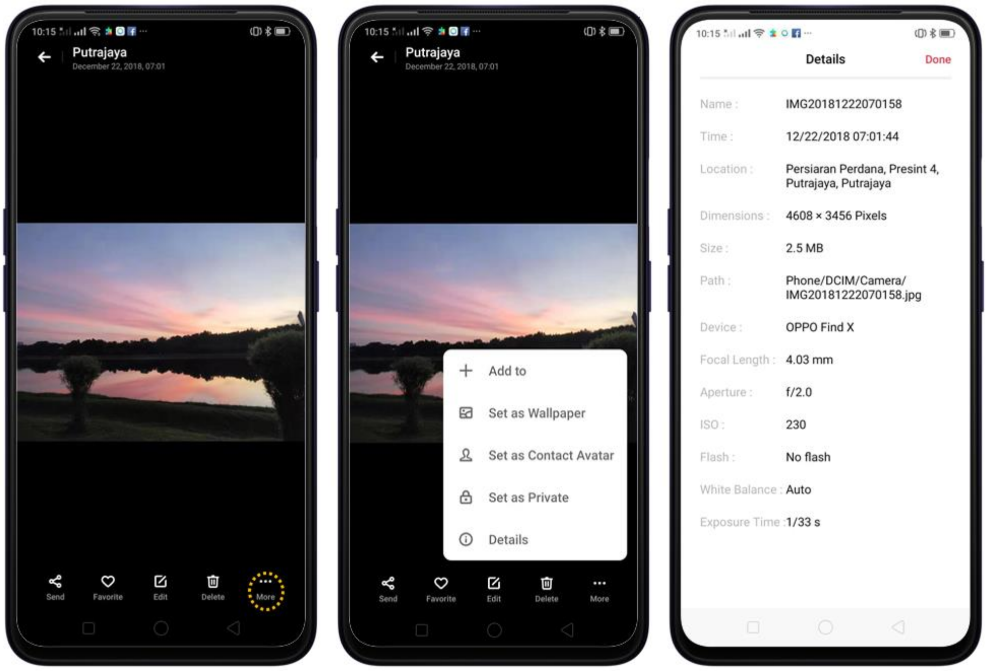
View a photo at full screen. Tap a photo, and then tap the screen to hide the controls.

View the next or previous photo. Flick left or right.

View a photo in landscape orientation. On Control center, turn [**Portrait Orientation]** off, then rotate your phone sideways. The photo automatically reorients and, if it's in landscape format, expands to fit the screen.

Zoom in or out. Double-tap or pinch a photo to open or closed. Drag to see other parts of the photo.

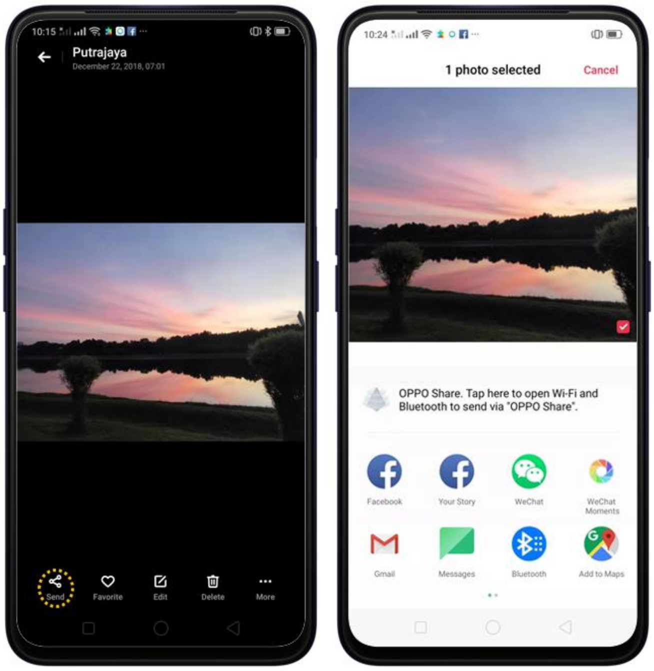
See photo and video details. Tap a photo or video, tap More and choose **Details**.


10:15
Putrajaya
December 22, 2018, 07:01
Send
Favorite
Edit
Delete
More
Add to
Set as Wallpaper
Set as Contact Avatar
Set as Private
Details
Done

Details

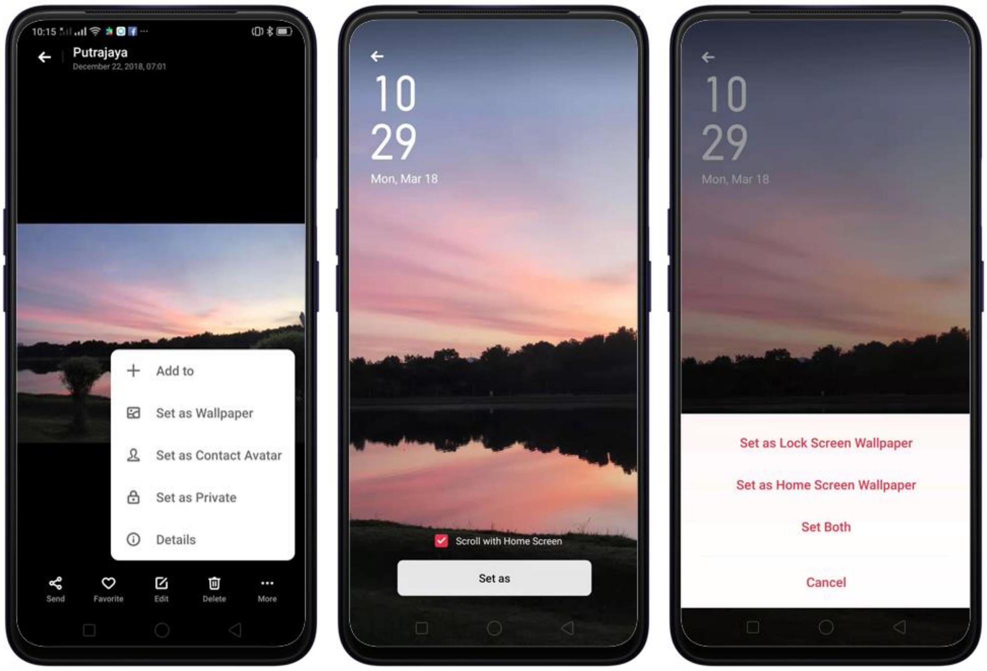
Name : IMG20181222070158
Time : 12/22/2018 07:01:44
Location : Persiaran Perdana, Presint 4, Putrajaya, Putrajaya
Dimensions : 4608 × 3456 Pixels
Size : 2.5 MB
Path : Phone/DCIM/Camera/IMG20181222070158.jpg
Device : OPPO Find X
Focal Length : 4.03 mm
Aperture : f/2.0
ISO : 230
Flash : No flash
White Balance : Auto
Exposure Time : 1/33 s

Send a photo or video. Tap Send, and then choose where to send your photo or video.

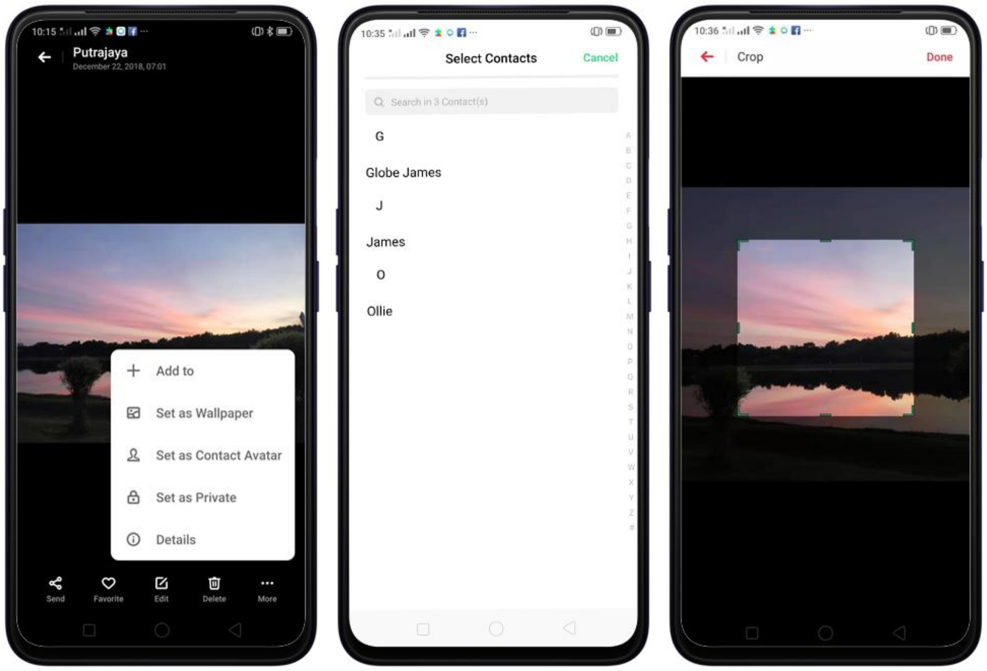

10:15
Putrajaya
December 22, 2018, 07:01
Send
Favorite
Edit
Delete
More
10:24
1 photo selected
Cancel
Facebook
Your Story
WeChat
WeChat Moments
Gmail
Messages
Bluetooth
Add to Maps

OPPO Share. Tap here to open Wi-Fi and Bluetooth to send via "OPPO Share".

Use a photo as wallpaper. Tap a photo, tap ••• More and choose **Set as Wallpaper**. Drag the photo to pan, or pinch the photo to zoom in or out, until it looks the way you want. You can also tap scroll with Home Screen so your wallpaper will move the way you navigate your screen. Tap **Set as** to set the wallpaper as your Home Screen or Lock Screen or Both.

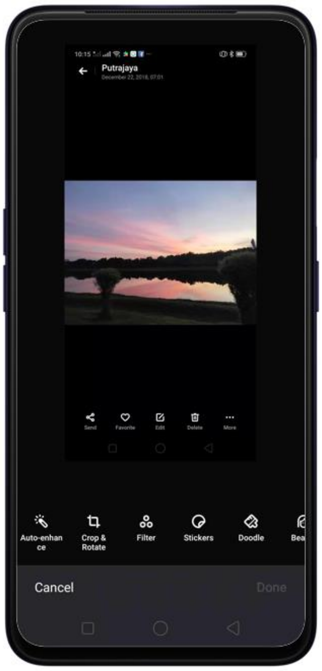

10:15
Putrajaya
December 22, 2018, 07:01
Add to
Set as Wallpaper
Set as Contact Avatar
Set as Private
Details
Send
Favorite
Edit
Delete
More
10
29
Mon, Mar 18
☑ Scroll with Home Screen
Set as
10
29
Mon, Mar 18
Set as Lock Screen Wallpaper
Set as Home Screen Wallpaper
Set Both
Cancel

Assign a photo to a contact. Tap a photo, tap More and choose **Set as Contact Avatar**, select a contact, crop the photo, and then tap **Done**.


10:15
Putrajaya
December 22, 2018, 07:01
Add to
Set as Wallpaper
Set as Contact Avatar
Set as Private
Details
Send
Favorite
Edit
Delete
More
10:35
Select Contacts
Cancel
Search in 3 Contact(s)
G
Globe James
J
James
O
Ollie
10:36
Crop
Done

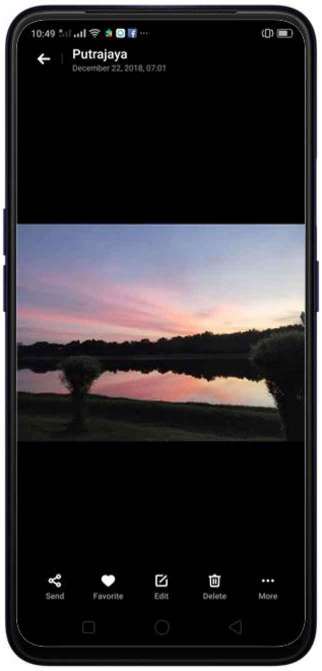
Add a photo or video to an existing album. Tap a photo, tap More and choose **Add to.**

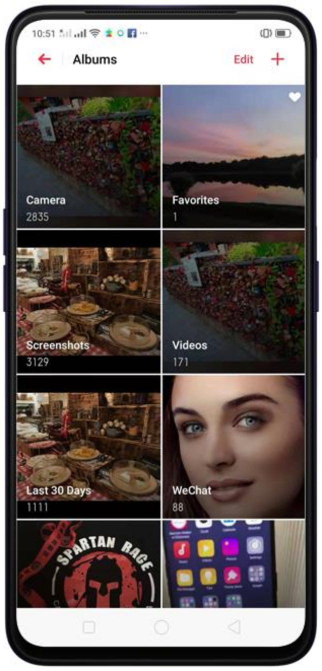
Edit the photo. Choose an image then tap Edit . You can edit your photos using a set of professional editing tools, including cropping, adding text, stickers and filters, and more. See Edit photos and videos.


Putrajaya
December 22, 2018, 07:01
Send
Favorite
Edit
Delete
More
Auto-enhance
Crop & Rotate
Filter
Stickers
Doodle
Bea
Cancel
Done

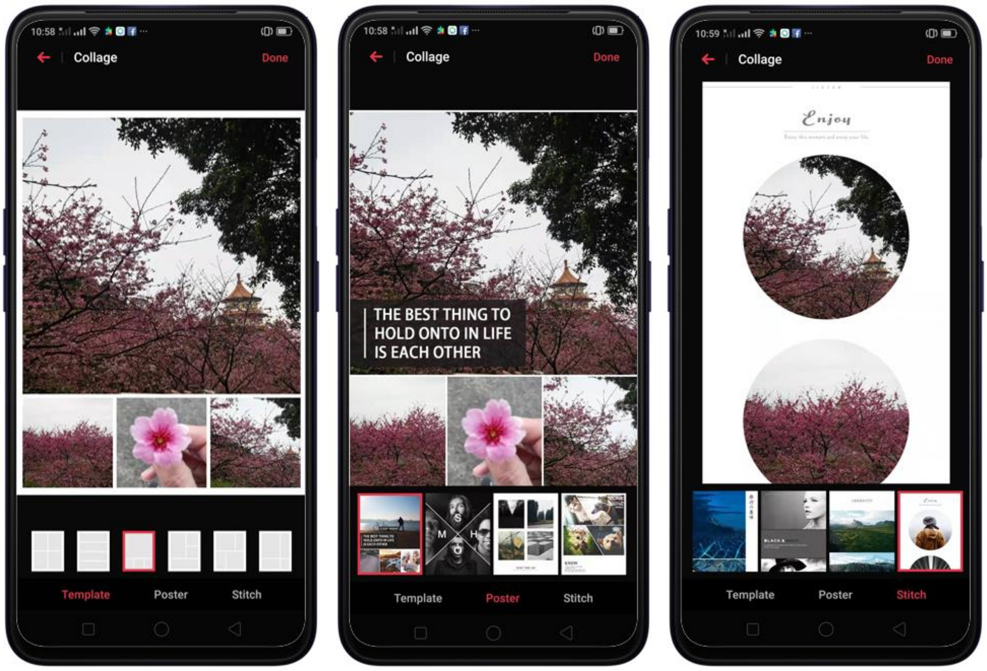
Delete a photo or video. Tap 🗑 Delete.

Add a favorite photo. Tap ♡ Favorite so the photo will be added to the **Favorites Album**.


10:49
Putrajaya
December 22, 2018, 07:01
Send
Favorite
Edit
Delete
More


10:51
Albums
Edit
Camera
2835
Favorites
1
Screenshots
3129
Videos
171
Last 30 Days
1111
WeChat
88

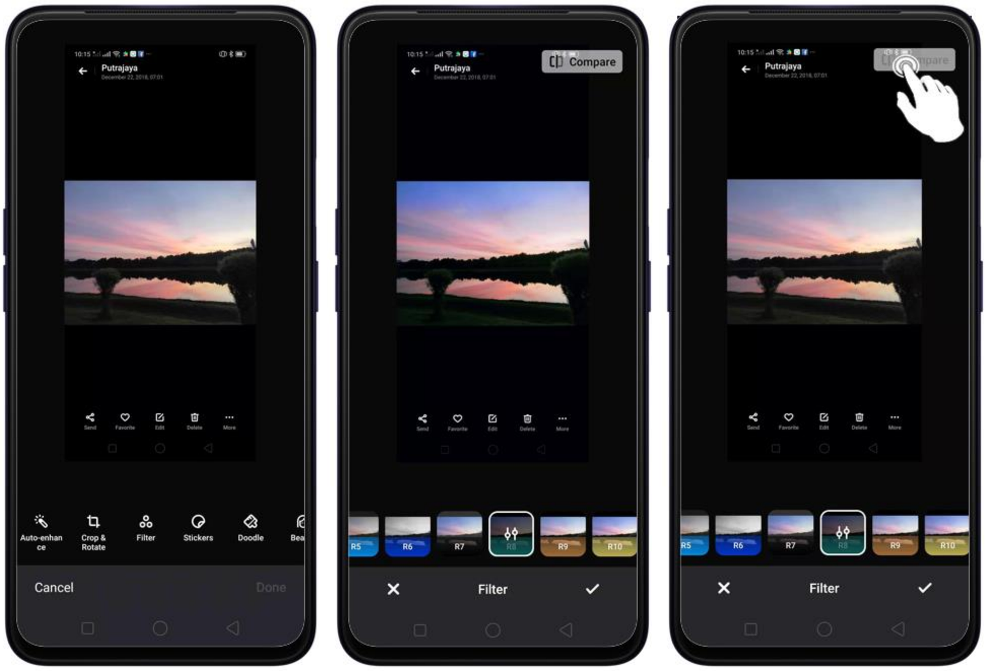
Combine the photos. From the Photos screen, tap **Select**, select photos, then tap **Collage**. Choose a type of collage: **Template**, **Poster**, or **Stitch**.


10:58
Collage
Done
THE BEST THING TO HOLD ONTO IN LIFE IS EACH OTHER
10:59
Enjoy
Template
Poster
Stitch

7.10.6. Edit photos and videos

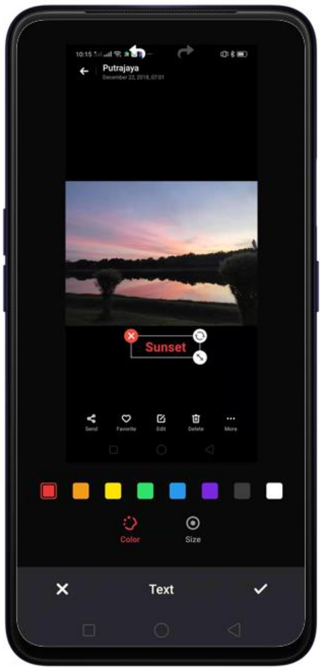
You can edit your photos and videos on the Photos app directly using a set of professional editing tools, including cropping, adding text and filters, and more.

Edit a photo. Open the Photos app and view the photo full screen, tap Edit, then tap a tool. Tap Compare to view changes. When you're finished, tap Done.


10:15
Putrajaya
Send
Favorite
Edit
Delete
More
Auto-enhance
Crop & Rotate
Filter
Stickers
Doodle
Cancel
Done
Compare
R5
R6
R7
R8
R9
R10
Filter

Editing a photo

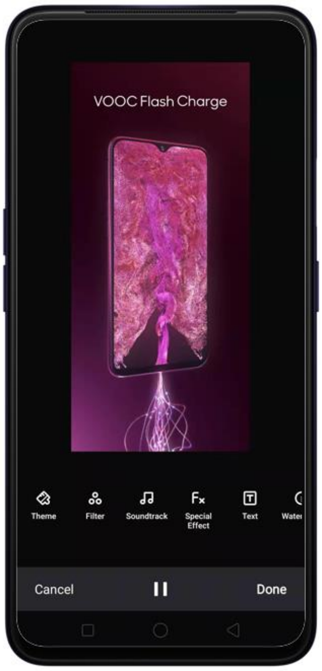
- Auto Enhance: Enhances the photo's light levels, contrast, saturation, color temperature, and other qualities to make the photo more visually balanced.
- Crop and rotate: To crop the photo, tap and drag a corner or side of the photo, or tap Ratio and apply a preset aspect ratio to the photo, such as 1:1 or 9:16. To rotate the photo, move the wheel to your desired angle, or tap Rotate to rotate the photo 90 degrees. Tap Undo to reset these changes.
- Filter: Add a color filter to the photo, such as R1, R2, R3, and so on.
- Stickers: Add funny and cute stickers on the photo.
- Doodle: Write or draw on the photo. You can adjust colors and thickness of your handwriting.
- Beauty: Tap One-tap to Beautify to automatically improve both the appearance and the shape of your face. You can choose from 6 beauty levels. To beautify part of the face, choose a tool and make adjustments to the face, such as whiten skin, remove unwanted blemishes, enlarge eyes, and more.
- Text: Tap the photo to add the text. You can adjust colors and thickness of your text. Tap and drag the text to move its position; tap and drag ⤡ to adjust the font size; tap and drag ↻ to rotate the text; tap ⓧ to delete the text.



- Adjust: Manually adjust the photo's brightness, contrast, saturation, and color temperature.
- Mosaic: Pixelate part of the photo. You can change the pattern and thickness of the mosaic.
- Blur: Set the blur effect over the photo with circle or straight lines. The area within the circle or lines represents the non-blur part. Tap the screen and drag the circle or the lines to select where to blur. Drag the slider to left or right to adjust the blur Intensity.
- Eraser pen: Erase people, watermarks, and any unwanted objects that’s on your photo.

Editing a video

Edit a video. Open the Photos app, tap the video, tap Edit, tap a tool. When you’re finished, tap Done.



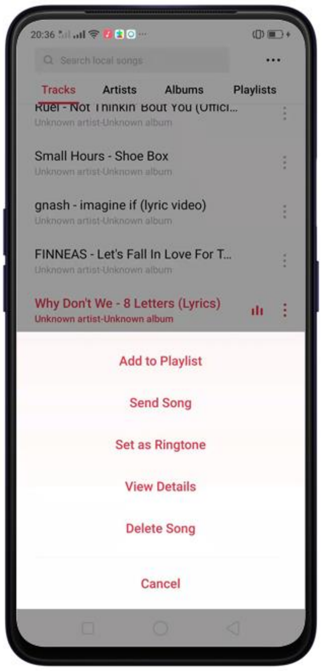
- **Speed of the video. Choose what speed you would like the video to play. The slowest is 0.25X and fastest is at 2X. The normal one is 1X.**
- **Theme of the video: You can choose from None, Old Days, Lens, Memory, Tasty Food/Delicacy, Joy, Travel, and Simplicity.**
- **Filter Video: Add a color filter to the video, such as C1, C2, C3 and so on.**
- **Soundtrack: Add a soundtrack to the video. You can also use your local and saved music. Tap 🔈 to turn off the original sound of the video.**
- **Fx Special Effect. You can choose from None, Close-up, and Pulsation.**
- **Text: Tap T+ to add overlay text on the video. Tap and drag the text to move its position. Drag the frame viewer to control when the text showed up.**
- **Watermark: Add a watermark with the location and date of the video. If the video doesn't contain the details of location and date, you cannot add the watermark.**

7.11. Music

7.11.1. Music

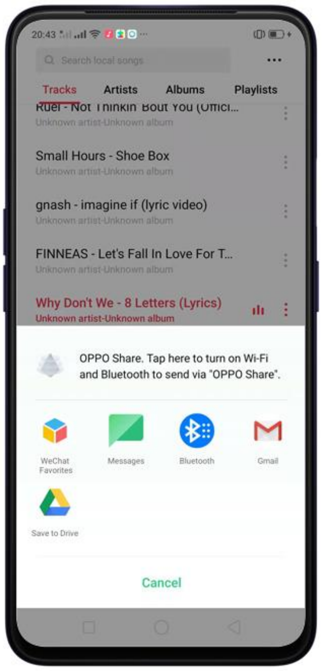
Use the Music app to enjoy songs stored on your phone. You can also create playlists, set songs as ringtones for incoming calls, and more.

To see what you can do with your music, tap ⋮ on the right side of the song title.

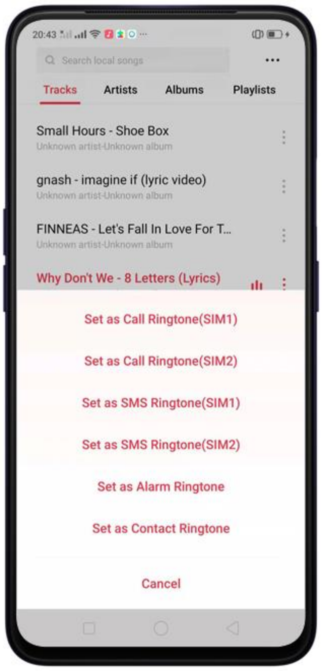

20:36
Search local songs
Tracks
Artists
Albums
Playlists
Ruel - Not Thinkin Bout You (Offici...
Unknown artist-Unknown album
Small Hours - Shoe Box
Unknown artist-Unknown album
gnash - imagine if (lyric video)
Unknown artist-Unknown album
FINNEAS - Let's Fall In Love For T...
Unknown artist-Unknown album
Why Don't We - 8 Letters (Lyrics)
Unknown artist-Unknown album
Add to Playlist
Send Song
Set as Ringtone
View Details
Delete Song
Cancel

Add to playlist. Add a song to an existing playlist. You can also create a new playlist.

Send a song. You can share a song with your friends using multiple ways.


20:43
Search local songs
Tracks
Artists
Albums
Playlists
Ruel - Not Thinkin Bout You (Offici...
Unknown artist-Unknown album
Small Hours - Shoe Box
Unknown artist-Unknown album
gnash - imagine if (lyric video)
Unknown artist-Unknown album
FINNEAS - Let's Fall In Love For T...
Unknown artist-Unknown album
Why Don't We - 8 Letters (Lyrics)
Unknown artist-Unknown album
OPPO Share. Tap here to turn on Wi-Fi and Bluetooth to send via "OPPO Share".
WeChat Favorites
Messages
Bluetooth
Gmail
Save to Drive
Cancel

Set as ringtone. You can set a song as a ringtone for all incoming calls and messages, or for a contact. You can also set a song as an alarm tone.


20:43
Search local songs
Tracks
Artists
Albums
Playlists
Small Hours - Shoe Box
Unknown artist-Unknown album
gnash - imagine if (lyric video)
Unknown artist-Unknown album
FINNEAS - Let's Fall In Love For T...
Unknown artist-Unknown album
Why Don't We - 8 Letters (Lyrics)
Set as Call Ringtone(SIM1)
Set as Call Ringtone(SIM2)
Set as SMS Ringtone(SIM1)
Set as SMS Ringtone(SIM2)
Set as Alarm Ringtone
Set as Contact Ringtone
Cancel

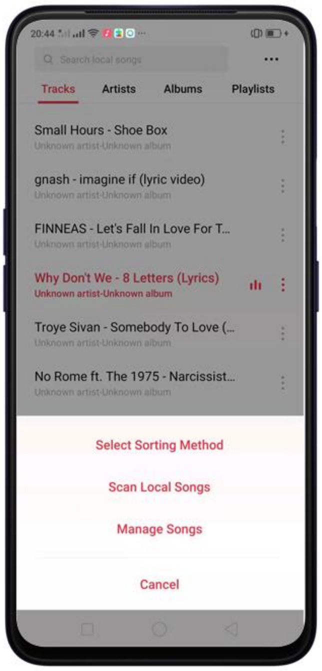
View details. Tap to view the name, artist, album, format, size**,** and storage location of a song.

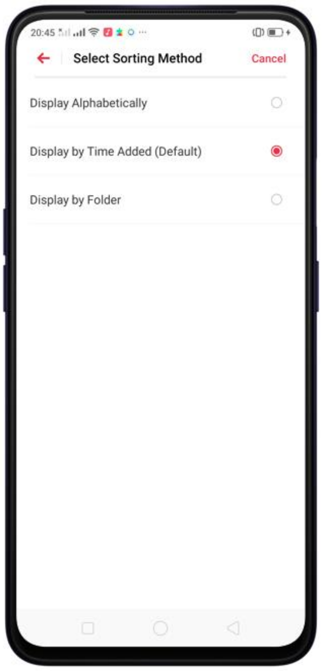
Delete song. Remove the song from the playlists and your phone storage.

7.11.2. Change sort mode

By sorting your playlist, you can easily order the songs on your phone.

Change the order of your songs. From the Music screen, tap a song, tap ••• in the upper-right corner of the screen, and then tap **Select Sorting Method**. Your songs can be sorted alphabetically, by time when the song is added, or by folders the songs are in.


20:44
Search local songs
•••
Tracks
Artists
Albums
Playlists
Small Hours - Shoe Box
Unknown artist-Unknown album
gnash - imagine if (lyric video)
Unknown artist-Unknown album
FINNEAS - Let's Fall In Love For T...
Unknown artist-Unknown album
Why Don't We - 8 Letters (Lyrics)
Unknown artist-Unknown album
Troye Sivan - Somebody To Love (...
Unknown artist-Unknown album
No Rome ft. The 1975 - Narcissist...
Unknown artist-Unknown album
Select Sorting Method
Scan Local Songs
Manage Songs
Cancel


20:45
Select Sorting Method
Cancel

Display Alphabetically ○
Display by Time Added (Default) ●
Display by Folder ○

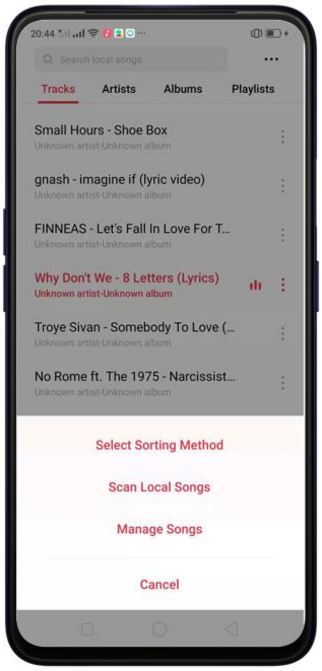
7.11.3. Scan local songs

The Music app contains all music-related materials on your phone storage. To manually scan for local songs, or choose which songs can be displayed on your list, do the following:

Scan all local songs. Tap ••• on the upper-right corner of the Music screen, then tap **Scan Local Songs**. Your phone will automatically start scanning.

Scan specific folders. Tap **Scan specific folders**, and then choose the folders you want the phone to scan for. Go back to the Scan Local Songs screen, and then tap **Scan again**.

Filter audio files. To filter tracks that are too short (under 60 seconds) and too small (under 100KB), toggle the sliders to orange.


20:44
Search local songs
Tracks
Artists
Albums
Playlists

Small Hours - Shoe Box
Unknown artist-Unknown album

gnash - imagine if (lyric video)
Unknown artist-Unknown album

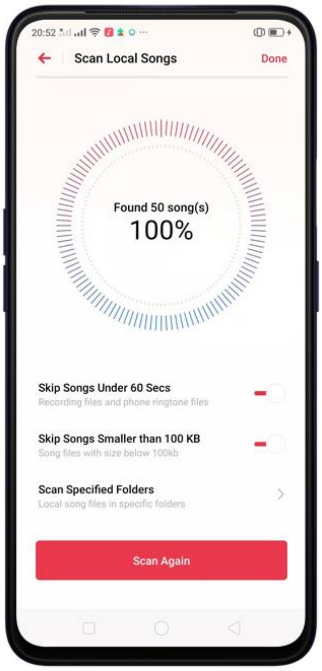
FINNEAS - Let's Fall In Love For T...
Unknown artist-Unknown album

Why Don't We - 8 Letters (Lyrics)
Unknown artist-Unknown album

Troye Sivan - Somebody To Love (...
Unknown artist-Unknown album

No Rome ft. The 1975 - Narcissist...
Unknown artist-Unknown album

Select Sorting Method
Scan Local Songs
Manage Songs
Cancel


20:52
Scan Local Songs
Done

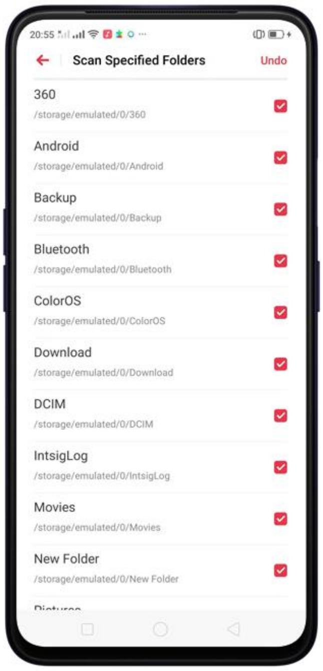
Found 50 song(s)
100%

Skip Songs Under 60 Secs
Recording files and phone ringtone files

Skip Songs Smaller than 100 KB
Song files with size below 100kb

Scan Specified Folders
Local song files in specific folders

Scan Again


20:55
Scan Specified Folders
Undo

360 ☑
/storage/emulated/0/360

Android ☑
/storage/emulated/0/Android

Backup ☑
/storage/emulated/0/Backup

Bluetooth ☑
/storage/emulated/0/Bluetooth

ColorOS ☑
/storage/emulated/0/ColorOS

Download ☑
/storage/emulated/0/Download

DCIM ☑
/storage/emulated/0/DCIM

IntsigLog ☑
/storage/emulated/0/IntsigLog

Movies ☑
/storage/emulated/0/Movies

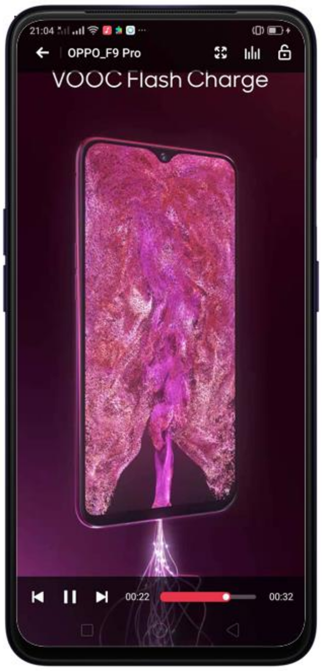
New Folder ☑
/storage/emulated/0/New Folder

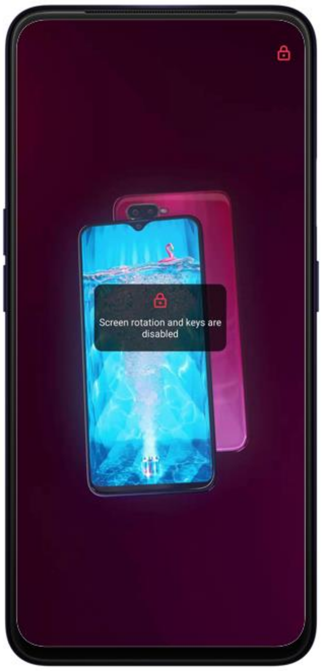
7.12. Videos

Use Videos to watch videos you've downloaded or taken with the built-in camera.

Play a video. Tap Videos on the Home Screen, then tap the video.

Control video playback. Tap the screen to show or hide the controls.

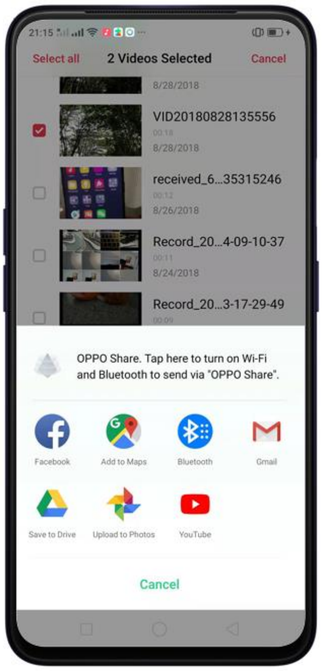

21:04
OPPO_F9 Pro
VOOC Flash Charge
00:22
00:32


Screen rotation and keys are disabled

TO	DO THIS
Play or pause a video	Tap ▶ or ⏸.
Raise or lower the volume	Tap the volume buttons on the side of the phone, or swipe your finger up or down on the right side of the screen.
Increase or dim the brightness	Swipe your finger up or down on the left side of the screen.
Skip to the next or previous video	Tap ⏭ or ⏮.
Rewind or fast-forward	Swipe your finger left or right on the screen.
Start a video over	Tap ⏮ twice quickly.
Skip to any point in the video	Drag the play head left or right.
Lock the screen rotation and disable bottom keys	Tap 🔓.
Play audio only and no image.	Tap ▥.
Play on full screen.	Tap ⛶.

Sort videos. From the video screen, tap ☰ and choose to sort by name, added date, or duration.

Send videos. From the Videos screen, tap **Select**, choose videos, tap ⋖ Send, then choose an option for sending the video.


21:15
Select all
2 Videos Selected
Cancel
8/28/2018
VID20180828135556
00:18
8/28/2018
received_6...35315246
00:12
8/26/2018
Record_20...4-09-10-37
00:11
8/24/2018
Record_20...3-17-29-49
00:09
Facebook
Add to Maps
Bluetooth
Gmail
Save to Drive
Upload to Photos
YouTube
Cancel

OPPO Share. Tap here to turn on Wi-Fi and Bluetooth to send via "OPPO Share".

Rename a video. Tap **Select**, choose a video, and then tap **Rename**. Enter the name, then tap **Save**.

See details about a video. Tap **Select**, choose a video, and then tap **Details**.

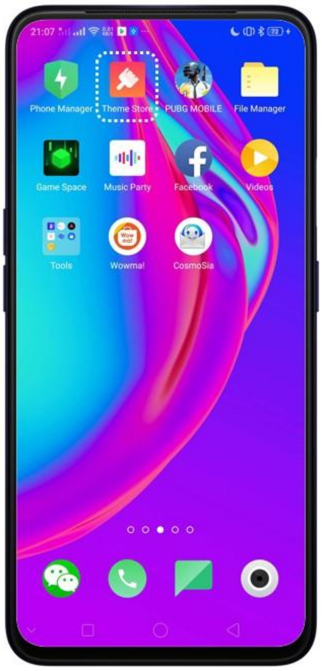
Edit a video. Tap **Select**, choose a video, and then tap **Edit**. See Edit photos and videos.

Delete videos. Tap **Select**, choose videos, tap 🗑 Delete, and then tap **Delete Video**.

7.13. Theme Store

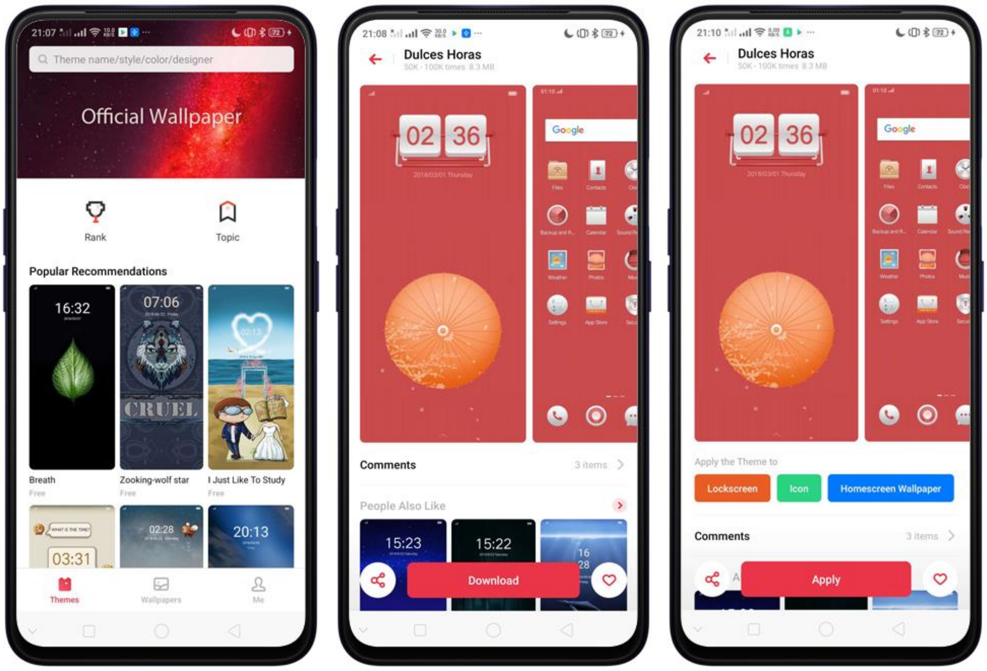
7.13.1. Online phone theme

A phone theme refers to the general look and feel of the phone's user interface. It changes color schemes for background images, icons, and more. The entire phone's functions will not be affected.


Phone Manager
Theme Store
PUBG MOBILE
File Manager
Game Space
Music Party
Facebook
Videos
Tools
Wowma!
CosmoSia

Change the phone theme. Tap Theme Store app on the Home Screen, then tap **Themes**. Tap your desired theme, then tap **Download**. Choose to apply the theme you've downloaded to the Home Screen, Lock Screen, or Home Screen icons, then tap **Apply** and wait a few seconds for the changes to apply.

Tip: Your phone will suggest similar themes based on the ones you've viewed or downloaded.


Theme name/style/color/designer
Official Wallpaper
Rank
Topic
Popular Recommendations
Breath
Zooking-wolf star
I Just Like To Study
Themes
Wallpapers
Me
Dulces Horas
Comments
People Also Like
Download
Dulces Horas
Apply the Theme to
Lockscreen
Icon
Homescreen Wallpaper
Comments
Apply

Search a theme. Tap the search bar on the top of the screen, enter the theme name, and then tap **Search**.

7.13.2. Online wallpaper

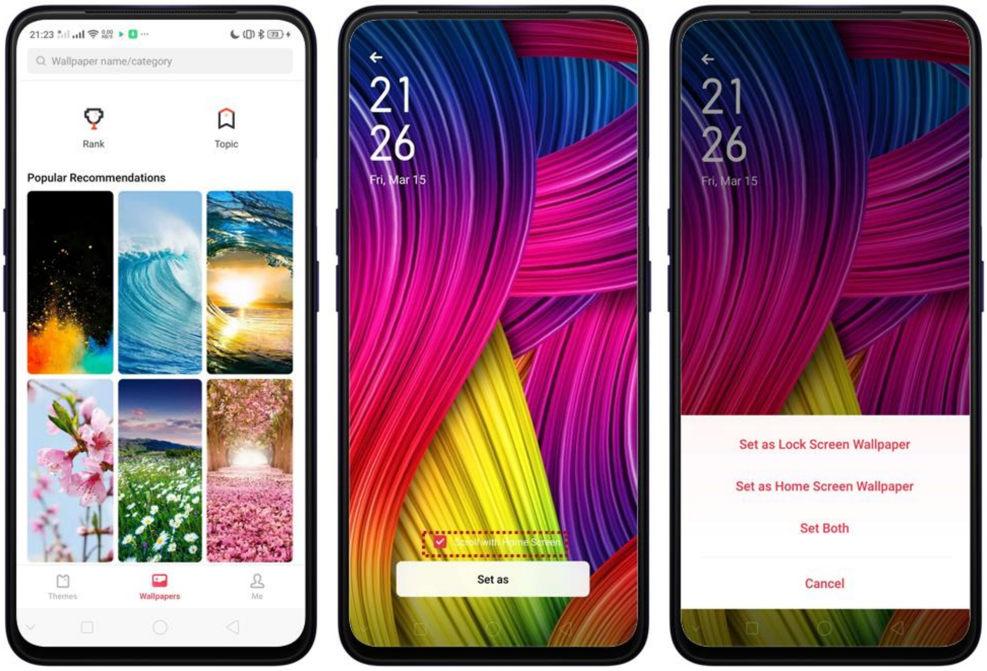
In addition to using your photos as wallpaper, you can get some more wallpaper online from Theme Store.

Change the wallpaper. Tap Theme Store on the Home Screen, then tap **Wallpapers**. Tap your desired wallpaper, tap **Download**, and then tap **Apply**.

Drag to move the image or pinch to zoom in and out, so the image fits the screen.

Tap **Set as** to set the wallpaper as your Home Screen, Lock Screen or set as both.

Note: You can tick the tiny box if you want the wallpaper to scroll with the Home Screen.

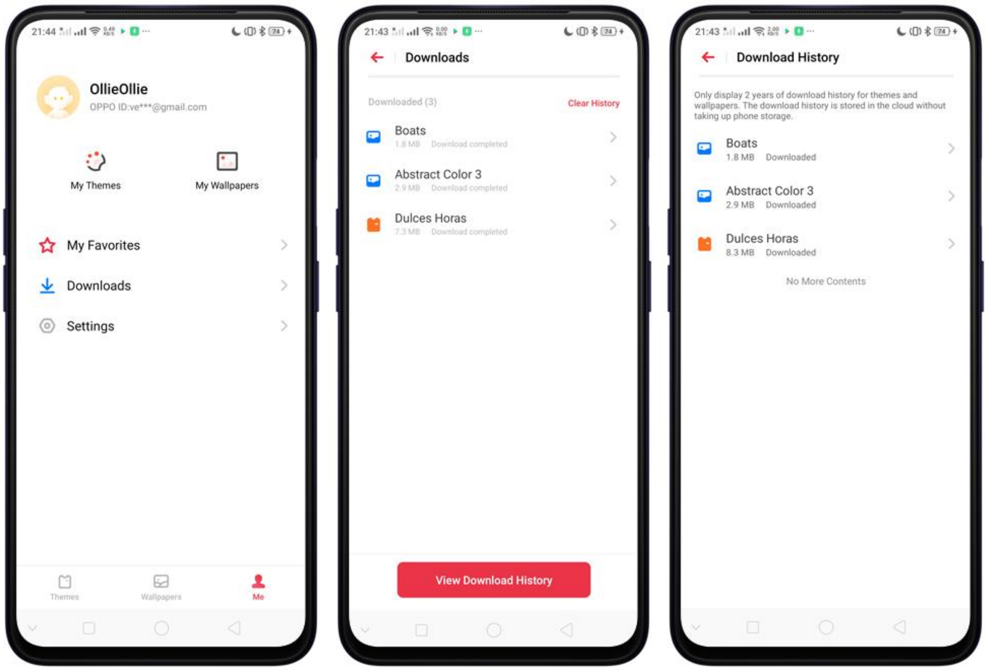

21:23
Wallpaper name/category
Rank
Topic
Popular Recommendations
Themes
Wallpapers
Me
21
26
Fri, Mar 15
Scroll with Home Screen
Set as
21
26
Fri, Mar 15
Set as Lock Screen Wallpaper
Set as Home Screen Wallpaper
Set Both
Cancel

Search a wallpaper. Tap the search bar on the top of the screen, enter the wallpaper name, and then tap Search.

7.13.3. Manage your downloads

You can view and delete your downloaded themes and wallpapers.

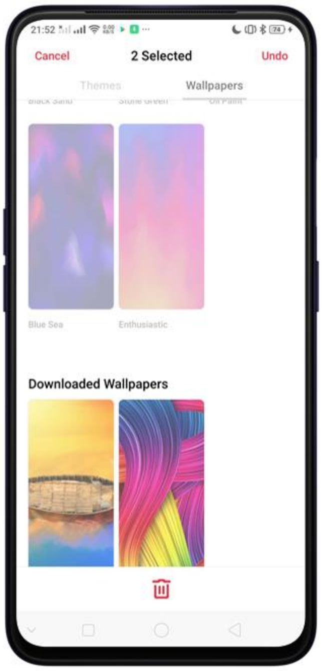
View download history. Tap Theme Store, tap **Me**, then tap **Download**. You'll see all your downloads in the phone. Tap **Clear History** to clear all download histories. Tap **View Download History**. If you are signed in using your OPPO ID, then you can see your download histories for themes and wallpapers within two years that are stored in the cloud.


21:44
OllieOllie
OPPO ID:ve***@gmail.com
My Themes
My Wallpapers
My Favorites
Downloads
Settings
Themes
Wallpapers
Me
21:43
Downloads
Downloaded (3)
Clear History
Boats
1.8 MB Download completed
Abstract Color 3
2.9 MB Download completed
Dulces Horas
7.3 MB Download completed
View Download History
21:43
Download History
Boats
1.8 MB Downloaded
Abstract Color 3
2.9 MB Downloaded
Dulces Horas
8.3 MB Downloaded
No More Contents

Only display 2 years of download history for themes and wallpapers. The download history is stored in the cloud without taking up phone storage.

Change phone themes and wallpapers. Under Download Management screen, tap a theme or wallpaper, and then tap **Apply**. See Change the wallpaper and theme on your OPPO smartphone.

Delete downloaded themes and wallpapers. Tap **Me**, then tap My Themes or My Wallpapers. Tap **Edit**, select the themes and wallpapers you want to delete, then tap 🗑.


21:52
Cancel
2 Selected
Undo
Themes
Wallpapers
Blue Sea
Enthusiastic
Downloaded Wallpapers

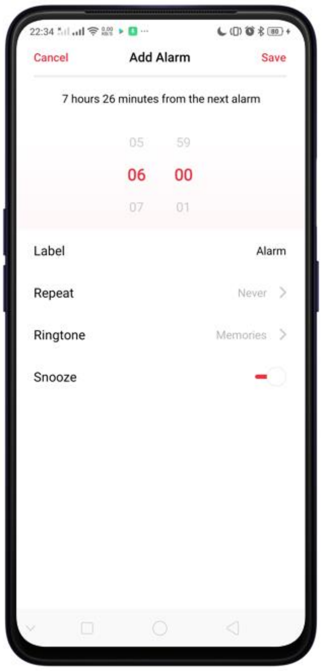
7.14. Clock

7.14.1. Set Alarm Clocks

Time to set up that alarm and never be late again. You can also set multiple alarms, set each alarm to repeat on days you specify or to sound only once.

Set an alarm. Tap **Alarm** and tap +, scroll wheels to change the time then tap **Save.**

Note: You'll be given the exact time before the alarm will turn on.



7 hours 26 minutes from the next alarm

05 59
06 00
07 01

Label Alarm

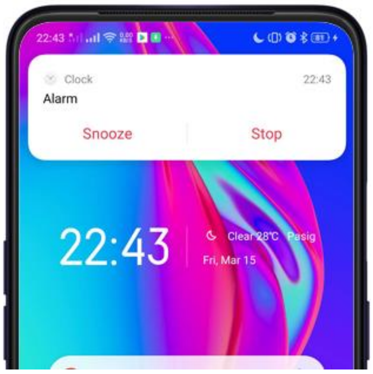
Repeat Never

Ringtone Memories

Snooze

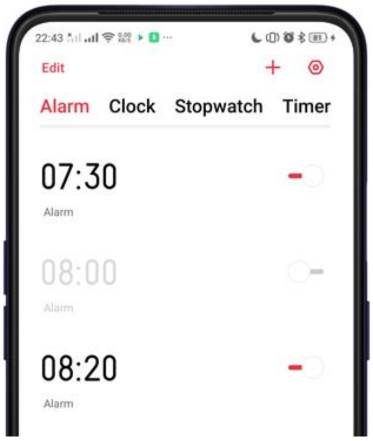
Manage alarm settings.

- To give the alarm a description, tap **Label**. Your phone displays the label when the alarm sounds.
- To set the alarm to repeat on certain days, tap **Repeat** and choose the days.
- To choose the ringtone that sounds when the alarm goes off, tap **Ringtone**.
- To set whether the alarm gives you the option to hit snooze, turn **Snooze** on or off. If Snooze is on and you tap Snooze when the alarm sounds, the alarm stops and then sounds again in five minutes.

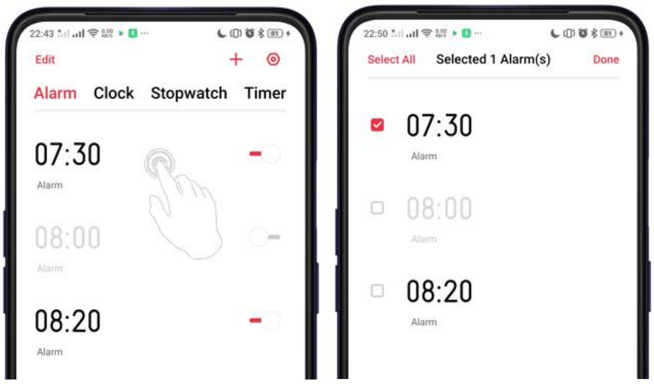

22:43
Clock
22:43
Alarm
Snooze
Stop
22:43
Clear 28°C Pasig
Fri, Mar 15

Turn an alarm on or off. Toggle the slider to orange or white. If at least one alarm is set and turned on, ⏰ appears on the status bar at the top of the screen.

Tip: The alarm still works even if your phone is turned off.


22:43
Edit
+
Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
07:30
Alarm
08:00
Alarm
08:20
Alarm

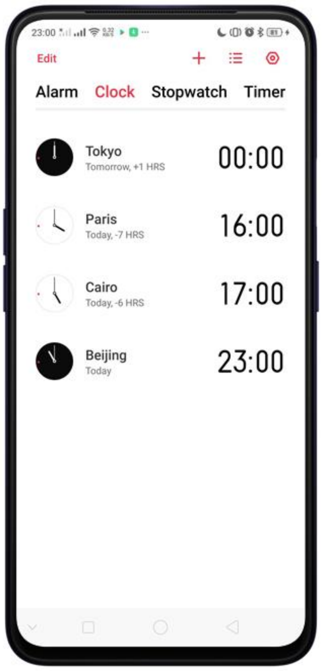
Delete an alarm. Long press on the alarm time that you want to delete then tap 🗑 Delete.


22:43
Edit
+
Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
07:30
Alarm
08:00
Alarm
08:20
Alarm
22:50
Select All
Selected 1 Alarm(s)
Done
☑ 07:30
Alarm
☐ 08:00
Alarm
☐ 08:20
Alarm

Change settings for an alarm. Tap the alarm.

7.14.2. Add and view clocks for locations around the world

You can add multiple clocks to show the time in major cities around the world.



Tokyo
Tomorrow, +1 HRS
00:00

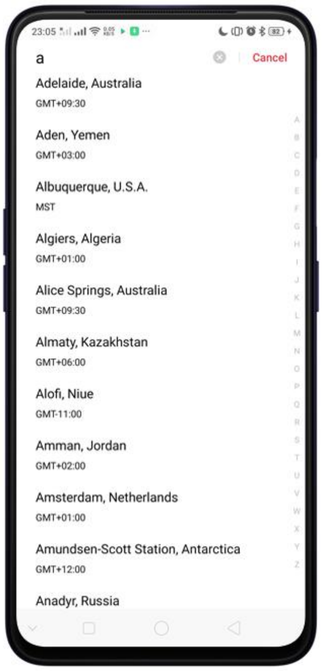
Paris
Today, -7 HRS
16:00

Cairo
Today, -6 HRS
17:00

Beijing
Today
23:00

View clocks. Tap **Clock.** If the clock face is white, it's daytime in that city. If it's black, it's nighttime.

Add a clock. Tap + and type the name of a city. Cities matching what you've typed appear below. Tap a city to add a clock for that city.



a Cancel

Adelaide, Australia
GMT+09:30

Aden, Yemen
GMT+03:00

Albuquerque, U.S.A.
MST

Algiers, Algeria
GMT+01:00

Alice Springs, Australia
GMT+09:30

Almaty, Kazakhstan
GMT+06:00

Alofi, Niue
GMT-11:00

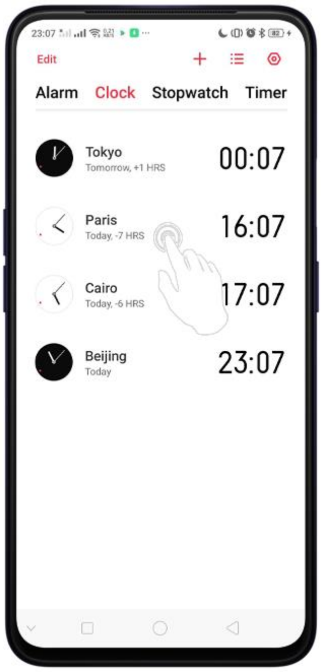
Amman, Jordan
GMT+02:00

Amsterdam, Netherlands
GMT+01:00

Amundsen-Scott Station, Antarctica
GMT+12:00

Anadyr, Russia

Delete a clock. Long press the clock that you want to delete and then tap 🗑 Delete. Tap **Select All** when you want to delete all clocks or **Undo** if you change your mind, then tap **Done**.



Edit

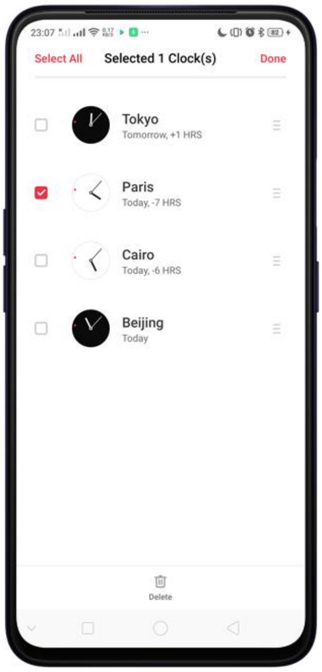
Alarm Clock Stopwatch Timer

Tokyo
Tomorrow, +1 HRS 00:07

Paris
Today, -7 HRS 16:07

Cairo
Today, -6 HRS 17:07

Beijing
Today 23:07



Select All Selected 1 Clock(s) Done

☐ Tokyo
Tomorrow, +1 HRS

☑ Paris
Today, -7 HRS

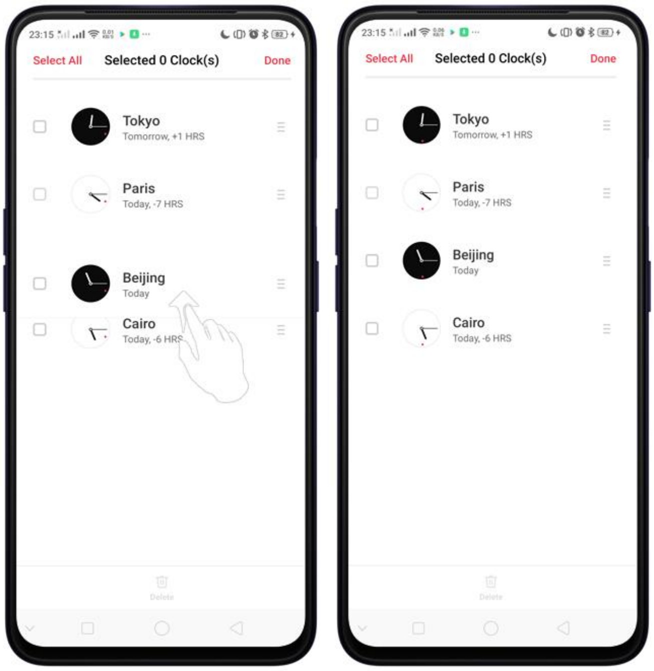
☐ Cairo
Today, -6 HRS

☐ Beijing
Today

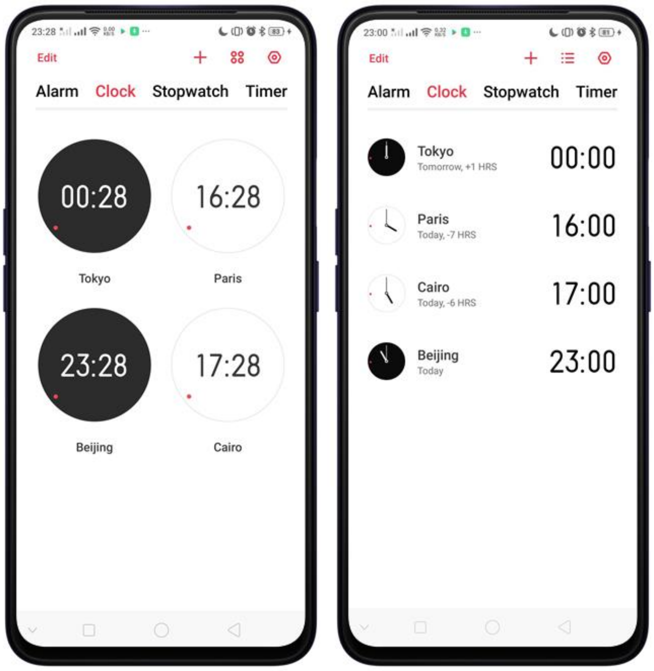
Delete

Rearrange clocks. Long press the clock that you want to change position then drag ≡ next to a clock to replace its position then tap **Done**.

Note: No need to tick the box. It can be dragged still.


Select All
Selected 0 Clock(s)
Done
Tokyo
Tomorrow, +1 HRS
Paris
Today, -7 HRS
Beijing
Today
Cairo
Today, -6 HRS
Delete

Change the look of your clock. With ColorOS 6.0, you now have an option to change the look of your Clock. Choose between linear and circular. Tap ☰ to change it to circular look then tap ⊞ to go back to linear.


Edit
Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
00:28
Tokyo
16:28
Paris
23:28
Beijing
17:28
Cairo
Tokyo
Tomorrow, +1 HRS
00:00
Paris
Today, -7 HRS
16:00
Cairo
Today, -6 HRS
17:00
Beijing
Today
23:00

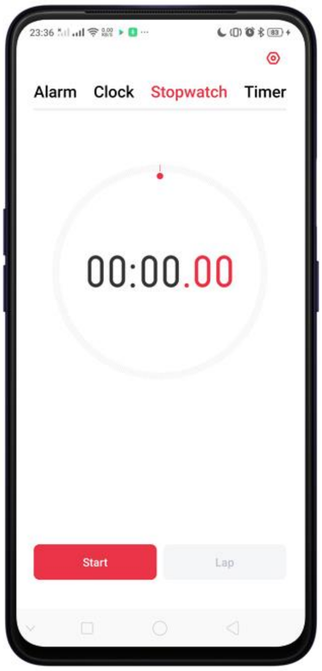
7.14.3. Use the Stopwatch

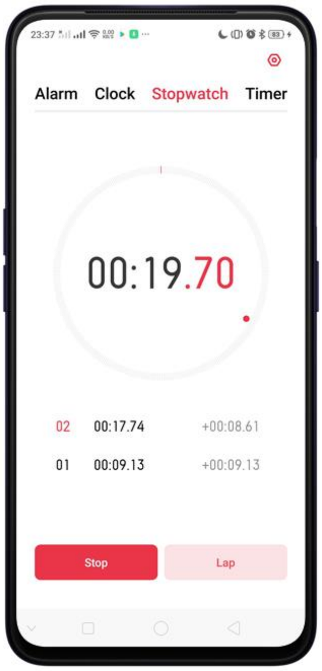
You can measure the duration of an event with the stopwatch.

Use the stopwatch to measure time. Tap **Stopwatch**. Tap **Start**.

To record lap times, tap **Lap** after each lap. Tap **Stop** to pause the stopwatch. Then tap **Start** to resume, or tap **Reset** to go back to zero.

If you start the stopwatch and go to another application, the stopwatch continues running in the background.


23:36
Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
00:00.00
Start
Lap


23:37
Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
00:19.70
Stop
Lap

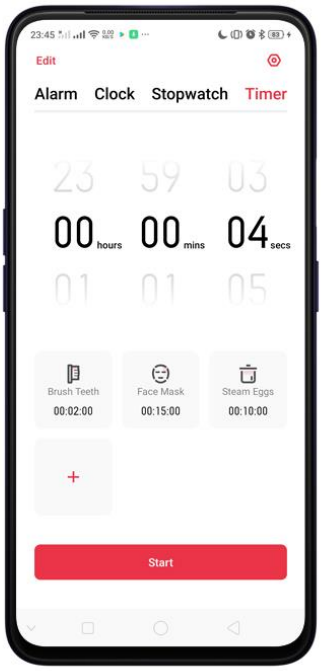
02 00:17.74 +00:08.61
01 00:09.13 +00:09.13

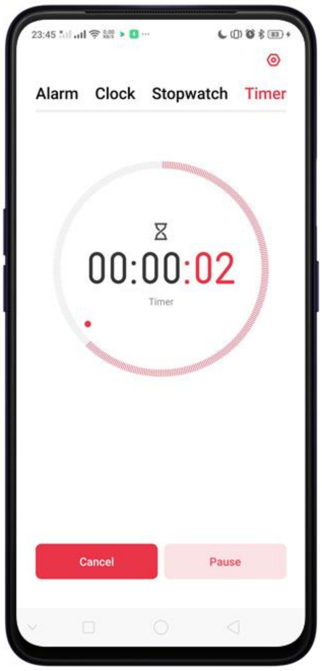
7.14.4. Set the timer

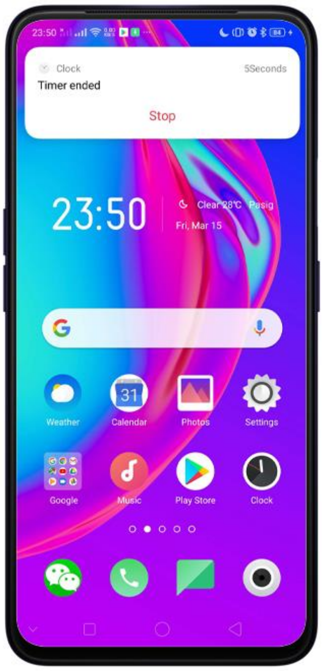
In the Clock app, you can count down from a specific time with the timer.

Set and start the timer. Tap **Timer**, scroll the wheels to set the duration of time, then tap **Start**.

If you start the timer and go to another application, the timer continues running in the background. You can cancel or pause the timer at any time before it ends. When the timer ends, your phone sounds and vibrates to prompt you that it is already time. Just tap **Stop**.

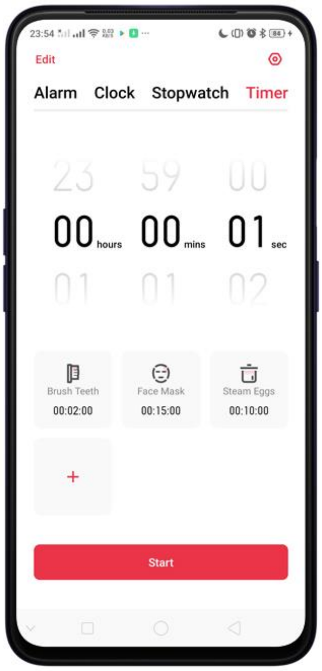

Edit
Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
00 hours
00 mins
04 secs
Brush Teeth 00:02:00
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:10:00
+
Start


Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
00:00:02
Timer
Cancel
Pause

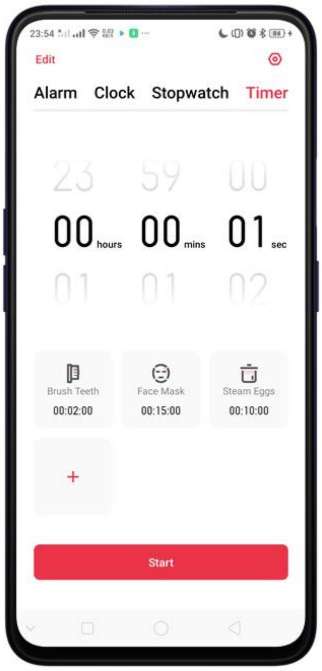

Clock
5Seconds
Timer ended
Stop
23:50
Fri, Mar 15
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock

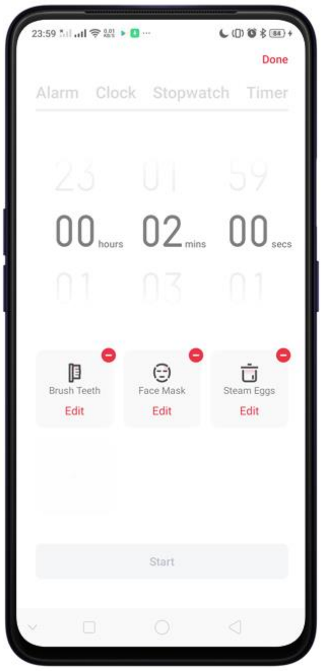
Customizing Timer

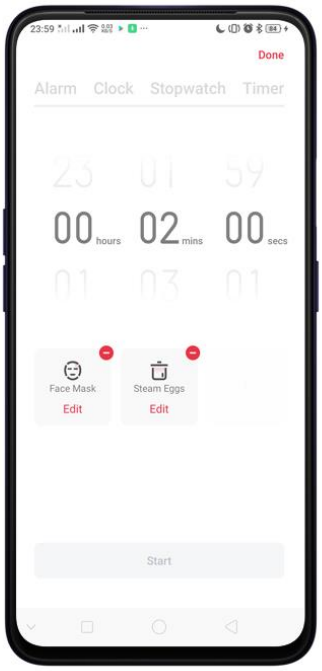
Set timer or countdown for activities that you usually do. Simply save it on the timer and tap Start when you are ready.


Edit
Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
00 hours
00 mins
01 sec
Brush Teeth 00:02:00
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:10:00
+
Start

Change the 3 default activities. There are 3 available activities by default. To change an activity tap Edit at the top-right portion. Choose the one you want to change then tap ⊖ at the corner of each activity, then tap Done.

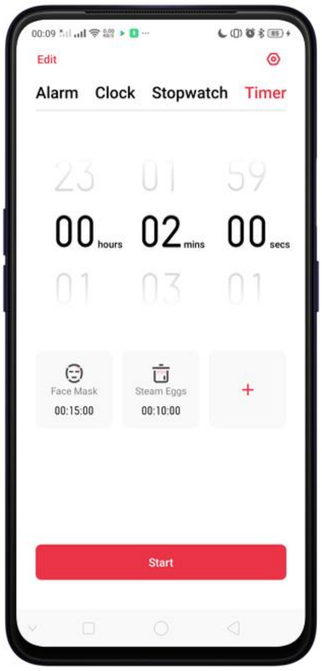

Edit
Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
00 hours 00 mins 01 sec
Brush Teeth
00:02:00
Face Mask
00:15:00
Steam Eggs
00:10:00
+
Start

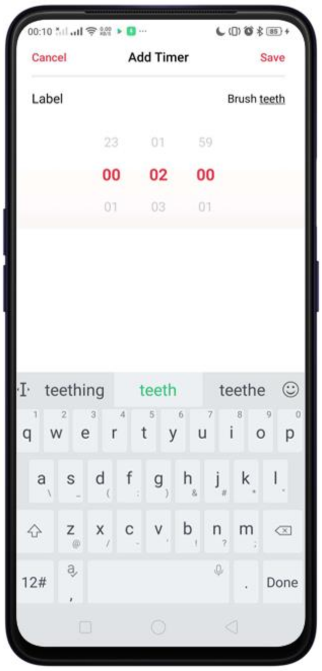

Done
Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
00 hours 02 mins 00 secs
Brush Teeth
Edit
Face Mask
Edit
Steam Eggs
Edit
Start

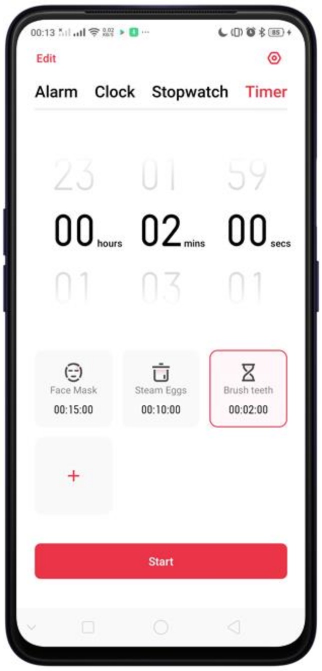

Done
Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
00 hours 02 mins 00 secs
Face Mask
Edit
Steam Eggs
Edit
Start

Note: Edit will delete the activity and you would need to manually do the renaming and setting of time.

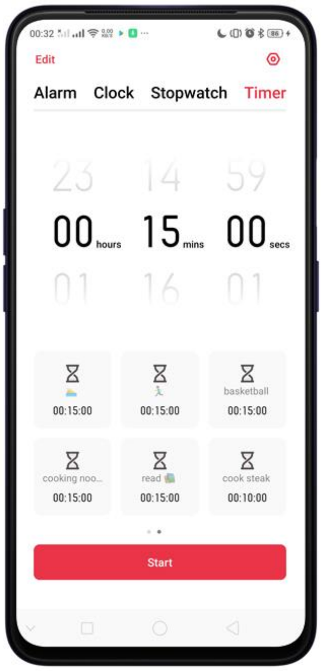
Add a new activity. Tap + then add a new name of the activity you like and then set the timer. Tap Save once done.


Edit
Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
00 hours 02 mins 00 secs
Face Mask
00:15:00
Steam Eggs
00:10:00
+
Start

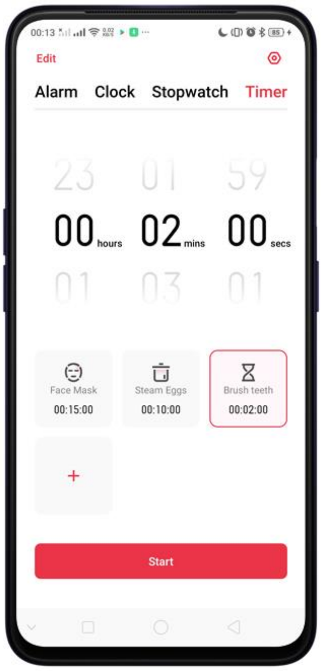

Cancel
Add Timer
Save
Label
Brush teeth
00 02 00
teething
teeth
teethe
12#
Done

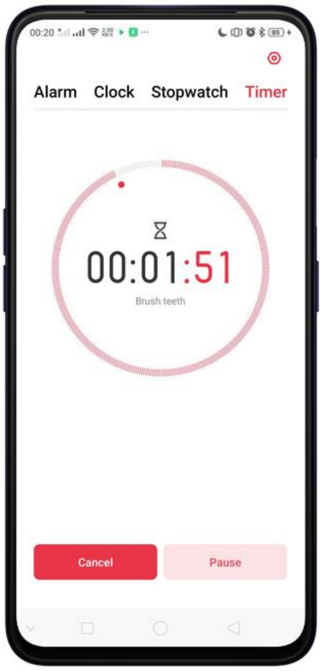

Edit
Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
00 hours 02 mins 00 secs
Face Mask
00:15:00
Steam Eggs
00:10:00
Brush teeth
00:02:00
+
Start

You can add up to 12 activities on the timer and you can use emoji's for the activity name.


00:32
Edit
Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
23 14 59
00 hours 15 mins 00 secs
01 16 01
00:15:00
00:15:00
basketball
00:15:00
cooking noo...
00:15:00
read
00:15:00
cook steak
00:10:00
Start

Start the timer. Tap Start so timer starts and choose to either Pause or Cancel the timer.


00:13
Edit
Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
23 01 59
00 hours 02 mins 00 secs
01 03 01
Face Mask
00:15:00
Steam Eggs
00:10:00
Brush teeth
00:02:00
+
Start

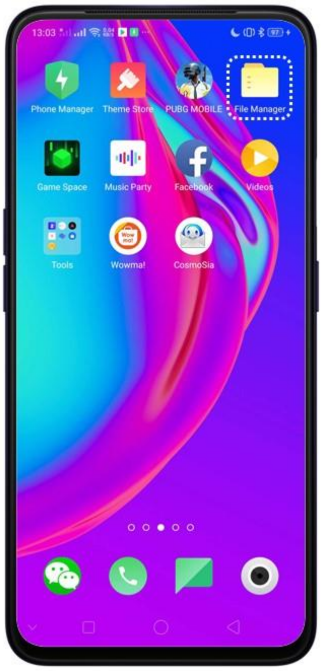

00:20
Alarm
Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
00:01:51
Brush teeth
Cancel
Pause

Shortcut to Date & Time Setting. Tap ◎ to directly go to Date & Time Setting.

7.15. Files

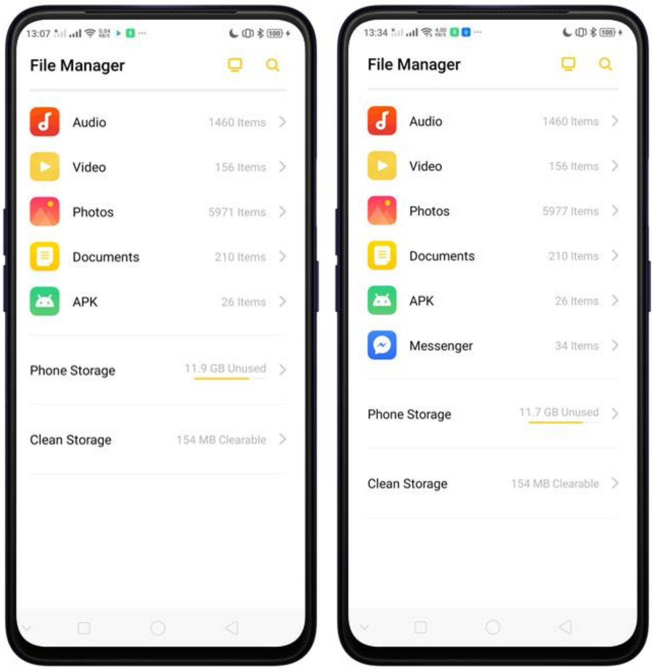
7.15.1. File Manager

The File Manager provides you a more convenient way to work with the file system and perform various operations on files and folders such as search, create, edit, rename, copy, delete, compress, batch process etc. Go to your Home Screen and tap **File Manager** app to start managing your files.

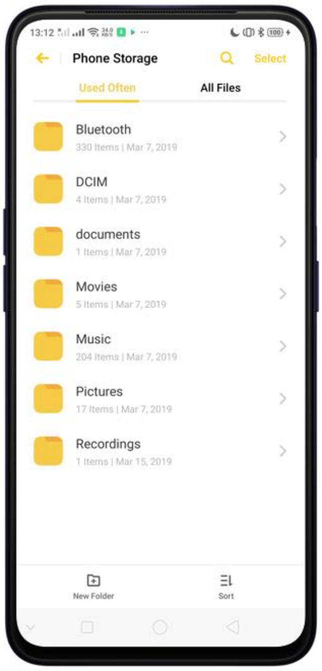

13:03
Phone Manager
Theme Store
PUBG MOBILE
File Manager
Game Space
Music Party
Facebook
Videos
Tools
Wowma!
CosmoSia

File classification

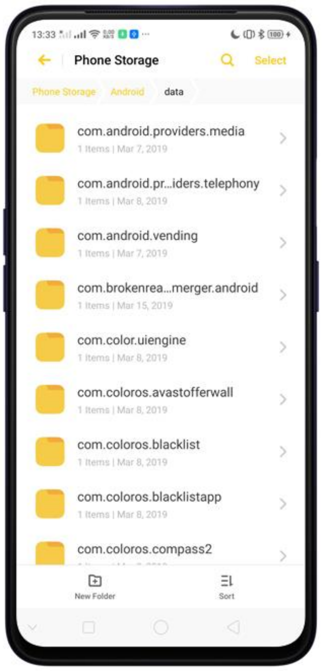
- The Files app automatically categorizes your files based on their extensions so you can browse them more clearly and conveniently. Options vary by apps you've downloaded. For example, if you will download Messenger, Messenger becomes another option for classification.

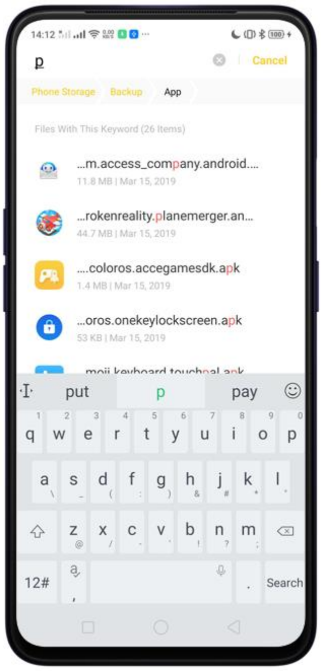

13:07
File Manager
Audio 1460 Items
Video 156 Items
Photos 5971 Items
Documents 210 Items
APK 26 Items
Phone Storage 11.9 GB Unused
Clean Storage 154 MB Clearable
13:34
File Manager
Audio 1460 Items
Video 156 Items
Photos 5977 Items
Documents 210 Items
APK 26 Items
Messenger 34 Items
Phone Storage 11.7 GB Unused
Clean Storage 154 MB Clearable

- Under Phone storage, your frequently used files will be listed separately so that you can quickly look up to them.

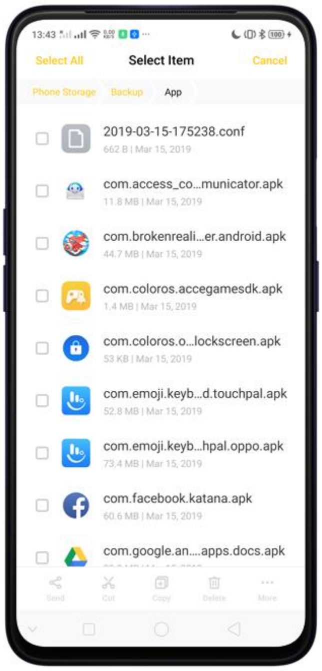

13:12
Phone Storage
Select
Used Often
All Files
Bluetooth
330 Items | Mar 7, 2019
DCIM
4 Items | Mar 7, 2019
documents
1 Items | Mar 7, 2019
Movies
5 Items | Mar 7, 2019
Music
204 Items | Mar 7, 2019
Pictures
17 Items | Mar 7, 2019
Recordings
1 Items | Mar 15, 2019
New Folder
Sort

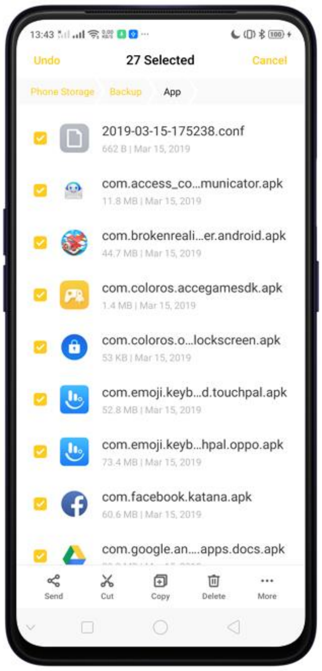
- In **[Phone storage]** > **[All Files]** > **[Android]** > **[data]**, select an app folder, you can see that files you downloaded from the app are saved in different folders, so you can quickly search for them. Tap 🔍 and type the file you want to search.

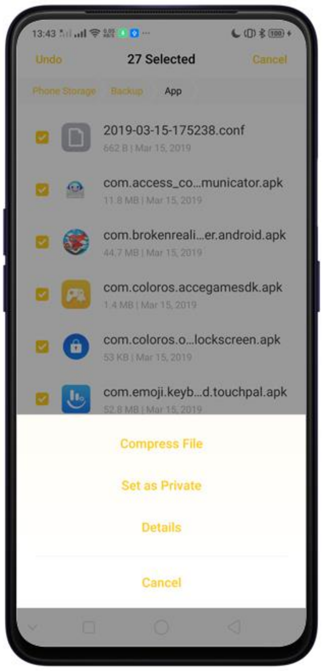

13:33
Phone Storage
Select
Phone Storage › Android › data
com.android.providers.media
1 Items | Mar 7, 2019
com.android.pr...iders.telephony
1 Items | Mar 8, 2019
com.android.vending
1 Items | Mar 7, 2019
com.brokenrea...merger.android
1 Items | Mar 15, 2019
com.color.uiengine
1 Items | Mar 8, 2019
com.coloros.avastofferwall
1 Items | Mar 8, 2019
com.coloros.blacklist
1 Items | Mar 8, 2019
com.coloros.blacklistapp
1 Items | Mar 8, 2019
com.coloros.compass2


14:12
p
Cancel
Phone Storage › Backup › App
Files With This Keyword (26 Items)
...m.access_company.android....
11.8 MB | Mar 15, 2019
...rokenreality.planemerger.an...
44.7 MB | Mar 15, 2019
....coloros.accegamesdk.apk
1.4 MB | Mar 15, 2019
...oros.onekeylockscreen.apk
53 KB | Mar 15, 2019

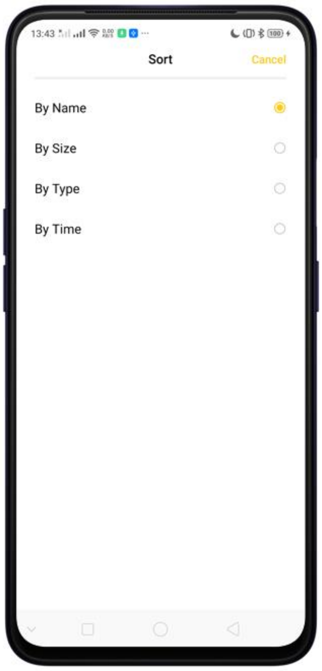
All Files. Select All files if you want to manage files on a certain folder. Example, lets choose Backup. You can manage and choose files by tapping **Select** or **Select All** to either share, cut, copy, and delete. There are also options to compress file, set it as private, read the details about it by tapping ••• More.

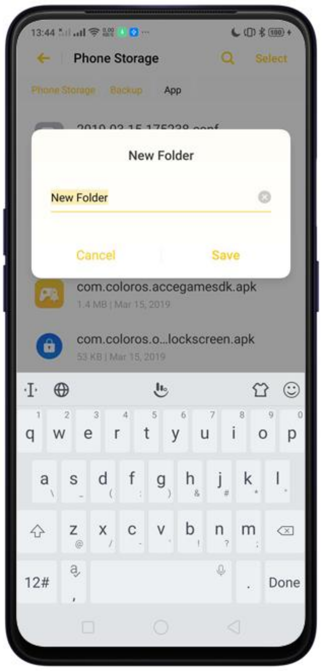

13:43
Select All
Select Item
Cancel
Phone Storage › Backup › App
☐ 2019-03-15-175238.conf
662 B | Mar 15, 2019
☐ com.access_co...municator.apk
11.8 MB | Mar 15, 2019
☐ com.brokenreali...er.android.apk
44.7 MB | Mar 15, 2019
☐ com.coloros.accegamesdk.apk
1.4 MB | Mar 15, 2019
☐ com.coloros.o...lockscreen.apk
53 KB | Mar 15, 2019
☐ com.emoji.keyb...d.touchpal.apk
52.8 MB | Mar 15, 2019
☐ com.emoji.keyb...hpal.oppo.apk
73.4 MB | Mar 15, 2019
☐ com.facebook.katana.apk
60.6 MB | Mar 15, 2019
☐ com.google.an....apps.docs.apk


13:43
Undo
27 Selected
Cancel
Phone Storage › Backup › App
☑ 2019-03-15-175238.conf
662 B | Mar 15, 2019
☑ com.access_co...municator.apk
11.8 MB | Mar 15, 2019
☑ com.brokenreali...er.android.apk
44.7 MB | Mar 15, 2019
☑ com.coloros.accegamesdk.apk
1.4 MB | Mar 15, 2019
☑ com.coloros.o...lockscreen.apk
53 KB | Mar 15, 2019
☑ com.emoji.keyb...d.touchpal.apk
52.8 MB | Mar 15, 2019
☑ com.emoji.keyb...hpal.oppo.apk
73.4 MB | Mar 15, 2019
☑ com.facebook.katana.apk
60.6 MB | Mar 15, 2019
☑ com.google.an....apps.docs.apk


13:43
Undo
27 Selected
Cancel
Phone Storage › Backup › App
☑ 2019-03-15-175238.conf
662 B | Mar 15, 2019
☑ com.access_co...municator.apk
11.8 MB | Mar 15, 2019
☑ com.brokenreali...er.android.apk
44.7 MB | Mar 15, 2019
☑ com.coloros.accegamesdk.apk
1.4 MB | Mar 15, 2019
☑ com.coloros.o...lockscreen.apk
53 KB | Mar 15, 2019
☑ com.emoji.keyb...d.touchpal.apk
52.8 MB | Mar 15, 2019

You can also sort them by tapping Sort or make a new folder by tapping New Folder, then tap **Save** once done.

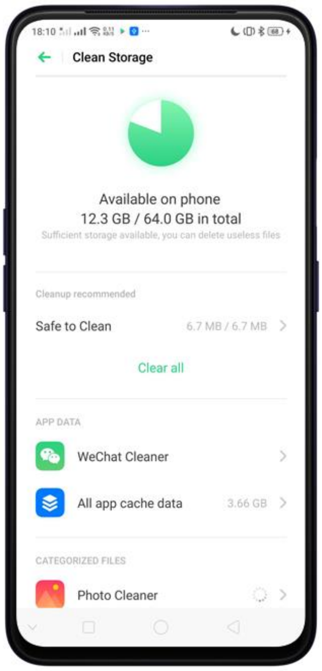

13:43
Sort
Cancel
By Name
By Size
By Type
By Time

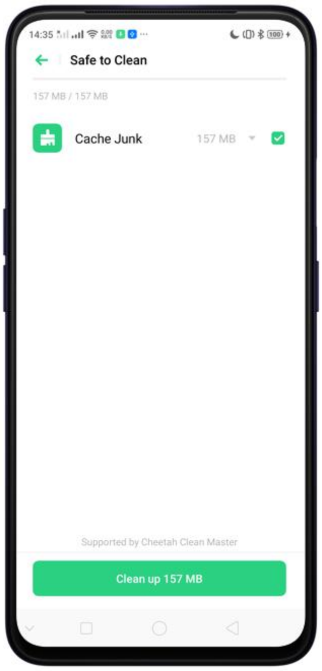

13:44
Phone Storage
Select
Phone Storage
Backup
App
New Folder
New Folder
Cancel
Save
com.coloros.accegamesdk.apk
1.4 MB | Mar 15, 2019
com.coloros.o...lockscreen.apk
53 KB | Mar 15, 2019
12#
Done

7.15.2. Clean Up Storage

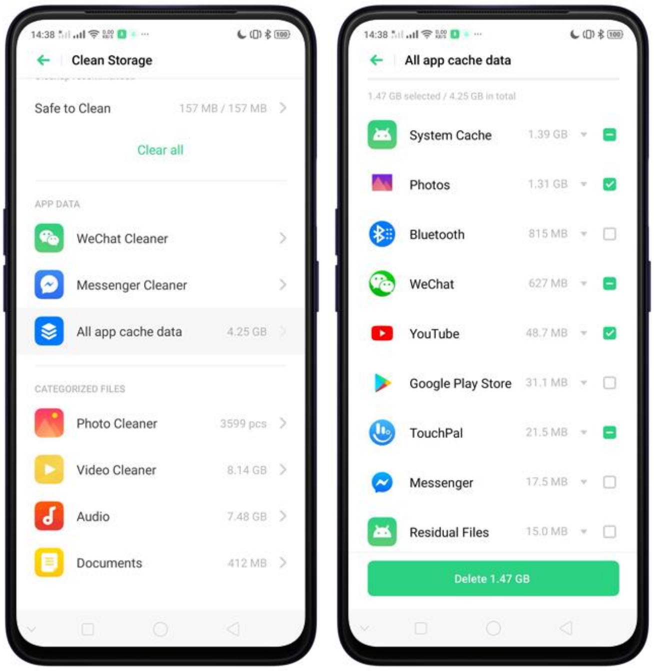
Clean Up Storage will let you use the cleanup feature in Phone Manager directly. See Phone Manager

Delete junk files. Tap Phone Manager app, then tap Safe to Clean. Tap **Clean up** to delete all kinds of junk files. You can also choose files to be deleted.


18:10
Clean Storage
Available on phone
12.3 GB / 64.0 GB in total
Sufficient storage available, you can delete useless files
Cleanup recommended
Safe to Clean
6.7 MB / 6.7 MB
Clear all
APP DATA
WeChat Cleaner
All app cache data
3.66 GB
CATEGORIZED FILES
Photo Cleaner


14:35
Safe to Clean
157 MB / 157 MB
Cache Junk
157 MB
Supported by Cheetah Clean Master
Clean up 157 MB

Delete app data. Tap **All app cache data**, select the apps that has caches, then tap **Delete**. The action cannot be undone.


14:38
Clean Storage
Safe to Clean
157 MB / 157 MB
Clear all
APP DATA
WeChat Cleaner
Messenger Cleaner
All app cache data
4.25 GB
CATEGORIZED FILES
Photo Cleaner
3599 pcs
Video Cleaner
8.14 GB
Audio
7.48 GB
Documents
412 MB
14:38
All app cache data
1.47 GB selected / 4.25 GB in total
System Cache
1.39 GB
Photos
1.31 GB
Bluetooth
815 MB
WeChat
627 MB
YouTube
48.7 MB
Google Play Store
31.1 MB
TouchPal
21.5 MB
Messenger
17.5 MB
Residual Files
15.0 MB
Delete 1.47 GB

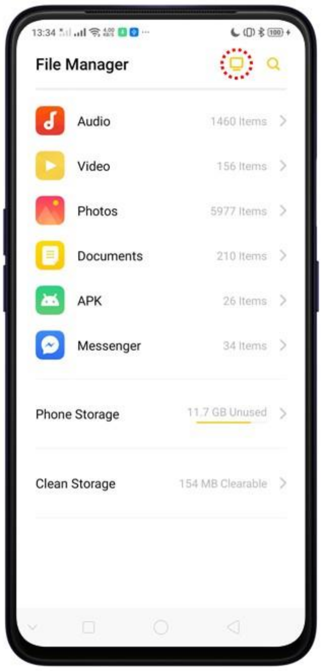
Free up more storage space. You can delete your unnecessary files on the phone, including photos, audio, videos**,** and documents.

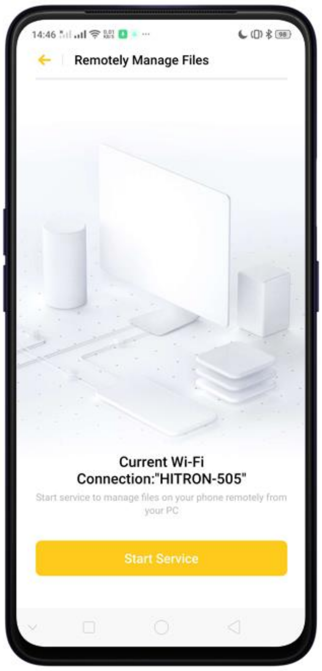
7.15.3. Remotely Manage Phone Files

Remote Management can turn your phone into an FTP server so you can view and download files stored on your phone remotely from your computer.

Remotely view and download files. Tap File Manager, then tap 🖵 to connect to a Wi-Fi network, then tap Start Service. Search the URL displayed on your phone screen with your computer, then you can view your phone's file system and download files directly to your computer.

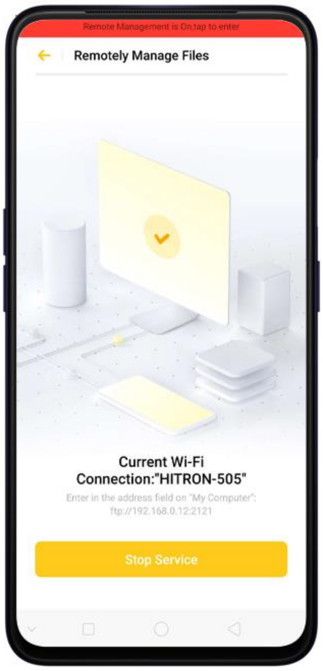
Note: Make sure that your phone and computer are connected to the same Wi-Fi network.


13:34
File Manager
Audio 1460 Items
Video 156 Items
Photos 5977 Items
Documents 210 Items
APK 26 Items
Messenger 34 Items
Phone Storage 11.7 GB Unused
Clean Storage 154 MB Clearable


14:46
Remotely Manage Files
Start Service

Current Wi-Fi Connection:"HITRON-505"

Start service to manage files on your phone remotely from your PC


Remote Management is On,tap to enter
Remotely Manage Files
Stop Service

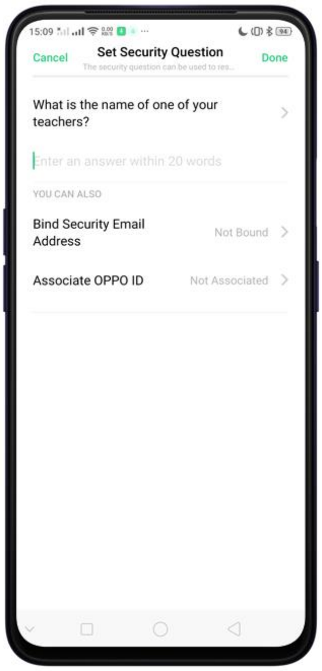
Current Wi-Fi Connection:"HITRON-505"

Enter in the address field on "My Computer": ftp://192.168.0.12:2121

7.15.4. Private Safe

Start Using Private Safe

1. Please set the Privacy passcode first before using this application. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face, & Passcode**] > [**Lock Screen passcode**] and enter your desired encryption method. You can also tap **SET PASSCODE** and enter your desired encryption method. You will also be asked for a security question as an added layer of security for your privacy.



Set Security Question

The security question can be used to res...

What is the name of one of your teachers?

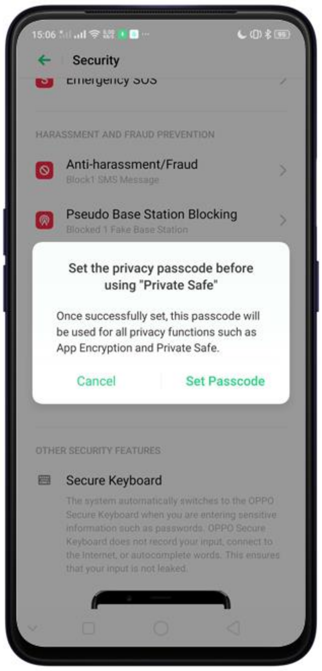
Enter an answer within 20 words

YOU CAN ALSO

Bind Security Email Address — Not Bound

Associate OPPO ID — Not Associated

15:09
Cancel
Done



Security

Emergency SOS

HARASSMENT AND FRAUD PREVENTION

Anti-harassment/Fraud
Block1 SMS Message

Pseudo Base Station Blocking
Blocked 1 Fake Base Station

Set the privacy passcode before using "Private Safe"

Once successfully set, this passcode will be used for all privacy functions such as App Encryption and Private Safe.

OTHER SECURITY FEATURES

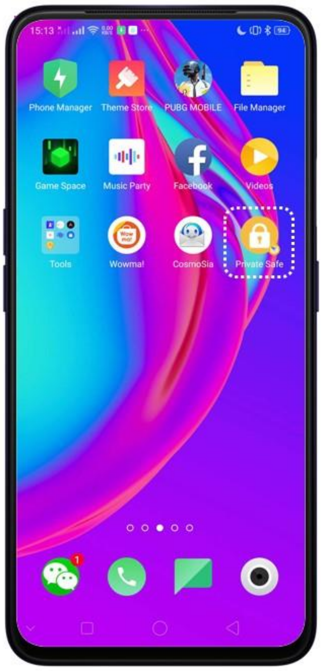
Secure Keyboard

The system automatically switches to the OPPO Secure Keyboard when you are entering sensitive information such as passwords. OPPO Secure Keyboard does not record your input, connect to the Internet, or autocomplete words. This ensures that your input is not leaked.

15:06
Cancel
Set Passcode

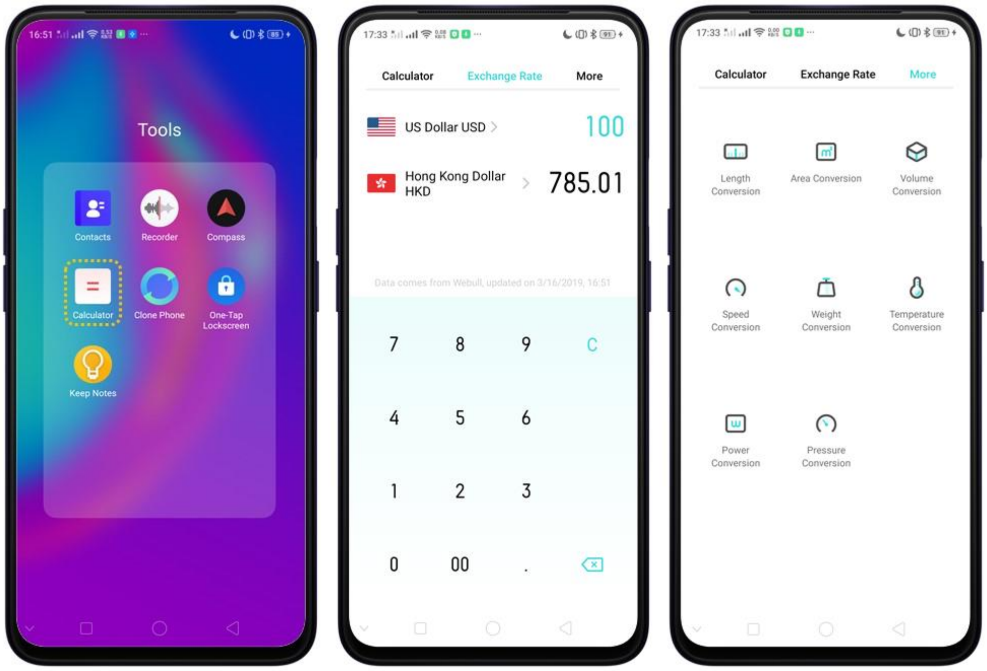
2. **Manage files on Private Safe**: Go to [**Settings**] > [**Security**] > [**Private Safe**] enter the passcode that you have set, and then manage files that you want to be kept private.

Files that can be added in Private safe are **Photos**, **Videos**, **Audios**, **Documents**, and other **Files** that are supported by the app.
You can also create a shortcut on your Home Screen for easy access.


15:13
Phone Manager
Theme Store
PUBG MOBILE
File Manager
Game Space
Music Party
Facebook
Videos
Tools
Wowma!
CosmoSia
Private Safe

7.16. Calculator

The new Calculator app for ColorOS 6.0 has a new cleaner and brighter look. It's not just a calculator but also has exchange rate features and other conversions.


Tools
Contacts
Recorder
Compass
Calculator
Clone Phone
One-Tap Lockscreen
Keep Notes
Calculator
Exchange Rate
More
7 8 9 C
4 5 6
1 2 3
0 00 .
Length Conversion
Area Conversion
Volume Conversion
Speed Conversion
Weight Conversion
Temperature Conversion
Power Conversion
Pressure Conversion

US Dollar USD 100

Hong Kong Dollar HKD 785.01

Data comes from Webull, updated on 3/16/2019, 16:51

When in doubt, calculate.

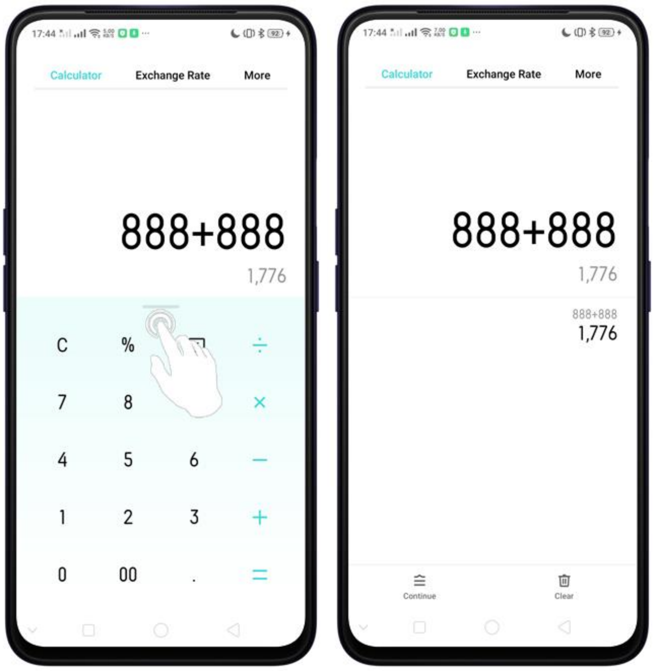
Delete the last digit. Tap ⌫.

Clear the calculation results. Tap C.

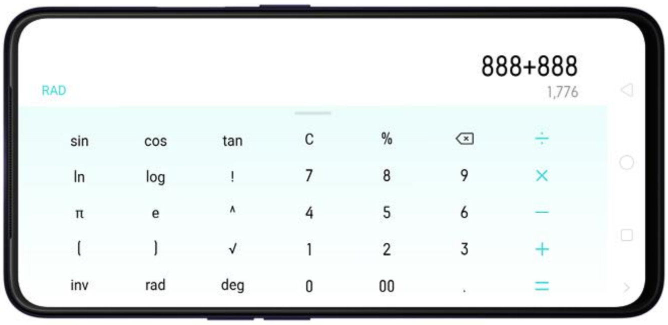
Hide or show the keypad. Tap — in the middle of the screen to hide the keypad. Tap Calculate or the calculation formula to resume.

Return to the calculator page. Tap Continue to go back to where the numbers are.

Delete calculations. Tap Clear if you want to clear everything and start a new one.


17:44
Calculator
Exchange Rate
More
888+888
1,776
C
%
÷
7
8
×
4
5
6
−
1
2
3
+
0
00
.
=
17:44
Calculator
Exchange Rate
More
888+888
1,776
888+888
1,776
Continue
Clear

Use the scientific calculator. Rotate your phone to landscape orientation.

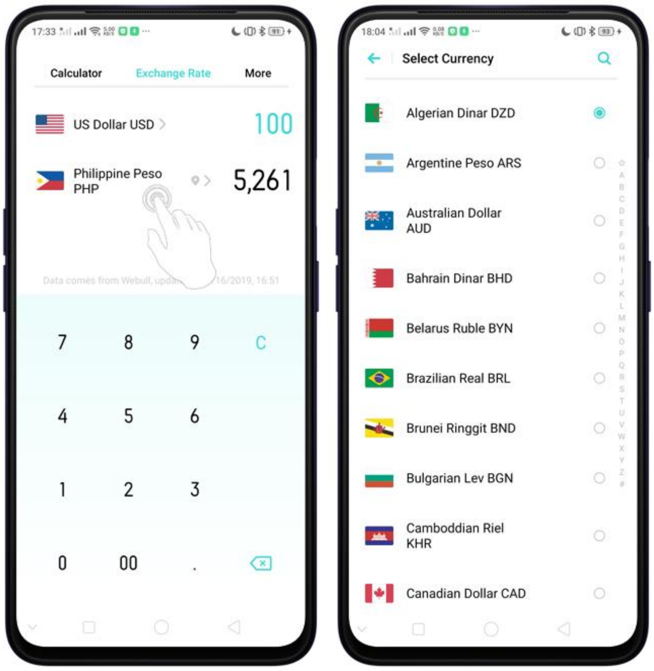

888+888
1,776
RAD
sin
cos
tan
C
%
÷
ln
log
!
7
8
9
×
π
e
^
4
5
6
−
(
)
√
1
2
3
+
inv
rad
deg
0
00
.
=

Exchange Rate

Use Exchange Rate. When you want travel on a certain country or if you just want to know the rate or currency of a certain country.

Check currencies you would like to convert. The default is US dollar and the currency of your current location.

Tap on the currency you want changed then you will be shown alphabetical order of currencies with their national flags beside them. You can also tap 🔍 to search for the country or currency that you would like to convert. Tap ⌫ to delete the last digit and tap C to clear results.

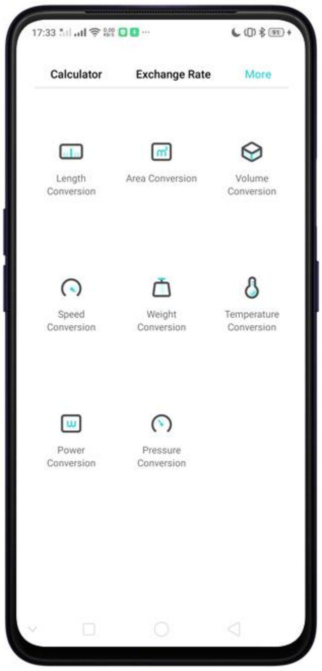

Calculator
Exchange Rate
More
US Dollar USD
100
Philippine Peso PHP
5,261
Data comes from Webull, updated 16/2019, 16:51
7
8
9
C
4
5
6
1
2
3
0
00
.
⌫
Select Currency
Algerian Dinar DZD
Argentine Peso ARS
Australian Dollar AUD
Bahrain Dinar BHD
Belarus Ruble BYN
Brazilian Real BRL
Brunei Ringgit BND
Bulgarian Lev BGN
Camboddian Riel KHR
Canadian Dollar CAD

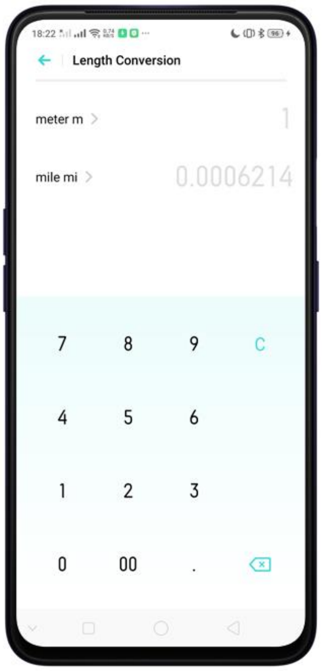
Note: Given that the exchange rates are volatile and change every second, you need to have an internet connection for this to function and to get the real-time conversions.

Conversions

Use Conversions. Easily convert Length, Area, Volume, Speed, Weight, Temperature, Power, and Pressure.

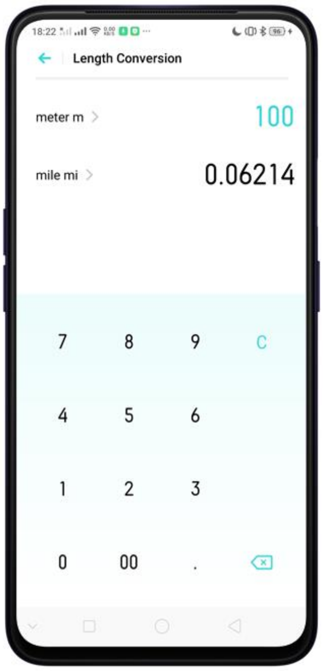
Convert Unit. Tap **More** and then tap on the unit. Input the number you want to be converted. Tap ⌫ to delete last digit and tap C to clear result.


Calculator
Exchange Rate
More
Length Conversion
Area Conversion
Volume Conversion
Speed Conversion
Weight Conversion
Temperature Conversion
Power Conversion
Pressure Conversion


Length Conversion
7
8
9
C
4
5
6
1
2
3
0
00
.

meter m 1

mile mi 0.0006214


Length Conversion
7
8
9
C
4
5
6
1
2
3
0
00
.

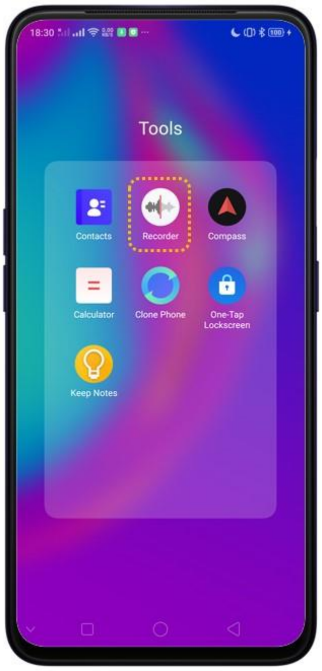
meter m 100

mile mi 0.06214

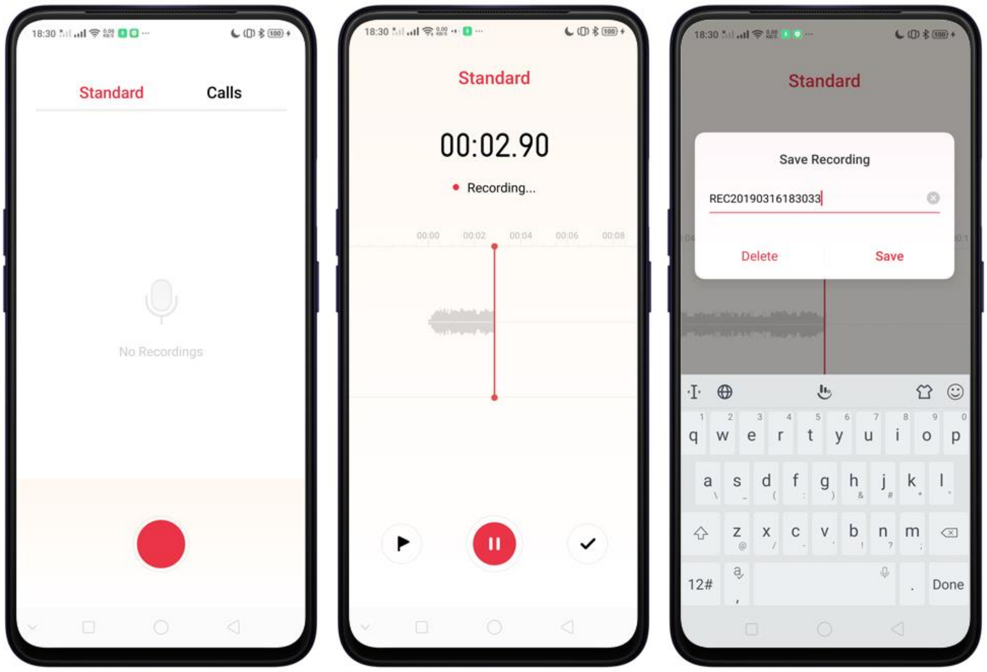
7.17. Sound Recording

7.17.1. Recorder

With the Recorder app, you can use your phone’s built-in microphone to record you singing or when interviewing someone.

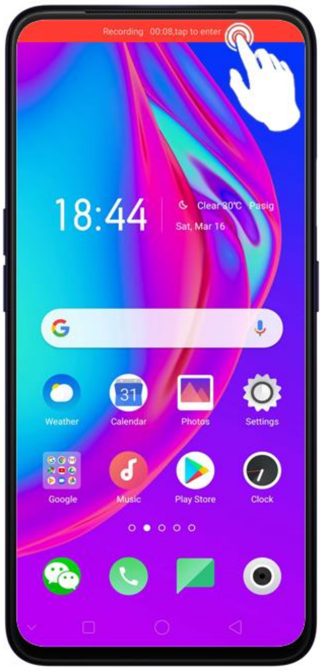

18:30
Tools
Contacts
Recorder
Compass
Calculator
Clone Phone
One-Tap Lockscreen
Keep Notes

Make a sound recording. Open Recorder, tap ● to start recording. Tap ⏸ to pause or continue. Tap ✓ to stop and save the recording.


18:30
Standard
Calls
No Recordings
18:30
Standard
00:02.90
Recording...
00:00
00:02
00:04
00:06
00:08
18:30
Standard
Save Recording
Delete
Save
Done
12#

REC20190316183033

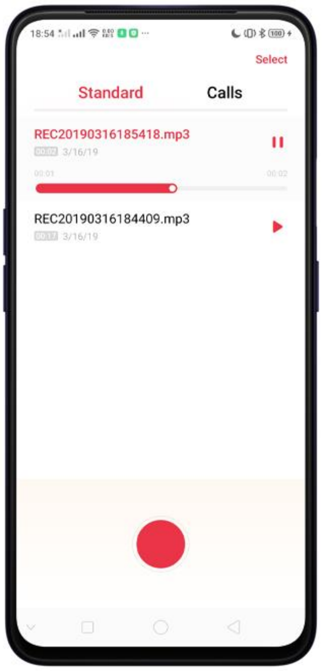
If you start the sound recorder and go to another application, the sound recorder continues running in the background. To return to Sound Recorder, tap the red bar at the top of the screen.

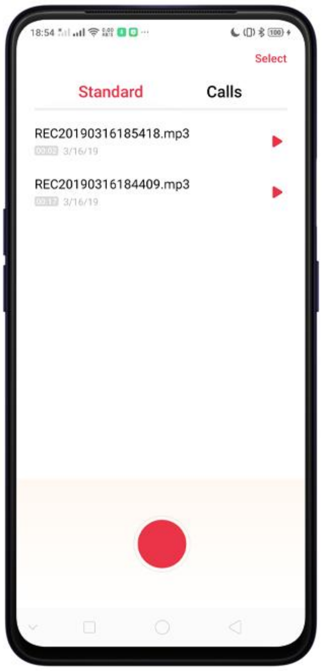

Recording 00:08,tap to enter
18:44
Clear 30°C Pasig
Sat, Mar 16
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock

7.17.2. Manage recordings

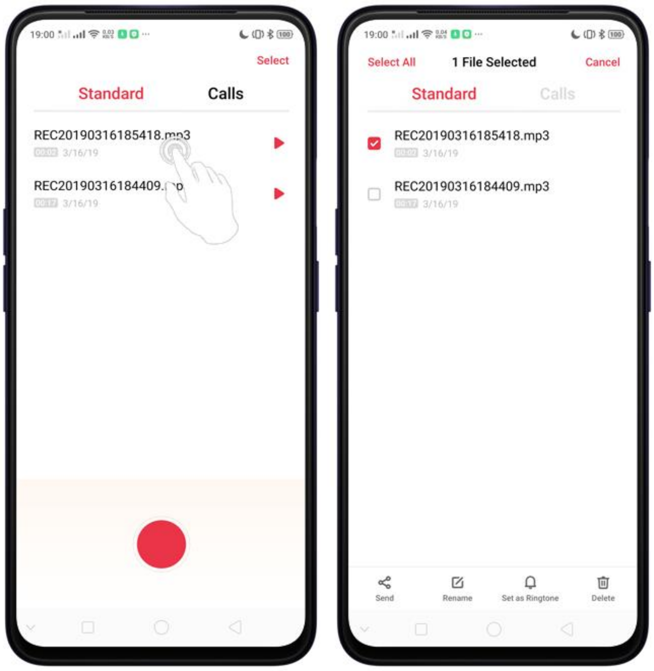
Play the sound back. If you already recorded any audio, your recordings will show under **Standard** and **Call**. Tap the recording and it will start to play. Tap ❚❚ to pause.

Note: Not all regions support Call feature.


18:54
Select
Standard
Calls
REC20190316185418.mp3
3/16/19
REC20190316184409.mp3
3/16/19


18:54
Select
Standard
Calls
REC20190316185418.mp3
3/16/19
REC20190316184409.mp3
3/16/19

Send, rename, set as ringtone or delete a recording. Long press on a recording or tap **Select** / **Select All**, then choose an option.

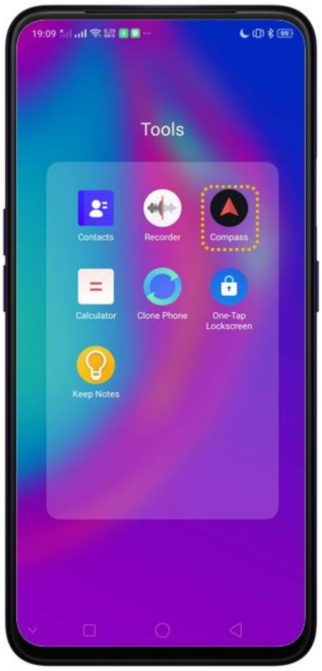

Select
Standard
Calls
REC20190316185418.mp3
3/16/19
REC20190316184409.mp3
3/16/19
Select All
1 File Selected
Cancel
Standard
Calls
REC20190316185418.mp3
3/16/19
REC20190316184409.mp3
3/16/19
Send
Rename
Set as Ringtone
Delete

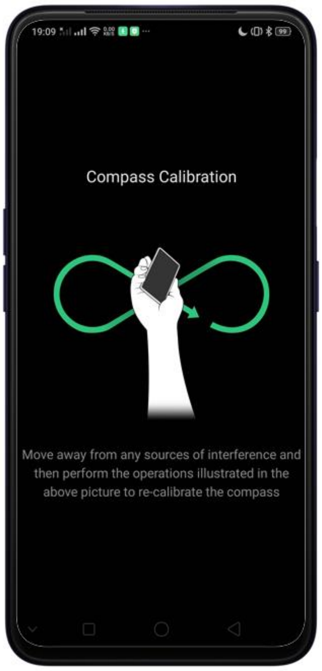
7.18. Compass

You can use the compass app to quickly find the direction you're facing.

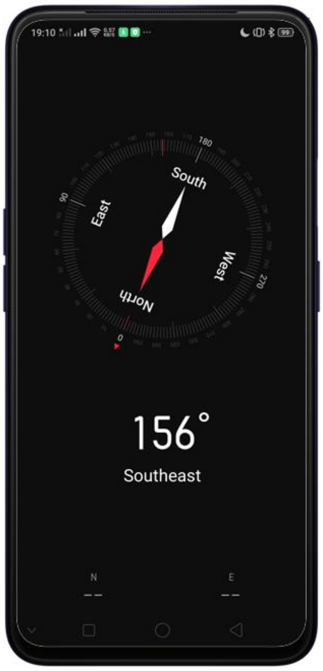
Calibrate the compass when prompted. Move away from the interference and spin your phone in the pattern of an infinity symbol.

Find your direction. Turn on Location Service first, then tap Tools folder on the Home Screen, tap Compass, and you can quickly find your direction, see your latitude and longitude.


19:09
Tools
Contacts
Recorder
Compass
Calculator
Clone Phone
One-Tap Lockscreen
Keep Notes


19:09
Compass Calibration

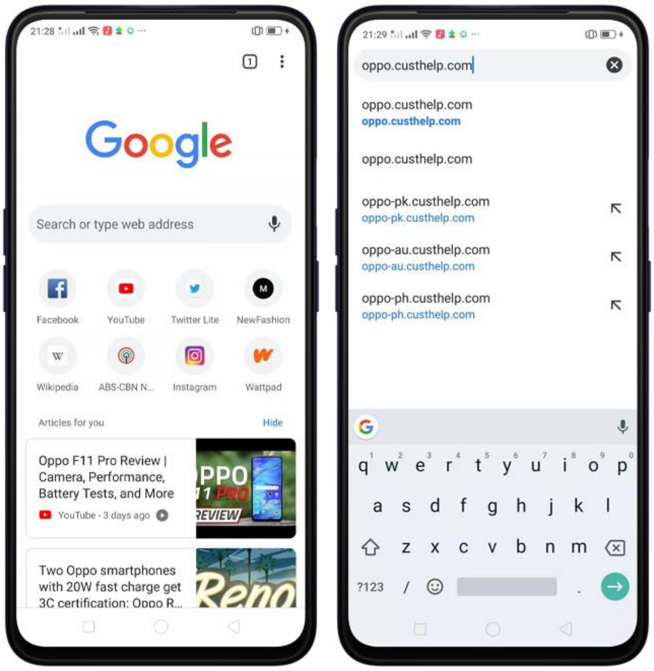
Move away from any sources of interference and then perform the operations illustrated in the above picture to re-calibrate the compass


19:10
180
South
90
East
West
270
North
0
156°
Southeast
N
--
E
--

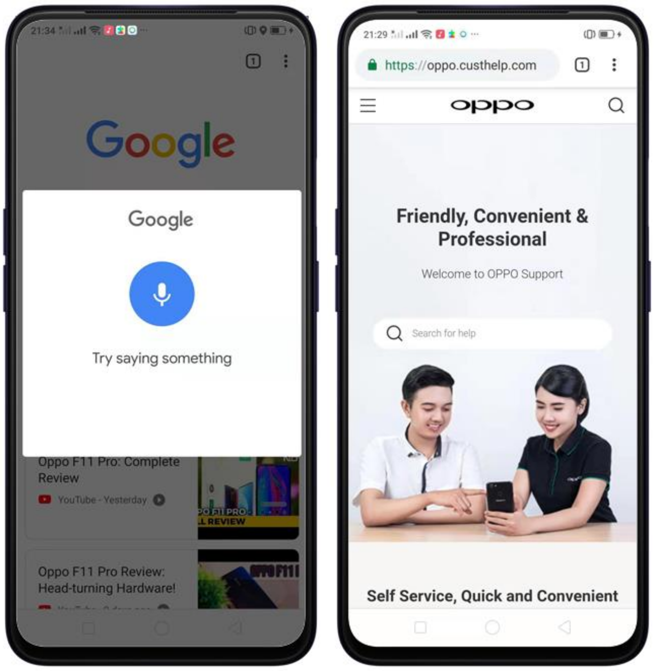
7.19. Chrome

7.19.1. Search the web

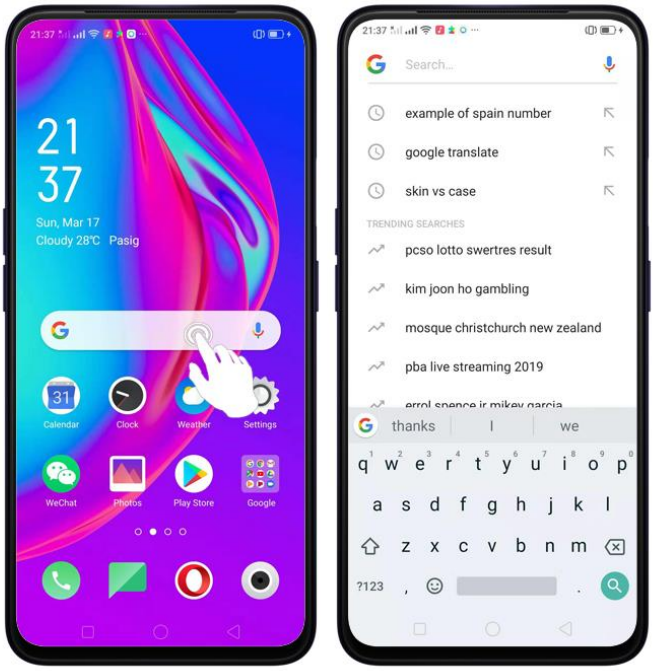
The Browser lets you see webpages just as they were designed to be seen in computer-based browsers. Pinch the screen to zoom in and out; rotate the phone sideways for a wider view. You can also add page icons and bookmarks for quick access~~es.~~


21:28
Google
Search or type web address
Facebook
YouTube
Twitter Lite
NewFashion
Wikipedia
ABS-CBN N...
Instagram
Wattpad
Articles for you
Hide
Oppo F11 Pro Review | Camera, Performance, Battery Tests, and More
YouTube · 3 days ago
Two Oppo smartphones with 20W fast charge get 3C certification: Oppo R...
21:29
oppo.custhelp.com
oppo.custhelp.com
oppo.custhelp.com
oppo.custhelp.com
oppo-pk.custhelp.com
oppo-pk.custhelp.com
oppo-au.custhelp.com
oppo-au.custhelp.com
oppo-ph.custhelp.com
oppo-ph.custhelp.com
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
?123

Search the web. Tap the icon on the left side of the search bar to change the search engine or website. Tap 🎤 and say whatever you want to search for, or tap the search bar, type the content or web address, then tap a matching result under the search bar.

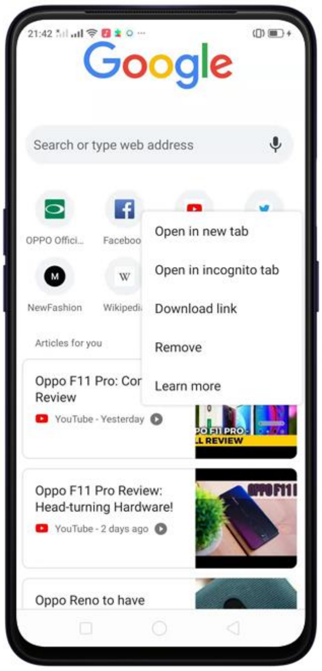

21:34
Google
Google
Try saying something
Oppo F11 Pro: Complete Review
YouTube · Yesterday
Oppo F11 Pro Review: Head-turning Hardware!
21:29
https://oppo.custhelp.com
oppo
Friendly, Convenient & Professional
Welcome to OPPO Support
Search for help
Self Service, Quick and Convenient

You can also tap the Google search bar on the Home Screen, then type or say whatever you want to search for.


21:37
21
37
Sun, Mar 17
Cloudy 28℃ Pasig
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
WeChat
Photos
Play Store
Google
Search...
example of spain number
google translate
skin vs case
TRENDING SEARCHES
pcso lotto swertres result
kim joon ho gambling
mosque christchurch new zealand
pba live streaming 2019
errol spence jr mikey garcia
thanks
I
we
?123

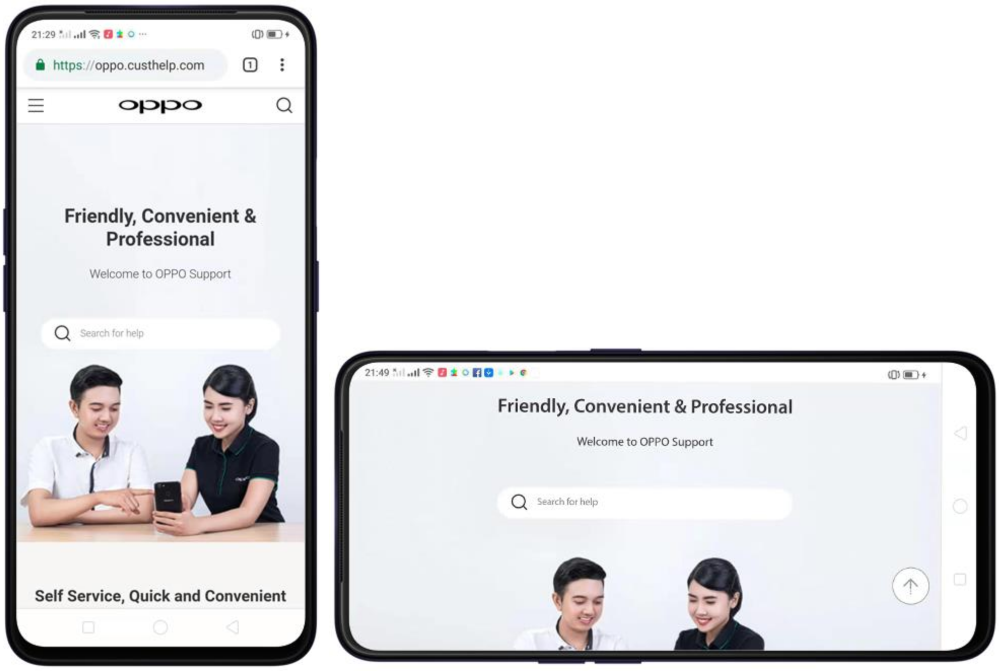
Erase all the text on the address field. Tap the address field, then tap ⊗.

Open a suggested article. The browser will suggest several hot topic articles that you might be interested on its home page. Tap an article to view it or you can tap Hide. To delete articles that you dislike, long press the article and you will be given options and of that is to delete it.


21:42
Google
Search or type web address
OPPO Offici...
Faceboo
NewFashion
Wikipedi
Open in new tab
Open in incognito tab
Download link
Remove
Learn more
Articles for you
Oppo F11 Pro: Cor
Review
YouTube - Yesterday
Oppo F11 Pro Review:
Head-turning Hardware!
YouTube - 2 days ago
Oppo Reno to have

7.19.2. Browse the web

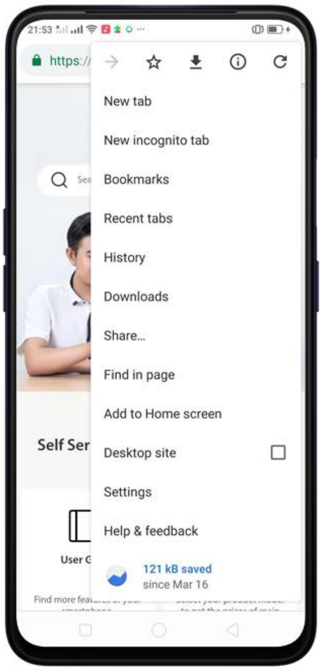
View a webpage in widescreen orientation. Swipe up from the bottom of the screen to open Control Center, then turn off **[Portrait Orientation Lock]**. Rotate the phone sideways. The Browser automatically reorients and expands the page.


21:29
https://oppo.custhelp.com
oppo
Friendly, Convenient & Professional
Welcome to OPPO Support
Search for help
Self Service, Quick and Convenient
21:49
Friendly, Convenient & Professional
Welcome to OPPO Support
Search for help

Other Chrome features you should know. Tap ⋮ on the top right corner of the page to open other features.

TO	DO THIS
Add to bookmarks.	Tap ☆
Download from the website.	Tap ⬇
Know more details about the website.	Tap ⓘ
Refresh website.	Tap ↻
Open a new tab.	Tap **New tab**
When you want to browse privately and browsing history won't be saved.	Tap **New incognito tab**
Check websites you bookmarked.	Tap **Bookmarks**

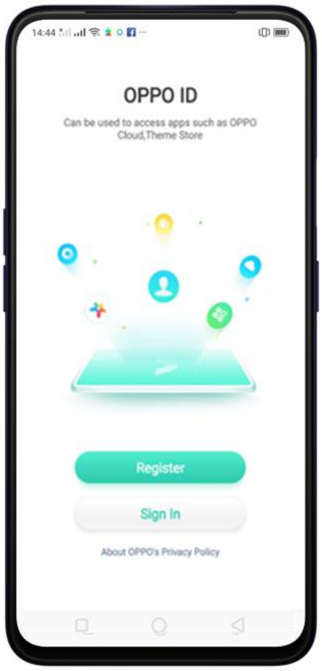
Check the latest websites you have checked.	Tap **Recent tabs**
Check the websites you have visited.	Tap **History**
Check the downloads you have made.	Tap **Downloads**
When you want to share it to your social media, or print it, or through wireless sharing and others.	Tap **Share**
When you want to search a specific word or item.	Tap **Find in page**
When you want to add the website on your Home Screen.	Tap **Add to Home Screen**
When you want to view it on a desktop mode.	Tap **Desktop site**
To change languages, erase cookies, manage notifications and privacy and others.	Tap **Settings**
When having issues with Chrome browser.	Tap **Help & feedback**


21:53
https://
New tab
New incognito tab
Bookmarks
Recent tabs
History
Downloads
Share...
Find in page
Add to Home screen
Desktop site ☐
Settings
Help & feedback
121 kB saved
since Mar 16
Self Ser
User G

7.10 OPPO ID

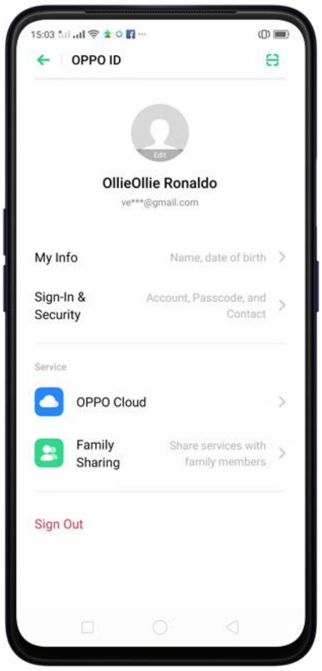
Create an account so you can have access on OPPO Cloud and Family Sharing

App.


14:44
OPPO ID
Register
Sign In
About OPPO's Privacy Policy

Can be used to access apps such as OPPO Cloud,Theme Store

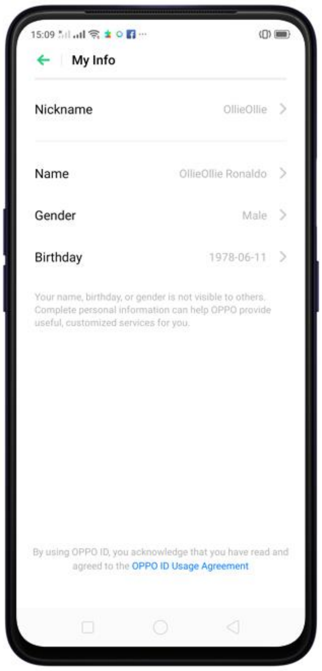
To create an account or login if you already have one. Tap [Settings] > [Sign in to Your OPPO ID] then create an account or use the existing one.

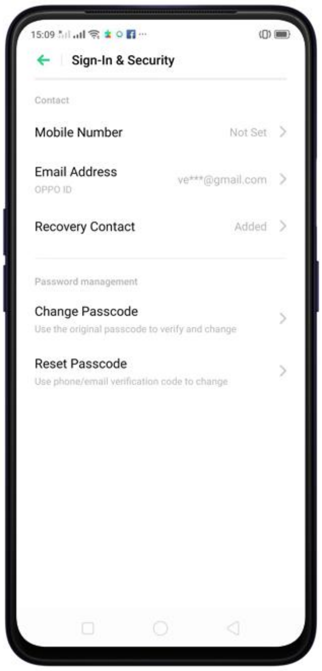

15:03
OPPO ID
Edit
My Info
Name, date of birth
Sign-In & Security
Account, Passcode, and Contact
Service
OPPO Cloud
Family Sharing
Share services with family members
Sign Out

OllieOllie Ronaldo

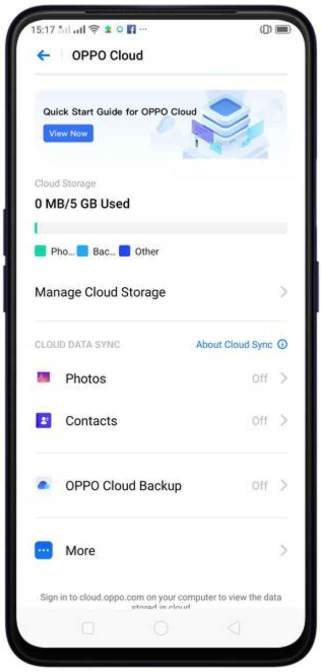
ve***@gmail.com

Once you have successfully signed in, you can manage your information like name, date of birth by tapping My Info. You can also manage your account like mobile number & email, recovery contact when you forget your password, and password management by tapping Sign-in & Security.

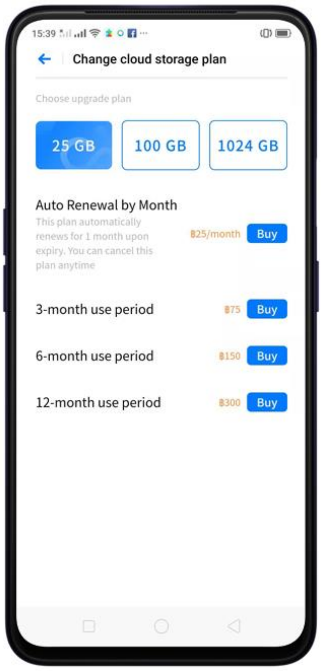

15:09
My Info
Nickname OllieOllie
Name OllieOllie Ronaldo
Gender Male
Birthday 1978-06-11
Your name, birthday, or gender is not visible to others. Complete personal information can help OPPO provide useful, customized services for you.
By using OPPO ID, you acknowledge that you have read and agreed to the OPPO ID Usage Agreement


15:09
Sign-In & Security
Contact
Mobile Number Not Set
Email Address ve***@gmail.com
OPPO ID
Recovery Contact Added
Password management
Change Passcode
Use the original passcode to verify and change
Reset Passcode
Use phone/email verification code to change

OPPO Cloud. This can securely store your photos, videos, contacts, notes, and other important data. If your phone data is lost or you need a new phone, you can quickly restore data from OPPO Cloud. OPPO offers 5GB of free cloud storage. You can upgrade with easy and affordable plans.


15:17
OPPO Cloud
Quick Start Guide for OPPO Cloud
View Now
Cloud Storage
0 MB/5 GB Used
🟩 Pho... 🟦 Bac... 🟦 Other
Manage Cloud Storage
CLOUD DATA SYNC About Cloud Sync ⓘ
Photos Off
Contacts Off
OPPO Cloud Backup Off
More
Sign in to cloud.oppo.com on your computer to view the data stored in cloud

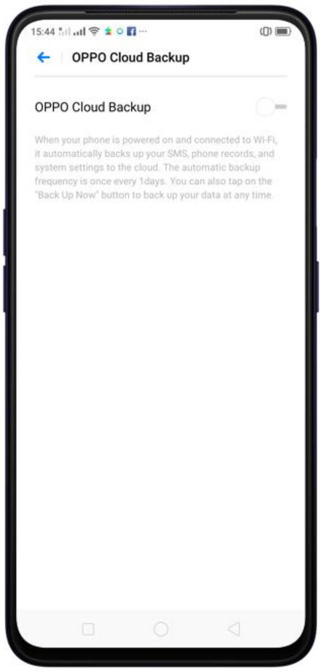
Upgrade data plan. Tap on Manage Cloud Storage and choose the plan you want.


15:39
Change cloud storage plan
Choose upgrade plan
25 GB
100 GB
1024 GB

Auto Renewal by Month
This plan automatically renews for 1 month upon expiry. You can cancel this plan anytime

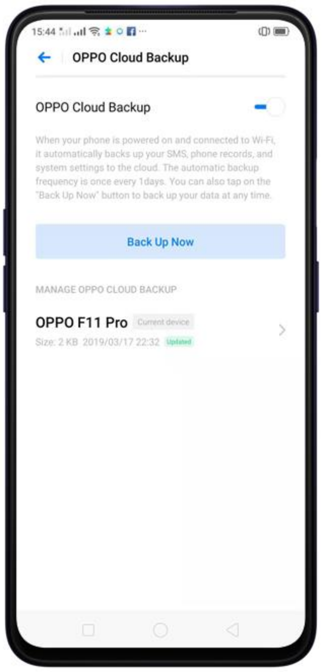
Auto Renewal by Month	฿25/month	Buy
3-month use period	฿75	Buy
6-month use period	฿150	Buy
12-month use period	฿300	Buy

OPPO Cloud Backup. To enable this feature, tap OPPO Cloud Backup and enable. Once enabled, everytime your phone is connected to Wi-Fi, it automatically backs up SMS, phone records, system settings to the cloud. It will auto-back up once a day but you can tap Back Up Now if you want.


15:44
OPPO Cloud Backup

OPPO Cloud Backup ○

When your phone is powered on and connected to Wi-Fi, it automatically backs up your SMS, phone records, and system settings to the cloud. The automatic backup frequency is once every 1days. You can also tap on the "Back Up Now" button to back up your data at any time.


15:44
OPPO Cloud Backup

OPPO Cloud Backup ●

When your phone is powered on and connected to Wi-Fi, it automatically backs up your SMS, phone records, and system settings to the cloud. The automatic backup frequency is once every 1days. You can also tap on the "Back Up Now" button to back up your data at any time.

Back Up Now
MANAGE OPPO CLOUD BACKUP

OPPO F11 Pro Current device
Size: 2 KB 2019/03/17 22:32 Updated

Note: Previous backup made will also show.

About Cloud Data Sync. When cloud sync is turned:

1. Data will be automatically uploaded to the count and you can access it from any of your devices.

2. When data on the phone are added, modified, or deleted, the same changes will happen on the data stored in the cloud.

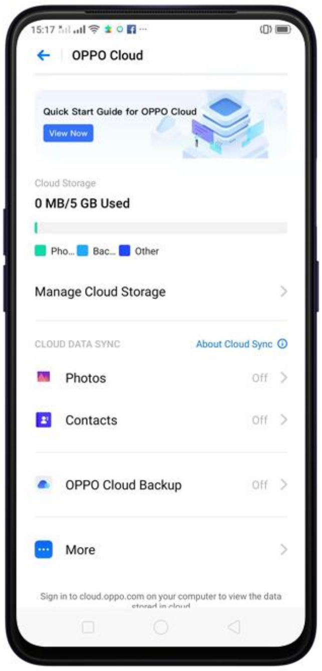
3. When data on the phone are added, modified, or deleted, the same changes will happen on the data stored in the phone.

4. Data deleted by mistake can be restored from the cycle bin in the cloud.

Note: You can also sign to your OPPO cloud on our computer, just use this link: cloud.oppo.com

Family Sharing

Once logged in, just tap on Family Sharing and share the OPPO Cloud Storage that you have. You can always change the Cloud Storage Plan up to 1024 GB so you can share more to your family member and even friends



OPPO Cloud

Quick Start Guide for OPPO Cloud

Cloud Storage

0 MB/5 GB Used

Manage Cloud Storage

CLOUD DATA SYNC

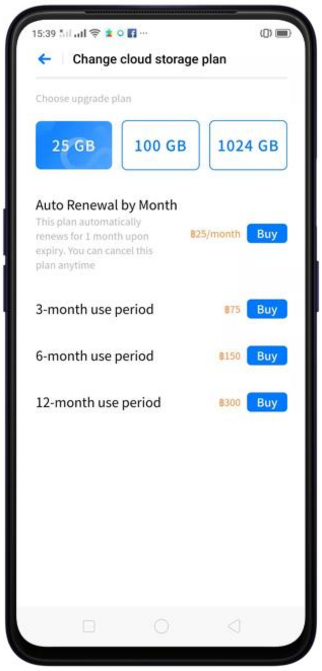
Photos Off

Contacts Off

OPPO Cloud Backup Off

More

Sign in to cloud.oppo.com on your computer to view the data



Change cloud storage plan

Choose upgrade plan

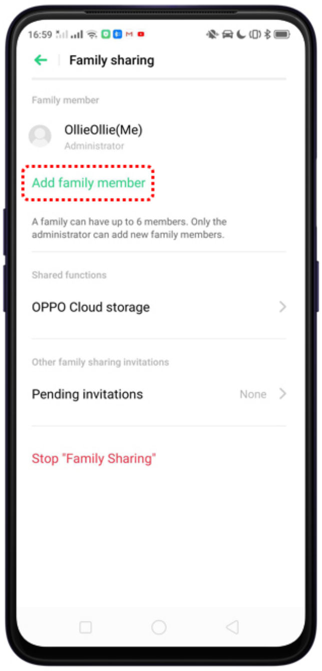
Auto Renewal by Month

This plan automatically renews for 1 month upon expiry. You can cancel this plan anytime

Auto Renewal by Month	฿25/month	Buy
3-month use period	฿75	Buy
6-month use period	฿150	Buy
12-month use period	฿300	Buy

Add a family or friend to Family Sharing

To invite a family or friend, tap Family Sharing then tap Add family member, then enter the family member's mobile number or email address, and then tap Send invitation, then tap Done once the invitation has been sent. You can add up to five family members or friends and only the administrator can do this.



16:59

Family sharing

Family member

OllieOllie(Me)
Administrator

Add family member

A family can have up to 6 members. Only the administrator can add new family members.

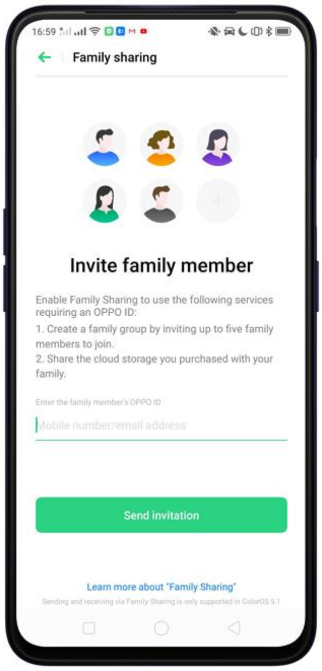
Shared functions

OPPO Cloud storage

Other family sharing invitations

Pending invitations None

Stop "Family Sharing"



16:59

Family sharing

Invite family member

Enable Family Sharing to use the following services requiring an OPPO ID:
1. Create a family group by inviting up to five family members to join.
2. Share the cloud storage you purchased with your family.

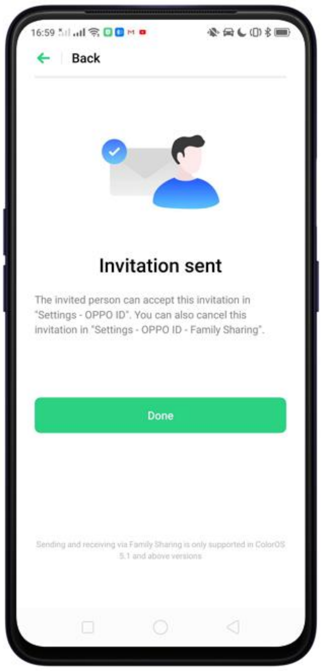
Enter the family member's OPPO ID

Mobile number/email address

Send invitation

Learn more about "Family Sharing"

Sending and receiving via Family Sharing is only supported in ColorOS 5.1



16:59

Back

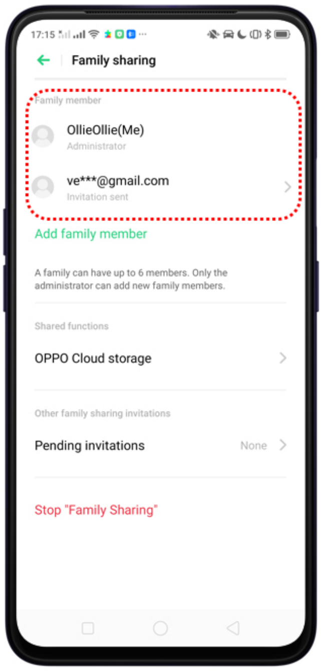
Invitation sent

The invited person can accept this invitation in "Settings - OPPO ID". You can also cancel this invitation in "Settings - OPPO ID - Family Sharing".

Done

Sending and receiving via Family Sharing is only supported in ColorOS 5.1 and above versions

Once you have added a family member or a friend, You will see a note: Invitation has been sent under this family member or friends. You can also change the roles to Adult or Child. You may cancel the invitation at any time by tapping Cancel a "Family sharing" invitation. Only the administrator can add new family members and stop Family Sharing.



17:15

Family sharing

Family member

OllieOllie(Me)
Administrator

ve***@gmail.com
Invitation sent

Add family member

A family can have up to 6 members. Only the administrator can add new family members.

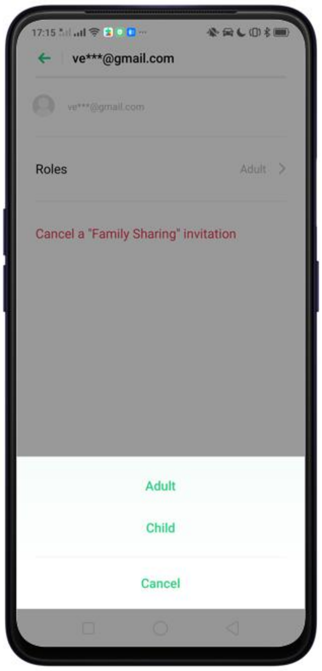
Shared functions

OPPO Cloud storage

Other family sharing invitations

Pending invitations None

Stop "Family Sharing"



17:15

ve***@gmail.com

ve***@gmail.com

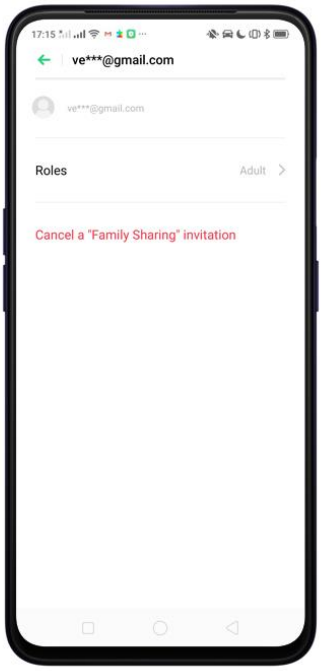
Roles Adult

Cancel a "Family Sharing" invitation

Adult

Child

Cancel



17:15

ve***@gmail.com

ve***@gmail.com

Roles Adult

Cancel a "Family Sharing" invitation

Note: Other family members need to have an OPPO ID and you can join and leave the group anytime you want.

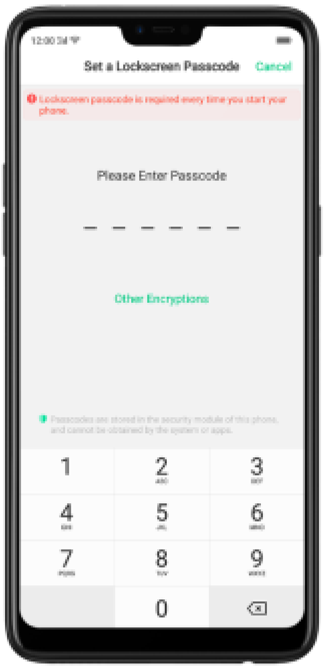
8. Safety & Privacy

8.1. Device security

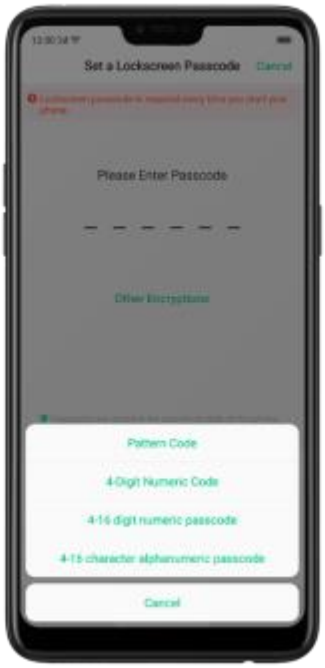
8.1.1. Lock Screen password

Security on your device begins on Lock Screen. You can set a passcode that will be needed to unlock your phone.

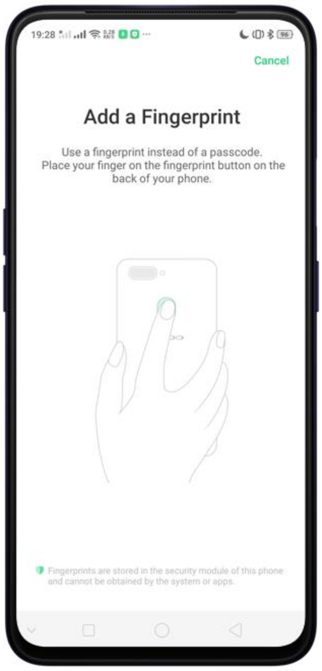
Set, change, or turn off the passcode. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Fingerprint, Face & Passcode]**. You can draw a pattern, use a 4-Digit, 6-Digit, or 4-16 Digit Numeric Code or 4-16 Character Alphanumeric Code.


Set a Lockscreen Passcode
Cancel
Please Enter Passcode
Other Encryptions
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0

Lockscreen passcode is required every time you start your phone.


Set a Lockscreen Passcode
Cancel
Please Enter Passcode
Other Encryptions
Pattern Code
4-Digit Numeric Code
4-16 digit numeric passcode
4-16 character alphanumeric passcode
Cancel

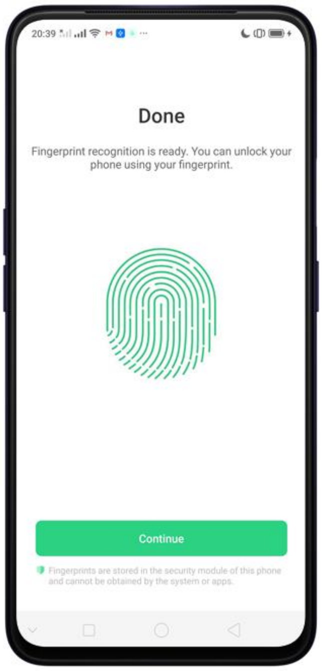
Add a fingerprint. Before you can add a fingerprint, you need to create a passcode. You can use the fingerprint to unlock the phone. You can add up to 5 different fingerprints on your phone.


Cancel

Add a Fingerprint

Use a fingerprint instead of a passcode. Place your finger on the fingerprint button on the back of your phone.

Fingerprints are stored in the security module of this phone and cannot be obtained by the system or apps.


Done

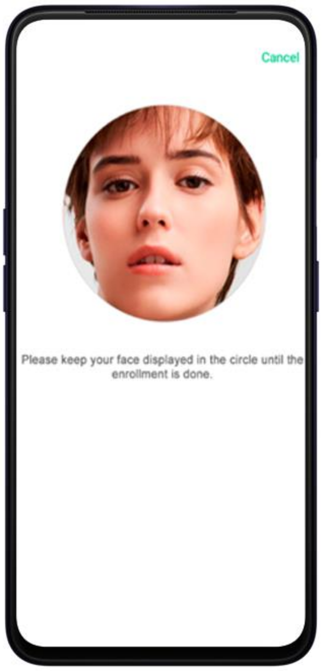
Fingerprint recognition is ready. You can unlock your phone using your fingerprint.

Continue

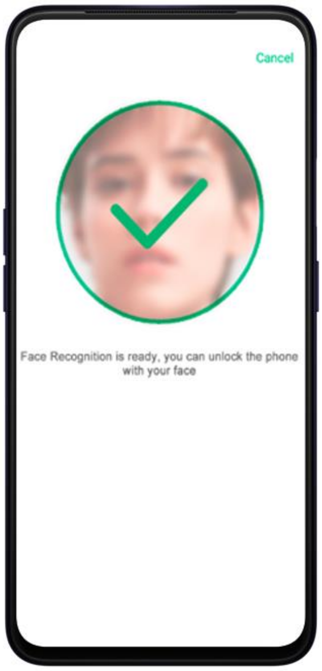
Fingerprints are stored in the security module of this phone and cannot be obtained by the system or apps.

Enroll face. Before you can enroll a face, you need to create a passcode. You can use the face to unlock the phone instead of the fingerprints or passcode. You can enroll only one face on your phone.

View more about setting a passcode, face ID and fingerprint on your OPPO phone, see Fingerprint, Face and Passcode.


Cancel

Please keep your face displayed in the circle until the enrollment is done.

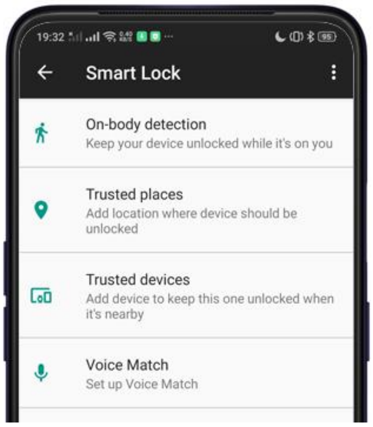

Cancel

Face Recognition is ready, you can unlock the phone with your face

8.1.2. Smart Lock

Smart lock is an easy and handy way to gain access to your phone. It keeps your

phone unlocked when it is safe with you.
Turn on Smart Lock options. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Device & Privacy]** > **[Smart Lock]**, then enter your phone passcode.



19:32

Smart Lock

On-body detection
Keep your device unlocked while it's on you

Trusted places
Add location where device should be unlocked

Trusted devices
Add device to keep this one unlocked when it's nearby

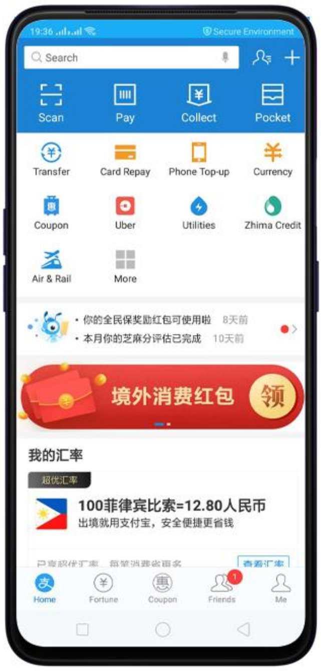
Voice Match
Set up Voice Match

- **On-body detection**. Once enabled, your device will be kept unlocked while it's with you, like when you are holding it or carrying it. Your device will lock when it detects that it's been set down, like putting it on **the** table or is away from your body.
- **Trusted places**. If you have added trusted places, your device will be kept unlocked when it's nearby those areas. For example, if you have added your home as a trusted place and you're 80m away from your house the device will be kept in unlocked mode.
- **Trusted devices**. If you have added trusted devices, for example, your Bluetooth watch, your car's Bluetooth system, when they are connected, your device will be kept in unlock mode. (Note: Bluetooth connections have a range of up to 100 meters.)
- **Trusted voice**. Say "OK Google" and save it on your Google account. When you say "OK Google" the next time, your device will be unlocked once it recognizes your voice.

Note: When Smart Lock is on, your phone will remain unlocked if you're carrying the phone, which will quickly drain your phone's battery. This will also lead to accidental **commands** if you put the phone in your pocket. Therefore, if you want to use Smart Lock, use it wisely and properly.

8.1.3. Payment protection

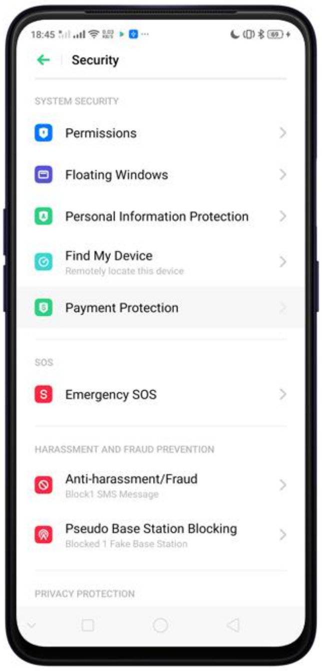
While you shop online, your OPPO phone will provide protection for the mobile transactions, such as detecting the system, captcha and, app security. You can see the detected information of the current payment environment on the upper-right corner of the screen.

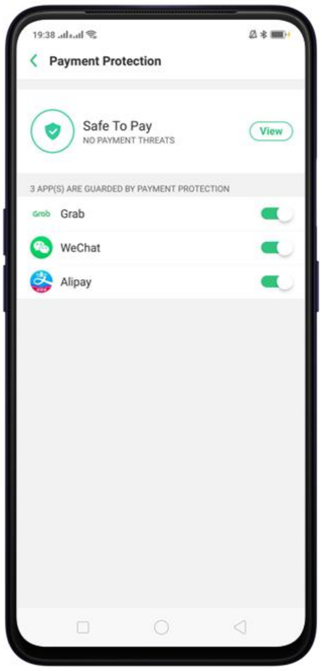

19:36
Secure Environment
Search
Scan
Pay
Collect
Pocket
Transfer
Card Repay
Phone Top-up
Currency
Coupon
Uber
Utilities
Zhima Credit
Air & Rail
More
境外消费红包
领
我的汇率
超优汇率
Home
Fortune
Coupon
Friends
Me

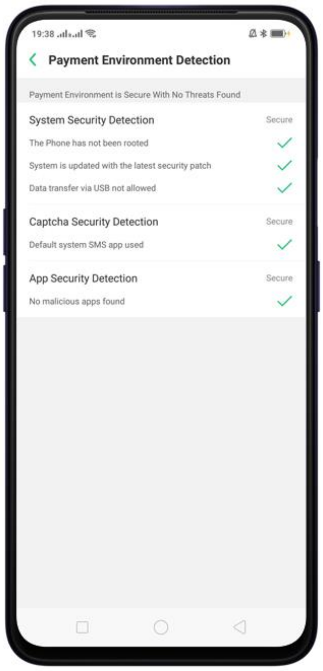
• 你的全民保奖励红包可使用啦 8天前
• 本月你的芝麻分评估已完成 10天前

100菲律宾比索=12.80人民币
出境就用支付宝，安全便捷更省钱

Set up payment protection for apps. You may go to Phone Manager on your Home Screen on go to **[Settings] > [Security] > [Payment Protection]**. Your phone alerts you if risks exist, or it will say "Safe to Pay". Tap **View** and do as what the phone prompts to remove the risks.


18:45
Security
SYSTEM SECURITY
Permissions
Floating Windows
Personal Information Protection
Find My Device
Remotely locate this device
Payment Protection
SOS
Emergency SOS
HARASSMENT AND FRAUD PREVENTION
Anti-harassment/Fraud
Block1 SMS Message
Pseudo Base Station Blocking
Blocked 1 Fake Base Station
PRIVACY PROTECTION


19:38
Payment Protection
Safe To Pay
NO PAYMENT THREATS
View
3 APP(S) ARE GUARDED BY PAYMENT PROTECTION
Grab
WeChat
Alipay


19:38
Payment Environment Detection

Payment Environment is Secure With No Threats Found

System Security Detection Secure
The Phone has not been rooted ✓
System is updated with the latest security patch ✓
Data transfer via USB not allowed ✓

Captcha Security Detection Secure
Default system SMS app used ✓

App Security Detection Secure
No malicious apps found ✓

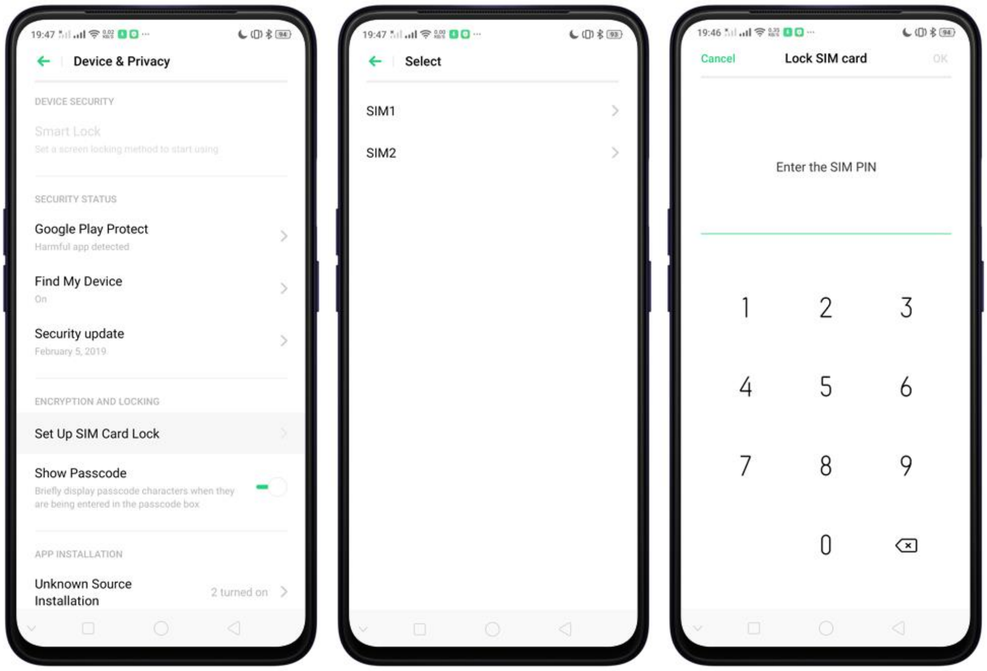
8.1.4. Set up a SIM card lock

For better security, you can set up a SIM card lock. The SIM lock will make sure that only those who know the password can use the phone.

Set up a SIM card lock. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Device & Privacy]** > **[Set up SIM card lock]**. Tap the slider next to Lock SIM Card, type in the PIN code and then tap OK.

Note: If the wrong PIN is entered more than three times, both your SIM card and phone will be locked. You can enter the PUK code to unlock them. See About SIM card PIN & PUK code.

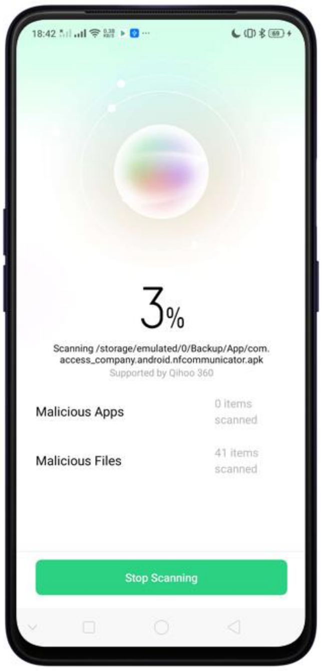
Change the SIM card PIN code. Tap Change SIM PIN, type in the current PIN code, tap OK. Then you can type in the new PIN code, tap OK, retype your new PIN code when prompted, then tap OK.


19:47
Device & Privacy
DEVICE SECURITY
Smart Lock
Set a screen locking method to start using
SECURITY STATUS
Google Play Protect
Harmful app detected
Find My Device
On
Security update
February 5, 2019
ENCRYPTION AND LOCKING
Set Up SIM Card Lock
Show Passcode
Briefly display passcode characters when they are being entered in the passcode box
APP INSTALLATION
Unknown Source Installation
2 turned on
19:47
Select
SIM1
SIM2
19:46
Cancel
Lock SIM card
OK
Enter the SIM PIN
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0

8.1.5. Virus Scan

For better security, you should regularly scan and remove potential and actual threats to your phone.

Scan for virus. Tap Phone Manager, then tap Virus Scan. Wait for the scan to complete. If threats were found, remove them; if not, you will see a message that says your phone is in a good state.



3%

Scanning /storage/emulated/0/Backup/App/com.access_company.android.nfcommunicator.apk

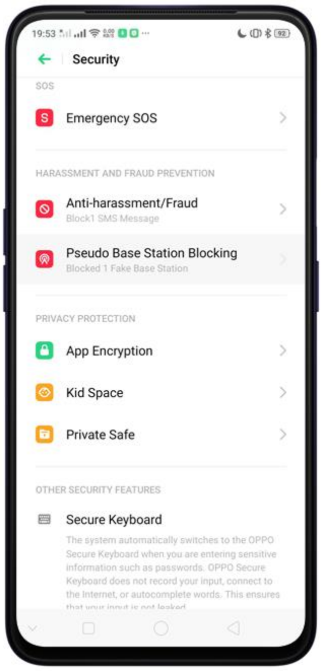
Supported by Qihoo 360

Malicious Apps	0 items scanned
Malicious Files	41 items scanned

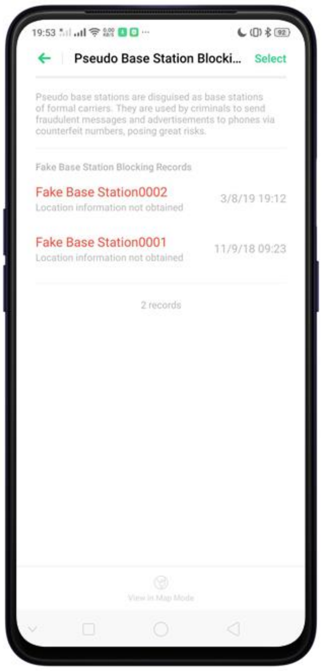
8.1.6. Pseudo Base Station Blocking

Your phone might receive many spam messages (including investment advice, promotional messages, and more), or be infected by mobile viruses sent from the pseudo base stations. When these stations are identified, your phone will automatically block the information sent by them, thus safeguarding and securing your information.

Block pseudo base stations. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[Pseudo Base Station Blocking]** and you will see a list of pseudo base stations if they are identified and blocked by the phone.


19:53
Security
SOS
Emergency SOS
HARASSMENT AND FRAUD PREVENTION
Anti-harassment/Fraud
Block1 SMS Message
Pseudo Base Station Blocking
Blocked 1 Fake Base Station
PRIVACY PROTECTION
App Encryption
Kid Space
Private Safe
OTHER SECURITY FEATURES
Secure Keyboard

The system automatically switches to the OPPO Secure Keyboard when you are entering sensitive information such as passwords. OPPO Secure Keyboard does not record your input, connect to the Internet, or autocomplete words. This ensures that your input is not leaked


19:53
Pseudo Base Station Blocki...
Select

Pseudo base stations are disguised as base stations of formal carriers. They are used by criminals to send fraudulent messages and advertisements to phones via counterfeit numbers, posing great risks.

Fake Base Station Blocking Records

Fake Base Station0002 3/8/19 19:12
Location information not obtained

Fake Base Station0001 11/9/18 09:23
Location information not obtained

2 records

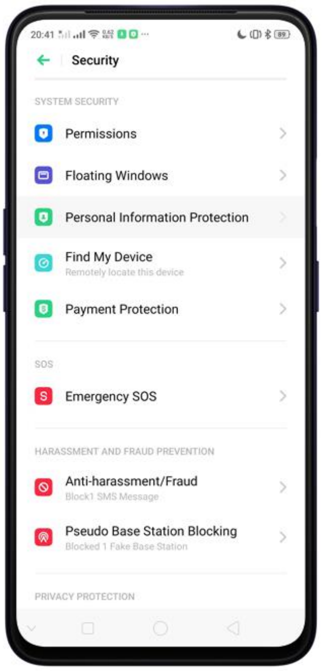
View in Map Mode

8.1.7. Protect Personal Information

Apps automatically read your personal information to access restricted functions, while most of these information are sensitive, such as call history, contacts, messages, and calendar events; some apps will probably engage in malicious activities like uploading or exposing your private data and monitoring your activities. By using this feature, when an app tries to read information that it needs, your phone will provide empty information instead of what you really have, which helps you protect your privacy.

Protect your call history, contacts, messages, and events. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[Personal Information Protection]**, then choose an option.

You will see a list of apps that require the certain information. If you don't want to give an app your real information, switch the app slider to green, then tap **[Turn on feature]**. Your phone will then provide empty information.



20:41

Security

SYSTEM SECURITY

Permissions

Floating Windows

Personal Information Protection

Find My Device
Remotely locate this device

Payment Protection

SOS

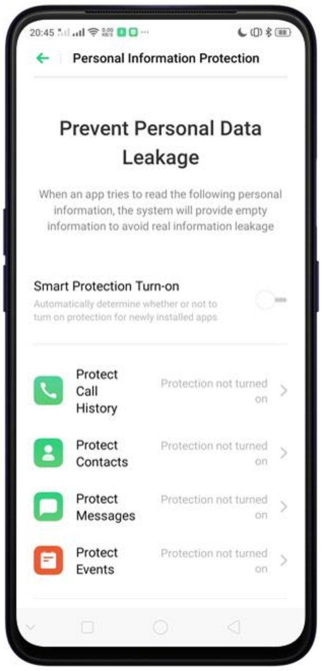
Emergency SOS

HARASSMENT AND FRAUD PREVENTION

Anti-harassment/Fraud
Block1 SMS Message

Pseudo Base Station Blocking
Blocked 1 Fake Base Station

PRIVACY PROTECTION



20:45

Personal Information Protection

Prevent Personal Data Leakage

When an app tries to read the following personal information, the system will provide empty information to avoid real information leakage

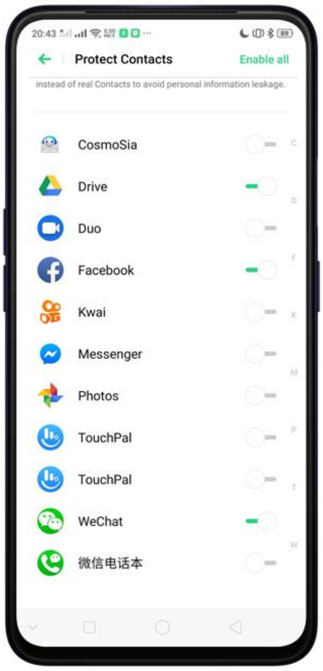
Smart Protection Turn-on
Automatically determine whether or not to turn on protection for newly installed apps

Protect Call History — Protection not turned on

Protect Contacts — Protection not turned on

Protect Messages — Protection not turned on

Protect Events — Protection not turned on



20:43

Protect Contacts — Enable all

instead of real Contacts to avoid personal information leakage.

CosmoSia

Drive

Duo

Facebook

Kwai

Messenger

Photos

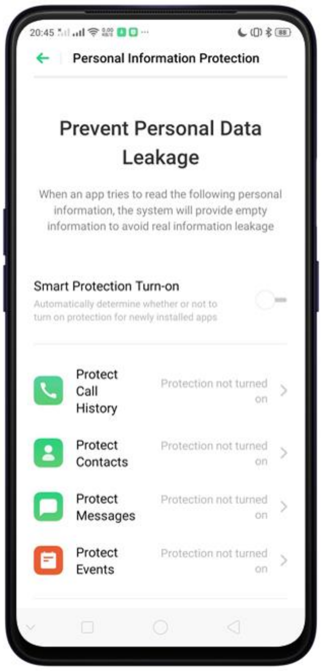
TouchPal

TouchPal

WeChat

微信电话本

You can also enable **Smart Protection Turn-on** which automatically determines whether to turn on protection for newly installed apps. Toggle to green and tap **Turn On**.



20:45

Personal Information Protection

Prevent Personal Data Leakage

When an app tries to read the following personal information, the system will provide empty information to avoid real information leakage

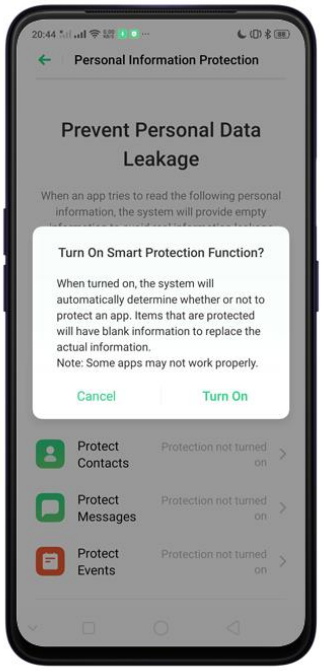
Smart Protection Turn-on
Automatically determine whether or not to turn on protection for newly installed apps

Protect Call History — Protection not turned on

Protect Contacts — Protection not turned on

Protect Messages — Protection not turned on

Protect Events — Protection not turned on



20:44

Personal Information Protection

Prevent Personal Data Leakage

When an app tries to read the following personal information, the system will provide empty

Turn On Smart Protection Function?

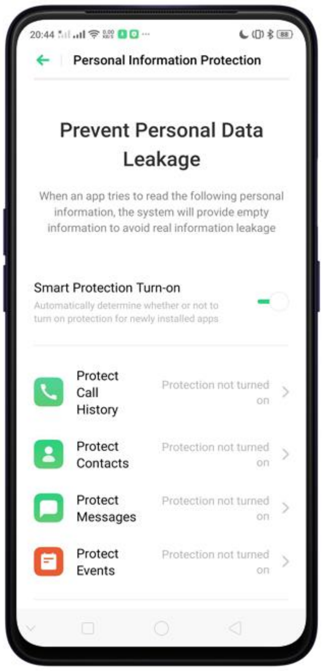
When turned on, the system will automatically determine whether or not to protect an app. Items that are protected will have blank information to replace the actual information.
Note: Some apps may not work properly.

Cancel — Turn On

Protect Contacts — Protection not turned on

Protect Messages — Protection not turned on

Protect Events — Protection not turned on



20:44

Personal Information Protection

Prevent Personal Data Leakage

When an app tries to read the following personal information, the system will provide empty information to avoid real information leakage

Smart Protection Turn-on
Automatically determine whether or not to turn on protection for newly installed apps

Protect Call History — Protection not turned on

Protect Contacts — Protection not turned on

Protect Messages — Protection not turned on

Protect Events — Protection not turned on

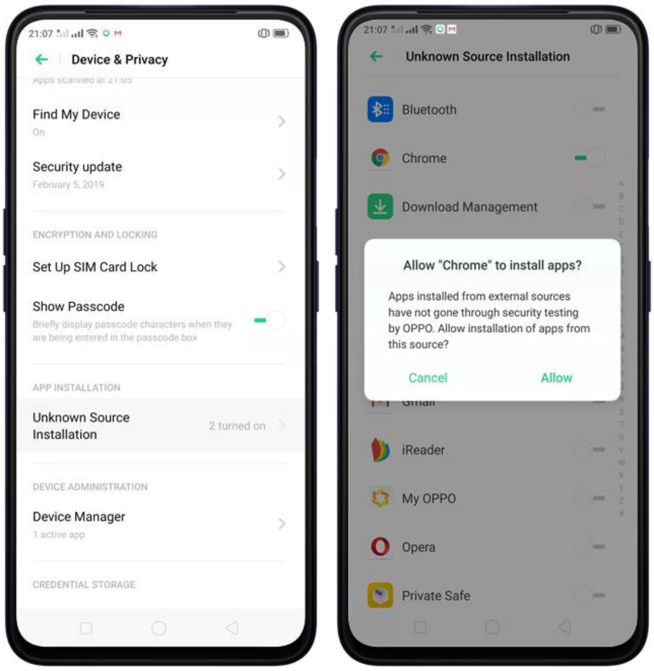
8.2. Device administration

8.2.1. Allow and install apps from unknown sources

Install apps from unknown sources. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Device & Privacy]** and tap **[Apps Installed from Unknown Sources]**.

Switch the sliders to green if you want to install apps from these sources then tap **Allow**. For example, if you want to install apps downloaded from Chrome, then enable Chrome.

Note: Installing apps from unknown sources means that you are now responsible for your phone's safety. Don't ever install any apps unless you are absolutely sure that it is not a malware.


21:07
Device & Privacy
Apps scanned at 21:05

Find My Device
On

Security update
February 5, 2019

ENCRYPTION AND LOCKING
Set Up SIM Card Lock

Show Passcode
Briefly display passcode characters when they are being entered in the passcode box

APP INSTALLATION

Unknown Source Installation — 2 turned on

DEVICE ADMINISTRATION

Device Manager
1 active app

CREDENTIAL STORAGE
21:07
Unknown Source Installation
Bluetooth
Chrome
Download Management
Gmail
iReader
My OPPO
Opera
Private Safe

Allow "Chrome" to install apps?

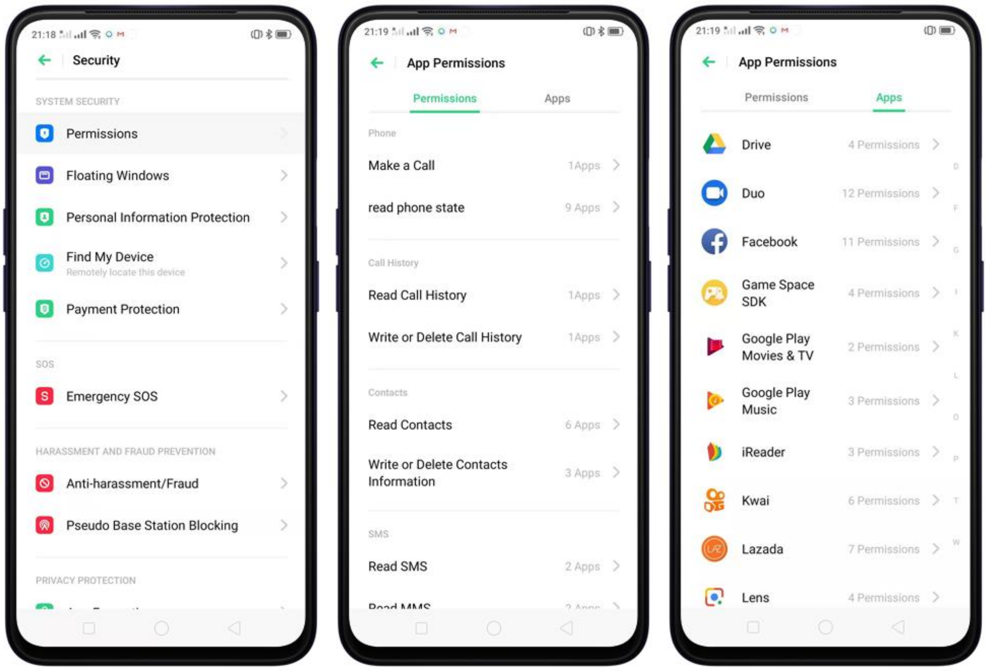
Apps installed from external sources have not gone through security testing by OPPO. Allow installation of apps from this source?

Cancel
Allow

8.2.2. App permissions

Every application installed on your device may require certain data or access to your phone's other features (mic, camera, etc.). To check and manage what an app is trying to access, do the following:

Check all permission details. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[Permissions]**. You will find all the permission categories on your phone. Tap "Apps" to view apps installed on your phone and the permission groups an app has.


21:18
Security
SYSTEM SECURITY
Permissions
Floating Windows
Personal Information Protection
Find My Device
Remotely locate this device
Payment Protection
SOS
Emergency SOS
HARASSMENT AND FRAUD PREVENTION
Anti-harassment/Fraud
Pseudo Base Station Blocking
PRIVACY PROTECTION
21:19
App Permissions
Permissions
Apps
Phone
Make a Call
1Apps
read phone state
9 Apps
Call History
Read Call History
1Apps
Write or Delete Call History
1Apps
Contacts
Read Contacts
6 Apps
Write or Delete Contacts Information
3 Apps
SMS
Read SMS
2 Apps
21:19
App Permissions
Permissions
Apps
Drive
4 Permissions
Duo
12 Permissions
Facebook
11 Permissions
Game Space SDK
4 Permissions
Google Play Movies & TV
2 Permissions
Google Play Music
3 Permissions
iReader
3 Permissions
Kwai
6 Permissions
Lazada
7 Permissions
Lens
4 Permissions

Change the permission. You can go through each permission or app on your phone and, with full control, allow, forbid or limit each permission according to your requirements.

- **Allow**: Always allow the app to use the required permissions.
- **Forbid**: Disable the required permissions completely for the app.
- **Ask**: Every time you start the app, it asks you to grant the permissions that are required.

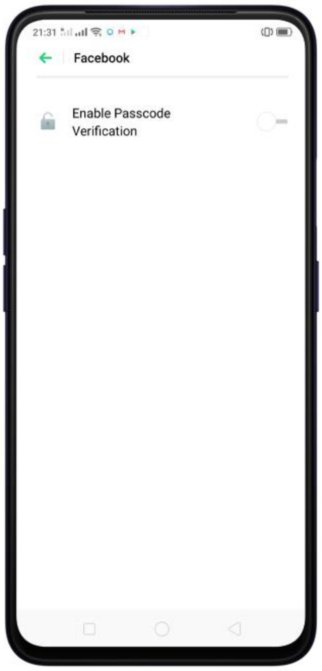
8.2.3. Hide Home Screen Icon

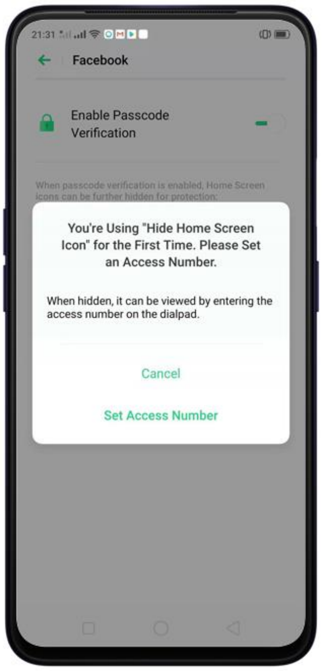
Without deleting the app from your phone, you can simply hide the app icons from the Home Screen.

Before you can hide Home Screen icons, you must first setup Privacy Lock.

Hide Home Screen icon. After encrypting the apps, do the following:

1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[App Encryption]**, then enter the verification passcode to enter the App Encryption screen.
2. Tap an app, turn on **[Start Passcode Verification]**, then turn on **[Hide Home Screen icon]**.
3. A pop-up message will display on the screen to ask you to set an access number. You can open the hidden applications by dialing the number. This message will only pop up when you use the hidden feature for the first time. Tap **Set Access Number**.
4. Set a number that starts and ends with "#" and contains one to sixteen characters, then tap **Done**.


Facebook
Enable Passcode Verification

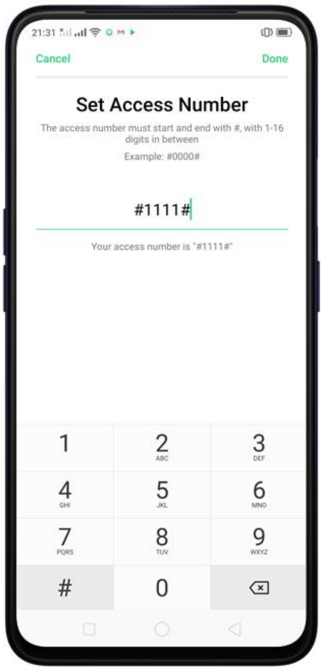

Facebook
Enable Passcode Verification

When passcode verification is enabled, Home Screen icons can be further hidden for protection:

You're Using "Hide Home Screen Icon" for the First Time. Please Set an Access Number.

When hidden, it can be viewed by entering the access number on the dialpad.

Cancel
Set Access Number


Cancel
Done
Set Access Number

The access number must start and end with #, with 1-16 digits in between

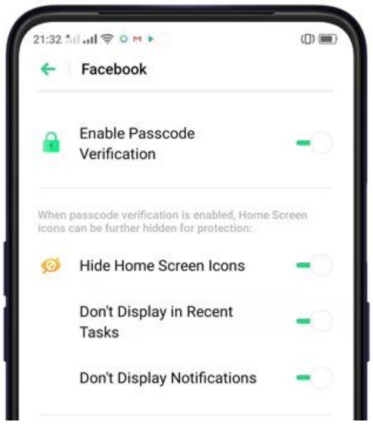
Example: #0000#

#1111#

Your access number is "#1111#"

1
2 ABC
3 DEF
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
#
0

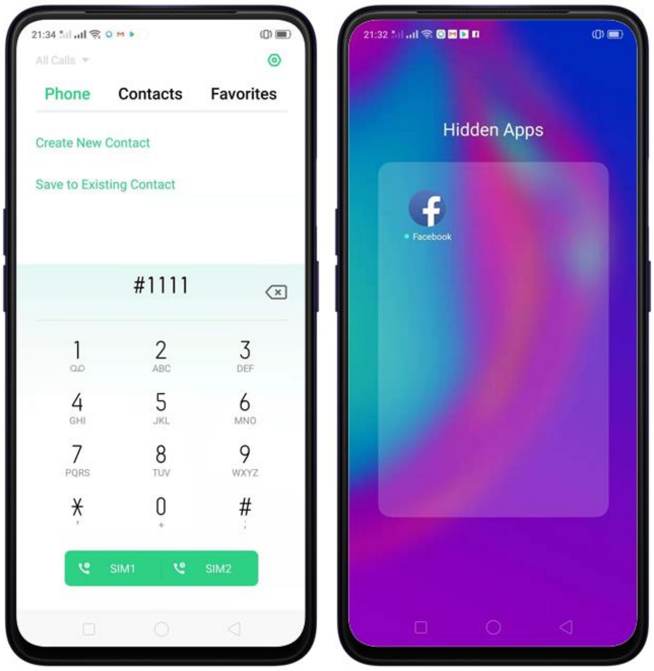
5. You can also set the hidden app not to display in Recent Tasks, or disable its notifications.


Facebook
Enable Passcode Verification

When passcode verification is enabled, Home Screen icons can be further hidden for protection:

Hide Home Screen Icons
Don't Display in Recent Tasks
Don't Display Notifications

Open hidden apps. Tap Phone, tap the keypad to enter your access number, then the Hidden Apps folder will pop-up.

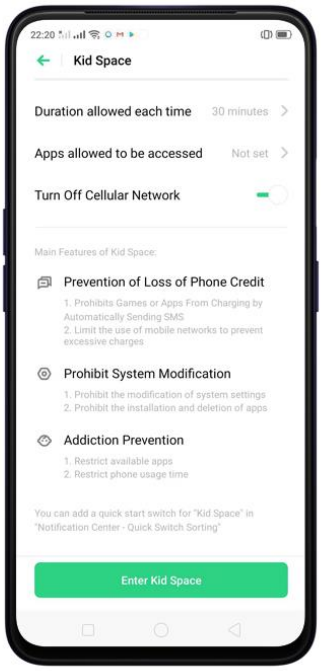

21:34
All Calls
Phone
Contacts
Favorites
Create New Contact
Save to Existing Contact
#1111
1
2 ABC
3 DEF
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
*
0 +
#
SIM1
SIM2
21:32
Hidden Apps
Facebook

Note:

- You can override encryption passcode and open hidden apps directly by dialing the access number.
- Apps that aren't displayed in Recent Tasks can be closed using the one-tap cleanup function.
- Access number can be set only once when you use the hidden feature for the first time. If you forgot the number, reset the phone to its factory settings to reset the number.

8.2.4. Kids Space

With Kids Space, parents can set limits especially for the children's use of the phone, such as setting up phone usage time and apps that are allowed to be accessed. It does a good job in charge prevention, system modification, and addiction prevention when your kids use the phone.
Set up Kids Space. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[Kids Space]**. Select the apps your kids can access, set how long they can use the phone, and choose whether to use cellular data, then tap **Enter Kids Space**.
Note: You need to turn Lock Screen passcode before you can enter Kids Space.


Kid Space

Duration allowed each time 30 minutes

Apps allowed to be accessed Not set

Turn Off Cellular Network

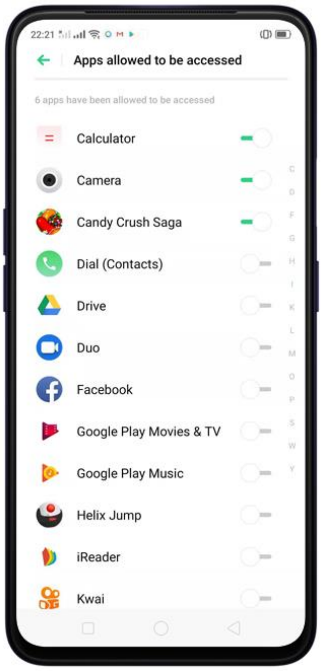
Main Features of Kid Space:

Prevention of Loss of Phone Credit
1. Prohibits Games or Apps From Charging by Automatically Sending SMS
2. Limit the use of mobile networks to prevent excessive charges

Prohibit System Modification
1. Prohibit the modification of system settings
2. Prohibit the installation and deletion of apps

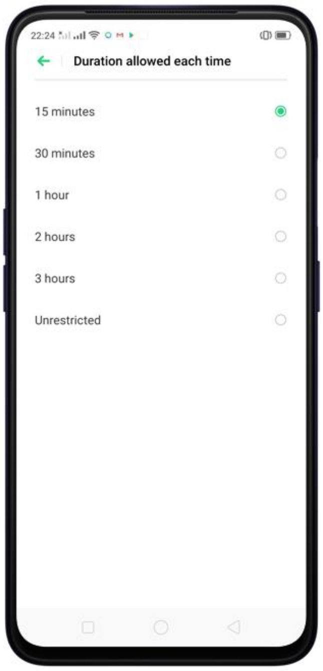
Addiction Prevention
1. Restrict available apps
2. Restrict phone usage time

You can add a quick start switch for "Kid Space" in "Notification Center - Quick Switch Sorting"


Apps allowed to be accessed

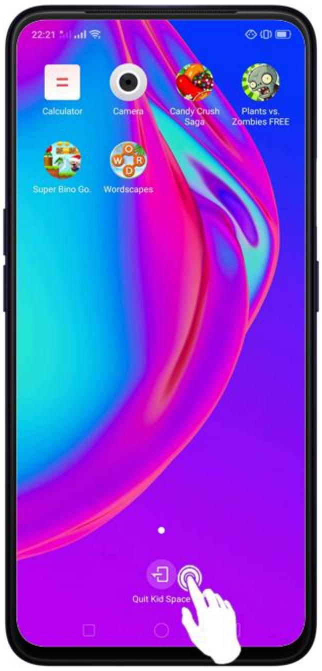
6 apps have been allowed to be accessed

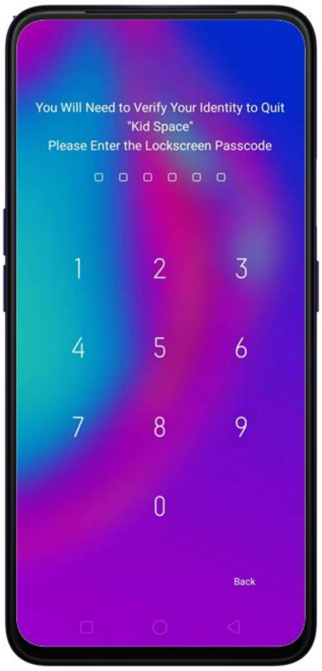
Calculator
Camera
Candy Crush Saga
Dial (Contacts)
Drive
Duo
Facebook
Google Play Movies & TV
Google Play Music
Helix Jump
iReader
Kwai


Duration allowed each time

15 minutes ●
30 minutes ○
1 hour ○
2 hours ○
3 hours ○
Unrestricted ○

Quit Kids Space. When the duration of time you set ends, your phone will alert you and lock the screen after 30 seconds, or you can quit Kids Space at any time by tapping **Quit Kids Space** at the bottom of the screen. Input your fingerprint or Lock Screen passcode to return to the normal mode.

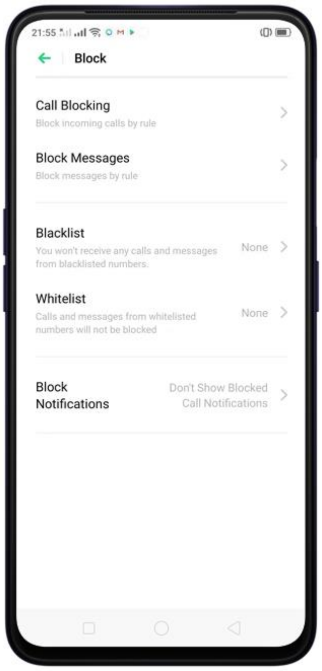



You Will Need to Verify Your Identity to Quit "Kid Space"
Please Enter the Lockscreen Passcode

8.2.5. Block unwanted calls and messages

Block feature helps you to prevent unwanted phone calls and messages from reaching you. You can also add numbers to blacklist or to block specific phone numbers, or add numbers to whitelist to allow their calls to come through all the time.

Block calls and messages. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[Anti-harassment/Fraud]**, or go to **[Settings] > [Call]** > **[Block]**, or go to **[Settings] > [Messages]** > **[Block]**.



21:55

Block

Call Blocking
Block incoming calls by rule

Block Messages
Block messages by rule

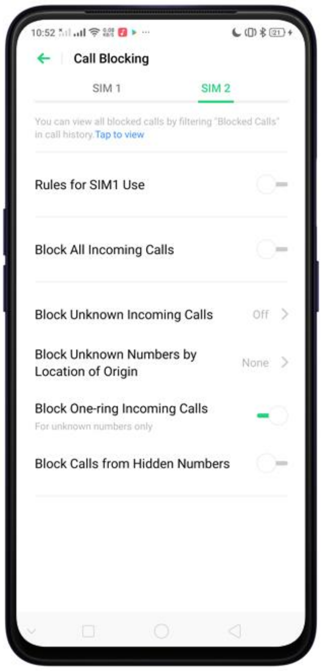
Blacklist
You won't receive any calls and messages from blacklisted numbers.
None

Whitelist
Calls and messages from whitelisted numbers will not be blocked
None

Block Notifications
Don't Show Blocked Call Notifications

- **Block Calls**: Choose the options available for blocking incoming calls. See [Block calls](#).

- **Block Messages**: You can block all unknown messages, or block specific spam messages by entering the keywords.



10:52

Call Blocking

SIM 1 SIM 2

You can view all blocked calls by filtering "Blocked Calls" in call history. Tap to view

Rules for SIM1 Use

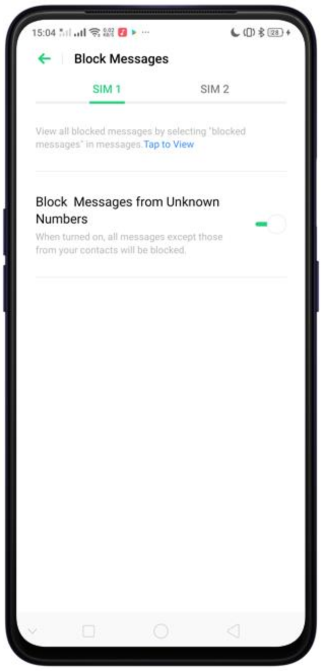
Block All Incoming Calls

Block Unknown Incoming Calls
Off

Block Unknown Numbers by Location of Origin
None

Block One-ring Incoming Calls
For unknown numbers only

Block Calls from Hidden Numbers



15:04

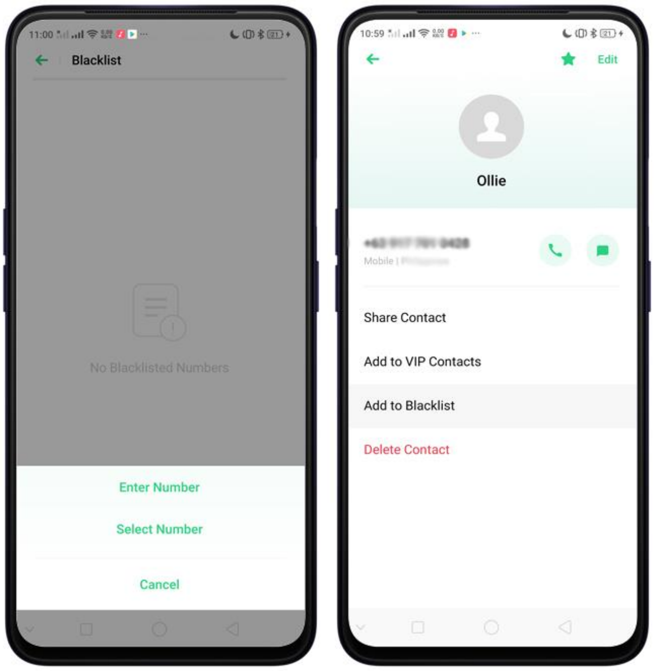
Block Messages

SIM 1 SIM 2

View all blocked messages by selecting "blocked messages" in messages. Tap to View

Block Messages from Unknown Numbers
When turned on, all messages except those from your contacts will be blocked.

Add a contact or a phone number to the blacklist. Tap Blacklist, tap + Add, then enter the number or choose your contacts. Or open a caller's contact card in Contacts, then tap Add to Blacklist.


Blacklist
No Blacklisted Numbers
Enter Number
Select Number
Cancel
Edit
Ollie
Mobile
Share Contact
Add to VIP Contacts
Add to Blacklist
Delete Contact

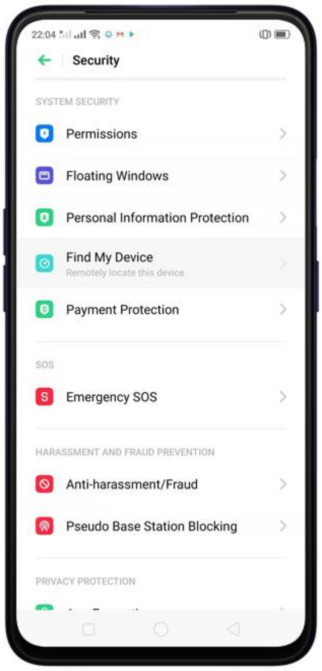
Add a contact or a phone number to the whitelist. Tap Whitelist, tap + Add, then enter the number or choose your contacts. Calls and messages from these numbers will not be blocked.

8.2.6. Find my device

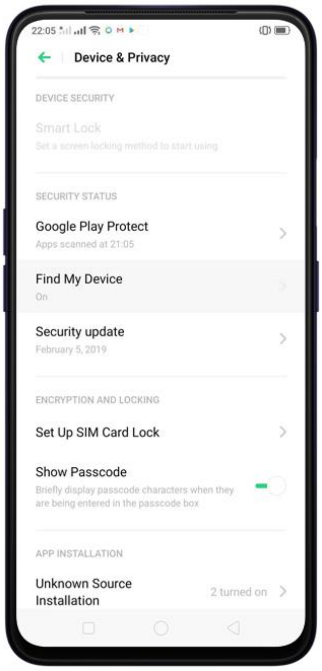
If for some reason you left, lost and forgotten your phone or was stolen, Google Find My Device will help you locate your device remotely. In order for it to work, you need to sign in your Google account and turn on Location Service on your phone.

Activate and use Find my Device

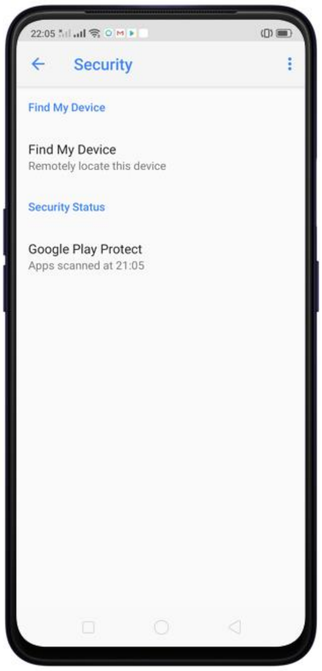
There are three ways you can do this on your phone.
1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Security**] > and tap **Find My Device.** Switch the slider to blue.


22:04
Security
SYSTEM SECURITY
Permissions
Floating Windows
Personal Information Protection
Find My Device
Remotely locate this device
Payment Protection
SOS
Emergency SOS
HARASSMENT AND FRAUD PREVENTION
Anti-harassment/Fraud
Pseudo Base Station Blocking
PRIVACY PROTECTION

2. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Additional Settings**] > [**Device and Privacy**] and tap **Find My Device**. Switch the slider to blue.


22:05
Device & Privacy
DEVICE SECURITY
Smart Lock
Set a screen locking method to start using
SECURITY STATUS
Google Play Protect
Apps scanned at 21:05
Find My Device
On
Security update
February 5, 2019
ENCRYPTION AND LOCKING
Set Up SIM Card Lock
Show Passcode
Briefly display passcode characters when they are being entered in the passcode box
APP INSTALLATION
Unknown Source Installation
2 turned on

3. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Google**] > [**Security**] and tap **Find My Device**. Switch the slider to blue.



22:05

Security

Find My Device

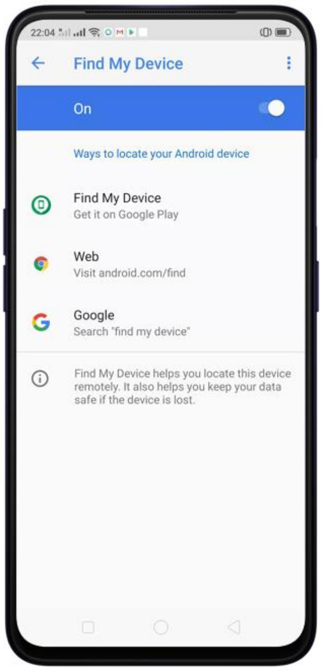
Find My Device
Remotely locate this device

Security Status

Google Play Protect
Apps scanned at 21:05

Note: You can choose from any the options above to activate Find My Device.

On the **Find My Device** page, it will show you ways on how to locate the phone using any android devices.



22:04

Find My Device

On

Ways to locate your Android device

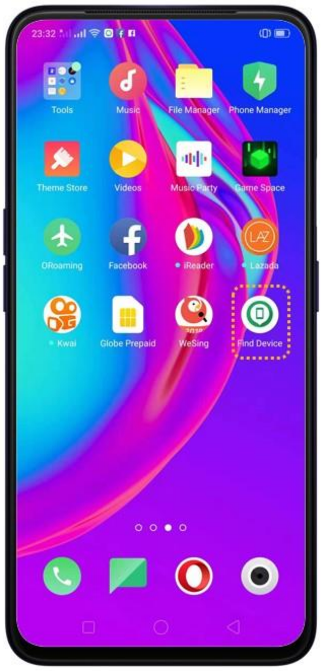
Find My Device
Get it on Google Play

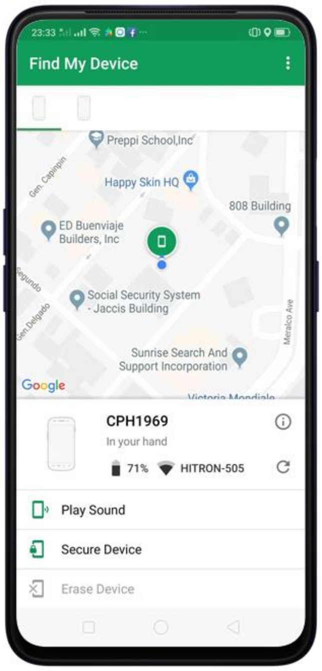
Web
Visit android.com/find

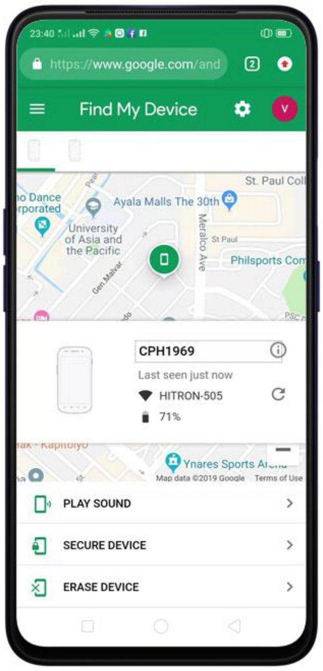
Google
Search "find my device"

Find My Device helps you locate this device remotely. It also helps you keep your data safe if the device is lost.

- Tap **Find My Device** to download or open the app
- Tap **Web** to direct you to android.com/find
- Tap **Google** to direct you to “Find my device” page


23:32
Tools
Music
File Manager
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Videos
Music Party
Game Space
ORoaming
Facebook
iReader
Lazada
Kwai
Globe Prepaid
WeSing
Find Device


23:33
Find My Device
Preppi School,Inc
Happy Skin HQ
808 Building
ED Buenviaje Builders, Inc
Social Security System - Jaccis Building
Sunrise Search And Support Incorporation
Google
CPH1969
In your hand
71%
HITRON-505
Play Sound
Secure Device
Erase Device


23:40
https://www.google.com/and
Find My Device
Ayala Malls The 30th
St. Paul Coll
University of Asia and the Pacific
Philsports Com
CPH1969
Last seen just now
HITRON-505
71%
Ynares Sports Arena
Map data ©2019 Google
Terms of Use
PLAY SOUND
SECURE DEVICE
ERASE DEVICE

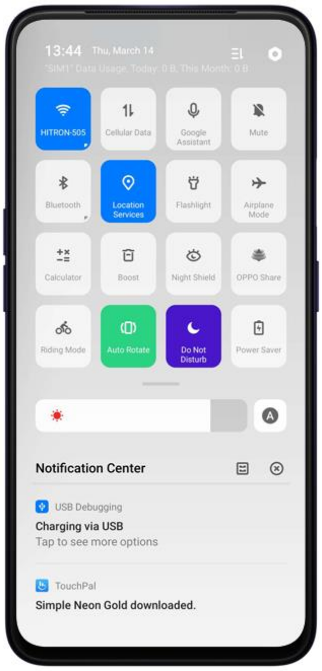
You can remotely secure device by playing a sound and adding a message or a phone number where you can be reached. You can also remotely erase your data.

8.3. Privacy

8.3.1. Location Service

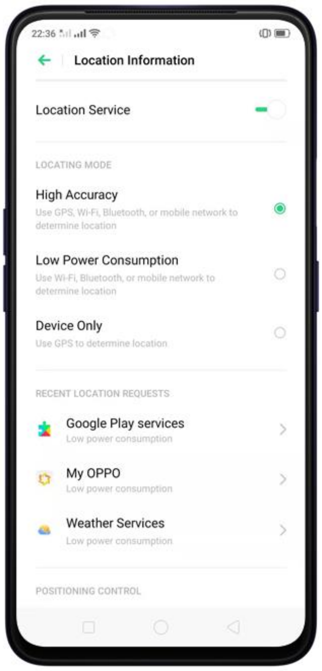
Apps like Maps, Weather, and Compass must know your exact position before it can provide accurate services and results.

Turn on Location Service. Swipe down from the top of the screen to open Control Center, then tap 📍. You can also go to **[Settings]** > **[Google]** > **[Location]** and toggle the slider to green.


13:44 Thu, March 14
"SIM1" Data Usage, Today: 0 B, This Month: 0 B
HITRON-505
Cellular Data
Google Assistant
Mute
Bluetooth
Location Services
Flashlight
Airplane Mode
Calculator
Boost
Night Shield
OPPO Share
Riding Mode
Auto Rotate
Do Not Disturb
Power Saver
Notification Center

USB Debugging
Charging via USB
Tap to see more options

TouchPal
Simple Neon Gold downloaded.


22:36
Location Information

Location Service ●

LOCATING MODE

High Accuracy ●
Use GPS, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, or mobile network to determine location

Low Power Consumption ○
Use Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, or mobile network to determine location

Device Only ○
Use GPS to determine location

RECENT LOCATION REQUESTS

Google Play services
Low power consumption

My OPPO
Low power consumption

Weather Services
Low power consumption

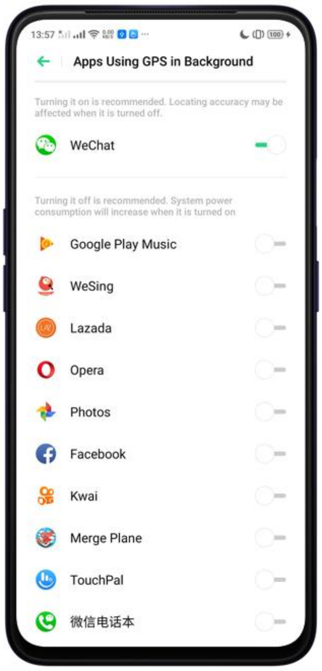
POSITIONING CONTROL

You can choose from three types of **positioning modes**, which differ in accuracy and battery drain:

1. **High accuracy** (GPS, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and mobile network).
2. **Battery saving** (Wi-Fi, Bluetooth and mobile network).
3. **Device only** (GPS).

A history of recent location requests. You'll see a list of apps that have requested location. Tap an app to enter the App info page that allows you to manage the app directly.

Apps that use GPS in the background. Turn the slider to green if you allow the app to use GPS in the background. Keeping background GPS of the apps active may drain the battery significantly.



13:57

Apps Using GPS in Background

Turning it on is recommended. Locating accuracy may be affected when it is turned off.

WeChat

Turning it off is recommended. System power consumption will increase when it is turned on

Google Play Music
WeSing
Lazada
Opera
Photos
Facebook
Kwai
Merge Plane
TouchPal
微信电话本

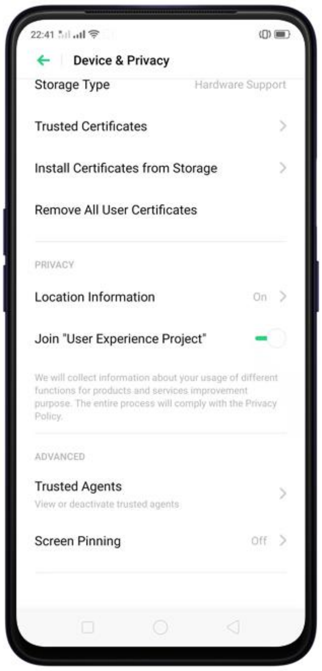
Google Location service

- Use **Google Location History** to retrace your steps. Google Location History will customize search results for location and search history.
- Use **Google Location Sharing** to share your locations with friends and contacts in real time.

8.3.2. Join User Experience Project

“User Experience Project” is a continuous plan to improve OPPO products, features, and services. You are free to decide whether to join the project or not. If you agree to join, we will collect the related data of your usage to OPPO products, features**,** and services, then conduct research and analysis of these information to provide you a better user experience. We will not collect any of your private information in this process.

Join User Experience Project. The first time you switch your OPPO phone on, it will prompt you to join User Experience Project, or you can go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Device & Privacy]** and switch **[Join “User Experience Project”]** slider to green.



Storage Type Hardware Support

Trusted Certificates

Install Certificates from Storage

Remove All User Certificates

PRIVACY

Location Information On

Join "User Experience Project"

We will collect information about your usage of different functions for products and services improvement purpose. The entire process will comply with the Privacy Policy.

ADVANCED

Trusted Agents
View or deactivate trusted agents

Screen Pinning Off

8.3.3. Privacy Protecting and Security Warning

The phone provides several measures in place to protect your privacy and security.

Privacy protecting

When you're typing with Secure Keyboard, viewing Private Safe, or using other privacy-related features, you will not be able to capture or record the screen. If you try to capture the screen, the phone will alert you "Cannot capture screenshot. The page contains personal information." If you try to record the screen, you will only record a black screen.

Security warning

Some Android malware can spy on your activities in the background and can take pictures or make recordings without notifying you, resulting in leaking of the information. With Security Warning function, your phone will remind you every time the malware performs these activities.

Prevent apps from taking pictures in the background. A warning window will pop up on your phone screen.

Prevent apps from making recordings in the background. If any app starts the sound recorder, the status bar turns red.

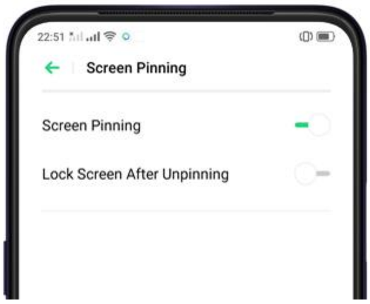
8.4. Advanced

8.4.1. Screen pinning

Screen Pinning temporally restricts the user from leaving the app or tasks or being interrupted by notifications. Once your app activates Screen Spinning, your phone is restricted to only display interface of this app, you cannot see notifications, access other apps, or return to the Home Screen, until your app exits this mode.

Activate Screen Pinning

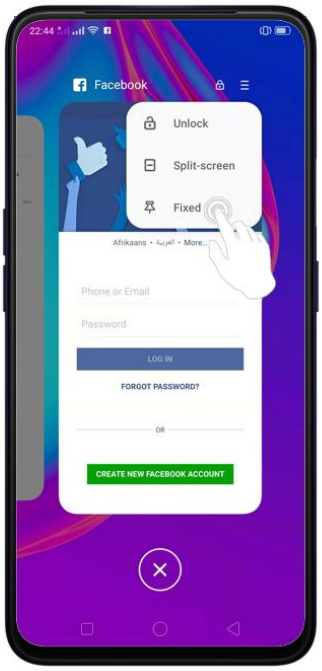
Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Device & Privacy]**, scroll to the bottom of the screen and turn on [**Screen Pinning]**.

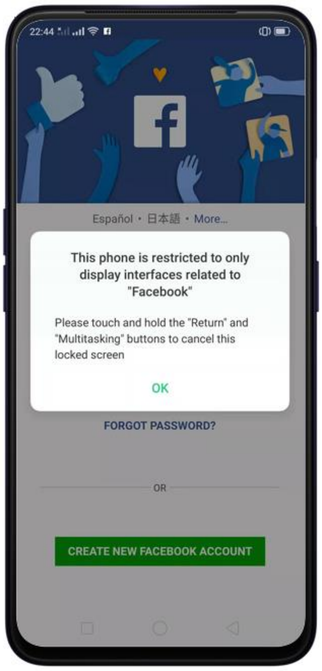

22:51
Screen Pinning

Screen Pinning: on

Lock Screen After Unpinning: off

Open the app you want to pin and tap the **Multitasking** button to access the multitasking tray. Tap 📌 icon to pin the app to your phone screen**.**

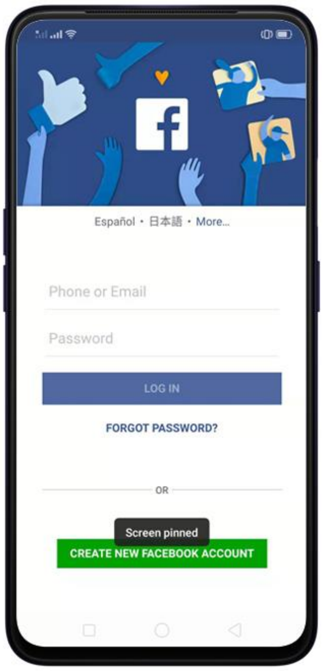

22:44
Facebook
Unlock
Split-screen
Fixed
Afrikaans • العربية • More...
Phone or Email
Password
LOG IN
FORGOT PASSWORD?
OR
CREATE NEW FACEBOOK ACCOUNT


22:44
Español • 日本語 • More...

This phone is restricted to only display interfaces related to "Facebook"

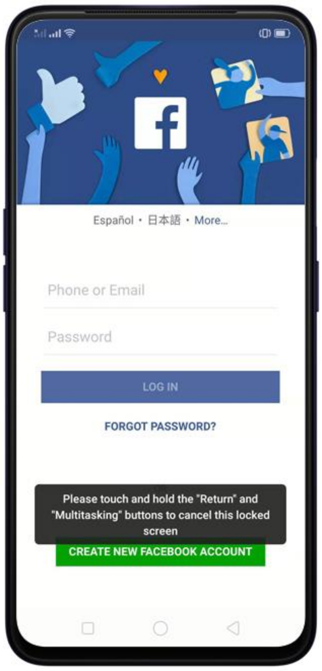
Please touch and hold the "Return" and "Multitasking" buttons to cancel this locked screen

OK
FORGOT PASSWORD?
OR
CREATE NEW FACEBOOK ACCOUNT

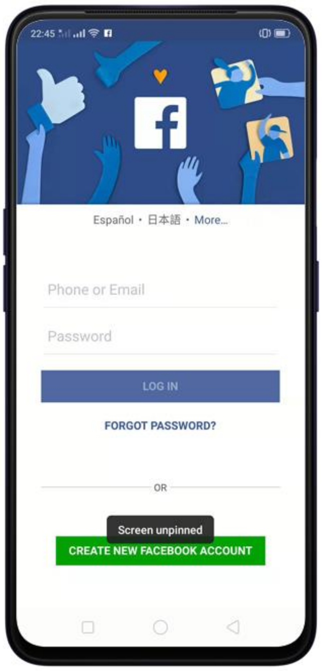

Español • 日本語 • More...
Phone or Email
Password
LOG IN
FORGOT PASSWORD?
OR
CREATE NEW FACEBOOK ACCOUNT

Screen pinned

Unpin the screen. Touch and hold the **Return and Multitasking** button until you see "**Screen Unpinned**".

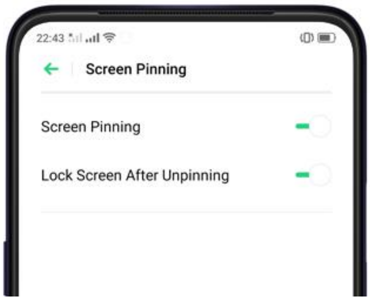

Español • 日本語 • More...
Phone or Email
Password
LOG IN
FORGOT PASSWORD?
CREATE NEW FACEBOOK ACCOUNT

Please touch and hold the "Return" and "Multitasking" buttons to cancel this locked screen


22:45
Español • 日本語 • More...
Phone or Email
Password
LOG IN
FORGOT PASSWORD?
OR
CREATE NEW FACEBOOK ACCOUNT

Screen unpinned

If you want to lock the phone screen directly when unpinning the screen, switch the **[Lock device when unpinning]** slider to green.


22:43
Screen Pinning

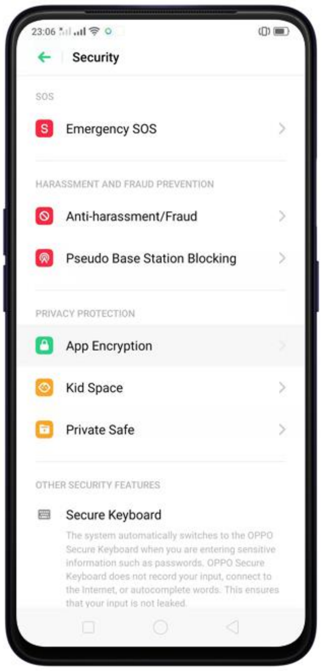
Screen Pinning ●
Lock Screen After Unpinning ●

8.5. App Encryption

If you want to fully secure your personal apps it is always best to encrypt them. This is to prevent theft of private data.

How to encrypt apps

Go to [Settings] > **[Security]** > **[App Encryption]** then select the apps that you would like to be encrypted, then tap **Enable Encryption.**

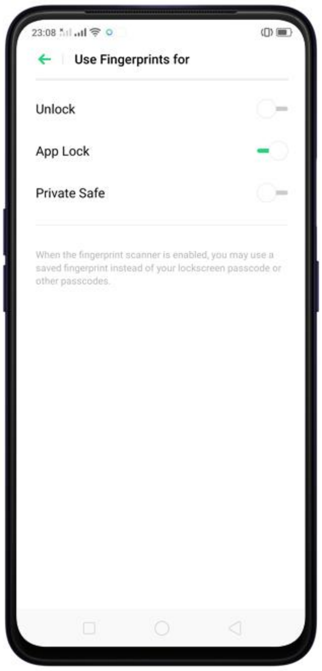

23:06
Security
SOS
Emergency SOS
HARASSMENT AND FRAUD PREVENTION
Anti-harassment/Fraud
Pseudo Base Station Blocking
PRIVACY PROTECTION
App Encryption
Kid Space
Private Safe
OTHER SECURITY FEATURES
Secure Keyboard

The system automatically switches to the OPPO Secure Keyboard when you are entering sensitive information such as passwords. OPPO Secure Keyboard does not record your input, connect to the Internet, or autocomplete words. This ensures that your input is not leaked.

You will be asked to set the Privacy Passcode first. Apart from the 4 numerical method, you can also choose from **Pattern Passcode** and **Custom Alphanumeric Passcode.** Just tap **Other Methods** to be given this option.

After successfully setting a passcode, you will be asked to set a security question. This can you help you reset the passcode when you forget it. You can also customize a question, then tap **Done.**

If you want to use fingerprint to encrypt apps, go to **[Settings] > [Fingerprint, Face &Passcode] > [Use fingerprints for]** then choose App Lock.



Use Fingerprints for

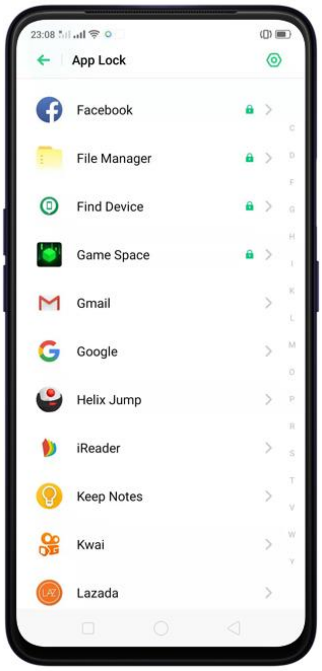
Unlock ○

App Lock ●

Private Safe ○

When the fingerprint scanner is enabled, you may use a saved fingerprint instead of your lockscreen passcode or other passcodes.

You will see a padlock on apps that you have encrypted.



App Lock

- Facebook 🔒
- File Manager 🔒
- Find Device 🔒
- Game Space 🔒
- Gmail
- Google
- Helix Jump
- iReader
- Keep Notes
- Kwai
- Lazada

Hide Apps from the Home Screen

You can also hide the app on the homescreen and can only be viewed when entering the access number on the dial pad. It can be opened without encryption passcode verification. See Hide apps from Home Screen

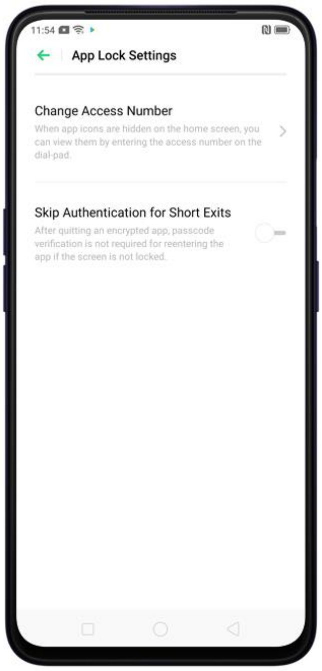
Managing encrypted apps

Go to [Settings] > [Security] > [App Lock] then tap ⚙ on the right top corner of the screen. You will be given options to manage the following:

- Change verification passcode
- Modify the security question
- Change access number

You can also enable the following:

- Use fingerprint for app encryption
- Skip authentication for short exits



Change Access Number

When app icons are hidden on the home screen, you can view them by entering the access number on the dial-pad.

Skip Authentication for Short Exits

After quitting an encrypted app, passcode verification is not required for reentering the app if the screen is not locked.

9. Share Internet connection and files

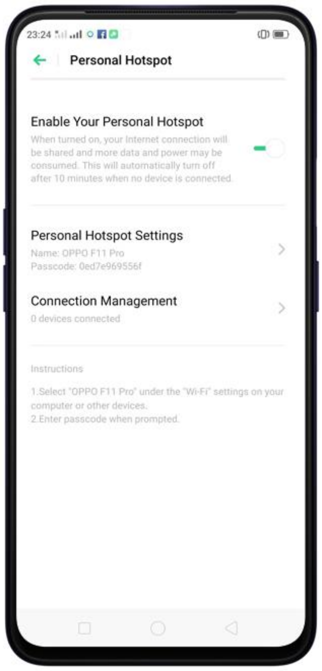
9.1.1. Tether your phone's Internet connection

Using tethering can make you share your phone's Internet connection with several devices, such as your computer, tablet or other gadgets. Tethering works when your phone is connected to the Internet via mobile data or Wi-Fi network.

Turn your phone into a personal hotspot

1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Other Wireless Connections]** > **[Personal Hotspot]**, then switch the slider to green.
2. Set the hotspot name and password.
3. On another device, choose your hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.

Note: When a device is connected, a blue band appears at the top of the phone screen.



Enable Your Personal Hotspot

When turned on, your Internet connection will be shared and more data and power may be consumed. This will automatically turn off after 10 minutes when no device is connected.

Personal Hotspot Settings

Name: OPPO F11 Pro

Passcode: 0ed7e969556f

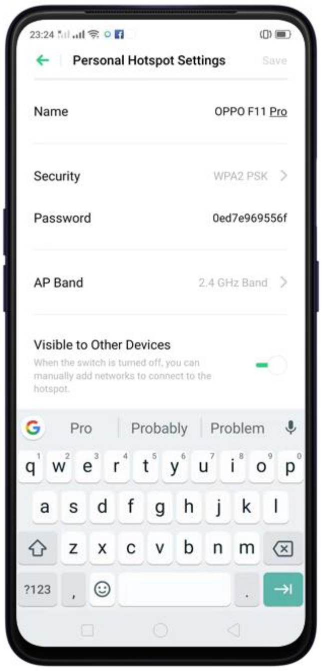
Connection Management

0 devices connected

Instructions

1.Select "OPPO F11 Pro" under the "Wi-Fi" settings on your computer or other devices.

2.Enter passcode when prompted.



Name: OPPO F11 Pro

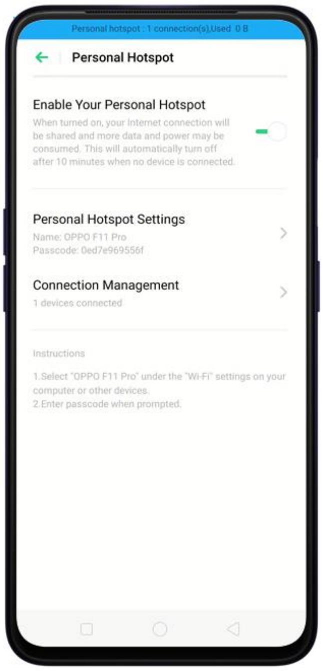
Security: WPA2 PSK

Password: 0ed7e969556f

AP Band: 2.4 GHz Band

Visible to Other Devices

When the switch is turned off, you can manually add networks to connect to the hotspot.



Personal hotspot : 1 connection(s),Used 0 B

Enable Your Personal Hotspot

When turned on, your Internet connection will be shared and more data and power may be consumed. This will automatically turn off after 10 minutes when no device is connected.

Personal Hotspot Settings

Name: OPPO F11 Pro

Passcode: 0ed7e969556f

Connection Management

1 devices connected

Instructions

1.Select "OPPO F11 Pro" under the "Wi-Fi" settings on your computer or other devices.

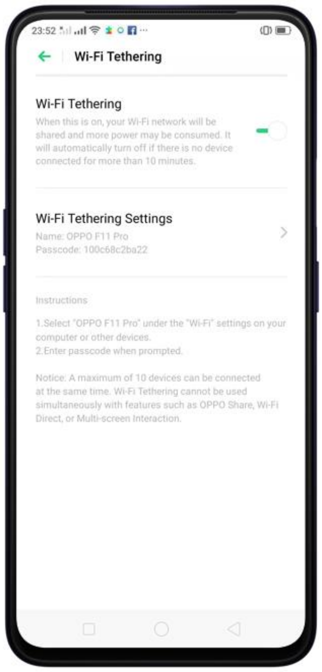
2.Enter passcode when prompted.

Use Wi-Fi Tethering

This makes your phone as a Wi-Fi router which basically has the same functionality to that of a traditional router which enables the sharing of internet to other Wi-Fi devices. See Tether your phone’s internet connection.

Use Wi-Fi Tethering

1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Other Wireless Connections**] > and enable [**Wi-Fi Tethering**].
2. In [**Wi-Fi Tethering Settings**] you can change the name, manage security, and input passcode. Also, when **Visible to other Devices** is turned off, you can manually add networks to connect to the hotspot.



Wi-Fi Tethering

When this is on, your Wi-Fi network will be shared and more power may be consumed. It will automatically turn off if there is no device connected for more than 10 minutes.

Wi-Fi Tethering Settings

Name: OPPO F11 Pro

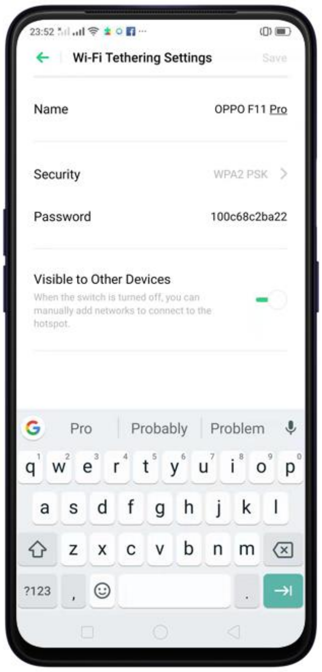
Passcode: 100c68c2ba22

Instructions

1.Select "OPPO F11 Pro" under the "Wi-Fi" settings on your computer or other devices.

2.Enter passcode when prompted.

Notice: A maximum of 10 devices can be connected at the same time. Wi-Fi Tethering cannot be used simultaneously with features such as OPPO Share, Wi-Fi Direct, or Multi-screen Interaction.



Name: OPPO F11 Pro

Security: WPA2 PSK

Password: 100c68c2ba22

Visible to Other Devices

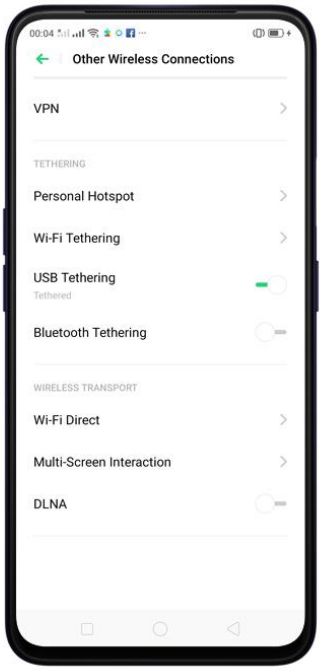
When the switch is turned off, you can manually add networks to connect to the hotspot.

Note: Wi-Fi Tethering will automatically turn off if no device is connected for more than 10 minutes. This is to save energy. A maximum of 10 devices can be connected but cannot be used simultaneously with features such as OPPO Share, Wi-Fi Direct, or Multi-screen Interaction.

Use USB Tethering.

1. Connect your phone to your computer using the cable that came with it.
2. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Other Wireless Connections]** > **[USB Tethering]**, then switch the slider to green.

3. In your computer's Network preferences, choose your OPPO phone, then configure the network settings.



00:04

Other Wireless Connections

VPN

TETHERING

Personal Hotspot

Wi-Fi Tethering

USB Tethering
Tethered

Bluetooth Tethering

WIRELESS TRANSPORT

Wi-Fi Direct

Multi-Screen Interaction

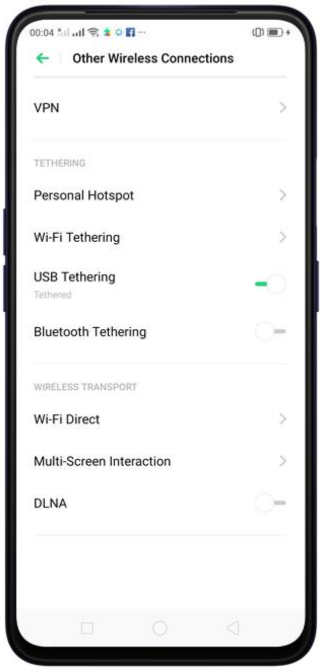
DLNA

Tether via Bluetooth

1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Other Wireless Connections]** and enable **[Bluetooth Tethering]**.

2. **In [Settings]** > **[Bluetooth]**, pair and connect your phone with your Bluetooth device.

3. Tap ⓘ next to the device's name, then enable either **Internet Access** or **Contact Sharing**.



Other Wireless Connections

VPN

TETHERING

Personal Hotspot

Wi-Fi Tethering

USB Tethering
Tethered

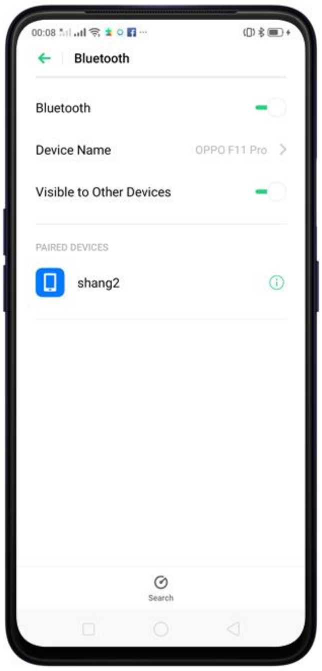
Bluetooth Tethering

WIRELESS TRANSPORT

Wi-Fi Direct

Multi-Screen Interaction

DLNA



Bluetooth

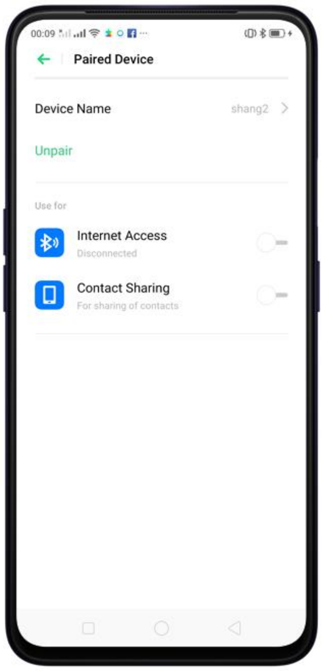
Bluetooth

Device Name: OPPO F11 Pro

Visible to Other Devices

PAIRED DEVICES

shang2



Paired Device

Device Name: shang2

Unpair

Use for

Internet Access
Disconnected

Contact Sharing
For sharing of contacts

Monitor your mobile data network usage. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Dual SIM & Cellular Data]**.

9.2. Share Files

9.2.1. Wireless file sharing

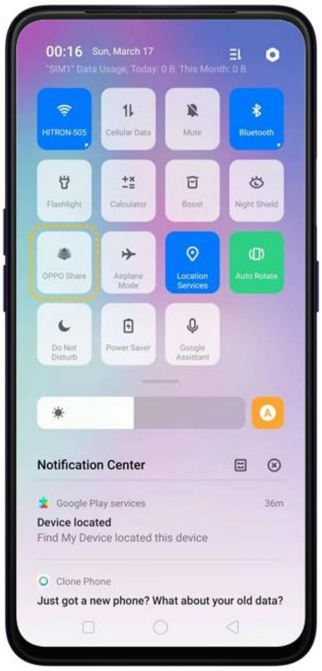
You can share files wirelessly between wireless devices.

Use OPPO share. Share files between OPPO smartphones in a flash. Very fast way.

1. Open Control Center, then turn on OPPO Share on both OPPO phones.

2. Select the files to be shared and the device to share with, tap Send, then tap the detected OPPO phone.

3. Tap Receive on the other device and start sharing.


00:16
Sun, March 17
"SIM1" Data Usage, Today: 0 B, This Month: 0 B
HITRON-505
Cellular Data
Mute
Bluetooth
Flashlight
Calculator
Boost
Night Shield
OPPO Share
Airplane Mode
Location Services
Auto Rotate
Do Not Disturb
Power Saver
Google Assistant
A
Notification Center

Google Play services 36m

Device located

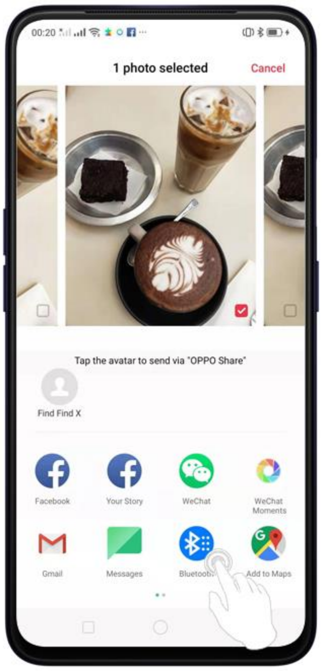
Find My Device located this device

Clone Phone

Just got a new phone? What about your old data?

Share via Bluetooth

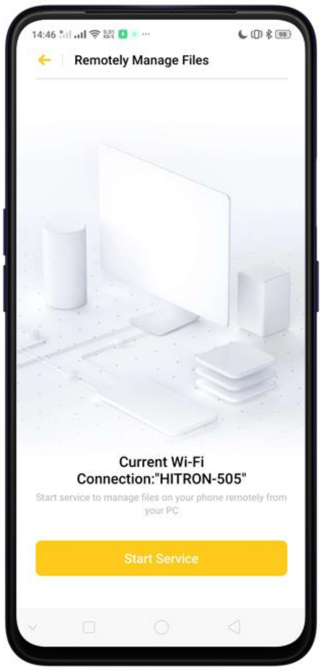
1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Bluetooth]** and enable **Bluetooth**. Then pair and connect your phone with your Bluetooth device.
2. Select the files to be shared, tap Send, then tap **Bluetooth**.
3. Tap **Accept** on your **Bluetooth** device and start sharing.


00:20
1 photo selected
Cancel
Find Find X
Facebook
Your Story
WeChat
WeChat Moments
Gmail
Messages
Bluetooth
Add to Maps

Tap the avatar to send via "OPPO Share"

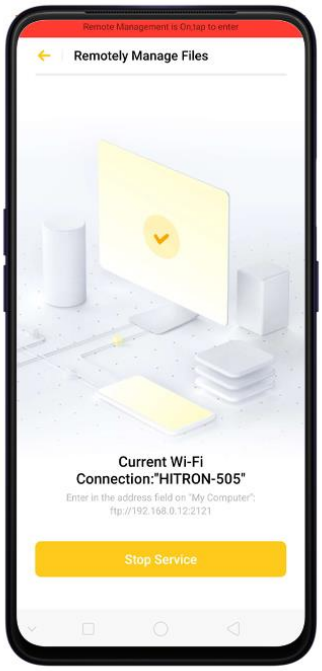
Use Remote Management to view and download files

1. Connect your phone and laptop to the same Wi-Fi network.
2. Tap Files, tap Remotely Manage Phone Files, then tap Start Service. Search the URL displayed on your phone screen with your computer, then you can view your phone's file system and download files directly to your computer.
   See Remotely Manage Phone Files.


14:46
Remotely Manage Files
Start Service

Current Wi-Fi Connection:"HITRON-505"

Start service to manage files on your phone remotely from your PC


Remote Management is On,tap to enter
Remotely Manage Files
Stop Service

Current Wi-Fi Connection:"HITRON-505"

Enter in the address field on "My Computer": ftp://192.168.0.12:2121

Wi-Fi Direct. Wi-Fi Direct allows devices to connect to each other directly through Wi-Fi, without the need of a Wi-Fi network or hotspot, and without having to set up the connection. You can also use Wi-Fi Direct to share files with the help of third-party apps, such as ZAPYA.

1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Wi-Fi]** and enable Wi-Fi.

2. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Other Wireless Connections]** > **[Wi-Fi Direct]**.

3. Tap **Search** to start scanning for nearby Wi-Fi Direct devices. After the scan, select a device, then follow the prompts to pair the devices.

Multi-screen Interaction. You can stream your phone screen to TV sets, TV Boxes, or computers which is certified with Wi-Fi Miracast technology.

Stream to computer

Note:

1. Connect your OPPO smartphone and computer to the same Wi-Fi network.

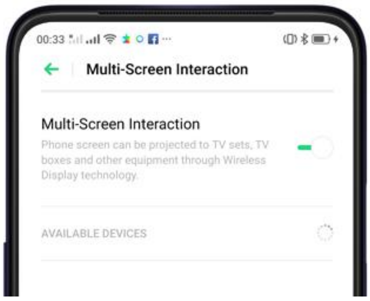
2. The function is only supported by Win 10. For Win 8 system, you can install additional software and apps like AirServer to support.

   Computer Setting

   - Go to **[Settings]** > **[System]** > **[Project onto the computer]**.
   - Allow projection on all locations and every time when a request comes.
   - Enable the PIN code and remember your computer name.

   OPPO smartphone settings

   - Go to **[Settings]** > **[Other Wireless Connections]** > **[Multi-screen Interaction]**, switch **[Multi-screen Interaction]** to green to start searching devices.
   - Select your computer name from the list and match it to your smartphone. You will see the shared screen on computer once it's connected successfully.



00:33

Multi-Screen Interaction

Multi-Screen Interaction

Phone screen can be projected to TV sets, TV boxes and other equipment through Wireless Display technology.

AVAILABLE DEVICES

Stream to TV

- Connect your OPPO smartphone and TV to the same Wi-Fi network.
- Select your TV name from the list and match it to your smartphone. You will see the shared screen on TV once it's connected successfully.
- If you want to stream the video playing on your smartphone to your TV, you can install additional apps like IQIYI to support.

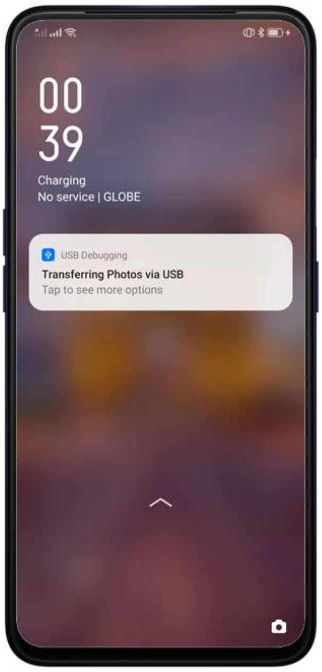
9.2.2. Wired file sharing

Transfer files between your phone and a computer

1. Connect your phone to your computer using the cable that came with it.

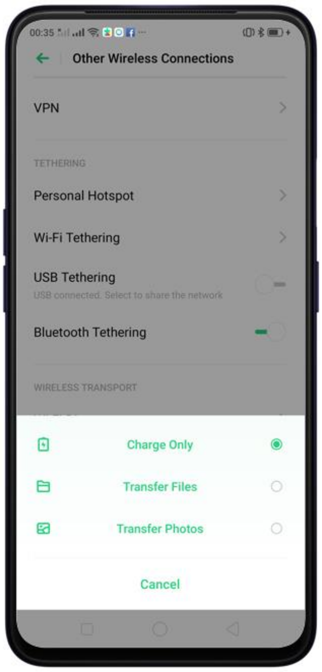
2. Tap phone’s notification, then tap File Transfer.

3. On the computer, tap your phone name, tap Internal shared storage, then you can copy phone files to the computer.



00
39
Charging
No service | GLOBE

USB Debugging
Transferring Photos via USB
Tap to see more options



00:35

Other Wireless Connections

VPN

TETHERING

Personal Hotspot

Wi-Fi Tethering

USB Tethering
USB connected. Select to share the network

Bluetooth Tethering

WIRELESS TRANSPORT

Charge Only ●

Transfer Files ○

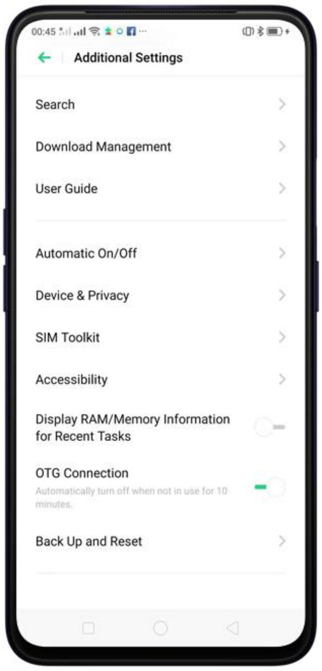
Transfer Photos ○

Cancel

Transfer files with USB OTG. You can connect and add additional storage devices or USB flash drives directly to your phone using USB OTG cable.

1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** and enable **[OTG Connection]**.

2. Connect a storage device to your phone using USB OTG cable. You can directly access data on the external storage device and play movies or music without having to store them on your device.



Additional Settings

Search

Download Management

User Guide

Automatic On/Off

Device & Privacy

SIM Toolkit

Accessibility

Display RAM/Memory Information for Recent Tasks

OTG Connection
Automatically turn off when not in use for 10 minutes.

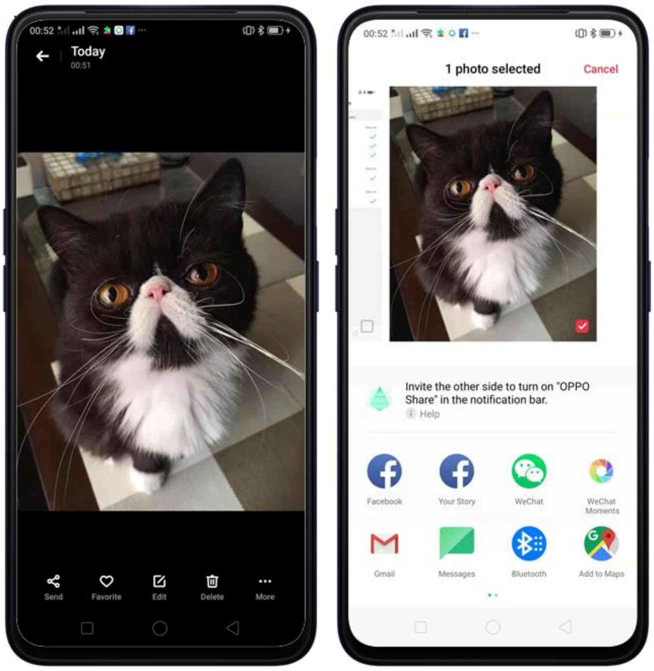
Back Up and Reset

9.2.3. Share from apps

In addition to sharing your information from the Files app, you can also share from many other apps on your OPPO smartphone.

Share from apps. In many apps, you can tap Send or Send to choose how to share your information. The choices vary depending on the app you're using. Additional options may appear if you've downloaded apps with sharing options.

Take the Photos app as an example, tap Send and you'll see all the sharing options.

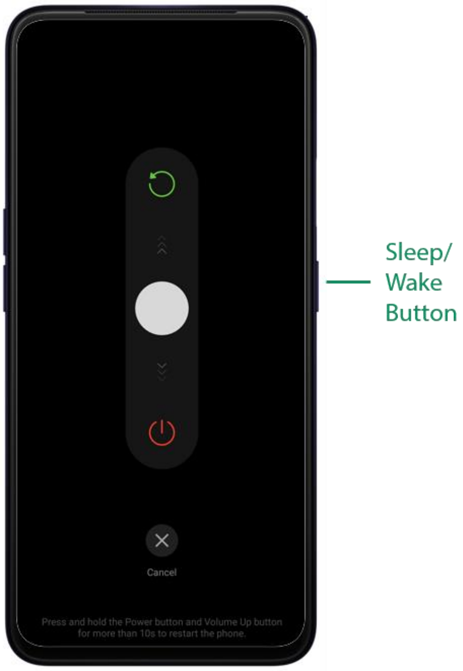

00:52
Today
00:51
Send
Favorite
Edit
Delete
More
00:52
1 photo selected
Cancel
Help
Facebook
Your Story
WeChat
WeChat Moments
Gmail
Messages
Bluetooth
Add to Maps

Invite the other side to turn on "OPPO Share" in the notification bar.

10. Restart, update, back up, and restore

10.1. Restart the phone

If something isn't working right, try restarting the phone.
Restart OPPO phone. Press and hold the Sleep/Wake button until the **Slide down to power off** message appears. Drag the power icon down to turn off the phone. To turn the phone back on, press and hold the Sleep/Wake button until you see the OPPO logo.



Press and hold the Power button and Volume Up button for more than 10s to restart the phone.

Force restart OPPO phone. If the phone is not responding, press and hold the Sleep/Wake and Volume Up buttons for at least 8 seconds until you see the OPPO logo.

10.2. Update ColorOS software

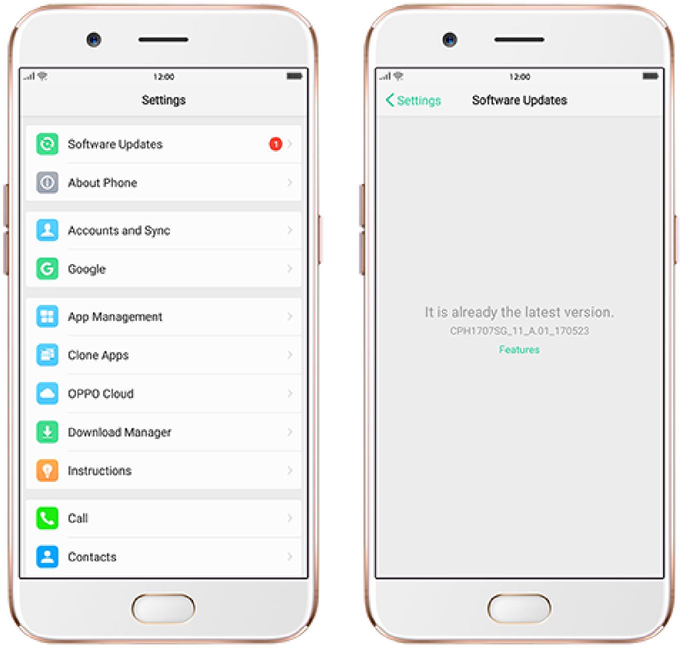
There are three ways to update your device.

Notice before doing the update.

- Plug your OPPO phone into power, or keep the battery level over 40%.
- The update process takes some time. Do not operate or power off your device during the process.
- DO NOT root the phone yourself, for that might cause damage to your system, and the warranty service will be terminated immediately.

Update your OPPO phone wirelessly

1. Connect to a working Wi-Fi or Mobile network. The system will automatically show new update if any. You can see a notification on the "System updates" icon, otherwise, it will show "It is already the latest version".

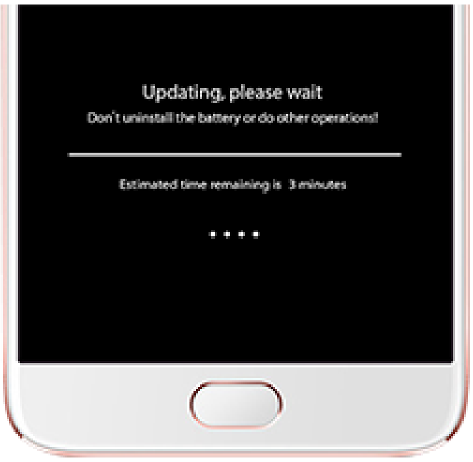

12:00
Settings
Software Updates
About Phone
Accounts and Sync
Google
App Management
Clone Apps
OPPO Cloud
Download Manager
Instructions
Call
Contacts
12:00
Settings
Software Updates
Features

It is already the latest version.

CPH1707SG_11_A.01_170523

2. Download the firmware. Download under a Wi-Fi network to avoid mobile consumption.

3. Tap **[System Updates]**. Your device will reboot and start updating, which will take a few minutes.



Updating, please wait

Don't uninstall the battery or do other operations!

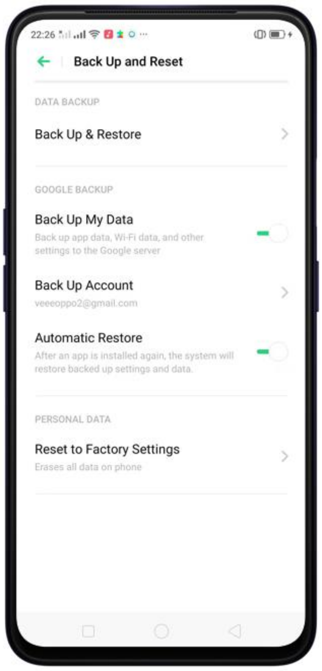
Estimated time remaining is 3 minutes

10.3. Back up and restore the phone

10.3.1.Back up your phone

If you use your device on a regular basis, having a reliable backup is essential in case something goes wrong.

Use the built-in backup tool. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Back up and reset]** and tap **[Backup & Restore]**. All your personal data, system data, and applications will be backed up to phone storage.

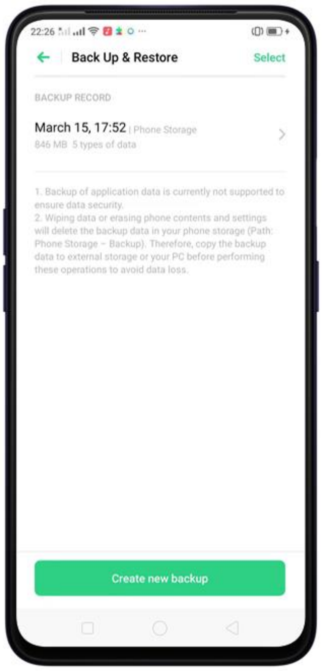

22:26
Back Up and Reset
DATA BACKUP
Back Up & Restore
GOOGLE BACKUP
Back Up My Data
Back Up Account
Automatic Restore
PERSONAL DATA
Reset to Factory Settings

Back up app data, Wi-Fi data, and other settings to the Google server

veeeoppo2@gmail.com

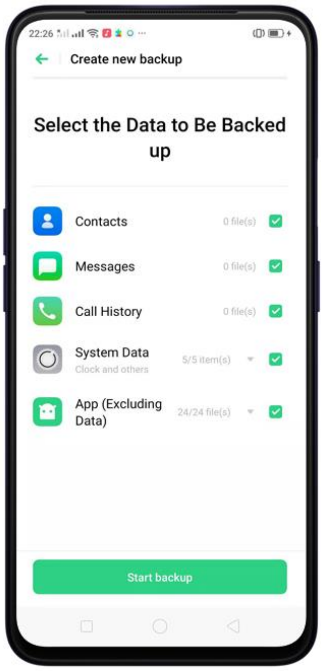
After an app is installed again, the system will restore backed up settings and data.

Erases all data on phone


22:26
Back Up & Restore
Select
BACKUP RECORD
Create new backup

March 15, 17:52 | Phone Storage
846 MB 5 types of data

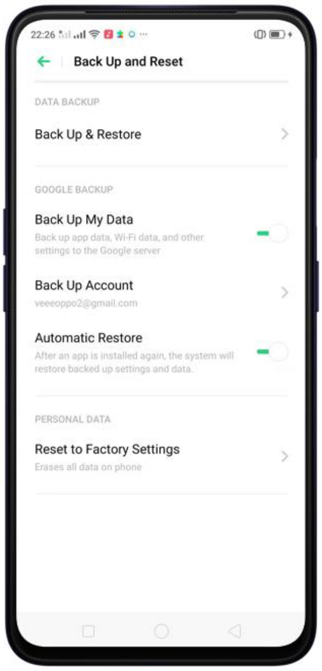
1. Backup of application data is currently not supported to ensure data security.
2. Wiping data or erasing phone contents and settings will delete the backup data in your phone storage (Path: Phone Storage – Backup). Therefore, copy the backup data to external storage or your PC before performing these operations to avoid data loss.


22:26
Create new backup
Start backup

Select the Data to Be Backed up

Contacts	0 file(s)	☑
Messages	0 file(s)	☑
Call History	0 file(s)	☑
System Data Clock and others	5/5 item(s)	☑
App (Excluding Data)	24/24 file(s)	☑

Back up to Google. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Back up and reset]** and turn on **[Back up my data]**. You can back up your app data, Wi-Fi data, and other settings to the Google server.


22:26

Back Up and Reset

DATA BACKUP

Back Up & Restore

GOOGLE BACKUP

Back Up My Data

Back up app data, Wi-Fi data, and other settings to the Google server

Back Up Account

veeeoppo2@gmail.com

Automatic Restore

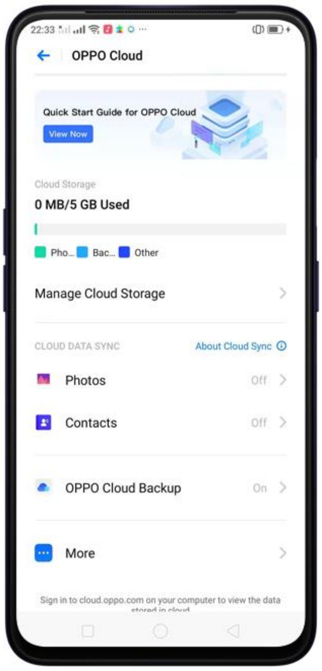
After an app is installed again, the system will restore backed up settings and data.

PERSONAL DATA

Reset to Factory Settings

Erases all data on phone

Use OPPO Cloud. OPPO Cloud allows you to back up the SMS, Contacts and system settings to the cloud drive. You need to register or sign in OPPO account first.


22:33

OPPO Cloud

Quick Start Guide for OPPO Cloud

View Now

Cloud Storage

0 MB/5 GB Used

🟩 Pho... 🟦 Bac... 🟦 Other

Manage Cloud Storage

CLOUD DATA SYNC

About Cloud Sync ⓘ

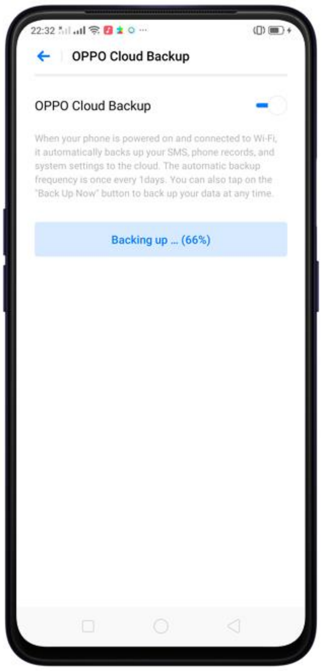
Photos Off

Contacts Off

OPPO Cloud Backup On

More

Sign in to cloud.oppo.com on your computer to view the data stored in cloud

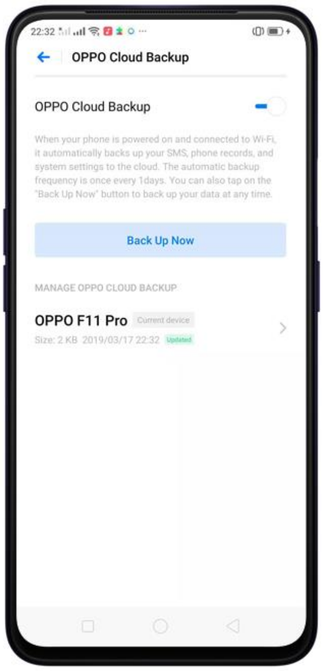

22:32

OPPO Cloud Backup

OPPO Cloud Backup

When your phone is powered on and connected to Wi-Fi, it automatically backs up your SMS, phone records, and system settings to the cloud. The automatic backup frequency is once every 1days. You can also tap on the "Back Up Now" button to back up your data at any time.

Backing up ... (66%)


22:32

OPPO Cloud Backup

OPPO Cloud Backup

When your phone is powered on and connected to Wi-Fi, it automatically backs up your SMS, phone records, and system settings to the cloud. The automatic backup frequency is once every 1days. You can also tap on the "Back Up Now" button to back up your data at any time.

Back Up Now

MANAGE OPPO CLOUD BACKUP

OPPO F11 Pro Current device

Size: 2 KB 2019/03/17 22:32 Updated

Connect your phone to a computer to create a backup on it. This is a common way to back up all your data. Don't disconnect your phone during the copy backup process.

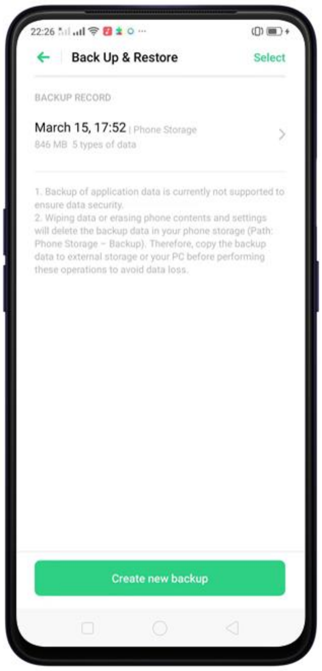
10.3.2.Restore data on your phone

There are various methods to restore data on OPPO smartphone. Select the corresponding restoration method according to the way you have made the backup.

Restore your OPPO smartphone from Local backup

Before you start, make sure that you have copied and saved the data on OPPO smartphone via **Local backup.**

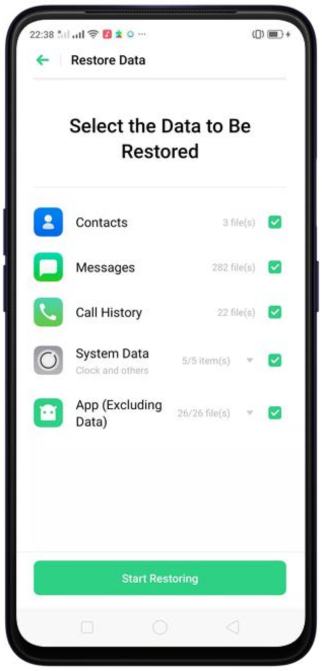
1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Back up and Reset]** and tap **[Backup & Restore]**. You can find the data you want to restore according to its backup time.



March 15, 17:52 | Phone Storage
846 MB 5 types of data

1. Backup of application data is currently not supported to ensure data security.
2. Wiping data or erasing phone contents and settings will delete the backup data in your phone storage (Path: Phone Storage – Backup). Therefore, copy the backup data to external storage or your PC before performing these operations to avoid data loss.

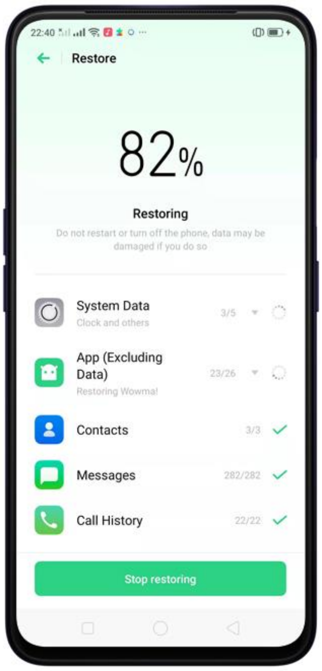
2. Select data to be restored, including Contacts, Messages, Call history, system data and Apps and their data. Then start the restoration.



Select the Data to Be Restored

Contacts	3 file(s)	☑
Messages	282 file(s)	☑
Call History	22 file(s)	☑
System Data Clock and others	5/5 item(s)	☑
App (Excluding Data)	26/26 file(s)	☑

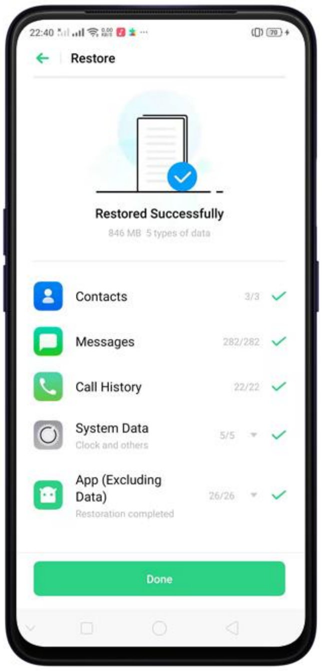
3. You device will display the progress and details till the restoration is done. You can tap **Stop Restoring** at any time during the process.



Restoring

Do not restart or turn off the phone, data may be damaged if you do so

System Data Clock and others	3/5	
App (Excluding Data) Restoring Wowma!	23/26	
Contacts	3/3	✓
Messages	282/282	✓
Call History	22/22	✓



Restored Successfully

846 MB 5 types of data

Contacts	3/3	✓
Messages	282/282	✓
Call History	22/22	✓
System Data Clock and others	5/5	✓
App (Excluding Data) Restoration completed	26/26	✓

Note:

- DO NOT turn off or restart your phone during the restoration process, otherwise, data may be damaged or lost.

- After restoration has succeeded, you can delete data that are no longer needed.

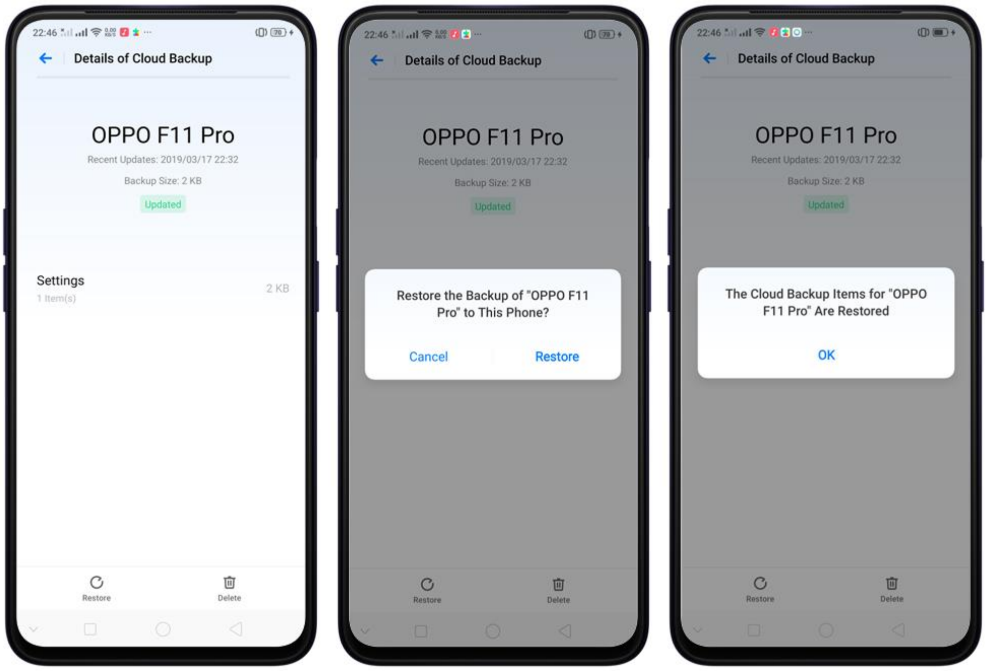
Restore your OPPO smartphone via computer

If your backup files are stored on external storage such as SD card, removable hard drive, etc., copy these files to your OPPO smartphone to complete data restoration.

Restore Contacts and SMS on OPPO smartphone from OPPO Cloud

If you have backed up your Contacts and SMS to OPPO Cloud, you can restore them after signing in to your OPPO account.

Note: Network connection is required when you back up or restore data with OPPO Cloud.



OPPO F11 Pro

Recent Updates: 2019/03/17 22:32

Backup Size: 2 KB

Settings 2 KB

1 Item(s)

Restore the Backup of "OPPO F11 Pro" to This Phone?

The Cloud Backup Items for "OPPO F11 Pro" Are Restored

Transfer your data with Clone Phone

If you have switched to a new OPPO phone, you can transfer your data from old phone to your new OPPO phone through **Clone Phone**.

Restore your OPPO smartphone data from third-party Apps

OPPO does not recommend you back up, transfer or restore data via third-party APPs, for they may be in conflict with OPPO system, leak personal information, or cause other safety problems.

10.3.3.Reset the phone

Resetting your OPPO phone will reset the phone back to its original factory settings, and will permanently erase all your personal data. You can do Factory data reset if your phone starts to lag or there's a delay in navigating, has too much junk files and caches, or has issues with system or applications.

Before you do factory reset, back up all the needed data.

Reset your phone to factory settings

Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional settings]** > **[Back up and Reset]** > **[Reset to Factory Settings]**, choose an option available for factory data reset.

Note: Any reset option cannot be revoked once it is operated.

Reset System Settings Only

This option will reset all system settings without deleting any data or media files.

Clear Downloaded Apps and App Data

This option will delete all third-party apps and app data. But the data saved by the user will be kept such as photos, music, and videos.

Clear All Data

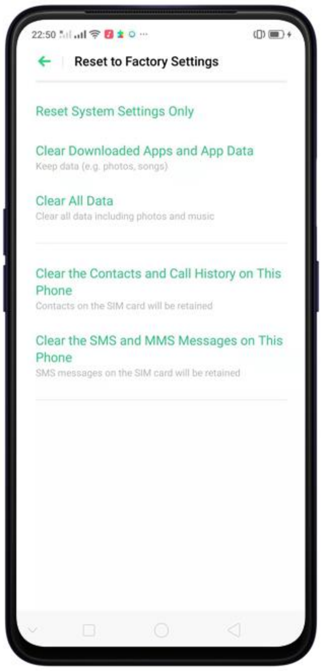
Through this option, all data of on you device will be cleared including contents, settings, photos, and music. It will reset to its inactivated initial state, which is the factory state.

Clear the Contacts and Call History on This Phone

By choosing this option, all the contacts and call history on the phone will be erased. Only the contacts on the SIM card will be preserved. Other data on your device will not be affected.

Clear the SMS and MMS Messages on This Phone

By choosing this option, all the SMS and MMS messages on the phone will be erased. Only the SMS messages on the SIM card will be preserved. Other you're your device will not be affected.



Reset to Factory Settings

Reset System Settings Only

Clear Downloaded Apps and App Data
Keep data (e.g. photos, songs)

Clear All Data
Clear all data including photos and music

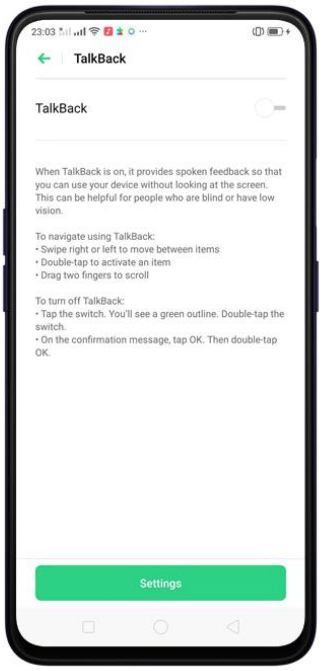
Clear the Contacts and Call History on This Phone
Contacts on the SIM card will be retained

Clear the SMS and MMS Messages on This Phone
SMS messages on the SIM card will be retained

11. Barrier-free

11.1. TalkBack

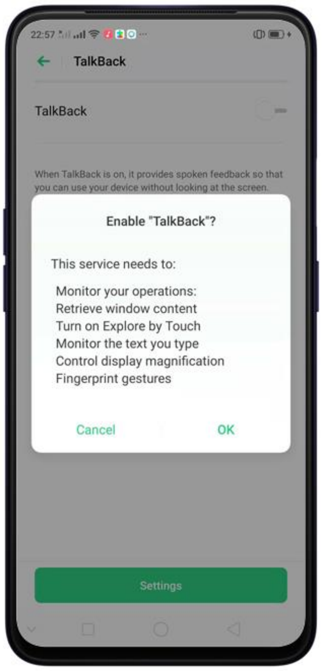
TalkBack helps blind and vision-impaired users to interact with the phones more easily. It uses spoken word, vibration, and other audible feedback to let you know what's on your screen, what you're touching, and what you can do with it.
Turn TalkBack on. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Accessibility]** and enable TalkBack.


23:03
TalkBack
TalkBack
Settings

When TalkBack is on, it provides spoken feedback so that you can use your device without looking at the screen. This can be helpful for people who are blind or have low vision.

To navigate using TalkBack:
- Swipe right or left to move between items
- Double-tap to activate an item
- Drag two fingers to scroll

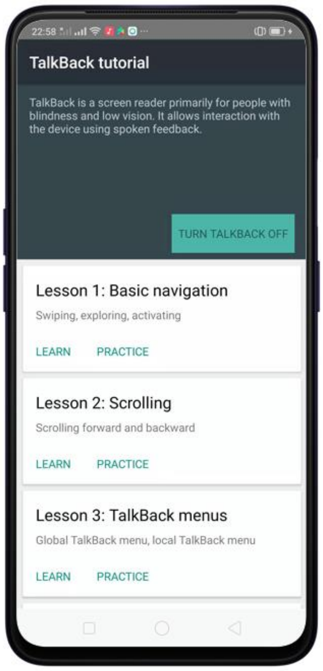
To turn off TalkBack:
- Tap the switch. You'll see a green outline. Double-tap the switch.
- On the confirmation message, tap OK. Then double-tap OK.


22:57
TalkBack
TalkBack
Enable "TalkBack"?
Cancel
OK
Settings

When TalkBack is on, it provides spoken feedback so that you can use your device without looking at the screen.

This service needs to:

Monitor your operations:
Retrieve window content
Turn on Explore by Touch
Monitor the text you type
Control display magnification
Fingerprint gestures


22:58
TalkBack tutorial
TURN TALKBACK OFF
Lesson 1: Basic navigation
Swiping, exploring, activating
LEARN
PRACTICE
Lesson 2: Scrolling
Scrolling forward and backward
LEARN
PRACTICE
Lesson 3: TalkBack menus
Global TalkBack menu, local TalkBack menu
LEARN
PRACTICE

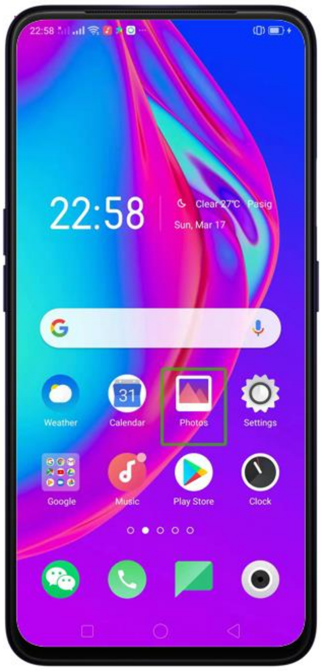
TalkBack is a screen reader primarily for people with blindness and low vision. It allows interaction with the device using spoken feedback.

When **TalkBack** is on:

Your device provides spoken feedback to help blind and low-vision users. For example, it describes what you touch, select, and activate.

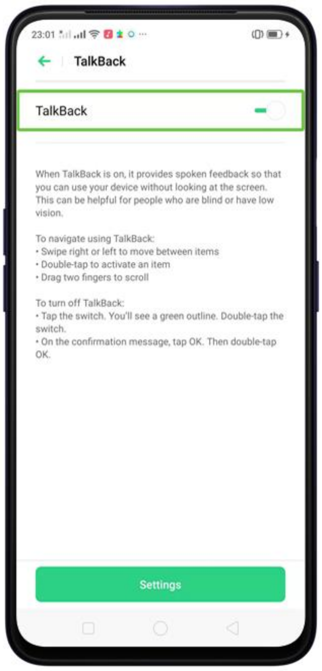
- **To select an option**: Tap the option to show the green border, then double-tap to activate it.

- **To scroll the screen**: Swipe upward or downward with two fingers.


22:58
22:58
Clear 27°C Pasig
Sun, Mar 17
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock

Turn Talkback off. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Accessibility]** >

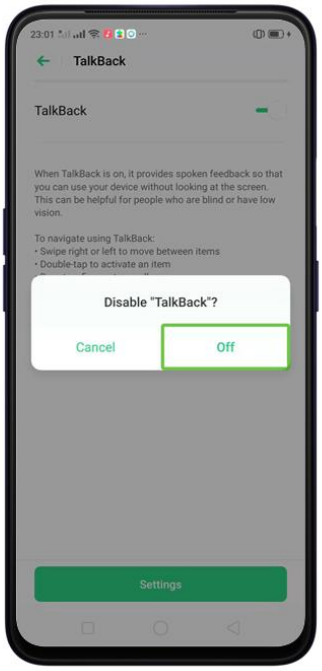
[TalkBack], switch the slider to white, then tap **Off**.



When TalkBack is on, it provides spoken feedback so that you can use your device without looking at the screen. This can be helpful for people who are blind or have low vision.

To navigate using TalkBack:
- Swipe right or left to move between items
- Double-tap to activate an item
- Drag two fingers to scroll

To turn off TalkBack:
- Tap the switch. You'll see a green outline. Double-tap the switch.
- On the confirmation message, tap OK. Then double-tap OK.



When TalkBack is on, it provides spoken feedback so that you can use your device without looking at the screen. This can be helpful for people who are blind or have low vision.

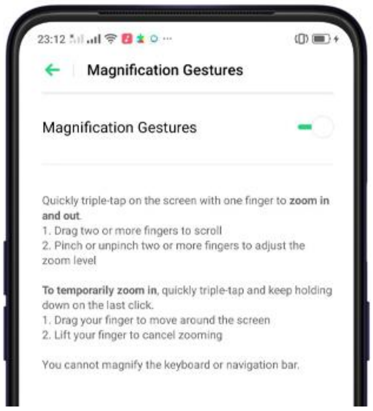
To navigate using TalkBack:
- Swipe right or left to move between items
- Double-tap to activate an item

Disable "TalkBack"?

11.2. Magnification Gestures

Magnification gestures work similarly to the full-screen magnifiers, which allows users to zoom in and pan the whole screen to get a closer look at screen content.

Enable magnification gestures. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]**> **[Accessibility]** and enable **[Magnification Gestures]**.



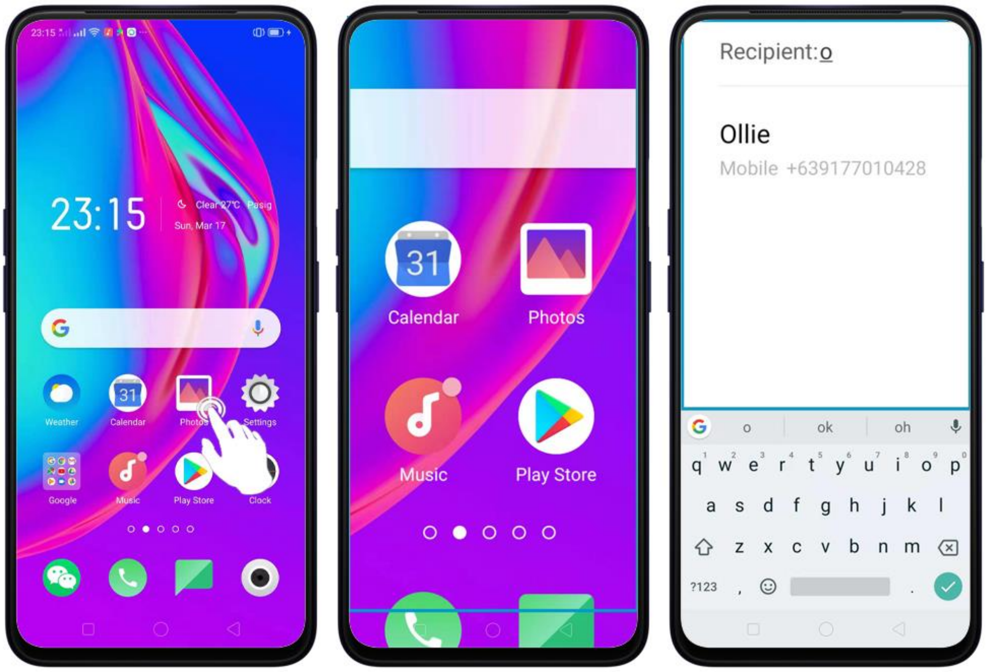
Quickly triple-tap on the screen with one finger to **zoom in and out**.
1. Drag two or more fingers to scroll
2. Pinch or unpinch two or more fingers to adjust the zoom level

To temporarily zoom in, quickly triple-tap and keep holding down on the last click.
1. Drag your finger to move around the screen
2. Lift your finger to cancel zooming

You cannot magnify the keyboard or navigation bar.

- Quickly triple-tap the screen to zoom in and out. The triple-tapping does not work well on the keyboard or on the navigation bar - if you have the magnifier running while the keyboard is shown, only the area above the keyboard will be magnified.
- Drag two or more fingers across the screen to pan across the screen.

- Pinch your fingers together or apart to adjust the zoom level.


23:15
Sun, Mar 17
Weather
Calendar
Photos
Settings
Google
Music
Play Store
Clock
Calendar
Photos
Music
Play Store

Recipient:o

Ollie

Mobile +639177010428

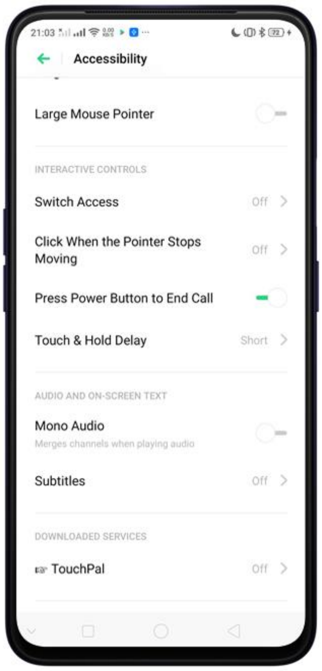
Turn the magnifier on temporarily. Triple-tap the screen and hold the third tap.

- Drag one finger around the screen to move the view.
- Lift the finger to cancel zooming.
- Quickly triple-tap to exit.

11.3. Press Power Button to End Call

In addition to end calls by tapping ☎, you can make the Power button do this function.

End Calls with the Power button. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Accessibility]** and turn on **[Press Power Button to End Call]**. Then you can end calls by tapping **Decline** or pressing the Power button.



Accessibility

Large Mouse Pointer

INTERACTIVE CONTROLS

Switch Access Off

Click When the Pointer Stops Moving Off

Press Power Button to End Call

Touch & Hold Delay Short

AUDIO AND ON-SCREEN TEXT

Mono Audio
Merges channels when playing audio

Subtitles Off

DOWNLOADED SERVICES

TouchPal Off

12. Safety, handling, and support

12.1. Health & Safety

12.1.1.Using Environment

Keep in mind the following rules. Switch off your phone when it is prohibited, or might cause disturbance or danger.

1. The ideal phone working temperature is 0° C to 35° C and 35% to 85% humidity. A too high or too low temperature might affect the performance or cause damage~~s~~. The ideal phone storage temperature is -20° C to 45° C.

2. Your phone might interfere with electronic and medical equipment. Obey the related rules and switch off your phone in these places.

3. Try not to use your phone in weak signal areas or near high-precision electronic devices. Radio interference might lead to malfunction or other issues in electronic devices, especially pay attention when near the following devices: hearing aids, pacemakers and other medical devices, fire detectors, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.

4. In rare cases, the phone might interfere with the electronic systems in certain cars, such as the ABS anti-lock brakes and the air bag. Consult your network operator or car manufacturer before connecting the phone.

5. Before connecting to other devices, carefully read the user manual for more detailed, accurate, and safety instructions. Do not connect to incompatible products.
6. Do not use your phone in rain, or near washbasins or other wet locations.

12.1.2.Battery Safety

Battery Precautions

1. Do not disassemble the built-in lithium polymer battery yourself, otherwise, it might cause battery leakage, overheat, explosion, and fire. Go to an OPPO designated after-sales service center if battery replacement is needed.
2. Do not puncture or pierce the battery with hard objects (e.g., needles and tacks) to avoid battery leakage.
3. Liquid in the battery is harmful to your skin. If liquid can be seen leaking from the battery, do not attempt to touch it. If the liquid contacts with the skin and eyes rinse immediately with water and go to a doctor if needed.
4. Do not expose the battery to extreme ambient temperatures, fire, wet locations, and direct sunlight.
5. If the battery sends out strange smell, turn off your phone immediately, and send it to an authorized service provider for battery replacement. Do not attempt to disassemble or replace the battery yourself.
6. Do not continuously charge the battery over 12 hours.

Battery Life Tips

1. **Use OPPO original accessories.** Use OPPO original charger (power adapter and USB cable) that matches your phone model. Charging with third-party or counterfeit charger accessories might impact battery lifespan or even cause security incidents.
2. **Charge at a suitable temperature.** The ideal charging temperature is 5° C to 40° C. Battery life might temporarily shorten in low-temperature conditions, or irreversibly damage when temperature is too high. The battery should be charged within the ideal temperature range to avoid decreased battery performance and standby time.
3. **Turn off phone features when not in use**. Using features such as Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and GPS or keeping them active in the background may drain the battery significantly. Turn them off when not in use to save the battery.

Dimming your screen and reducing the screen timeout setting can also preserve the battery life.

4. **Do not use when charging.** Your phone might quickly get warm or even cause damage if you use it a lot during charging.
5. **Do not fully drain your phone's battery.** Charge your phone when your battery level goes down to 10%. If phone's battery is fully drain, the battery could fall into a deep empty/drain state, which will cause it to be slightly damaged.
6. **Store the phone long term.** If you plan to store the phone for a long time, charge it to 60% or above every month.
7. **External environment.** Avoid exposing your phone battery to high or low temperature, humid environment or sun exposure.

12.1.3.Charger Usage Notes

1. Only use the charger specified by OPPO.
2. Charging voltage should be consistent with that specified on the charger. Using mismatched voltage might cause leakage, fire, and damages.
3. Do not use a power socket that is incompatible with the charger. Make sure the charger is plugged in firmly to avoid any fire hazard.
4. Do not charge your phone with a partially damaged charger, for that could result in electric shock, fire or other damages.
5. Do not charge your phone near washbasins or other water containers, or in wet locations such as bathrooms. Take caution to not spill any food or liquid on your phone or charger. Do not touch chargers, cables or power sockets with wet hands. In case the charger gets wet, unplug all cables, allow it to dry thoroughly before charging again.
6. Do not disassemble or modify the charger or cables yourself.
7. Do not place heavy objects on the charger, for that might cause electric shock and fire.
8. Before cleaning the charger, unplug all cables (hold and pull the plug instead of pulling the cable, otherwise the cable will be ripped off).
9. Do not charge your phone when there is lightening or thunderstorm. Do not make phone calls while charging.

10. Avoid exposing your charger to following conditions: exposing to direct sunlight, temperatures lower than 5° C or higher than 40° C, damp and dusty places or that with excessive vibrations (might cause breakdowns), places near electrical appliances such as TV and radio sets (might cause interference to images and sound).

12.1.4. Traffic Safety

Use both hands when driving, and give full attention to driving and on the road. If you decide to use your phone while driving or riding a bicycle, keep in mind the following conditions:

- Safety should always come first while driving or riding a bicycle. Make sure to follow the related regulations in the area or country.
- Keep your eyes on the road. If you get an incoming call at an inconvenient time, let your voicemail answer it for you, or answer with a Bluetooth headset.
- An air bag in your vehicle inflates with great force. Do not store your phone or any of its accessories in the area over the air bag or in the air bag deployment area.
- Do not rely solely on the map on your phone when searching for locations, buildings, directions, and distances. Map routes and compass change as information provided by the service provider changes, so the map might be incorrect, incomplete or unsupported.
- Do not ship the phone~~,~~ with its components or accessories in the same compartment with flammable liquids, gases or explosives

12.2. Maintenance and Repair

12.2.1. Phone Cases

Keeping your phone protected from damage should be pretty important to you. The phone case that come along with your phone can effectively mitigate your concerns.

OPPO original phone case is made of TPU material, which is lightweight and soft and helps keep the original 'feel' of the phone since the case is a tight-fitting overlay. It does a good job of protecting against drops and shock damage on the corners and rear of your phone, also can reduce the damage caused by extreme temperature, liquid and dust invasion, etc.

12.2.2. Screen Protector

OPPO provides you with an original HD clear screen protector made of PET material, which is a thin piece of electro-conductive film that self-adheres to your screen. It protects your screen from cracking, also does offer resistance to scratches, finger prints, and abrasions. Besides, OPPO screen protector ensures high-definition and sensitiveness of the screen, which will not affect the screen display quality.

12.2.3. Maximize battery life and lifespan

Note: Rechargeable batteries have a limited number of charge cycles and may eventually need to be replaced. It is normal for the battery to lose its capacity over time, but you can do the following to maximize its life and lifespan.

Use OPPO original accessories. Charge the phone with OPPO original power adapter and USB cable. Charging with third-party charger accessories might impact battery lifespan or even cause security incidents.

Use at a suitable temperature. OPPO smartphone battery is designed to have a good performance in a wide range of ambient temperatures, with 16° C to 25° C as the ideal comfort zone. When temperature is higher than 45°C, battery capacity will damage irreversibly, and phone might even short-circuit and burn.

Do not use when charging. Programs such as long-time calls, games or online videos will make phone get warm quickly.

Do not fully discharge your phone's battery. Charge your phone when your battery level goes down to 10%. If phone's battery is fully discharged, the battery could fall into a deep discharge state, which will cause it to be slightly damaged.

Store the phone long term. If you plan to store the phone for a long-term, charge it to 60% or above every month.

External environment. Avoid exposing your phone battery to humid environment or sun exposure.

Keep a good using habit. Using features such as Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and GPS or keeping them active in the background may drain the battery significantly. Turn them off when not in use to save the battery. Dimming your screen and reducing the screen timeout setting can also preserve the battery life.

Do not charge with a portable power bank frequently. If a power bank supplies current which is above your phone battery's capacity, then it will cause damage to your battery gradually. Make sure the power bank you buy is of good quality and has power ratings which are suitable for your phone, basically match the current to the wall charger you use.

12.2.4. Keep Clean

Your mobile phone could be a hotspot for bacteria, so clean your phone is of great importance. Follow these steps:

1. To clean your phone, unplug all cables and turn it off first.
2. Dip the included cleaning cloth or a soft, slightly damp, lint-free cloth in distilled water or low concentration alcohol, and shake or squeeze to remove any excess liquid.
3. Slightly wipe across your phone. Avoid getting moisture in openings.
4. Gently wipe the screen with the dry part of the microfiber cloth, but don't try to pick up all the excess water if it means pressing hard.

Do not attempt to dry your phone with an external heat source, such as a hair dryer. If impurities cannot be cleaned up, contact OPPO Service Center for professional assistances.

12.2.5. Keep dry and solve water damage

Do not use your phone in rain, or near washbasins or other wet locations. Take care not to spill any food or liquid on your phone. In case your phone gets wet, follow these emergency measures:

1. Take your phone out of the liquid immediately, unplug all cables and turn off your phone.
2. If your phone has a removable battery, remove it.
3. Use a tissue or soft cloth to thoroughly adsorb water stains or liquids on the surface of your phone, and gently shake the phone in the opposite direction of liquid inflow.
4. Let your phone dry thoroughly before turning it on again. Avoid drying your phone with an external heat source, such as a hot air hair dryer.

If your phone has a serious water damage, take your phone, warranty card and proof of purchase to a nearby OPPO Customer Center for repairs at once.

12.2.6. Use connectors, ports, and buttons.

Never force a connector into a port for that might cause damage, which is not covered by warranty service. Check for obstructions on the port. If the connector and port don't join with reasonable ease, they probably don't match. Make sure that the connector matches the port and that you have positioned the connector correctly in relation to the port.

12.2.7. Other information

Mobile phones are perishable items, use with care. The following instructions might help to protect your phone:

1. Do not drop your phone or let it receive a substantial impact.
2. Do not place your phone in a microwave oven or other high voltage equipment, otherwise, it might cause damages, fire or explosion.
3. Do not leave the phone in hot, humid, or dusty environments. This may cause the phone to malfunction.

4. Your phone contains small parts, which may present a choking hazard to small children. Keep your phone and its accessories away from small children.
5. Do not paint your phone. Paint will block the sensors and lead to phone disoperation.
6. Dirty sockets might cause poor contact or electrical leakage. Regularly clean the power socket.
7. Do not take out the SIM or SD card when transmitting or saving information, otherwise, some important information might be lost.
8. Use only the supplied or approved antenna for replacement. Modified accessories might damage the phone or violate administer regulations of radio devices.

Note:

Read all safety information carefully before using the phone to ensure personal safety and proper use. Consumable parts (such as the battery and earphone) possess different warranty periods from your phone. Check with your warranty receipt for details.

12.3. FCC Compliance Statement

FCC Statement

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this product. Such modifications could negate the user’s authority to operate the product.

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. Using this product can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, it may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in some conditions. If this product does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception itself, follow one or more of these measures to correct that:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Keep a longer distance between the product and receiver.
- Plug the product and receiver into outlets of different circuits.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC Caution

- ▸ Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to use the product.
- ▸ The antenna(s) used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.
- ▸ The country code selection is for non-US model only and is not available to all US models. Per FCC regulation, all Wi-Fi products marketed in US must fixed to US operation channels only.
- ▸ Operations in the 5.15-5.25 GHz band are restricted to indoor usage only.